

# **Advanced Combinatorics**

## **Louis Comtet**

**D.Reidel Publishing Company / Dordrecht-Holland / Boston-U.S.A.**

**ADVANCED COMBINATORICS**

**LOUIS COMTET**

*University of Paris-Sud (Orsay), France*

# **ADVANCED COMBINATORICS**

*The Art of Finite and Infinite Expansions*

**REVISED AND ENLARGED EDITION**



**D. REIDEL PUBLISHING COMPANY**

**DORDRECHT-HOLLAND / BOSTON-U.S.A.**

**ANALYSE COMBINATOIRE, TOMES I ET II**

*First published in 1970 by Presses Universitaires de France, Paris*

*Translated from the French by J. W. Nienhuys*

**Library of Congress Catalog Card Number 73-86091**

ISBN-13: 978-94-010-2198-2      e-ISBN-13: 978-94-010-2196-8  
DOI: 10.1007/978-94-010-2196-8

**Published by D. Reidel Publishing Company,  
P.O. Box 17, Dordrecht, Holland**

**Sold and distributed in the U.S.A., Canada, and Mexico  
by D. Reidel Publishing Company, Inc.  
306 Dartmouth Street, Boston,  
Mass. 02116, U.S.A.**

**All Rights Reserved**

**Copyright © 1974 by D. Reidel Publishing Company, Dordrecht, Holland  
No part of this book may be reproduced in any form, by print, photoprint, microfilm,  
or any other means, without written permission from the publisher**

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>INTRODUCTION</b>	<b>IX</b>
<b>SYMBOLS AND ABBREVIATIONS</b>	<b>XI</b>
<b>CHAPTER I. VOCABULARY OF COMBINATORIAL ANALYSIS</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1. Subsets of a Set; Operations	1
1.2. Product Sets	3
1.3. Maps	4
1.4. Arrangements, Permutations	5
1.5. Combinations (without repetitions) or Blocks	7
1.6. Binomial Identity	12
1.7. Combinations with Repetitions	15
1.8. Subsets of $[n]$ , Random Walk	19
1.9. Subsets of $\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$	23
1.10. Divisions and Partitions of a Set; Multinomial Identity	25
1.11. Bound Variables	30
1.12. Formal Series	36
1.13. Generating Functions	43
1.14. List of the Principal Generating Functions	48
1.15. Bracketing Problems	52
1.16. Relations	57
1.17. Graphs	60
1.18. Digraphs; Functions from a Finite Set into Itself	67
Supplement and Exercises	72
<b>CHAPTER II. PARTITIONS OF INTEGERS</b>	<b>94</b>
2.1. Definitions of Partitions of an Integer $[n]$	94
2.2. Generating Functions of $p(n)$ and $P(n, m)$	96
2.3. Conditional Partitions	98
2.4. Ferrers Diagrams	99
2.5. Special Identities; ‘Formal’ and ‘Combinatorial’ Proofs	103
2.6. Partitions with Forbidden Summands; Denumerants	108
Supplement and Exercises	115

<b>CHAPTER III. IDENTITIES AND EXPANSIONS</b>	<b>127</b>
3.1. Expansion of a Product of Sums; Abel Identity	127
3.2. Product of Formal Series; Leibniz Formula	130
3.3. Bell Polynomials	133
3.4. Substitution of One Formal Series into Another; Formula of Faà di Bruno	137
3.5. Logarithmic and Potential Polynomials	140
3.6. Inversion Formulas and Matrix Calculus	143
3.7. Fractionary Iterates of Formal Series	144
3.8. Inversion Formula of Lagrange	148
3.9. Finite Summation Formulas	153
Supplement and Exercises	155
<b>CHAPTER IV. SIEVE FORMULAS</b>	<b>176</b>
4.1. Number of Elements of a Union or Intersection	176
4.2. The ‘problème des rencontres’	180
4.3. The ‘problème des ménages’	183
4.4. Boolean Algebra Generated by a System of Subsets	185
4.5. The Method of Rényi for Linear Inequalities	189
4.6. Poincaré Formula	191
4.7. Bonferroni Inequalities	193
4.8. Formulas of Ch. Jordan	195
4.9. Permanents	196
Supplement and Exercises	198
<b>CHAPTER V. STIRLING NUMBERS</b>	<b>204</b>
5.1. Stirling Numbers of the Second Kind $S(n, k)$ and Partitions of Sets	204
5.2. Generating Functions for $S(n, k)$	206
5.3. Recurrence Relations between the $S(n, k)$	208
5.4. The Number $w(n)$ of Partitions or Equivalence Relations of a Set with $n$ Elements	210
5.5. Stirling Numbers of the First Kind $s(n, k)$ and their Generating Functions	212
5.6. Recurrence Relations between the $s(n, k)$	214
5.7. The Values of $s(n, k)$	216
5.8. Congruence Problems	218

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

VII

Supplement and Exercises	219
<b>CHAPTER VI. PERMUTATIONS</b>	230
6.1. The Symmetric Group	230
6.2. Counting Problems Related to Decomposition in Cycles; Return to Stirling Numbers of the First Kind	233
6.3. Multipermutations	235
6.4. Inversions of a Permutation of $[n]$	236
6.5. Permutations by Number of Rises; Eulerian Numbers	240
6.6. Groups of Permutations; Cycle Indicator Polynomial; Burnside Theorem	246
6.7. Theorem of Pólya	250
Supplement and Exercises	254
<b>CHAPTER VII. EXAMPLES OF INEQUALITIES AND ESTIMATES</b>	268
7.1. Convexity and Unimodality of Combinatorial Sequences	268
7.2. Sperner Systems	271
7.3. Asymptotic Study of the Number of Regular Graphs of Order Two on $N$	273
7.4. Random Permutations	279
7.5. Theorem of Ramsey	283
7.6. Binary (Bicolour) Ramsey Numbers	287
7.7. Squares in Relations	288
Supplement and Exercises	291
<b>FUNDAMENTAL NUMERICAL TABLES</b>	305
Factorials with Their Prime Factor Decomposition	305
Binomial Coefficients	306
Partitions of Integers	307
Bell Polynomials	307
Logarithmic Polynomials	308
Partially Ordinary Bell polynomials	309
Multinomial Coefficients	309
Stirling Numbers of the First Kind	310
Stirling Numbers of the Second Kind and Exponential Numbers	310
<b>BIBLIOGRAPHY</b>	312
<b>INDEX</b>	337

## INTRODUCTION

Notwithstanding its title, the reader will not find in this book a systematic account of this huge subject. Certain classical aspects have been passed by, and the true title ought to be “Various questions of elementary combinatorial analysis”. For instance, we only touch upon the subject of graphs and configurations, but there exists a very extensive and good literature on this subject. For this we refer the reader to the bibliography at the end of the volume.

The true beginnings of combinatorial analysis (also called combinatorial analysis) coincide with the beginnings of probability theory in the 17th century. For about two centuries it vanished as an autonomous subject. But the advance of statistics, with an ever-increasing demand for configurations as well as the advent and development of computers, have, beyond doubt, contributed to reinstating this subject after such a long period of negligence.

For a long time the aim of combinatorial analysis was to count the different ways of arranging objects under given circumstances. Hence, many of the traditional problems of analysis or geometry which are concerned at a certain moment with finite structures, have a combinatorial character. Today, combinatorial analysis is also relevant to problems of existence, estimation and structuration, like all other parts of mathematics, but exclusively for *finite sets*.

My idea is here to take the uninitiated reader along a path strewn with particular problems, and I can very well imagine that this journey may jolt a student who is used to easy generalizations, especially when only some of the questions I treat can be extended at all, and difficult or unsolved extensions at that, too. Meanwhile, the treatise remains firmly elementary and almost no mathematics of advanced college level will be necessary.

At the end of each chapter I provide statements in the form of *exercises* that serve as *supplementary material*, and I have indicated with a star those that seem most difficult. In this respect, I have attempted to write down

these 219 questions with their *answers*, so they can be consulted as a kind of *compendium*.

The first items I should quote and recommend from the bibliography are the three great classical treatises of Netto, MacMahon and Riordan. The bibliographical references, all between brackets, indicate the author's name and the year of publication. Thus, [Abel, 1826] refers, in the *bibliography of articles*, to the paper by Abel, published in 1826. Books are indicated by a star. So, for instance, [\*Riordan, 1968] refers, in the *bibliography of books*, to the book by Riordan, published in 1968. Suffixes a, b, c, distinguish, for the same author, different articles that appeared in the same year.

Each chapter is virtually independent of the others, except of the first; but the use of the index will make it easy to consult each part of the book separately.

I have taken the opportunity in this English edition to correct some printing errors and to improve certain points, taking into account the suggestions which several readers kindly communicated to me and to whom I feel indebted and most grateful.

## SYMBOLS AND ABBREVIATIONS

$\mathfrak{A}_k(N)$	set of $k$ -arrangements of $N$
$\mathbf{B}_{n,k}$	partial Bell polynomials
$\mathbf{C}$	set of complex numbers
$\mathbf{E}(X)$	expectation of random variable $X$
$\mathbf{GF}$	generating function
$N$	denotes, throughout the book, a finite set with $n$ elements, $ N =n$
$\mathbf{N}$	set of integers $\geq 0$
$\mathbf{P}(A)$	probability of event $A$
$\mathfrak{P}(N)$	set of subsets of $N$
$\mathfrak{P}'(N)$	set of nonempty subsets of $N$
$\mathfrak{P}_k(N)$	set of subsets of $N$ containing $k$ elements
$A+B$	$=A \cup B$ , understanding that $A \cap B=\emptyset$
$\mathbf{R}$	set of real numbers
$\mathbf{RV}$	random variable
$\mathbf{Z}$	set of all integers $\geq 0$
$\triangle$	difference operator
■	indicates beginning and end of the proof of a theorem
$:=$	equals by definition
$[n]$	the set $\{1, 2, 3, \dots, n\}$ of the first $n$ positive integers
$n!$	$n$ factorial = the product $1.2.3.\dots.n$
$(x)_k$	$=x(x-1)\dots(x-k+1)$
$\langle x \rangle_k$	$=x(x+1)\dots(x+k-1)$
$[x]$	the greatest integer less than or equal to $x$
$\ x\ $	the nearest integer to $x$
$\binom{n}{k}$	binomial coefficient $= (n)_k/k!$
$s(n, k)$	Stirling number of the first kind
$S(n, k)$	Stirling number of the second kind
$ N $	number of elements of set $N$
$\dot{k}$	bound variable, with dot underneath
$\complement A, \bar{A}$	complement of subset $A$
$C_{t^n} f$	coefficient of $t^n$ in the formal series $f$
$\{x \mid \mathcal{P}\}$	set of all $x$ with property $\mathcal{P}$
$N^M$	set of maps of $M$ into $N$

## CHAPTER I

### VOCABULARY OF COMBINATORIAL ANALYSIS

In this chapter we define the language we will use and we introduce those elementary concepts which will be referred to throughout the book. As much as possible, the chosen notations will not be new; we will use only those that actually occur in publications. We will not be afraid to use two different symbols for the same thing, as one may be preferable to the other, depending on circumstances. Thus, for example,  $\bar{A}$  and  $C_A$  both denote the complement of  $A$ ,  $A \cap B$  and  $AB$  stand for the intersection of  $A$  and  $B$ , etc. For the rest, it seems desirable to avoid taking positions and to obtain the flexibility which is necessary to be able to read different authors.

#### 1.1. SUBSETS OF A SET ; OPERATIONS

In the following we suppose the reader to be familiar with the rudiments of set theory, in the naive sense, as they are taught in any introductory mathematics course. This section just defines the notations.

**N**, **Z**, **R**, **C** denote the set of the non-negative integers including zero, the set of *all* integers  $\leq 0$ , the set of the real numbers and the set of the complex numbers, respectively.

We will sometimes use the following *logical abbreviations*:  $\exists$  (=there exists at least one),  $\forall$  (=for all),  $\Rightarrow$  (=implies),  $\Leftarrow$  (=if),  $\Leftrightarrow$  (=if and only if).

When a set  $\Omega$  and one of its elements  $\omega$  is given, we write " $\omega \in \Omega$ " and we say " $\omega$  is element of  $\Omega$ " or also " $\omega$  belongs to  $\Omega$ " or " $\omega$  in  $\Omega$ ". Let  $\Pi$  be the subset of elements  $\omega$  of  $\Omega$  that have a certain property  $\mathcal{P}$ ,  $\Pi \subset \Omega$ , then we denote this by:

$$[1a] \quad \Pi := \{\omega \mid \omega \in \Omega, \mathcal{P}\},$$

and we say this as follows: " $\Pi$  equals by definition the set of elements  $\omega$  of  $\Omega$  satisfying  $\mathcal{P}$ ". When the list of elements  $a, b, c, \dots, l$  that constitute

together  $\Pi$ , is known, then we also write:

$$\Pi := \{a, b, c, \dots, l\}.$$

If  $N$  is a finite set,  $|N|$  denotes the *number of its elements*. Hence  $|N| = \text{card } N = \text{cardinal of } N$ , also denoted by  $\bar{N}$ .

$\mathfrak{P}(N)$  is the set of all subsets of  $N$ , *including the empty set*;  $\mathfrak{P}'(N)$  denotes the set of all *nonempty* subsets, or *combinations*, or *blocks*, of  $N$ ; hence, when  $A$  is a subset of  $N$ , we will denote this by  $A \subset N$  or by  $A \in \mathfrak{P}(N)$ , as we like. For  $A, B$  subsets of  $N$ ,  $A, B \subset N$  we recall that

$$A \cap B := \{x \mid x \in A, x \in B\},$$

$$A \cup B := \{x \mid x \in A \text{ or } x \in B\},$$

(the *or* is not exclusive) which are the *intersection* and the *union* of  $A$  and  $B$ . It sometimes will happen somewhere that we write  $AB$  instead of  $A \cap B$ , for reasons of economy. (See, for example, Chapter IV.) For each *family*  $\mathcal{F}$  of subsets of  $N$ ,  $\mathcal{F} := (A_i)_{i \in I}$ , we denote:

$$\bigcap_{i \in I} A_i := \{x \mid \forall i \in I, x \in A_i\}, \quad \bigcup_{i \in I} A_i := \{x \mid \exists i \in I, x \in A_i\}.$$

The (set theoretic) *difference* of two subsets  $A$  and  $B$  of  $N$  is defined by:

$$[1b] \quad A \setminus B := \{x \mid x \in A, x \notin B\}.$$

The *complement* of  $A (\subset N)$  is the subset  $N \setminus A$  of  $N$ , also denoted by  $\bar{A}$ , or  $\mathcal{C}A$ , or  $\mathcal{C}_N A$ . The operation which assigns to  $A$  the set  $\bar{A}$  is called *complementation*. Clearly:

$$[1c] \quad A \setminus B = A \cap \bar{B}.$$

$\mathfrak{P}(N)$  is made into a *Boolean algebra* by the operations  $\cup$ ,  $\cap$  and  $\complement$ . Such a structure consists of a certain set  $M$  (here  $= \mathfrak{P}(N)$ ) with two operations  $\vee$  and  $\wedge$  (here  $\vee = \cup$ ,  $\wedge = \cap$ ), and a map of  $M$  into itself:  $a \rightarrow \bar{a}$  (here  $A \rightarrow \bar{A} = \mathcal{C}A$ ) such that for all  $a, b, c, \dots \in M$ , we have:

- [1d]
  - (I)  $(a \vee b) \vee c = a \vee (b \vee c)$ ,
  - (II)  $(a \wedge b) \wedge c = a \wedge (b \wedge c)$  (*associativity of  $\vee$  and  $\wedge$* ).
  - (III)  $a \vee b = b \vee a$ ,
  - (IV)  $a \wedge b = b \wedge a$  (*commutativity of  $\vee$  and  $\wedge$* ).
  - (V) *There exists a (unique) neutral element denoted by 0, for  $\vee : a \vee 0 = 0 \vee a = a$ .*

- (VI) *There exists a (unique) neutral element denoted by 1, for  $\wedge : a \wedge 1 = 1 \wedge a = a$ .*
- (VII)  *$a \wedge (b \vee c) = (a \wedge b) \vee (a \wedge c)$  (distributivity of  $\wedge$  with respect to  $\vee$ ).*
- (VIII)  *$a \vee (b \wedge c) = (a \vee b) \wedge (a \vee c)$  (distributivity of  $\vee$  with respect to  $\wedge$ ).*
- (IX) *Each  $a \in M$  has a complement denoted by  $\bar{a}$  such that  $a \wedge \bar{a} = 0$ ,  $a \vee \bar{a} = 1$ .*

The most important interrelations between the operations  $\cup$ ,  $\cap$ ,  $\complement$  are the following:

DEMORGAN FORMULAS. Let  $(A_i)_{i \in I}$  and  $(B_\kappa)_{\kappa \in K}$  be two families of  $N$ ,  $A_i \subset N$ ,  $B_\kappa \subset N$ ,  $i \in I$ ,  $\kappa \in K$ . Then:

$$[1e] \quad \complement(\bigcup_{i \in I} A_i) = \bigcap_{i \in I} (\complement A_i)$$

$$[1f] \quad \complement(\bigcap_{i \in I} A_i) = \bigcup_{i \in I} (\complement A_i)$$

$$[1g] \quad (\bigcup_{i \in I} A_i) \cap (\bigcup_{\kappa \in K} B_\kappa) = \bigcup_{(i, \kappa) \in I \times K} (A_i \cap B_\kappa)$$

$$[1h] \quad (\bigcap_{i \in I} A_i) \cup (\bigcap_{\kappa \in K} B_\kappa) = \bigcap_{(i, \kappa) \in I \times K} (A_i \cup B_\kappa).$$

A system  $\mathcal{S}$  of  $N$  is a nonempty (unordered) set of blocks of  $N$ , without repetition ( $\Leftrightarrow \mathcal{S} \in \mathfrak{P}'(\mathfrak{P}'(N))$ ); a  $k$ -system is a system consisting of  $k$  blocks.

## 1.2. PRODUCT SETS

Let be given  $m$  finite sets  $N_i$ ,  $1 \leq i \leq m$ , and recall that the *product set*  $\prod_{i=1}^m N_i$  or *Cartesian product* of the  $N_i$  is the set of the  $m$ -tuples  $(y) := (y_1, y_2, \dots, y_m)$ , where  $y_i \in N_i$  for all  $i = 1, 2, \dots, m$ . The product set is also denoted by  $N_1 \times N_2 \times \dots \times N_m$  or by  $N_1 N_2 N_3 \dots N_m$  if there is no danger for confusion. We call  $y_i$  the *projection* of  $(y)$  on  $N_i$ , denoted by  $pr_i(y)$ .

If  $N_1 = N_2 = \dots = N_m = N$ , the product set is also denoted by  $N^m$ ; the *diagonal*  $\Delta$  of  $N^m$  is hence the set of the  $m$ -tuples such that  $y_1 = y_2 = \dots = y_m$ .

THEOREM. *The number of elements of the product set of a finite number*

of finite sets satisfies:

$$[2a] \quad \left| \prod_{i=1}^m N_i \right| = \prod_{i=1}^m |N_i| = |N_1| \cdot |N_2| \dots |N_m|.$$

■ In fact, the number of  $m$ -tuples  $(y_1, y_2, \dots, y_m)$  is equal to the product of the number of possible choices for  $y_1$  in  $N_1$ , which is  $|N_1|$ , by the number of possible choices of  $y_2$  in  $N_2$ , which is  $|N_2|$ , etc., by the number of possible choices of  $y_m$  in  $N_m$ , which is  $|N_m|$ , because these choices can be done *independently* from each other. ■

*Example.* What is the number  $d(n)$  of factors of  $n$ , with prime decomposition  $n=p_1^{\alpha_1}p_2^{\alpha_2}\dots p_k^{\alpha_k}$ ? To choose any factor  $p_1^{\delta_1}p_2^{\delta_2}\dots p_k^{\delta_k}$  of  $n$  is the same as to choose the sequence  $(\delta_1, \delta_2, \dots, \delta_k)$  of exponents such that  $\delta_i \in A_i := \{0, 1, 2, \dots, \alpha_i\}$ ,  $i=1, 2, \dots, k$ . Then,  $d(n) = |A_1 \times A_2 \times \dots \times A_k| = |A_1| \cdot |A_2| \dots |A_k| = (\alpha_1 + 1)(\alpha_2 + 1)\dots(\alpha_k + 1)$ .

### 1.3. MAPS

Let  $\mathfrak{F}(M, N)$  or  $N^M$  be the set of the mappings  $f$  of  $M$  into  $N$ : to each  $x \in M$ ,  $f$  associates a  $y \in N$ , the *image* of  $x$  by  $f$ , denoted by  $y=f(x)$ . We write often  $f: M \mapsto N$  instead of  $f \in \mathfrak{F}(M, N)$ . As  $M$  and  $N$  are finite,  $m=|M|$ ,  $n=|N|$ , we can number the elements of  $M$ , so let  $M=\{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_m\}$ . It is clear that giving  $f$  is equivalent to giving a list of  $m$  elements of  $N$ , say  $(y_1, y_2, \dots, y_m)$ , written in a certain order and with *repetitions allowed*. By giving the list we mean then that  $y_i$  is the image of  $x_i$ ,  $1 \leq i \leq m: y_i = f(x_i)$ . In other words, giving  $f$  is equivalent to giving an  $m$ -tuple  $\in N^m$ , also called an  *$m$ -selection*. In this way we find the justification for the notation  $N^M$  for  $\mathfrak{F}(M, N)$ . Taking [2a] into account, we also have proved the following.

**THEOREM A.** *The number of maps of  $M$  into  $N$  is given by*

$$[3a] \quad |\mathfrak{F}(M, N)| = |N^M| = |N|^{|M|}.$$

For each subset  $A \subset M$ , we denote:

$$[3b] \quad f(A) := \{f(x) \mid x \in A\}.$$

In this way a map is defined from  $\mathfrak{P}(M)$  into  $\mathfrak{P}(N)$ , which is called the *extension of  $f$  to the set of subsets of  $M$* . This is also denoted by  $f$ .

For all  $y \in N$ , the subset of  $M$ :

$$[3c] \quad f^{-1}(y) := \{x \mid f(x) = y\},$$

which may be empty, is called the *pre-image* or *inverse image* of  $y$  by  $f$ .

**THEOREM B.** *The number of subsets of  $M$ , the empty set included, is given by:*

$$[3d] \quad |\mathfrak{P}(M)| = 2^{|M|}.$$

■ Let  $N$  be the set with two elements 0 and 1. We identify a subset  $A \subset M$  with the mapping  $f$  from  $M$  into  $N$  defined by:  $f(x) = 1$  for  $x \in A$ , and  $f(x) = 0$  otherwise ( $f$  is often called the *characteristic function*). In this way we have established a one-to-one correspondence between the sets  $\mathfrak{P}(M)$  and  $N^M$ , hence, by [3a],  $\mathfrak{P}(M)$  has the same number of elements as  $N^M$ , which is  $|N|^{|M|} = 2^{|M|}$ .

For computing  $u_m = |\mathfrak{P}(M)|$ , we can also remark that there are just as many subsets of  $M$  that do not contain a given point  $x$  as there are subsets containing it, namely  $u_{m-1}$  in both cases. Hence  $u_m = u_{m-1} + u_{m-1} = 2u_{m-1}$ , which combined with  $u_0 = 1$  gives  $u_m = 2^m$  indeed. ■

We recall that  $f \in N^M$  is called *injective* (or is said to be an *injection*) if the images of two different elements are different:  $x_1 \neq x_2 \Rightarrow f(x_1) \neq f(x_2)$ ;  $f$  is called *surjective* (or is said to be a *surjection*) if every element of  $N$  is image of some element in  $M$ :  $\forall y \in N, \exists x \in M, f(x) = y$ ; finally  $f$  is called *bijection* (or is said to be a *bijection*) if  $f$  is surjective as well as injective; in the last case the *inverse* or *reciprocal* of  $f$ , denoted by  $f^{-1}$ , is defined by  $y = f^{-1}(x)$ , if and only if  $x = f(y)$ , where  $x \in M, y \in N$ .

To *count* a certain finite set  $E$ , in other words, to determine the size, consists in principle of constructing a *bijection* of  $E$  onto another set  $F$ , whose number of elements is known already; then  $|E| = |F|$ .

**EXAMPLE.** Let  $E$  be the set of all subsets of  $N$  with *even* size, and  $F$  the set of the others (with *odd* size). We can choose  $x \in N$  and build a bijection  $f$  of  $E$  into  $F$  as follows:  $f(A) = A \cup \{x\}$  or  $A \setminus \{x\}$  according to  $x \notin A$  or  $x \in A$ . Thus,  $|E| = |F| = (\frac{1}{2})|\mathfrak{P}(N)| = 2^{n-1}$ . (See also p. 13.)

#### 1.4. ARRANGEMENTS, PERMUTATIONS

From now we denote for each integer  $k \geq 1$ :

$$[4a] \quad [k] := \{1, 2, \dots, k\} = \text{the set of the first } k \text{ integers } \geq 1.$$

**DEFINITION A.** A *k-arrangement*  $\alpha$  of a set  $N$ ,  $1 \leq k \leq n = |N|$ , is an injective map  $\alpha$  from  $[k]$  into  $N$  (formerly called ‘variation’). We will denote the set of *k-arrangements* of  $N$  by  $\mathfrak{A}_k(N)$ .

Giving such an  $\alpha$  is hence equivalent to giving first a subset of  $k$  elements of  $N$ :

$$B = \alpha([k]) = \{\alpha(1), \alpha(2), \dots, \alpha(k)\},$$

and secondly a *numbering* from 1 to  $k$  of the elements of  $B$ , so finally, a totally ordered subset of  $k$  elements of  $N$ , which will often be called a *k-arrangement* of  $N$  too (not quite correct, but quite convenient).

We introduce now the following notations:

$$[4b] \quad n! := \prod_{i=1}^n i = 1 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 \cdot \dots \cdot n, \quad \text{if } n \geq 1; \quad 0! := 1.$$

$$[4c] \quad (n)_k := \prod_{i=1}^k (n - i + 1) = \frac{n!}{(n - k)!} \\ = n(n - 1) \dots (n - k + 1), \quad \text{if } k \geq 1; \quad (n)_0 := 1.$$

$$[4d] \quad \langle n \rangle_k := \prod_{i=1}^k (n + i - 1) = \frac{(n + k - 1)!}{(n - 1)!} \\ = n(n + 1) \dots (n + k - 1), \quad \text{if } k \geq 1; \quad \langle n \rangle_0 := 1.$$

$n!$  is called *n factorial*;  $(n)_k$  is sometimes called *falling factorial n* (of order  $k$ ), and  $\langle n \rangle_k$  is sometimes called *rising factorial n* (of order  $k$ ), or also the *Pochhammer* symbol. So,  $(n)_n = \langle 1 \rangle_n = n!$ ,  $\langle n \rangle_k = (n+k-1)_k$ ,  $(n)_k = \langle n-k+1 \rangle_k$ , etc. These notations are not yet fixed well. The use of  $(n)_k$  in the sense indicated, is inspired by formula [5a] (p. 8) that associates the symbols  $(n)_k$  and  $\binom{n}{k}$  with each other in a symmetrical way, both using parentheses. The symbol  $\langle n \rangle_k$  that we introduce here for lack of any better is not standard, and if often written  $(n)_k$  in texts on hypergeometric series. For the reader familiar with the  $\Gamma$  function:

$$[4e] \quad n! = \Gamma(n + 1), \quad (n)_k = \Gamma(n + 1)/\Gamma(n - k + 1), \\ \langle n \rangle_k = \Gamma(n + k)/\Gamma(n).$$

Besides, for complex  $z$  (and  $k$  integer  $\geq 0$ ),  $(z)_k$  and  $\langle z \rangle_k$  still make sense:

$$[4f] \quad (z)_k := z(z - 1) \dots (z - k + 1), \quad (z)_0 := 1$$

$$[4g] \quad \langle z \rangle_k := z(z + 1) \dots (z + k - 1), \quad \langle z \rangle_0 := 1,$$

and hence they can be considered as polynomials of degree  $k$  in the indeterminate  $z$ .

**THEOREM A.** *The number of  $k$ -arrangements of  $N$ ,  $1 \leq k \leq n = |N|$ , equals:*

$$[4h] \quad |\mathfrak{A}_k(N)| = (n)_k = n(n-1)\dots(n-k+1).$$

■ There are evidently  $n$  choices possible for the image  $\alpha(1)$  of 1 ( $\in [k]$ ); after the choice of  $\alpha(1)$  is made, there are left only  $(n-1)$  possibilities for  $\alpha(2)$ , because  $\alpha$  is injective, so  $\alpha(2) \neq \alpha(1)$ ; similarly, there are left for  $\alpha(3)$  only  $(n-2)$  possible choices, because  $\alpha(3) \neq \alpha(2)$  and  $\alpha(3) \neq \alpha(1)$ , etc.; finally, for  $\alpha(k)$  there are just  $(n-k+1)$  possible choices left. The number of  $\alpha$  is hence equal to the product of all these numbers of choices. This is equal to  $n(n-1)(n-2)\dots(n-k+1)$ . ■

*Note.* If  $k > n$ , then  $(n)_k = 0$ , and [4h] is still valid.

**DEFINITION B.** *A permutation of a set  $N$  is a bijective map of  $N$  onto itself. We denote the set of permutations of  $N$  by  $\mathfrak{S}(N)$ .*

**THEOREM B.** *The number of permutations of  $N$ ,  $|N|=n \geq 1$ , equals  $n!$*

■ One can argue as in the proof of Theorem A above. One may also observe that there is a bijection between  $\mathfrak{S}(N)$  and  $\mathfrak{A}_n(N)$ . ■

### 1.5. COMBINATIONS (WITHOUT REPETITIONS) OR BLOCKS

**DEFINITION A.** *A  $k$ -combination  $B$ , or  $k$ -block, of a finite set  $N$  is a nonempty subset of  $k$  elements of  $N$ :  $B \subset N$ ,  $1 \leq k = |B| \leq n = |N|$ . If one does not know in advance whether  $k \geq 1$ , one says rather  $k$ -subset of  $N$  ( $k \geq 0$ ). We denote the set of  $k$ -subsets of  $N$  by  $\mathfrak{P}_k(N)$ .*

A  $k$ -block is also called a *combination of  $k$  to  $k$  of the  $n$  elements of  $N$* . *Pair* and *2-block* are synonymous; similarly, *triple* or *triad* and *3-block*, etc.

Next we show three other ways to specify a  $k$ -subset of  $N$ ,  $|N|=n$ .

**THEOREM A.** *There exists a bijection between  $\mathfrak{P}_k(N)$  and the set of functions  $\varphi: N \rightarrow \{0, 1\}$ , for which the sum of the values equals  $k$ ,  $\sum_{y \in N} \varphi(y) = k$ .*

**THEOREM B.** *There exists a bijection between  $\mathfrak{P}_k(N)$  and the set of solu-*

tions of the equation  $x_1 + x_2 + \cdots + x_n = k$ , for which all  $x_i$  equal 0 or 1.

**THEOREM C.** *Giving a  $B \in \mathfrak{P}_k(N)$  is equivalent to giving a distribution of  $k$  indistinguishable balls in  $n$  distinct boxes, each box containing at most one ball.*

■ For Theorem A it is sufficient to define for each  $B \in \mathfrak{P}_k(N)$  the characteristic function  $\varphi = \varphi_B$  by  $\varphi(y) = 1$  if  $y \in B$  and  $=0$  otherwise. For Theorem B we number the elements of  $N$  from 1 to  $n$ ,  $N = \{y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n\}$ ; for each  $B \in \mathfrak{P}_k(N)$  we define  $x_i = x_i(B)$  by  $x_i = 1$  if  $y_i \in B$  and  $=0$  otherwise. Finally, for Theorem C each box is associated with a point  $y \in N$ ; to every  $B \in \mathfrak{P}_k(N)$  we associate the following distribution: the box associated with  $y$  contains a ball if  $y \in B$  and no ball if  $y \notin B$ . ■

**THEOREM D.** *The number of  $k$ -subsets of  $N$ ,  $0 \leq k \leq n = |N|$ , denoted by  $\binom{n}{k}$ , equals:*

$$\begin{aligned} [5a] \quad \binom{n}{k} &:= |\mathfrak{P}_k(N)| \stackrel{(*)}{=} \frac{(n)_k}{k!} = \frac{n(n-1)\dots(n-k+1)}{k!} \\ &= \frac{n!}{k!(n-k)!} = \binom{n}{n-k}. \end{aligned}$$

We will adopt the notation  $\binom{n}{k}$ , used almost in this form by Euler, and fixed by Raabe, with the exclusion of all other notations, as this notation is used in the great majority of the present literature, and its use is even so still increasing. This symbol has all the qualities of a good notation: economical (no new letters introduced), expressive (it is very close in appearance to the explicit value  $\frac{(n)_k}{k!}$ ), typical (no risk of being confused with others), and beautiful. In certain cases, one might prefer  $(a, b)$  instead of  $\binom{a+b}{a}$  (see pp. 27 and 28), so that  $(a, b) = (b, a)$  is perfectly symmetric in  $a$  and  $b$ . We recall anyway the ‘French’ notation  $C_n^k$ , and the ‘English’ notation  $"C_k$ .

■ We prove equality (\*); the others are immediate consequences. If  $k=0$ ,  $(n)_0/0!=1$  [4b, c] (p. 6), and  $|\mathfrak{P}_k(N)|=1$  because  $\mathfrak{P}_k(N)$  contains only the empty subset of  $N$ . Let us suppose  $k \geq 1$ . With every arrangement  $\alpha \in \mathfrak{A}_k(N)$ , we associate  $B=f(\alpha)=\{\alpha(1), \alpha(2), \dots, \alpha(k)\} \in \mathfrak{P}_k(N)$  (p. 7).  $f$  is a map from  $\mathfrak{A}_k(N)$  into  $\mathfrak{P}_k(N)$  such that for all  $B \in \mathfrak{P}_k(N)$  we have:

$$[5b] \quad |f^{-1}(B)| = k!,$$

since there are  $k!$  possible numberings of  $B$  (=the number of  $k$ -arrangements of  $B$ ). Now the set of pre-images  $f^{-1}(B)$ , which are mutually disjoint, covers  $\mathfrak{P}_k(N)$  entirely as  $B$  runs through  $\mathfrak{A}_k(N)$ . Hence, the number of elements of  $\mathfrak{A}_k(N)$  equals the sum of all  $|f^{-1}(B)|$ , where  $B \in \mathfrak{P}_k(N)$ , which is [5c (\*)]. Hence, by [4h] (p. 7) for equality (\*\*), and by [5b] for (\*\*\*):

$$[5c] \quad (n)_k^{(**)} = |\mathfrak{A}_k(N)| \stackrel{(*)}{=} \sum_B |f^{-1}(B)| \stackrel{(***)}{=} k! \cdot |\mathfrak{P}_k(N)|;$$

hence  $|\mathfrak{P}_k(N)|=(n)_k/k!$ . ■

The argument we just have used is sometimes called the ‘shepherd’s principle’: for counting the number of sheep in a flock, just count the legs and divide by 4.

**DEFINITION B.** *The integers  $\binom{n}{k}$  are called binomial coefficients.*

We will see the justification of this name on p. 12.

**DEFINITION C.** *The double sequence  $\binom{n}{k}$  which is defined by [5a] for  $(n, k) \in N^2$  (and equal to 0 for  $k > n$ ) will be defined from now on also for  $(x, y) \in C^2$  in the following way:*

$$[5d] \quad \binom{x}{y} := \begin{cases} \frac{(x)_y}{y!} & \text{if } x \in C, y \in N \\ 0 & \text{if } x \in C, y \notin N \end{cases}$$

where  $(x)_k := x(x-1)\dots(x-k+1)$  for any  $k \in N$ ,  $(x)_0 = 1$ .

We will constantly use this convention in the sequel.

**THEOREM E.** *The binomial coefficients satisfy the following recurrence relations:*

$$[5e] \quad \binom{n}{k} = \binom{n-1}{k-1} + \binom{n-1}{k}; \quad k, n \geq 1.$$

$$[5f] \quad \binom{n}{k} = \frac{n}{k} \binom{n-1}{k-1} = \frac{n-k+1}{k} \binom{n}{k-1}; \quad k, n \geq 1.$$

$$[5g] \quad \binom{n+1}{k+1} = \binom{k}{k} + \binom{k+1}{k} + \cdots + \binom{n}{k} = \sum_{l=k}^n \binom{l}{k}; \quad k, n \geq 0.$$

$$\begin{aligned} [5h] \quad \binom{n-1}{k} &= \binom{n}{k} - \binom{n}{k-1} + \cdots + (-1)^k \binom{n}{0} = \\ &= \sum_{j=0}^k (-1)^{k-j} \binom{n}{j}. \end{aligned}$$

If  $n$  is replaced by a real or complex number  $z$  ( $z$  can also play the role of an indeterminate variable), then  $[5e, f, h]$  still hold, and we have instead of  $[5g]$ , for each integer  $s \geq 0$ :

$$[5g'] \quad \binom{z+1}{k+1} = \binom{z}{k} + \binom{z-1}{k} + \cdots + \binom{z-s}{k} + \binom{z-s}{k+1}.$$

■  $[5e, f]$  can be verified by substituting the values  $[5a, d]$  for the binomial coefficients;  $[5g']$ , hence  $[5g]$ , follows by applying  $[5e]$  to each of the terms of the sum  $\sum_{i=0}^s \binom{z+1-i}{k+1}$  followed by the evident simplification. For  $[5h]$ , an analogous method works (a generalization is found at the end of Exercise 30, p. 169).

As an example, we will also give combinatorial proofs of  $[5e, f, g]$ .

For  $[5e]$ , let us choose a point  $x \in N$ ,  $|N|=n$ , and let  $\mathcal{S}$  and  $\mathcal{T}$  respectively be the system of  $k$ -blocks of  $N$  that contain or not contain respectively the point  $x$ . Clearly,  $\mathcal{S} \cap \mathcal{T} = \emptyset$ , so:

$$[5i] \quad |\mathfrak{P}_k(N)| = |\mathcal{S}| + |\mathcal{T}|.$$

Now every  $B \in \mathcal{S}$  corresponds to exactly one  $B' \in \mathfrak{P}(N \setminus \{x\})$ , namely  $B \setminus \{x\}$ , hence:

$$[5j] \quad |\mathcal{S}| = |\mathfrak{P}_{k-1}(N \setminus \{x\})| = \binom{n-1}{k-1}.$$

Also,  $\mathcal{T} = \mathfrak{P}_k(N - \{x\})$ ; hence:

$$[5k] \quad |\mathcal{T}| = \binom{n-1}{k}.$$

Finally, [5i, j, k] imply [5e].

For [5f], let us take the interpretation of  $\binom{n}{k}$  as the number of distributions of balls in boxes (Theorem C, p. 8). We form all the  $\binom{n}{k}$  distributions *successively*. Then we need in total  $k\binom{n}{k}$  balls. The  $n$  boxes play a symmetric role, so every box receives  $(1/n) \cdot k\binom{n}{k}$  times a ball.

Now, every distribution that gives a ball to a given box, corresponds to exactly one distribution of  $(k-1)$  balls in the remaining  $(n-1)$  boxes.

These are  $\binom{n-1}{k-1}$  in number, so as result we find that  $(k/n)\binom{n}{k} = \binom{n-1}{k-1}$ .

For [5g], we number the elements of  $N$ ,  $N := \{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n\}$ . We put for  $i=1, 2, \dots$ :

$$\mathcal{S}_i := \{B \mid B \in \mathfrak{P}_k(N); \quad x_1, x_2, \dots, x_{i-1} \notin B; \quad x_i \in B\}.$$

Evidently, each  $B \in \mathfrak{P}_k(N)$  belongs to exactly one  $\mathcal{S}_i$ ,  $i \in [n]$ . So:

$$[5l] \quad \binom{n}{k} = |\mathcal{S}_1| + |\mathcal{S}_2| + \dots$$

Now, every  $B \in \mathcal{S}_i$  corresponds to exactly one:

$$\text{Hence: } C := B \setminus \{x_i\} \in \mathfrak{P}_{k-1}(N \setminus \{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_i\}).$$

$$[5m] \quad |\mathcal{S}_i| = |\mathfrak{P}_{k-1}(N \setminus \{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_i\})| = \binom{n-i}{k-1},$$

and we see that [5m, l] imply [5g]. ■

*Pascal triangle* (or arithmetical triangle) is the name for the infinite table, which is obtained by placing each number  $\binom{n}{k}$  at the intersection of the  $n$ -th row and the  $k$ -th column,  $k, n \geq 0$  (Figure 1). The numerical computation of the first values can be quickly done, by using [5e] and the initial values  $\binom{0}{k} = 0$ , except for  $\binom{0}{0} = 1$ .

Each recurrence relation [5e, f, g] can be advantageously visualized by a *diagram* (Figures 2a, b, c): in every Pascal triangle represented by the

$n \backslash k$	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	...
0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	:
1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	
2	1	2	1	0	0	0	0	
3	1	3	3	1	0	0	0	
4	1	4	6	4	1	0	0	
5	1	5	10	10	5	1	0	
:								

Fig. 1.

shaded area, the heavy dots represent the pairs  $(n, k)$  such that the corresponding  $\binom{n}{k}$  are related by a linear recurrence relation (that is, with

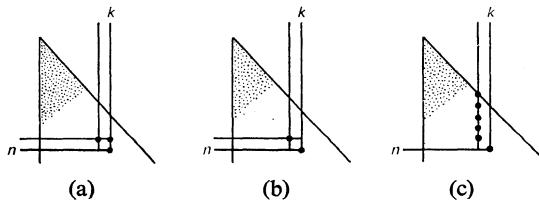


Fig. 2.

coefficients that are possibly not constant with respect to  $n$  and  $k$ , as, for example [5f]). Diagrams 2a, b, c are said to be of the second, first and  $(n-k+1)$ -st order, respectively, as their associated recurrence relations. A table of binomial coefficients is presented on p. 306.

### 1.6. BINOMIAL IDENTITY

**THEOREM A.** (Newton binomial formula, or binomial identity). *If  $x$  and  $y$  are commuting elements ( $\Leftrightarrow xy = yx$ ) of a ring, then we have for each integer  $n \geq 0$ :*

$$\begin{aligned}
 [6a] \quad (x+y)^n &= \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} x^k y^{n-k} \\
 &= x^n + \binom{n}{1} x^{n-1} y + \binom{n}{2} x^{n-2} y^2 + \dots
 \end{aligned}$$

*Note.* If the ring does not have an identity, we must interpret  $x^0y^n$  and  $x^ny^0$  as  $y^n$  and  $x^n$ , respectively. We can also consider [6a] as an identity between polynomials of the *indeterminates*  $x$  and  $y$ .

■ Let us examine the coefficients  $c_{k,l}$  of the expansion of:

$$[6b] \quad (x+y)^n = P_1 P_2 \dots P_n = \sum_{k,l} c_{k,l} x^k y^l, \\ P_i := x + y, \quad i \in [n].$$

The term  $x^k y^l$  is obtained by choosing  $k$  of the  $n$  factors  $P_i$ ,  $i \in [n]$ , in the sense that one multiplies the terms ‘ $x$ ’ of these factors by the terms ‘ $y$ ’ of the remaining  $(n-k)$  factors. So  $l=n-k$ . Hence the coefficient  $c_k := c_{k,n-k}$  equals the number of different choices of the  $k$  factors  $P_i$  among the  $n$ , hence equals  $\binom{n}{k}$  (Theorem D, p. 8). ■

For instance, if  $x=y=1$ , then we have  $\sum_k \binom{n}{k} = 2^n$  and thus we find again the result of p. 5: the total number of subsets of  $N$  equals  $2^n$ .

If  $x=-1$ ,  $y=1$  we obtain  $\sum_k (-1)^k \binom{n}{k} = 0$ , in other words: in  $N$  there are just as many ‘even’ as ‘odd’ subsets (see also p. 5).

Now we evaluate the  $n$ -th power of the difference operator.

**THEOREM B.** *Let  $\Delta$  be the difference operator, which assigns to every function  $f \in A^{\mathbb{R}}$ , defined on the real numbers, and with values in a ring  $A$ , the function  $g = \Delta f$ , which is defined by  $g(x) = f(x+1) - f(x)$ ,  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ . For each integer  $n \geq 2$ , we define  $\Delta^n f := \Delta(\Delta^{n-1} f)$ , and we denote  $\Delta^n f(x)$  instead of  $(\Delta^n f)(x)$ . Then we have:*

$$[6c] \quad \Delta^n f(x) = \sum_{k=0}^n (-1)^{n-k} \binom{n}{k} f(x+k), \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \dots.$$

■ Let  $E$  be the *translation* operator defined by  $Ef(x) := f(x+1)$ , and  $I$  the identity operator,  $If = f$ . Clearly,  $\Delta = E - I$ . Now  $E$  and  $I$  commute in the ring of operators acting on  $A^{\mathbb{R}}$ . Hence, defining  $E^k = E(E^{k-1}) = E(E(E^{k-2})) = \dots$ , we have, by [6a]:

$$\Delta^n = (E - I)^n = \sum_{k=0}^n (-1)^{n-k} \binom{n}{k} E^k$$

(since  $I^{n-k} = I$ ), from which [6c] follows, as  $E^k f(x) = f(x+k)$ . ■

In the case of a sequence  $u_m$ ,  $m \in N$ , [6c] implies:

$$[6d] \quad \Delta^n u_m = \sum_{k=0}^n (-1)^{n-k} \binom{n}{k} u_{m+k};$$

where  $\Delta u_m = u_{m+1} - u_m$ ,  $\Delta^2 u_m = \Delta(\Delta u_m) = u_{m+2} - 2u_{m+1} + u_m$ , etc.  $\Delta u_m \geq 0$ , for all  $m$ , means that  $u_m$  is increasing,  $\Delta^2 u_m \geq 0$  for all  $m$ , means that  $u_m$  is convex.

If  $\Delta$  operates on one of the variables of a function of *several* variables, one can place a dot over the variable concerned to indicate this. So we write:

$$[6e] \quad \begin{aligned} \Delta f(\dot{u}, v) &:= f(u+1, v) - f(u, v), \\ \Delta f(u, \dot{v}) &:= f(u, v+1) - f(u, v). \end{aligned}$$

*Examples.* (1)  $\Delta^k \dot{0}^n$  means the value of  $\Delta^k \dot{x}^n$  in the point  $x=0$ , and then [6c] gives:

$$[6f] \quad \Delta^k \dot{0}^n = \sum_{j=0}^n (-1)^j \binom{k}{j} (k-j)^n,$$

which are, up to a coefficient  $k!$ , the *Stirling numbers of the second kind* (cf. p. 204).

$$(2) \quad \Delta^n \frac{1}{(\dot{x})_k} = (-1)^n \frac{\langle k \rangle_n}{(x+n)_{k+n}} \quad (\text{by induction}).$$

We cite also the following interesting arithmetical property of binomial coefficients:

**THEOREM C.** *For each prime number  $p$ , we have:*

$$[6g] \quad \binom{p}{k} \equiv 0 \pmod{p}, \quad \text{except} \quad \binom{p}{0} = \binom{p}{p} = 1.$$

*In other words:*

$$[6g'] \quad (1+x)^p \equiv 1 + x^p \pmod{p},$$

*which means that these two polynomials have the same coefficients in  $\mathbf{Z}/p\mathbf{Z}$ .* (Exercise 17, p. 78 gives many other arithmetical properties of the binomial coefficients).

■ As  $\binom{p}{k} = \frac{(p)_k}{k!}$  is an integer,  $k!$  divides  $(p)_k = p(p-1)_{k-1}$ , and it is relatively prime with respect to  $p$  if  $1 \leq k \leq p-1$ ; hence it divides  $(p-1)_{k-1}$  according to the theorem of Gauss. Thus,  $(p-1)_{k-1}/k!$  is an integer  $h > 0$ , hence  $\binom{p}{k} = ph \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$ . ■

### 1.7. COMBINATIONS WITH REPETITIONS

**DEFINITION.** A  $p$ -combination with repetition  $T$ , or unordered  $p$ -selection, or  $p$ -CR of a finite set  $N$ , is a list of  $p$  elements, all taken from  $N$ , repetitions allowed, but the order in the list not taken into account. We denote the set of  $p$ -CR of  $N$  by  $\mathfrak{Q}_p(N)$ .

For example,  $\{a, b, a, b, b\}$  and  $\{b, b, b, a, a\}$  are identical 5-CR of  $\{a, b, c\}$ . Each  $k$ -block of  $N$  can be considered as a  $k$ -CR of  $N$ .

**THEOREM A.** There exists a bijection between  $\mathfrak{Q}_p(N)$  and the set of functions  $\psi: N \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  for which the sum of the values  $p$  equals  $\sum_{y \in N} \psi(y)$ .

**THEOREM B.** There is a bijection between  $\mathfrak{Q}_p(N)$  and the set of integer solutions, consisting of integers  $\geq 0$ , of the equation:

$$[7a] \quad x_1 + x_2 + \cdots + x_n = p.$$

Each solution of [7a] is also called ‘composition of  $p$  into  $n$  summands’ (see Exercise 23, p. 123).

**THEOREM C.** To each  $T \in \mathfrak{Q}_p(N)$  corresponds exactly one distribution of  $p$  indistinguishable balls into  $n$  distinct boxes.

The reasoning is the same as for Theorems A, B, and C, on p. 7.

■ For Theorem A, define for each  $T \in \mathfrak{Q}_p(N)$  the function  $\psi = \psi_T \in \mathbb{N}^N$  by  $\psi(y) =$  the number of times that  $y$  appears in  $T$ . For Theorem B,  $N := \{y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n\}$  and  $x_i := \psi_T(y_i)$ . For Theorem C identify each point  $y \in N$  with a box. ■

**THEOREM D.** The number of  $p$ -CR of a finite set  $N, |N| = n \geq 1, p \geq 0$  equals

the binomial coefficient ‘with repetition’  $\binom{n}{p}$ , defined by:

$$[7b] \quad |\mathfrak{Q}_p(N)| = \binom{n}{p} := \frac{\langle n \rangle_p}{p!} = \binom{n+p-1}{p} = (p, n-1).$$

■ We give two proofs of this theorem.

(I) We partition the set of solutions of [7a] (we denote the number of these solutions by  $T(n, p)$ ) into two kinds. First, the solutions with  $x_1=0$ ; there are evidently  $T(n-1, p)$  of them. Next, the solutions for which  $x_1 \geq 1$ ; if for these we put  $x'_1 = x_1 - 1 \geq 0$ , these solutions correspond each to exactly one solution of  $x'_1 + x_2 + \dots + x_n = p-1$ , of which there are  $T(n, p-1)$ . Finally,

$$[7c] \quad T(n, p) = T(n-1, p) + T(n, p-1).$$

To this relation we still must add the following *initial conditions*, which follow from [7a]:

$$[7d] \quad T(n, 0) = 1, \quad T(1, p) = 1.$$

Now the double sequence  $T(n, p)$  is completely determined. As a matter of fact, the sequence  $W(n, p) := \binom{n+p-1}{p}$  evidently satisfies the recurrence relation [7c] as well as the ‘boundary condition’ [7d]. Hence  $T(n, p) = W(n, p)$ .

(II) We represent the  $n$  boxes  $y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n$  of Theorem C in a row, side by side. We number the separations between the boxes by  $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_{n-1}$ , going from left to right (Figure 3). Let now  $N := \{y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n\}$  be the set of these boxes and let  $Z := [n+p-1] = \{1, 2, \dots, n+p-1\}$ . Now we define the map  $f$  from  $\mathfrak{Q}_p(N)$  into  $\mathfrak{P}_{n-1}(Z)$  as follows: with every distribution of balls associated with  $T \in \mathfrak{Q}_p(N)$ , we associate the  $(n-1)$ -block

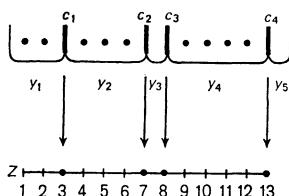


Fig. 3.  $n=5, p=9$ .

$B = f(T)$  of  $Z$ :

$$B := \{\varphi(c_1), \varphi(c_2), \dots, \varphi(c_{n-1})\},$$

where  $\varphi(c_i) - 1$  stands for the number of separations *and* balls to the left of the separation  $c_i$ . Clearly,  $f$  is bijective; hence the result. ■

The binomial coefficient ‘with repetition’  $\binom{n}{p}$ , also called a *figured number*, can evidently be expressed as a function of the ‘symmetrical binomial coefficients’  $(a, b) = \binom{a+b}{b}$  of p. 8; we obtain:

$$\binom{n}{p} = (n-1, p) = (p, n-1).$$

*Example.* We want to determine the number of monomials in the most general polynomial  $P$  of degree  $k$  and  $n$  indeterminates  $t_1, t_2, \dots, t_n$ . For  $n=1$ ,  $P = a_0 + a_1 t + \dots + a_k t^k$  and there are  $(k+1)$  monomials. In the general case, we observe that the list of exponents  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots$  of a monomial  $a t_1^{\alpha_1} t_2^{\alpha_2} \dots t_n^{\alpha_n}$  corresponds to a solution with non-negative integers  $\alpha_i \geq 0$ , of the inequality  $\alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + \dots + \alpha_n \leq k$ . This is again equivalent with a solution in nonnegative integers of  $\alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + \dots + \alpha_n + \alpha_{n+1} = k$ ,  $\alpha_i \in \mathbb{N}$ ,  $i \in [n+1]$ . So by [7a, b] the number of solutions is equal to  $\binom{(n+1)+k-1}{k} = \binom{n+k}{k}$ , which is the number we sought for. (See also Exercise 18, p. 79.)

*Some properties of the binomial coefficients ‘with repetition’.* Let us put, as in [5d] p. 9, for any variable  $x$ :

$$\binom{x}{k} := \binom{x+k-1}{k} = \frac{\langle x \rangle_k}{k!} = \frac{x(x+1)\dots(x+k-1)}{k!}.$$

Then we have properties for  $\binom{x}{k}$  very analogous to those of Theorem E p. 10. For example:

$$[7e] \quad \binom{x}{k} = \binom{x}{k-1} + \binom{x-1}{k}$$

$$[7f] \quad \binom{x}{k} = \frac{x}{k} \binom{x+1}{k-1} = \frac{x+k-1}{k} \binom{x}{k-1}$$

$$[7g] \quad \binom{x+1}{k} = \sum_{j=0}^k \binom{x}{j}$$

The proofs, all very easy, are left to the reader.

*Abelian words.* One can also give a more abstract definition of the concept of combination with repetitions, which is important to know. Let  $\mathfrak{X}$  be a nonempty set, the *alphabet*: we denote the set of finite sequences  $f$  of elements of  $\mathfrak{X}$  (also called *letters*) by  $\mathfrak{X}^*$ . We denote  $f = (x_{i_k})_{k \in [r]} = (x_{i_1}, x_{i_2}, \dots, x_{i_r})$ , where  $r$  is a variable integer  $\geq 1$ . Such a sequence  $f$  is also called an *r-arrangement with repetition of  $\mathfrak{X}$* . Hence, when  $\mathfrak{X}^{[r]}$  has the meaning given on p. 4, and when we make the convention to let the empty set  $\emptyset$ , denoted by 1, also belong to  $\mathfrak{X}^*$ , then we have:

$$\mathfrak{X}^* := \{1\} \cup \left( \bigcup_{r \geq 1} \mathfrak{X}^{[r]} \right).$$

The sequence  $f = (x_{i_1}, x_{i_2}, \dots, x_{i_r})$  will be identified with the *monomial* or *word*  $x_{i_1}x_{i_2}\dots x_{i_r}$ . In this form, the integer  $r$  is called the *degree* of the monomial or the *length* of the word  $f$ . By definition, the length of 1 is 0. In the case  $\mathfrak{X}$  is finite,  $\mathfrak{X} := \{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n\}$ , we can denote by  $a_i$  the number of times that the letter  $x_i$  occurs in the word  $f$ ,  $a_i \geq 0$ ,  $i \in [n]$ ; in that case we often say that  $f$  has the *specification*  $(a_1, a_2, a_3, \dots, a_n)$ . For example, for  $\mathfrak{X} := \{x, y\}$ ,  $\mathfrak{X}^{[3]}$  consists of the following 8 words:  $xxx, xxy, xyx, yxx, xyy, yxy, yyx, yyy$ . These can also be written:  $x^3, x^2y, xyx, yx^2, xy^2, yxy, y^2x, y^3$ . The specifications are then  $(3, 0)$ ,  $(2, 1)$ ,  $(2, 1)$ ,  $(1, 2)$ ,  $(1, 2)$ ,  $(1, 2)$ ,  $(0, 3)$ , respectively.

The set  $\mathfrak{X}^*$  is equipped with an associative composition law, the *product by juxtaposition*, which associates with two words  $f = x_{i_1}x_{i_2}\dots x_{i_r}$  and  $g = x_{j_1}x_{j_2}\dots x_{j_s}$ , the *product word*  $fg = x_{k_1}x_{k_2}\dots x_{k_{r+s}}$ , where  $x_{k_t} = x_{i_t}$  if  $t \leq r$ , and  $x_{k_t} = x_{j_{t-r}}$  if  $t > r$ . One also says that  $fg$  is the *concatenation* of  $f$  and  $g$ . This composition law is associative, and has the empty word 1 as unit element. In this way  $\mathfrak{X}^*$  becomes a monoid (that is to say a set with an associative multiplication, and a unit element), which is called the *free monoid generated by  $\mathfrak{X}$* . Furthermore, when we denote the set of words of length  $n$  by  $\mathfrak{X}^{[n]}$ , we identify  $\mathfrak{X}^{[1]}$  with  $\mathfrak{X}$ , so  $\mathfrak{X} \subset \mathfrak{X}^*$ .

We introduce an equivalence relation on  $\mathfrak{X}^*$ , by defining two words  $f$  and  $g$  to be equivalent if and only if they consist of the same letters, *up to order, but with the same number of repetitions*. The equivalence class that contains  $f$ , is called the *abelian class* of  $f$ , or also the *abelian word*  $f$ . There is a one-to-one correspondence between the abelian classes and the maps  $\psi$  from  $\mathfrak{X}$  into  $\mathbb{N}$  that are everywhere zero except for a finite number of points. In fact, if we index the set  $E$  of the  $y \in \mathfrak{X}$  where  $\psi(y) > 0$ ,

in such a way that  $E = \{y_1, y_2, \dots, y_l\}$ , then we can bijectively associate with  $\psi$  the abelian class of the word:

$$y_1^{\psi(y_1)} y_2^{\psi(y_2)} \dots y_l^{\psi(y_l)} := \underbrace{y_1 y_1 \dots}_{\psi(y_1) \text{ times}} \cdot \underbrace{y_2 y_2 \dots}_{\psi(y_2) \text{ times}} \cdot \underbrace{y_l y_l \dots}_{\psi(y_l) \text{ times}}.$$

If  $\mathfrak{X}$  is finite,  $\mathfrak{X} = N$ , it is clear that an abelian word is just a combination with repetitions, of  $N$  (Definition, p. 15).

The set of abelian words  $\mathfrak{X}^*$  can also be made into a monoid, when we consider it as a part of  $N^*$ ; this last set is equipped with the usual addition of functions  $\psi$ . In this way we define the *free abelian monoid* generated by  $\mathfrak{X}$ .

### 1.8. SUBSETS OF $[n]$ , RANDOM WALK

Let  $N$  be a finite totally ordered set (Definition D, p. 59), with  $n$  elements, which we identify with  $[n] := \{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ . We are going to give several interpretations to the specification of a subset  $P \subset [n]$ , of cardinal  $p (= |P|)$ . We introduce moreover:

$$q := |\bar{P}| = |\complement P| = n - p.$$

(1) To give a  $P \subset [n]$  is equivalent to giving an integer-valued sequence  $x(t)$ , defined by:

$$[8a] \quad x(t) - x(t-1) = \begin{cases} +1 & \text{if } t \in P \\ -1 & \text{if } t \notin P \end{cases}; \quad t \in [n], \quad x(0) := 0.$$

One can represent  $x(t)$  by a broken line, which is straight between the points with coordinates  $(t, x(t))$ . Thus, Figure 4 represents the  $x(t)$  associated with the block:

$$[8b] \quad P = \{3, 5, 6, 7, 8, 10, 11, 12\} \subset [12].$$

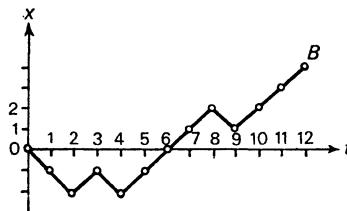


Fig. 4.

Evidently,  $p+q=n$  and  $x(n)=(x(n)-x(n-1))+\cdots+(x(2)-x(1))+x(1)=p-q$ ; hence:

$$[8c] \quad p = \frac{1}{2}(n + x(n)), \quad q = \frac{1}{2}(n - x(n)).$$

This way of determining  $P \subset [n]$  suggests a process, if we imagine that  $t$  represents successive instants  $1, 2, \dots, n$ .

(2) Giving  $P \subset [n]$  is also equivalent to giving the results of a game of heads or tails, played with  $n$  throws of a coin, if we agree that

$$x(t) - x(t-1) = 1 \Leftrightarrow \text{the } t\text{-th throw is tails} \quad (t \in [n]).$$

The numbers  $p, q$  of [8c] are then the numbers of *tails* and *heads* obtained in the course of the game, respectively. Because of this interpretation, the sequence  $x(t)$  is often called *random walk*: it translates the (stochastic) movements by jumps of  $\pm 1$  of a moving point on the  $x$ -axis, whose motion occurs only at the times  $t=1, 2, \dots, n$  (a kind of Brownian movement on a line).

Giving  $P \subset [n]$  is also equivalent to giving the successive results of drawing balls from a vase, which contains  $p$  black and  $q$  white balls, and agreeing that  $x(t) - x(t-1) = 1 \Leftrightarrow$  the  $t$ -th ball drawn is black ( $t \in [n]$ ).

(3) One often prefers in combinatorial analysis to represent  $P \subset [n]$  by a polygonal line  $\mathcal{C}$  which joins the origin  $(0, 0)$  with the point  $B$  with coordinates  $(p, q)$  such that the horizontal sides, having lengths one and also called *horizontal steps*, correspond to the points of  $p$ , and the vertical sides correspond to the points of the complement of  $p$ . Thus, Figure 5 represents the subset  $p$  defined by [8b]. Such a polygonal line may be called '*minimal path*' joining  $O$  to  $B$  (of length  $n=p+q$ ). (In fact, there does not exist a shorter path of length less than  $n$ , which joins  $O$  to  $B$ ,

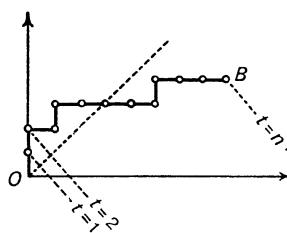


Fig. 5.

consisting of unit length straight sections bounded by points with integer coordinates.)

(4) Finally, giving  $P \subset [n]$  is also equivalent to giving a *word*  $f$  with two letters  $a$  and  $b$ , of length  $n$ , where the letter  $a$  occurs  $p$  times, and the letter  $b$  occurs  $q$  times,  $p = |P|$  (see p. 18). Thus, the word representing  $P$  of [8b] is  $bbabaaaabaaa$ .

Now we treat two examples of enumerations in  $[n]$ .

**THEOREM A.** ([Gergonne, 1812], [Muir, 1901]). Let  $f_l(n, p)$  be the number of  $p$ -blocks  $P \subset [n]$  with the following property: between two arbitrary points of  $P$  are at least  $l$  ( $\geq 0$ ) points of  $[n]$  which do not belong to  $P$ . Then:

$$[8d] \quad f_l(n, p) = \binom{n - (p-1)l}{p}.$$

■ Let  $P$  be  $\{i_1, i_2, \dots, i_p\}$ ,  $1 \leq i_1 < i_2 < \dots < i_p \leq n$  and  $y_k := i_k - i_{k-1} - 1$ ,  $y_1 := i_1 - 1$ ,  $y_{p+1} := n - i_p$ . Giving  $P$  is equivalent to giving a solution with integers  $y_i$  of:

$$[8e] \quad \begin{aligned} y_1 + y_2 + \cdots + y_p + y_{p+1} &= n - p \\ y_k &\geq l \quad \text{if } 2 \leq k \leq p, \quad y_1 \quad \text{and} \quad y_{p+1} \geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

We put  $z_k := y_k - l$  if  $2 \leq k \leq p$ , and  $z_1 := y_1$ ,  $z_{p+1} := y_{p+1}$ . Then  $z_i \geq 0$ , for every  $i \in [p+1]$  and [8e] is equivalent to:

$$[8f] \quad z_1 + z_2 + \cdots + z_p + z_{p+1} = n - p - (p-1)l,$$

which has  $\binom{n-(p-1)l}{p}$  solutions, by Theorems B and D, of pp. 15. ■

Observe that  $l = -1$  recovers [7b] p. 16...!

(For other problems concerning the blocks of  $[n]$ , the reader is referred to [\*David, Barton, 1962], pp. 85–101, [Abramson, 1964, 1965], [Abramson, Moser, 1960, 1969], [Church, Gould, 1967], [Kaplansky, 1943, 1945], [(René) Lagrange, 1963], [Mood, 1940].)

**THEOREM B (of André).** Let  $p$  and  $q$  be integers, such that  $1 \leq p < q$ ,  $p + q = n$ . The number of minimal paths joining  $O$  with the point  $M(p, q)$  (in the sense of (3) on p. 20) that do not have any point in common with the line  $x = y$ , except the point  $O$ , is  $\frac{q-p}{q+p} \binom{n}{p}$ . In other words, if there is a ballot, for

which candidates  $\mathcal{P}$  and  $\mathcal{Q}$  receive  $p$  and  $q$  votes respectively (so  $\mathcal{Q}$  is elected), then the probability that candidate  $\mathcal{Q}$  has constantly the majority during the counting of the votes is equal to  $(q-p)/(q+p)$ .

This is the famous *ballot problem*, formulated by [Bertrand, 1887]; we give the elegant solution of [André, 1887]. Désiré André, born Lyon, 1840, died Paris, 1917, devoted most of his scientific activity to combinatorial analysis. A list and a summary of his principal works are found in [\*André, 1910]. See also Exercises 11 and 13 pp. 258 and 260.

■ We first formulate the *principle of reflection*, which essentially is due to André. Let be given a line  $D$  parallel to the line  $x=y$ , and two points  $A, B$  lying on the same side of  $D$  (for instance above, as in Figure 6). The number of *minimal* paths (the adjective minimal will be omitted in the sequel) joining  $A$  with  $B$  that intersect or touch  $D$ , is equal to the number

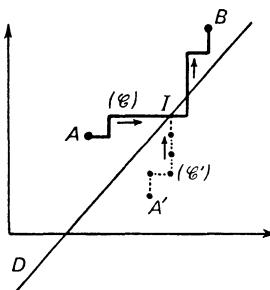


Fig. 6.

of paths joining  $B$  with the point  $A'$  which lies symmetric to  $A$  with respect to  $D$ . In fact, when  $I$  stands for the first point that  $\mathcal{C}$  has in common with  $D$ , going from  $A$  to  $B$ , we can let the path  $\mathcal{C}=(A, I, B)$  correspond to the path  $\mathcal{C}'=(A', I, B)$ , which is just the same as  $\mathcal{C}$  between  $I$  and  $B$ , but with the part  $A'I$  just equal to the image by reflection with respect to  $D$  of the part  $AI$  of  $\mathcal{C}$ .

Now let  $C(A, B)$  be the set of paths joining  $A(x_A, y_A)$  with  $B(x_B, y_B)$ ,  $0 \leq x_A \leq x_B$ ,  $0 \leq y_A \leq y_B$ . Clearly, the number of paths joining  $A$  with  $B$  equals:

$$[8g] \quad |C(A, B)| = \binom{x_B + y_B - x_A - y_A}{x_B - x_A},$$

because giving a path is equivalent to choosing a set of  $(x_B - x_A)$  horizontal segments among  $(x_B + y_B - x_A - y_A)$  places (the duration of the walk).

Let us call a *suitable* path one that satisfies the hypotheses of Theorem B. The number of suitable paths, which is the number of paths joining  $W(0, 1)$  with  $B(p, q)$  without intersecting the line  $x = y$ , is hence, by the principle of reflection equal to  $|C(W, B)| - |C(V, B)|$  (Figure 7); which means, by [8g], equal to  $\binom{p+q-1}{p} - \binom{p+q-1}{p-1}$ , hence the result, after simplifications.

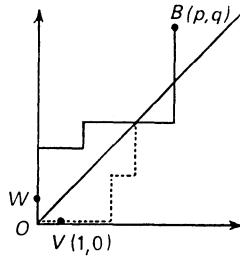


Fig. 7.

The probabilistic interpretation supposes that every path  $\in C(O, B)$  is equally probable, so that the probability we look for is the quotient of the number of suitable paths (which we found already), and the total number of paths joining  $O$  with  $B$ , which is  $|C(O, B)| = \binom{n}{p}$ : we find that the probability is  $(q-p)/(q+p)$ , as announced. Every step represents a vote, the horizontal ones being for  $\mathcal{P}$  and the vertical ones for  $\mathcal{Q}$ . ■ For other problems related to the problem of the ballot, see [Carlitz, Riordan, 1964], [\*Feller, 1968, I], p. 67–97, [Goodman, Narayana, 1967], [Guilbaud, Rosenstiehl, 1960], [Kreweras, 1965, 1966a], [Narayana, 1965, 1967], [Riordan, 1964], [Sen, 1964], [\*Spitzer, 1964], and especially (\*Takács, 1967). The reader should also solve Exercises 20–22 on pp. 81–83.

### 1.9. SUBSETS OF $\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$

Let  $N$  be a finite set of  $n$  points placed on a circle with equal distances between two adjoining points. We identify this set with the set of residue classes modulo  $n$ , denoted by  $[\bar{n}]$ :

$$[9a] \quad N = [\bar{n}] = \mathbf{Z}/n\mathbf{Z} = \{\overline{0}, \overline{1}, \overline{2}, \dots, \overline{n-1}\}.$$

Figure 8 represents the block  $P = \{2, 3, 5, 6, 7, 8, 11, 12, 13\} \in [\overline{16}]$ , with which we can associate the *circular word*  $bbaabaaaabbbaabb$ , where the  $i$ -th term equals  $a$  or  $b$  according to whether  $i \in P$  or  $\notin P$ ,  $0 \leq i \leq n-1$ .

We show now an example of enumeration in  $[\bar{n}]$ .

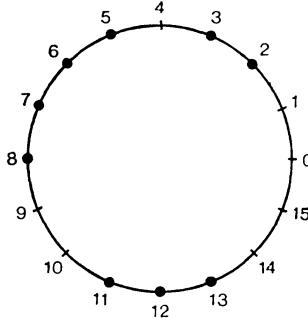


Fig. 8.

**THEOREM ([Kaplansky, 1943]).** Let  $g_l(n, p)$  be the number of  $p$ -blocks  $P \subset [\bar{n}]$  with the following property: between any two points  $v$  and  $w$  of  $P$  (that means on each of the two open arcs  $vw$  of the circle on which we think  $[\bar{n}]$  situated) there are at least  $l$  ( $\geq 0$ ) points of  $[\bar{n}]$  that do not belong to  $P$ . Then:

$$[9b] \quad g_l(n, p) = \frac{n}{n - pl} \binom{n - pl}{p}.$$

■ When  $\mathcal{A}$  stands for the set of the  $P \subset [\bar{n}]$  that satisfy the condition mentioned in the theorem,  $[\bar{l}] := \{0, 1, \dots, \overline{l-1}\}$ , then we let:

$$\mathcal{A}_i := \{P \mid p \in \mathcal{A}, p \cap [\bar{l}] = i\}, \quad i = 0, 1, 2, \dots, l-1.$$

$$\mathcal{A}^* := \{P \mid P \in \mathcal{A}, P \cap [\bar{l}] = \emptyset\}.$$

$\mathcal{A}^*$  and the  $\mathcal{A}_i$  evidently partition  $\mathcal{A}$  into  $l+1$  disjoint subsets. Hence:

$$[9c] \quad g_l(n, p) = |\mathcal{A}| = |\mathcal{A}^*| + \sum_{i=0}^{l-1} |\mathcal{A}_i|.$$

Now, choosing  $P \in \mathcal{A}_i$  is equivalent to choosing on the *straight interval*  $[i+l+1, i+l+2, \dots, i+n-l-1]$  the  $p-1$ -block  $P' := P \setminus \{i\}$  with  $n-2l-1$

elements. Hence, by Theorem A (p. 21), we have:

$$[9d] \quad |\mathcal{A}_i| = f_l(n - 2l - 1, p - 1), \quad 0 \leq i \leq l - 1.$$

Similarly, choosing  $P \in \mathcal{A}^*$  is equivalent to choosing it on the *straight* interval  $[l+1, l+2, \dots, n-1]$  with  $n-l$  elements. Hence:

$$[9e] \quad |\mathcal{A}^*| = f_l(n - l, p).$$

Finally, [9c, d, e] imply, by [8d] (p. 21) for the equality (\*), and with simplifications for (\*\*):

$$\begin{aligned} g_l(n, p) &= lf_l(n - 2l - 1, p - 1) + f_l(n - l, p) = \\ &\stackrel{(*)}{=} l \binom{n - pl - 1}{p - 1} + \binom{n - pl}{p} \stackrel{(**)}{=} \frac{n}{n - pl} \binom{n - pl}{p}. \end{aligned} \quad \blacksquare$$

It would be interesting to give a combinatorial significance of  $g_l(n, p)$  for  $l < 0$ . Also see Exercise 40, p. 173.

### 1.10. DIVISIONS AND PARTITIONS OF A SET; MULTINOMIAL IDENTITY

**DEFINITION A.** Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a finite (ordered) sequence of subsets, distinct or not, empty or not, of a set  $N$ :

$$\mathcal{M} := (A_1, A_2, \dots, A_m), \quad A_i \subset N, \quad i \in [m], \quad m \geq 1.$$

We say that  $\mathcal{M}$  is a division of  $N$  (confusion with partition (Definition C, p. 30) should be avoided), or  $m$ -division if we want to specify of how many subsets it consists, if the union of the  $A_i$ ,  $i \in [m]$  is  $N$ , and if these  $A_i$  are mutually disjoint. We denote:

$$[10a] \quad N = A_1 + A_2 + \cdots + A_m \quad \text{or} \quad N = \sum_{i=1}^m A_i,$$

(notation of [\*Neveu, 1964], p. 3) as one wishes.

For example, with  $N = \{a, b, c, d, e\}$ ,  $A_1 := \emptyset$ ,  $A_2 := \{b, d\}$ ,  $A_3 := \emptyset$ ,  $A_4 := \{a, c, e\}$ , the ordered set  $\mathcal{M} := (A_1, A_2, A_3, A_4)$  is a 4-division of  $N$ . For each division, the nonempty subsets are evidently different and mutually disjoint, and between their cardinalities the following relation exists:

$$[10b] \quad |N| = \sum_{i=1}^m |A_i| = |A_1| + |A_2| + \cdots + |A_m|.$$

Many identities are only the consequence of [10b]: one counts a set in two different ways, which gives a combinatorial proof of the identity which is to be examined.

*Examples.* (1) Let  $E$  be the set of nonempty subsets of  $A := \{1, 2, \dots, m+1\}$ , and let us call  $E_j (\subset E)$  the set of subsets of  $A$  for which the greatest element is  $j (\geq 1)$ . Evidently,  $E = \sum_{j=1}^{m+1} E_j$ . Now,  $|E| = 2^{m+1} - 1$  and  $|E_j| = 2^{j-1}$  (the number of subsets of  $\{1, 2, \dots, j-1\}$ ). Then, by using [10b] we obtain:  $2^{m+1} - 1 = 1 + 2 + 2^2 + \dots + 2^m$ . More generally, for any integers  $x, y, m \geq 1$ , we could prove by a strictly combinatorial argument the well-known identity:

$$x^{m+1} - y^{m+1} = (x - y)(x^m + x^{m-1}y + x^{m-2}y^2 + \dots).$$

(2) Let  $Z = X + Y$  be a division of the set  $Z$ ,  $x := |X| \geq 0$ ,  $y := |Y| \geq 0$ . We denote  $E$  for the set of all  $A \subset Z$  such that  $|A| = n$  ( $E = \mathfrak{P}_n(Z)$ ), and  $E_k$  for the set of all  $B \in E$  such that  $|B \cap X| = k$ . Clearly,  $E = \sum_{k=0}^n E_k$ . Now, from  $|E| = \binom{x+y}{n}$  and  $|E_k| = \binom{x}{k} \binom{y}{n-k}$  follows the Vandermonde convolution (see p. 44):

$$\binom{x+y}{n} = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{x}{k} \binom{y}{n-k}.$$

(3) With  $Z = X + Y$  once again, let  $E$  be the set of functions  $f$  from  $[n]$  into  $Z$ , and let  $E_k$  consist of all  $f$  such that  $|f^{-1}(X)| = k$ . We have  $E = \sum_{k=0}^n E_k$ ,  $|E| = (x+y)^n$ ,  $|E_k| = \binom{n}{k} x^k y^{n-k}$ . Therefore

$$(x+y)^n = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} x^k y^{n-k}.$$

(4) By considering  $E$ , the set of functions  $f$  from  $\{x, y, z\}$  into  $[n+1] = \{1, 2, 3, \dots, n+1\}$  such that  $f(x) < f(z), f(y) < f(z)$ , and the following subsets: (i)  $E_k := \{f \mid f(z) = k+1\}$ , (ii)  $A := \{f \mid f(x) = f(y)\}$ , (iii)  $B := \{f \mid f(x) < f(y)\}$ , (iv)  $C := \{f \mid f(x) > f(y)\}$ , we find  $E = \sum_{k=1}^n E_k = A + B + C$ , i.e., with [10b]:  $|E| = \sum_{k=1}^n k^2 = \binom{n+1}{2} + \binom{n+1}{3} + \binom{n+1}{3} = \frac{1}{6}n(n+1)(2n+1)$ . (See also p. 155 and Exercise 4, p. 220.)

**THEOREM A.** Let  $(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_m)$  be a sequence of  $m$  integers  $\geq 0$  such that:

$$a_1 + a_2 + \dots + a_m = n, \quad m \geq 1, \quad n \geq 0,$$

then the number of divisions  $\mathcal{M}_i = (A_1, A_2, \dots, A_m)$  of  $N$ ,  $|N| = n$ , such that  $|A_i| = a_i$ ,  $i \in [m]$ , also called  $(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_m)$ -divisions, is equal to (note that  $0! = 1$ ):

$$[10c] \quad \frac{n!}{a_1! a_2! \dots a_m!} \quad \text{and can be denoted by} \quad \binom{n}{a_1, a_2, \dots, a_m}$$

or, even better, by:

$$[10c'] \quad (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_m).$$

Until recently one said that  $\mathcal{M}$  was a *permutation with repetition* of  $a_1$  elements of  $N$ ,  $a_2$  elements of  $N$ , etc. Notation [10c'] which we introduce here and whose virtues we wish to recommend now, is not standard yet, but seems to become more and more in use. Anyway, it has the qualities of a good notation (cf. p. 8) and it is hard to imagine a simpler one. Moreover, it has the advantage over [10c] of being *coherent* with the classical notation of the *binomial* coefficients. In fact, if we use [10c] for the case of binomial coefficients, we get the notation  $\binom{n}{k, n-k}$  for  $\binom{n}{k}$ , which is undesirable. On the contrary, it seems good to extend the usual notation for the binomial coefficients in the case of  $\binom{x}{k}$ , with  $x$  a real or complex variable, by the following notation:

$$\begin{aligned} [10c''] \quad \binom{x}{k_1, k_2, \dots, k_j} &:= \frac{(x)_{k_1+k_2+\dots+k_j}}{k_1! k_2! \dots k_j!} = \\ &= \frac{x(x-1)(x-2)\dots(x-k_1-k_2-\dots-k_j+1)}{k_1! k_2! \dots k_j!}, \end{aligned}$$

because in this case, for  $a_1 + a_2 + \dots + a_m = n$ , we have in our notation:

$$(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) = \binom{n}{a_2, a_3, \dots, a_m} = \binom{n}{a_1, a_3, \dots, a_m} = \text{etc.},$$

which harmonizes perfectly with the binomial and multinomial notations. (This fair notation can be found in the *Repertorium* by [\*Pascal, 1910], I, p. 51.)

■ As  $\mathcal{M}$  is ordered, giving  $\mathcal{M}$  means first giving  $A_1$ , then  $A_2$ , then  $A_3$ , then  $A_4$ , etc. Now the number of possible choices for  $A_1 \subset N$ ,  $|N|=n$ ,  $|A_1|=a_1$ , equals  $\binom{n}{a_1}$ , by [5a] (p. 8). Such a choice being made, the number of possible choices for  $A_2 \subset N \setminus A_1$ ,  $|N \setminus A_1|=n-a_1$ ,  $|A_2|=a_2$ , is  $\binom{n-a_1}{a_2}$ , etc. The required number (of the possible  $\mathcal{M}$ ) hence is equal to:

$$\binom{n}{a_1} \binom{n-a_1}{a_2} \cdots \binom{n-a_1-\cdots-a_{m-1}}{a_m},$$

which is equal to [10c] after simplification. ■

The notation [10a] suggests us to write  $U - V$  instead of  $U \setminus V$ , as in [1b] (p. 2), if  $V \subset U$ . In other words, for three subsets  $U$ ,  $V$ ,  $W$  of  $N$ :

$$[10d] \quad W = U - V \Leftrightarrow U = V + W \Leftrightarrow W = U \setminus V \quad \text{and} \quad V \subset U.$$

The following notation also originates from [10a]:

$$[10e] \quad A_1 + A_2 + \cdots + A_l \subset N \Leftrightarrow A_1 \cup \cdots \cup A_l \subset N \quad \text{and} \\ A_i \cap A_j = \emptyset, \quad 1 \leq i < j \leq l.$$

**THEOREM B** (multinomial identity). *If  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_m$  are commuting elements of a ring ( $\Leftrightarrow x_i x_j = x_j x_i$ ,  $1 \leq i < j \leq m$ ), then we have for all integers  $n \geq 0$ :*

$$[10f] \quad \left( \sum_{i=1}^m x_i \right)^n = (x_1 + x_2 + \cdots + x_m)^n = \\ = \sum (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_m) x_1^{a_1} x_2^{a_2} \cdots x_m^{a_m},$$

*the last summation takes place over all  $m$ -tuples  $(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_m)$  of positive or zero integers  $a_i \geq 0$  such that  $a_1 + a_2 + \cdots + a_m = n$ .*

Because of this,

**DEFINITION B.** *The numbers:*

$$(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_m) = \frac{(a_1 + a_2 + \cdots + a_m)!}{a_1! a_2! \cdots a_m!} = \frac{n!}{a_1! a_2! \cdots a_m!}.$$

*are called* multinomial coefficients.

For  $n, m$  fixed, the number of multinomial coefficients equals the number

of solutions of  $a_1 + \dots + a_m = n$ , which is  $\binom{n+m-1}{n}$ , by Theorems B and D (p. 15). A table of the multinomial coefficients can be found on p. 309.

■ We argue as in the proof of Theorem A (p. 12). Let:

$$\begin{aligned} [10g] \quad (x_1 + x_2 + \dots + x_m)^n &= P_1 P_2 \dots P_n \\ &= \sum c_{a_1, a_2, \dots, a_m} x_1^{a_1} x_2^{a_2} \dots x_m^{a_m}, \end{aligned}$$

with  $P_i := x_1 + x_2 + \dots + x_m$ , the summation taking place over all systems of integers  $(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_m)$  that occur as exponents of the terms on the right-hand side of [10g]. Obtaining  $x_1^{a_1} x_2^{a_2} \dots x_m^{a_m}$  in the expansion of the product  $P_1 P_2 \dots$  is equivalent to giving a *division* of the set  $\{P_1, P_2, \dots, P_n\}$  into subsets  $A_1, A_2, \dots, A_m$  such that  $|A_i| = a_i$ ,  $i \in [m]$ . This we do with the understanding that this division corresponds to multiplying the ' $x_1$ ' of the  $a_1$  factors  $P_i \in A_1$  by the ' $x_2$ ' of the  $a_2$  factors  $P_i \in A_2$ , etc. (if  $a_i = 0$ , then one just multiplies by 1). Hence, on one hand:

$$[10h] \quad a_1 + a_2 + \dots + a_m = n, \quad a_i \in \mathbb{N}, \quad i \in [m];$$

on the other hand, the number of terms  $x_1^{a_1} x_2^{a_2} \dots$ , where the  $a_i$  are fixed such that [10h] holds, is equal to  $(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_m)$ , by [10c']. ■

Thus,  $(x_1 + x_2 + \dots + x_m)^2 = \sum_{k=1}^m x_k^2 + 2 \sum_{1 \leq i < j \leq m} x_i x_j$ ; because the solutions of  $a_1 + \dots + a_m = 2$  are of the form: (I)  $a_k = 2$ ,  $a_i = 0$  if  $i \neq k$ , in which case [10c] = 1; (II)  $a_i = a_j = 1$  if  $i \neq j$ ,  $a_l = 0$  if  $l \neq i, j$ , in which case [10c] = 2. In the same manner,  $(x_1 + x_2 + \dots)^3 = \sum x_i^3 + 3 \sum x_i x_j^2 + 6 \sum x_i x_j x_k$ ,  $(x_1 + x_2 + \dots)^4 = \sum x_i^4 + 4 \sum x_i x_j^3 + 6 \sum x_i^2 x_j^2 + 12 \sum x_i x_j x_k^2 + 24 \sum x_i x_j x_k x_l$ . Moreover, the number of  $\sum$ 's in the expansion of  $(x_1 + x_2 + \dots)^n$  is exactly  $p(n)$ , the number of partitions of  $n$ , p. 94. (See also Exercise 28, p. 126, and Exercise 9, p. 158.) Multinomial coefficients enjoy congruence properties, analogous to [6g, g'] p. 14, the proof being very similar:

**THEOREM C.** *For any prime number  $p$  and  $a_1 + a_2 + a_3 + \dots = p$ , we have*

$$(a_1, a_2, a_3, \dots) \equiv 0 \pmod{p},$$

except  $(p, 0, 0, \dots) = (0, p, 0, \dots) = \dots = 1$ .

*In other words, for variables  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_m$ ,*

$$(x_1 + x_2 + \dots + x_m)^p \equiv x_1^p + x_2^p + \dots + x_m^p.$$

**DEFINITION C.** A non-ordered (*finite*) set  $\mathcal{P}$  of  $p$  blocks of  $N$  (=  $p$ -system of  $N$ , cf. p. 3),  $\mathcal{P} \subset \mathfrak{P}'(N)$ , is called a partition of  $N$ , or  $p$ -partition if one wants to specify the number of its blocks, if the union of all blocks of  $\mathcal{P}$  equals  $N$ , and if these blocks are mutually disjoint.

Hence in a *partition*, as opposed to a *division* (1) no ‘subset’ is empty; (2) the ‘subsets’ are not labelled.

Similar to [10a], we denote for such a partition, in order to express the fact that  $B, B' \in \mathcal{P} \Rightarrow B \cap B' = \emptyset$ :

$$N = \sum_{B \in \mathcal{P}} B, \quad \forall B \in \mathcal{P}, \quad |B| \geq 1.$$

Evidently there is a bijection between the set of equivalence relations of  $N$  and the set of partitions of  $N$ : we just associate with every equivalence relation  $\mathcal{E}$  the partition whose blocks are the equivalence classes of  $\mathcal{E}$ .

**THEOREM D.** Let  $f$  be a map of  $M$  into  $N$ ,  $f \in N^M$ . The set of the nonempty pre-images  $f^{-1}(y)$ ,  $y \in N$  (p. 5) constitutes a partition of  $M$ , which is called the partition induced by  $f$  on  $M$ .

This is evident. It follows in particular, for each  $f \in N^M$  that:

$$[10i] \quad |M| = \sum_{y \in N} |f^{-1}(y)|.$$

### 1.11. BOUND VARIABLES

It is well known that a finite sum of  $n$  terms  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$ , real numbers, or, more generally, in a ring, is denoted by  $x_1 + x_2 + \dots + x_n$  (such a way of writing, of course, does not mean at all that  $n \geq 3$ ), or even better:

$$[11a] \quad \sum_{k=1}^n x_k.$$

We generalize this notation. Let  $m$  be an integer  $\geq 1$ , and  $f$  a real-valued function (or, more generally, with values in a ring) defined for all *points* ( $= m$ -tuples)  $c := (c_1, c_2, \dots, c_m)$  of a product set:

$$[11b] \quad E := E_1 \times E_2 \times \dots \times E_m.$$

(Frequently we will have  $E_1 = E_2 = \dots = E_m = N$ .) If  $f$  is only defined on  $\Omega (\subset E)$ , it will be extended to the whole of  $E$  by 0, in most cases. Let us

consider a finite set  $\Gamma \subset E$ . The expression  $S$ , denoted in any of the following four ways:

$$\begin{aligned} [11c] \quad (S =) & \sum_{c \in \Gamma} f(c) = \sum_{c \in \Gamma} f(c) \\ &= \sum_{(c_1, c_2, \dots, c_m) \in \Gamma} f(c_1, c_2, \dots, c_m) \\ &= \sum_{(c_1, c_2, \dots, c_m) \in \Gamma} f(c_1, c_2, \dots, c_m), \end{aligned}$$

equals by definition the finite sum of the values of  $f$  in each point  $c$  of  $\Gamma$ , which is called the *summation set*. If  $\Gamma \cap E = \emptyset$ , we give  $S$  the value 0.

$$[11d] \quad \text{EMPTY SUM CONVENTION: } \sum_{c \in \emptyset} f(c) := 0.$$

Sometimes we qualify  $S$  by saying that it is a *multiple sum of order m*. For  $m=1, 2, 3, \dots$ , one says usually *simple, double or triple sum*.

It is clear that the value [11c] of  $S$  is completely determined by  $\Gamma$  and  $f$ . Thus,  $S$  does not depend on  $c = (c_1, c_2, \dots, c_m)$ , even though it occurs in formula [11c]. For this reason, the letters  $c$  or  $(c_1, c_2, \dots, c_m)$  are called *bound variables* of the summation (*dummy* or *dead* are also used synonymously for bound). It is useful to note the analogy with the notation  $I = \int_a^b f(x) dx$  of the integral, in which  $x$  is also a bound (real) variable, while  $I$  only depends on  $a, b$  and  $f$ .

Usually, the summation set  $\Gamma$  is defined by a certain number of conditions or restrictions,  $\mathcal{C}_1, \mathcal{C}_2, \dots, \mathcal{C}_l$  on the  $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_m$ ; these conditions will just be translated by saying that the point  $c$  belongs to the subsets  $\Gamma_1, \Gamma_2, \dots, \Gamma_l$ . We will therefore write any of the following:

$$\begin{aligned} [11e] \quad (S =) & \sum_{\mathcal{C}_1, \mathcal{C}_2, \dots, \mathcal{C}_l} f(c) = \sum_{\mathcal{C}_1, \mathcal{C}_2, \dots, \mathcal{C}_l} f(c) \\ &= \sum_{c \in \Gamma_1 \cap \Gamma_2 \cap \dots \cap \Gamma_l} f(c) = \sum_{c \in \Gamma_1 \cap \Gamma_2 \cap \dots \cap \Gamma_l} f(c). \end{aligned}$$

For example, [11f] is equivalent with [11a]:

$$[11f] \quad \sum_{1 \leq k \leq n} x_k \quad \text{or} \quad \sum_{1 \leq k \leq n} x_k.$$

If the expression for the  $\mathcal{C}_i$  is not very simple, it is better to avoid writing it underneath or on the side of the summation sign  $\sum$ , but following it. In that case one uses a phrase like “the summation takes place over all  $c$  such that ...”.

Quite often one needs some letters different from  $c_1, c_2, \dots$ , say  $d_1, d_2, \dots$ ,

in the detailed description of the conditions  $\mathcal{C}_i$ . It is important to distinguish these from the bound variables, especially in the case that we wish to use notation [11e]. Therefore we introduce the

[11g] DOT CONVENTION: *every letter with a dot underneath stands for a bound variable.*

Of course, we do not have to dot every bound variable: in [11f], for example, there is but one possible interpretation. We must try to limit the dots to the cases where there is possible danger of confusion or ambiguity (examples follow). Furthermore, each variable needs only to be pointed *once*, and not every time it appears in the conditions  $\mathcal{C}_1, \mathcal{C}_2, \dots$ . In general, however, we are not at all embarrassed by excesses, as far as this is concerned. The use of dots under the bound variables is imposed upon us by our total and absolute rejection of the notation by repeated  $\sum$  signs (which is still commonly used), for any multiple sum of order  $m$  (Theorem B below).

Before demonstrating the preceding by examples, we still put the

[11h] NONNEGATIVE INTEGER CONVENTION: *in the sequel of this book each bound variable will represent an integer  $\geq 0$  unless stated otherwise.*

Now we give the following results:

**THEOREM A (associativity).** *For all partitions  $\mathcal{P} := (\Gamma_1, \Gamma_2, \dots, \Gamma_s)$  of  $\Gamma$ ,  $\Gamma = \Gamma_1 + \Gamma_2 + \dots + \Gamma_s$ , we have:*

$$[11i] \quad S := \sum_{c \in \Gamma} f(c) = \sum_{1 \leq i \leq s} \left( \sum_{c \in \Gamma_i} f(c) \right).$$

**THEOREM B (analogue of the Fubini theorem for multiple integrals):**

$$\begin{aligned} [11j] \quad \sum_{(c_1, c_2) \in E_1 \times E_2} f(c_1, c_2) &= \sum_{c_1 \in E_1} \left( \sum_{c_2 \in E_2} f(c_1, c_2) \right) \\ &= \sum_{c_2 \in E_2} \left( \sum_{c_1 \in E_1} f(c_1, c_2) \right) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} [11k] \quad \sum_{(c_1, c_2, c_3) \in E_1 \times E_2 \times E_3} f(c_1, c_2, c_3) &= \\ &= \sum_{c_1 \in E_1} \left( \sum_{(c_2, c_3) \in E_2 \times E_3} f(c_1, c_2, c_3) \right) \\ &= \sum_{c_1 \in E_1} \left( \sum_{c_2 \in E_2} \left( \sum_{c_3 \in E_3} f(c_1, c_2, c_3) \right) \right) = \text{etc.} \end{aligned}$$

(For the number of possible ‘Fubini formulas’ see Exercise 20 on p. 228.)

*Examples.* (I) To calculate, for  $n \geq 0$  integer, the double sum:

$$S := \sum_{c_1 + c_2 = n} c_1 c_2.$$

We get, if we reduce it to a simple sum:

$$\begin{aligned} S &= \sum_{0 \leq c_1 \leq n} c_1 (n - c_1) = n \sum_{0 \leq c_1 \leq n} c_1 - \sum_{0 \leq c_1 \leq n} c_1^2 \\ &= n \frac{n(n+1)}{2} - \frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6} = \frac{n(n^2-1)}{6}. \end{aligned}$$

(See also Exercise 28 on p. 85 for a generalization.)

(II) To calculate, for  $a$  and  $b$  complex,  $a, b, ab \neq 1$  and  $n$  an integer  $\geq 0$ , the double sum:

$$S := \sum_{0 \leq h \leq k \leq n} a^h b^k.$$

We can do this as follows, where we use Theorem B for the equality (\*):

$$\begin{aligned} S &\stackrel{(*)}{=} \sum_{0 \leq h \leq n} \left( a^h \sum_{h \leq k \leq n} b^k \right) = \sum_{0 \leq h \leq n} a^h \frac{b^{n+1} - b^h}{b - 1} \\ &= \frac{b^{n+1}}{b - 1} \sum_{0 \leq h \leq n} a^h - \frac{1}{b - 1} \sum_{0 \leq h \leq n} (ab)^h \\ &= \frac{b^{n+1}(a^{n+1} - 1)}{(b - 1)(a - 1)} - \frac{(ab)^{n+1} - 1}{(b - 1)(ab - 1)}. \end{aligned}$$

We could also have started with  $S = \sum_{0 \leq k \leq n} \left( b^k \sum_{0 \leq h \leq k} a^h \right)$ .

(III) For any finite set  $N$ ,  $|N| = n$ , to calculate the double sum:

$$S := \sum_{A, B \subset N} |A \cap B|.$$

(The summation is taken over all pairs of subsets  $(A, B) \in \mathfrak{P}(N) \times \mathfrak{P}(N)$ .)

By Theorem B, we get for  $S$ :

$$\sum_{A \subset N} \left( \sum_{B \subset N} |A \cap B| \right) = \sum_{A \subset N} \left( \sum_{0 \leq i \leq |A|} \left( \sum_{|A \cap B|=i} |A \cap B| \right) \right).$$

Now it is easy to see, that the number of subsets  $B ( \subset N )$  such that

$|A \cap B| = i$ , where  $A$  is fixed, equals  $\binom{|A|}{i} \cdot 2^{n-|A|}$ , which is the number of  $i$ -subsets of  $A$  times the number of subsets of  $N - A$ . Hence, as  $\sum_{i=0}^a i \binom{a}{i} = a2^{a-1}$  (which results from taking the derivative of the polynomial  $(1+x)^a = \sum_{i=0}^a \binom{a}{i} x^i$ , and substituting 1 for  $x$ ), which we use for equality (\*), we get for  $S$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{A \subseteq N} \left( 2^{n-|A|} \sum_{0 \leq i \leq |A|} i \binom{|A|}{i} \right) &\stackrel{(*)}{=} \sum_{A \subseteq N} 2^{n-|A|} \cdot |A| \cdot 2^{|A|-1} = \\ &= 2^{n-1} \sum_{A \subseteq N} |A| = 2^{n-1} \cdot n2^{n-1} = n4^{n-1}. \end{aligned}$$

More symmetrically, we could have said also:

$$\begin{aligned} S &= \sum_{K \subseteq N} \left( \sum_{A \cap B = K} |A \cap B| \right) = \sum_{K \subseteq N} 3^{n-|K|} |K| = \\ &= \sum_{0 \leq k \leq n} \binom{n}{k} 3^{n-k} k = n4^{n-1}. \end{aligned}$$

(Furthermore,  $\sum |A_1 \cap \dots \cap A_k| = n2^{k(n-1)}$ , where  $A_1, A_2, \dots, A_k \subseteq N$ .)

In certain cases, we can immediately lower the order of a summation by applying Theorems *A* and *B*:

**THEOREM C.** If  $f(c_1, c_2, \dots, c_m) = f_1(c_1, c_2, \dots, c_h) \cdot f_2(c_{h+1}, \dots, c_m)$ ,  $0 < h < m$ , then:

$$\begin{aligned} [11l] \sum_{(c_1, c_2, \dots, c_m) \in E_1 \times \dots \times E_m} f(c_1, c_2, \dots, c_m) &= \\ &= \left( \sum_{(c_1, \dots, c_h) \in E_1 \times \dots \times E_h} f_1(c_1, \dots, c_h) \right) \times \\ &\quad \times \left( \sum_{(c_{h+1}, \dots, c_m) \in E_{h+1} \times \dots \times E_m} f_2(c_{h+1}, \dots, c_m) \right). \end{aligned}$$

Particularly:

$$\begin{aligned} [11m] \sum_{(c_1, \dots, c_m) \in E_1 \times \dots \times E_m} g_1(c_1) \cdot \dots \cdot g_m(c_m) &= \\ &= \left( \sum_{c_1 \in E_1} g_1(c_1) \right) \cdot \left( \sum_{c_2 \in E_2} g_2(c_2) \right) \cdot \dots \cdot \left( \sum_{c_m \in E_m} g_m(c_m) \right). \end{aligned}$$

It will be noticed that this theorem bears some analogy to the theorem on double integrals: if  $\Delta = [a, b] \times [c, d]$  then  $\iint_{\Delta} f(x) g(y) dx dy = (\int_a^b f(x) dx) (\int_c^d g(y) dy)$ .

Clearly, everything that has been said in this section about the notation of finite sums, can be repeated, with the necessary changes, for any expression in which addition is replaced by an internal associative and commutative composition law in the range of  $f$ . Thus, we denote:

$$\prod_{1 \leq k \leq n} x_k \text{ for the product } x_1 x_2 \dots x_n ;$$

$$\bigcup_{1 \leq k \leq n} A_k \text{ for the union } A_1 \cup A_2 \cup \dots \cup A_n ;$$

$$\bigcap_{1 \leq k \leq n} A_k \text{ for the intersection } A_1 \cap A_2 \cap \dots \cap A_n .$$

Conventions [11g, h] still hold for  $\prod$ ,  $\bigcup$ ,  $\bigcap$ , but [11d] (p. 31) is replaced by [11n, o, p]:

- [11n] EMPTY PRODUCT CONVENTION:  $\prod_{c \in \emptyset} f(c) := 1$ .
- [11o] EMPTY UNION CONVENTION:  $\bigcup_{c \in \emptyset} A(c) := \emptyset_N$ , where  $A(c) \subset N$ .
- [11p] EMPTY INTERSECTION CONVENTION:  $\bigcap_{c \in \emptyset} A(c) := N$ , where  $A(c) \subset N$ .

*Example.* Compute, for  $n$  integer  $\geq 1$ , the double product:

$$P := \prod_{\substack{p+q \leq n \\ p, q \geq 0}} a^p b^q .$$

We can work this out as follows, using [5g] on p. 10 for (\*):

$$\begin{aligned} P &= \prod_{0 \leq k \leq n} \left( \prod_{p+q=k} a^p b^q \right) = \prod_{0 \leq k \leq n} \left( \prod_{0 \leq p \leq k} a^p b^{k-p} \right) \\ &= \prod_{0 \leq k \leq n} (a^{k(k+1)/2} \cdot b^{k(k+1)/2}) = \prod_{0 \leq k \leq n} (ab)^{\binom{k+1}{2}} \\ &= (ab)^{\sum_{0 \leq k \leq n} \binom{k+1}{2}} \stackrel{(*)}{=} (ab)^{\binom{n+2}{3}} . \end{aligned}$$

More generally, it can be found without difficulty that the  $l$ -th order product  $\prod a_1^{p_1} a_2^{p_2} \dots a_l^{p_l}$ , where  $p_1 + p_2 + \dots + p_l \leq n$ , has the value

$$(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_l)^q \text{ with } q = \binom{l+n}{l+1} .$$

## 1.12. FORMAL SERIES

## (I) General remarks

The concept of formal power series is a generalization of polynomial. We think the best is to sketch here the outlines of the theory, following Bourbaki ([\*Bourbaki, *Algèbre*, chap. 4, 5, 1959], p. 52–69; see also [\*Dubreil (P. and M.-L.), 1964], p. 124–31, [\*Lang, 1965], p. 146, [\*Zariski, Samuel, II, 1960], p. 129); we will refer to this author for proofs and more details.

In this section, each *small Greek letter* represents a *finite sequence of  $k$  integers  $\geq 0$* , where  $k$  is an integer  $\geq 1$ , which is given once and for all. Such a sequence is sometimes also called a *multi-index*. Thus, if we write  $\hat{k} := \mathbb{N}^{[k]}$ , in which  $[k] := \{1, 2, \dots, k\}$ , then  $\alpha \in \hat{k}$  means that  $\alpha = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_k)$ , where  $\alpha_i \in \mathbb{N}$ .

We may denote:

$$\begin{aligned}[12a] \alpha! &:= \alpha_1! \alpha_2! \dots \alpha_k!, \\ |\alpha| &:= \alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + \dots + \alpha_k, \\ [12a'] c_\alpha &:= c_{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_k}, \quad t^\alpha := t_1^{\alpha_1} t_2^{\alpha_2} \dots t_k^{\alpha_k}. \end{aligned}$$

We will consider the case of formal series in  $k$  indeterminates over a field  $C$  (often  $C = \mathbb{R}$  or  $\mathbb{C}$ ).

**DEFINITION A.** A formal power series  $f$  in  $k$  indeterminates (or variables)  $t_1, t_2, \dots, t_k$  over  $C$  is a formal expression of the following type:

$$\begin{aligned}[12b] f = f(t) &= f(t_1, t_2, \dots, t_k) = \sum_{\mu \in \hat{k}} a_\mu t^\mu \\ &= \sum_{\mu_1, \mu_2, \dots, \mu_k \geq 0} a_{\mu_1, \mu_2, \dots, \mu_k} t_1^{\mu_1} t_2^{\mu_2} \dots t_k^{\mu_k}, \end{aligned}$$

where  $a_\mu = a_{\mu_1, \mu_2, \dots, \mu_k}$ , the coefficients of  $f$ , form a multiple series of order  $k$  with values in  $C$ . Each expression  $a_\mu t^\mu = a_{\mu_1, \mu_2, \dots, \mu_k} t_1^{\mu_1} \dots t_k^{\mu_k}$  is called a monomial of  $f$ . As the  $\mu_1, \mu_2, \dots, \mu_k$  are bound variables, they can have a dot underneath. We denote  $C[[t_1, t_2, \dots, t_k]]$ , or even better  $C_k[[t]]$ , which is called the set of formal series  $f$ .

$f$  is a polynomial if all coefficients except a finite number of them equal zero, which is usually formulated by saying “almost all  $a_\mu$  are zero”. In

simple cases we sometimes avoid to write [12b] by using an *ellipsis* mark, three consecutive periods, especially if there is only one indeterminate. For example:

$$f = 1 + t + t^2 + \cdots := \sum_{n \geq 0} t^n \in \mathbf{R}_1 [[t]] = \mathbf{R} [[t]].$$

Every power series in several variables, which is convergent in a certain polydisc, can be interpreted as a formal series. Conversely, with every formal series in several indeterminates can be associated with a power series that perhaps converges in the point 0 only. The following expansions:

$$[12c] \quad \exp t := \sum_{n \geq 0} \frac{t^n}{n!}$$

$$[12d] \quad \log(1+t) := \sum_{n \geq 1} (-1)^{n-1} \frac{t^n}{n}$$

$$[12e] \quad (1+t)^x := \sum_{n \geq 0} \binom{x}{n} t^n = \sum_{n \geq 0} (x)_n \frac{t^n}{n!} \quad (x \in \mathbf{C})$$

$$[12e'] \quad (1-t)^{-x} := \sum_{n \geq 0} \binom{-x}{n} (-1)^n t^n = \sum_{n \geq 0} \langle x \rangle_n \frac{t^n}{n!} = \sum_{n \geq 0} \left\langle \begin{matrix} x \\ n \end{matrix} \right\rangle t^n$$

can be as well considered as functions in their radius of convergence as well as certain formal series, which are called respectively: *formal exponential series*, *formal logarithm*, *formal binomial series* (of the 1st and 2nd form). Moreover, for [12e'] we have also, if  $x$  is an integer  $\geq 1$ :  $(1-t)^{-x} = \sum_{x \geq 0} \binom{n+x-1}{x-1} t^n$ . Furthermore, the series [12e, e'] can also be interpreted as series in two indeterminates  $t$  and  $x$ .

*From now on, in the sequel of this book, each power series must be considered as a formal series, unless explicitly stated otherwise.*

As in the case of polynomials,  $C_k[[t]]$  becomes an integral domain, if we provide it with addition and multiplication as follows: for every  $f = \sum a_\mu t^\mu$  and  $g = \sum b_\mu t^\mu$  where  $\mu \in \hat{k}$ :

$$[12f] \quad f + g := \sum_{\mu \in \hat{k}} c_\mu t^\mu, \quad \text{where } c_\mu := a_\mu + b_\mu$$

$$[12g] \quad fg := \sum_{\mu \in \hat{k}} d_\mu t^\mu,$$

where

$$d_\mu = d_{\mu_1, \dots, \mu_k} = \sum_{\kappa + \lambda = \mu} a_\kappa b_\lambda = \sum a_{\kappa_1, \dots, \kappa_k} b_{\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_k},$$

the last summation taken over all sequences of integers  $\geq 0$ ,  $(\kappa_1, \dots, \kappa_k, \lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_k)$  such that  $\kappa_1 + \lambda_1 = \mu_1, \dots, \kappa_k + \lambda_k = \mu_k$  (hence we have  $(\mu_1 + 1) \dots (\mu_k + 1)$  terms in the last summation).

The *homogeneous part* of  $f$  of degree  $m$  is the formal polynomial:

$$[12h] \quad f_{(n)} := \sum_{|\mu|=n} a_\mu t^\mu = \sum_{\mu_1 + \dots + \mu_k = n} a_{\mu_1, \dots, \mu_k} t^{\mu_1} \dots t^{\mu_k}.$$

The *constant term* of  $f$  is  $a_0 = f_{(0)}$ , also denoted by  $f(0)$ . The *order* of  $f$  (which we suppose different from the series 0, all whose coefficients equal zero), is the smallest integer  $n \geq 0$ , such that  $f_{(n)} \neq 0$ . For example,  $\omega(t_1 t_2 + (t_1 t_2)^2 + \dots) = 2$ . Clearly,  $\omega(fg) = \omega(f) + \omega(g)$ . The series 1 is the series all whose terms are zero except the constant term, which equals 1. For example, by [12e, e'], we have formally:

$$(1+t)^x (1+t)^{-x} = 1,$$

which results from the same property for the associated convergent expansions.

## (II) Summable families of formal series

Let  $(f_l)_{l \in L}$  be a family of formal series of  $C_k[[t]]$  (often  $L = \mathbb{N}$  or  $\mathbb{N}^k$ ).

**DEFINITION B.** A family  $(f_l)_{l \in L}$  is called *summable*, if for each sequence  $\mu \in \bar{k}$ , the coefficient  $a_{l, \mu}$  of  $t^\mu$  in  $f_l$  equals 0 for almost all  $l \in \Gamma$  (except a finite number, see p. 36). The sum  $g = \sum_{\mu \in \bar{k}} b_\mu t^\mu$  of this family is then defined by:

$$[12i] \quad b_\mu := \text{the coefficient of } t^\mu \text{ in the finite sum } \sum f_l, \text{ where } l \in L, \\ \text{and } \omega(f_l) \leq |\mu|.$$

We denote  $g = \sum_{l \in L} f_l$ .

For  $L = \mathbb{N}$ ,  $(f_l)$  is evidently summable if and only if the order  $\omega(f_l)$  tends to infinity, when  $l$  tends to infinity.

We give two examples. (1) The family

$$\begin{aligned} f_{l_1, l_2} &:= \sum_{\mu_1, \mu_2 \geq 0} t_1^{l_1(\mu_1+1)} t_2^{l_2(\mu_2+1)} = \\ &= \sum_{\mu_1 \geq 0} t_1^{l_1(\mu_1+1)} \sum_{\mu_2 \geq 0} t_2^{l_2(\mu_2+1)} = \\ &= t_1^{l_1} t_2^{l_2} (1 - t_1^{l_1})^{-1} (1 - t_2^{l_2})^{-1} \end{aligned}$$

is summable,  $(l_1, l_2) \in \mathbb{N}^2$ . If in the definition of  $f_{l_1, l_2}$  the exponents  $l_1(\mu_1+1)$  and  $l_2(\mu_2+1)$  are replaced by  $l_1\mu_1$  and  $l_2\mu_2$ , then the family is not summable anymore. (2) The family  $f_{(n)}$  of homogeneous parts of  $f$ , [12h], is summable, and  $f = \sum_{n \geq 0} f_{(n)}$ . Moreover, we have the ‘Cauchy product’ form for the series  $h$ , which is the product of  $f$  and  $g$ :

$$[12j] \quad h = fg \Leftrightarrow h_{(n)} = \sum_{0 \leq i \leq n} f_{(i)} g_{(n-i)}.$$

**THEOREM A (associativity).** Let be given a summable family of formal series,  $(f_l)_{l \in L}$ , with sum  $g$ , and  $(L_i)_{i \in I}$  a division (p. 25), possibly infinite, of  $L$ ,  $L = \sum_{i \in I} L_i$ , then every subfamily  $(f_l)_{l \in L}$  is summable with sum  $g_i := \sum_{l \in L_i} f_l$ , and we have  $g := \sum_{l \in L} f_l = \sum_{i \in I} g_i$ .

**THEOREM B (products).** Let  $(f_l)_{l \in L}$  and  $(g_m)_{m \in M}$  be two summable families. Then the family  $(f_l g_m)_{(l, m) \in L \times M}$  is summable, and we have  $\sum_{(l, m) \in L \times M} f_l g_m = (\sum_{l \in L} f_l) \cdot (\sum_{m \in M} g_m)$ .

The generalization to a finite product is evident.

### (III) Multiplicable families of formal series

**DEFINITION C.** A family of formal series  $(f_l)_{l \in L}$  is called multiplicable if for almost all (p. 38)  $l \in L$ , firstly the constant term of  $f_l$  equals 1, secondly the coefficient  $a_{l, \mu}$  of  $t_\mu$  in  $f_l$  equals 0, for each sequence  $\mu \in \hat{k}$  such that  $|\mu| \geq 1$ . The product  $g = \sum_{\mu \in \hat{k}} b_\mu t^\mu$  of this family is then defined by:

$$[12k] \quad b_\mu := \text{the coefficient of } t^\mu \text{ in the finite product } \prod_{l \in L} f_l, \text{ where } l \in L, \text{ and } \omega(f_l - f_l(0)) \leq |\mu|.$$

We denote  $g = \prod_{l \in L} f_l$ .

For  $L = \mathbb{N}$ ,  $(f_l)$  is multiplicable if the order  $\omega(f_l - f_l(0))$  tends to infinity,

when  $l$  tends to infinity. For example,  $f_l := (1 + t_1 t_2^l)$  is multiplicable. Every *finite* family is evidently multiplicable, and we get back definition [12g] for the product. Explicitly, for *one single* variable  $t$  and *one sequence*  $(f_i)$  of formal series,  $i = 1, 2, \dots$ ,  $f_i := \sum_{n \geq 0} a_{i,n} t^n$ , we have, if we write out the bound variables  $n_i$  completely in (\*):

$$\begin{aligned} [12l] \quad \prod_{i \geq 1} f_i &= \prod_{i \geq 1} \left( \sum_{n_i \geq 0} a_{i,n_i} t^{n_i} \right) = \\ &= \sum_{n_1, n_2, \dots \geq 0} a_{1,n_1} a_{2,n_2} \dots t^{n_1 + n_2 + \dots} = \\ &= \sum_{n \geq 0} t^n \left( \sum_{n_1 + n_2 + \dots = n} a_{1,n_1} a_{2,n_2} \dots \right), \end{aligned}$$

where the last summation makes sense, because it contains only a finite number of terms (cf. Definition C). (On this subject, see also p. 130.)

#### (IV) Substitution (also called composition) of formal series

**THEOREM C.** Let  $(g_i)_{i \in [p]}$  be  $p$  formal series  $\in C_q[[t]]$  without constant terms:  $\omega(g_i) \geq 1$ . We can 'substitute'  $g_i$  for  $u_i$ ,  $i \in [p]$ , into every formal series  $f = \sum_{\mu \in \hat{P}} a_\mu u^\mu \in C_p[[u]]$ . In this way we obtain a new formal series, called the composition of  $f$  and  $g$ , and denoted  $f(g_1, g_2, \dots, g_p)$  or  $f \circ g$ , which belongs again to  $C_q[[t]]$ . By definition,  $f \circ g$  equals the sum of the summable family  $a_{\mu_1, \dots, \mu_p}(g_1)^{\mu_1} \dots (g_p)^{\mu_p}$ , where  $\mu = (\mu_1, \mu_2, \dots, \mu_p) \in \hat{P}$  ( $= L$ ).

For example, using [12c, d], it can be verified that

$$\log(\exp t) = t, \quad \exp\{\log(1+t)\} = 1+t.$$

Now we want to find the formal expansion of  $h := (1 + t_1 + t_2 + \dots + t_q)^x \in R_q[[t]]$ . Applying Theorem C, with  $f := (1+u)^x \in R_1[[u]]$ ,  $g := t_1 + t_2 + \dots + t_q \in R_q[[t]]$ , we get by using [12e] (p. 37) for equality (\*) and [10f] (p. 28) for (\*\*):

$$\begin{aligned} h &\stackrel{(*)}{=} \sum_{n \geq 0} \binom{x}{n} g^n = \sum_{n \geq 0} \binom{x}{n} (t_1 + \dots + t_q)^n \\ &\stackrel{(**)}{=} \sum_{n \geq 0} \left\{ \binom{x}{n} \sum_{v_1 + \dots + v_q = n} \frac{n!}{v_1! \dots v_q!} t_1^{v_1} \dots t_q^{v_q} \right\}; \end{aligned}$$

which gives after simplifications:

$$\begin{aligned}
 [12m] \quad & (1 + t_1 + t_2 + \cdots + t_q)^x = \\
 & = \sum_{v_1, \dots, v_q \geq 0} (x)_{v_1+v_2+\cdots+v_q} \cdot \frac{t_1^{v_1} t_2^{v_2} \cdots t_q^{v_q}}{v_1! v_2! \cdots v_q!} = \\
 & = \sum_{v \in \hat{q}} (x)_{|v|} \cdot \frac{t^v}{v!} = \sum_{v_1, \dots, v_q \geq 0} \binom{x}{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_q} t_1^{v_1} t_2^{v_2} \cdots t_q^{v_q},
 \end{aligned}$$

with the notation [10c''] (p. 27).

Similarly, we obtain:

$$\begin{aligned}
 [12m'] \quad & (1 - t_1 - t_2 - \cdots - t_q)^{-x} = \\
 & = \sum_{v_1, \dots, v_q \geq 0} \langle x \rangle_{v_1+v_2+\cdots+v_q} \cdot \frac{t_1^{v_1} t_2^{v_2} \cdots t_q^{v_q}}{v_1! v_2! \cdots v_q!} = \\
 & = \sum_{v \in \hat{q}} \langle x \rangle_{|v|} \cdot \frac{t^v}{v!} = \sum_{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_q \geq 0} \left\langle \binom{x}{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_q} t_1^{v_1} t_2^{v_2} \cdots t_q^{v_q} \right\rangle,
 \end{aligned}$$

using an evident extension of the notations [7b] (p. 16) and [10c''] (p. 27).

We can also establish, using multinomial coefficients  $(v) := (v_1, v_2, \dots, v_q)$  of [10c'] (p. 27), the corresponding expansions for  $\log$ :

$$\begin{aligned}
 \log(1 + t_1 + t_2 + \cdots + t_q) &= \sum_{v_1 + v_2 + \cdots + v_q \geq 1} (-1)^{v_1 + \cdots + v_q - 1} \times \\
 &\quad \times \frac{(v_1, v_2, \dots, v_q)}{v_1 + v_2 + \cdots + v_q} t_1^{v_1} t_2^{v_2} \cdots t_q^{v_q} \\
 &= \sum_{|v| \geq 1} (-1)^{|v|-1} \frac{(v)}{|v|} t^v,
 \end{aligned}$$

$$-\log(1 - t_1 - t_2 - \cdots - t_q) = \sum_{|v| \geq 1} \frac{(v)}{|v|} t^v.$$

#### (V) Transformations of formal series

With every formal series  $f = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n t^n$  in one indeterminate  $t$ , we can associate the *formal derivative*, denoted by:

$$[12n] \quad Df = \frac{df(t)}{dt} = \sum_{n \geq 0} n a_n t^{n-1} = \sum_{n \geq 0} (n+1) a_{n+1} t^n,$$

and also the *formal primitive*:

$$[12o] \quad Pf = \int_0^t f(u) du = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n \frac{t^{n+1}}{n+1}.$$

All the usual properties hold:  $D Pf = f$ ,  $D(fg) = (Df).g + f.(Dg)$ , etc.

The iterates of these operations can easily be found. For the derivation we have:

$$D^k f = \sum_{n \geq k} (n)_k a_n t^{n-k} = \sum_{m \geq 0} \langle m+1 \rangle_k t^m,$$

and for the primitivation we have:

$$\begin{aligned} P^k f &= \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n \frac{t^{n+k}}{\langle n+1 \rangle_k} = \\ &= \sum_{m \geq k} a_{m-k} \frac{t^m}{(m)_k} = \int_0^t \frac{(t-x)^{k-1}}{(k-1)!} f(x) dx. \end{aligned}$$

These concepts can be generalized without difficulties to more indeterminates. For example, for  $f = \sum_{v \in k} a_v t^v$  and  $\alpha \in \bar{k}$ , we define:

$$\begin{aligned} [12p] \quad D^\alpha f &= \frac{\partial^{\alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + \dots + \alpha_k}}{\partial t_1^{\alpha_1} \partial t_2^{\alpha_2} \dots \partial t_k^{\alpha_k}} f(t_1, t_2, \dots, t_k) \\ &:= \sum_{v_1, \dots, v_k \geq 0} (v_1)_{\alpha_1} \dots (v_k)_{\alpha_k} a_{v_1, \dots, v_k} t_1^{v_1 - \alpha_1} \dots t_k^{v_k - \alpha_k}. \end{aligned}$$

We mention here also the transformation that associates to every double series  $f(x, y) = \sum_{m, n \geq 0} a_{m, n} x^m y^n$  its *diagonal series*  $\varphi(t) = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_{n, n} t^n$ . When  $f(x, y)$  converges, we have ([Hautus, Klärner, 1971]):

$$[12q] \quad \varphi(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{|z|=\varepsilon} f\left(z, \frac{t}{z}\right) \frac{dz}{z},$$

where  $\varepsilon$  and  $|t|$  are sufficiently small, so that  $f(x, y)$  is regular for  $|x| < \varepsilon$  and  $|y| < |t|/\varepsilon$ . In general, it is tantamount to saying that the circle  $|z| = \varepsilon$  contains all the poles of  $f(z, t/z)$  that tend to 0 when  $t$  tends to 0. For instance, for  $f(x, y) = \sum_{m, n} (m, n) x^m y^n = (1 - x - y)^{-1}$ , where the  $(m, n) = \binom{m+n}{m}$  are the binomial coefficients in the symmetrical notation (p. 8),

the diagonal  $\varphi(t) = \sum_{n \geq 0} \binom{2n}{n} t^n$  equals the residue of  $(1 - z - t/z)^{-1} z^{-1}$  in the point  $z = (1 - (1 - 4t)^{1/2})/2$ , in other words  $(1 - 4t)^{-(1/2)}$ . This result is of course well-known (see Exercise 22 (1), p. 81).

#### (VI) *Formal Laurent series*

These series are written analogously to the preceding, [12b] (p. 36), but here the indices and the exponents  $\mu_1, \mu_2, \dots, \mu_k$  can take *all* integer values  $\geq 0$ , with the condition that the coefficients  $a_{\mu_1, \dots, \mu_k}$  that contain at least one index  $< 0$ , are *almost all* zero. For example:

- (1) With one single indeterminate  $t$ :  $(t^2 + t^3 + \dots)^{-1} = (t^2(1-t)^{-1})^{-1} = t^{-2} - t^{-1}$ .
- (2) With two indeterminates  $t_1$  and  $t_2$ :  $\sum t_1^{\mu_1} t_2^{\mu_2}$ ,  $\mu_1 \leq \mu_2 \leq 2\mu_1 + 10$ ,

where the integers  $\mu_1, \mu_2$  can be negative as well as positive or zero.

All the preceding: operations, summable families, derivation, etc., can be easily done for such series.

#### (VII) *Formal series in ‘noncommutative’ indeterminates* ([Schützenberger, 1961])

Let  $\mathfrak{X}^*$  stand for the free monoid generated by  $\mathfrak{X}$  (see p. 18) and let  $f: \mu \mapsto a_\mu$  be a map from  $\mathfrak{X}^*$  into a certain ring  $A$  ( $\mu$  is a *word* over  $\mathfrak{X}$ ). If we write  $f$  as a formal series:  $f := \sum_{\mu \in \mathfrak{X}^*} a_\mu \mu$ , then the set  $A^{\mathfrak{X}^*}$  of these maps  $f$  becomes an algebra, called the *monoid algebra*  $\mathfrak{X}^*$  if, for  $g := \sum_{\mu \in \mathfrak{X}^*} b_\mu \mu$ , we put  $f + g := \sum_{\mu \in \mathfrak{X}^*} (a_\mu + b_\mu) \mu$  and  $fg := \sum_{\mu \in \mathfrak{X}^*} c_\mu \mu$ , where  $c_\mu = \sum a_\kappa b_\lambda$ , the finite summation being taken over all pairs  $(\kappa, \lambda)$  of words such that  $\kappa\lambda = \mu$ , in the sense of the juxtaposition product of p. 18. If  $\mathfrak{X}$  is finite and if one considers the Abelian words of  $\mathfrak{X}$ , then the ordinary formal series studied above are found back again.

### 1.13. GENERATING FUNCTIONS (abbreviated GF)

#### (I) *Simple sequences*

**DEFINITION.** Let be given a real or complex sequence (in this book actually often consisting of positive integers with a combinatorial meaning), then we call ordinary GF, exponential GF, and more generally, GF according

to  $\Omega_n$ , of the sequence  $a_n$ , the following three formal series  $\Phi$ ,  $\Psi$  and  $\Phi_\Omega$ , respectively, where  $\Omega_n$  is a fixed given sequence:

$$[13a] \quad \Phi(t) := \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n t^n, \quad \Psi(t) := \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n \frac{t^n}{n!}, \quad \Phi_\Omega(t) := \sum_{n \geq 0} \Omega_n a_n t^n.$$

The most interesting case is that where (at least) one of the entire series [13a] has a positive nonzero radius of convergence  $R$ , and converges for  $|t| < R$  to a composition of elementary known functions; in this case the properties of these functions can be used to give new information about the  $a_n$ . (For a detailed study of the relation between  $a_n$  and their GF, the reader is referred to any work on difference calculus; for example [\*Jordan (Ch.), 1947] or [\*Milne-Thomson, 1933].)

*Example A.*  $a_n := \binom{x}{n}$ , where  $x \in \mathbb{R}$  or  $\mathbb{C}$ . Then  $\Phi(t) = \sum_{n \geq 0} \binom{x}{n} t^n = \sum_{n \geq 0} (x)_n t^n / n! = (1+t)^x$ , which converges for  $|t| < 1$  (if  $t \in \mathbb{C}$  one chooses the value of  $\Phi(t)$  that equals 1 for  $t=0$ ). If we compare the coefficients of  $t^n / n!$  in the first and the last member of equalities [13b]:

$$\begin{aligned} [13b] \quad \sum_{n \geq 0} (x+y)_n \frac{t^n}{n!} &= (1+t)^{x+y} = (1+t)^x (1+t)^y = \\ &= \left( \sum_{k \geq 0} (x)_k \frac{t^k}{k!} \right) \left( \sum_{l \geq 0} (y)_l \frac{t^l}{l!} \right); \end{aligned}$$

we obtain the *Vandermonde convolution*, in two forms:

$$[13c] \quad (x+y)_n = \sum_{0 \leq k \leq n} \binom{n}{k} \cdot (x)_k (y)_{n-k},$$

$$[13c'] \quad \binom{x+y}{n} = \sum_{0 \leq k \leq n} \binom{x}{k} \binom{y}{n-k};$$

(see also p. 26). Similarly, one shows, using  $\sum_{n \geq 0} \langle x \rangle_n (t^n / n!) = (1-t)^{-x}$ :

$$[13d] \quad \langle x+y \rangle_n = \sum_{0 \leq k \leq n} \binom{n}{k} \cdot \langle x \rangle_k \langle y \rangle_{n-k}.$$

$$[13d'] \quad \binom{x+y}{n} = \sum_{0 \leq k \leq n} \binom{x}{k} \binom{y}{n-k}.$$

*Example B. Fibonacci numbers.* These are integers  $F_n$  defined by:

$$[13e] \quad F_n = F_{n-1} + F_{n-2}, \quad n \geq 2; \quad F_0 = F_1 = 1.$$

We want to find the ordinary GF,  $\Phi = \sum_{n \geq 0} F_n t^n$ :

$$\Phi = 1 + t + \sum_{n \geq 2} (F_{n-1} + F_{n-2}) t^n = 1 + t\Phi + t^2\Phi.$$

Comparing the first and the last member of these equalities we obtain:

$$[13f] \quad \Phi = \sum_{n \geq 0} F_n t^n = \frac{1}{1 - t - t^2}.$$

If we decompose this rational function into partial fractions, putting the roots of  $1 - t - t^2 = 0$  equal to  $-\alpha, -\beta$ , we get:

$$\begin{aligned} [13g] \quad \Phi &= \frac{1}{\beta - \alpha} \left( \frac{\beta}{1 - \beta t} - \frac{\alpha}{1 - \alpha t} \right) = \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \left( \sum_{n \geq 0} \beta^{n+1} t^n - \sum_{n \geq 0} \alpha^{n+1} t^n \right). \end{aligned}$$

Hence, identifying the coefficients of  $t^n$  in [13f, g]:

$$[13h] \quad F_n = \frac{\beta^{n+1} - \alpha^{n+1}}{\sqrt{5}},$$

where

$$\alpha := \frac{1 - \sqrt{5}}{2}, \quad \beta := \frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{2}.$$

(One can take also as initial conditions  $F_0 = 0, F_1 = 1$  [\*Hardy, Wright, 1965], p. 148, in which case  $\Phi = t(1 - t - t^2)^{-1}$  and  $F_n = (\beta^n - \alpha^n)/\sqrt{5}$ .) Here we find the golden ratio,  $\beta = 1.61803\dots$  of the Renaissance architects.

$n$	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
$F_n$	1	1	2	3	5	8	13	21	34	55	89	144	233	377	610	987

$n$	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25
$F_n$	1597	2584	4181	6765	10946	17711	28657	46368	75025	121393

Moreover, if we let  $\|x\|$  denote the integer closest to  $x$  ( $x$  not supposed to be half-integral), then [13h] shows easily that  $F_n = \|\beta^{n+1}/\sqrt{5}\|$ .

The Fibonacci numbers have a simple combinatorial meaning:  $F_{n+1}$  is the number of subsets of  $[n] = \{1, 2, \dots, n\}$  such that *no two elements are adjacent* (Subsets with 0 or 1 element are convenient). In fact, according

to [8d] (p. 21), the number  $F_{n+1}$  of such subsets equals  $\sum_p \binom{n+1-p}{p}$ . Hence, it follows that  $F_{n+1} = \sum \binom{n-p}{p-1} + \sum \binom{n-p}{p} = F_{n-1} + F_n$  (by [5e], p. 10) and  $F_0 = F_1 = 1$ . Thus, the sequences  $F_n$  and  $F_n$  coincide, because they satisfy the same defining recurrence relation. (See also Exercise 13, p. 76, and Exercise 31, p. 86.) It can also be shown that the number  $G_n$  of subsets of  $[\bar{n}]$  (p. 24) such that any two points are not adjacent, equals  $F_n + F_{n-2}$  (subset  $\phi$  is convenient), in other words  $G_n = \alpha^n + \beta^n$ ,  $G_n = G_{n-1} + G_{n-2}$  and  $\sum_{n \geq 0} G_n t^n = (t + 2t^2)(1 - t - t^2)^{-1}$ .

$n$	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
$G_n$	0	1	3	4	7	11	18	29	47	76	123	199	322

More generally, defining  $(1 - t - t^{l+1})^{-1} := \sum_{n \geq 0} F(n, l) t^n$ , it can be proved that  $F(n+l, l)$  is the number of subsets  $B \subset [n]$  such that any two elements of  $B$  are always separated by at least  $l$  ( $\geq 0$ ) elements of  $\complement B$ . For subsets  $B \subset [\bar{n}]$  with the same property, the number is  $G(n, l)$  where  $(t + (l+1)t^{l+1})(1 - t - t^{l+1})^{-1} := \sum_{n \geq 0} G(n, l) t^n$ .

### (II) Multiple sequences

The concept of GF can be immediately generalized to multiple sequences. We explain the case of double sequences. The three most used GF are the following formal series:

$$\begin{aligned}\Phi(t, u) &:= \sum_{n, k \geq 0} a_{n, k} t^n u^k, & \Psi(t, u) &:= \sum_{n, k \geq 0} a_{n, k} \frac{t^n}{n!} \frac{u^k}{k!}, \\ \Theta(t, u) &:= \sum_{n, k \geq 0} a_{n, k} \frac{t^n}{n!} u^k,\end{aligned}$$

the last one,  $\Theta$ , being especially used in the case of a *triangular* sequence ( $\Leftrightarrow a_{n, k} = 0$ , if not  $0 \leq k < n$ ). We now investigate the double sequence of binomial coefficients,  $a_{n, k} := \binom{n}{k}$ , as an example:

$$\begin{aligned}\Phi(t, u) &= \sum_{n, k \geq 0} \binom{n}{k} t^n u^k = \sum_{n \geq 0} t^n \left( \sum_{0 \leq k \leq n} \binom{n}{k} u^k \right) \\ &= \sum_{n \geq 0} t^n (1+u)^n = \{1 - t(1+u)\}^{-1},\end{aligned}$$

which converges if  $|t(1+u)| < 1$ .

$$\Theta(t, u) = \sum_{n, k \geq 0} \binom{n}{k} \frac{t^n}{n!} u^k = \sum_{n \geq 0} \frac{t^n}{n!} (1+u)^n = \exp\{t(1+u)\}.$$

$$\Psi(t, u) = \sum_{n, k \geq 0} \binom{n}{k} \frac{t^n}{n!} \frac{u^k}{k!} = \sum_{0 \leq k \leq n} \frac{(ut)^k}{(k!)^2} \cdot \frac{t^{n-k}}{(n-k)!}$$

$$= \sum_{k \geq 0} \left\{ \frac{(ut)^k}{(k!)^2} \sum_{m \geq 0} \frac{t^m}{m!} \right\} = (\exp t) \cdot I_0(2\sqrt{ut}),$$

where  $I_0(z) := \sum_{k \geq 0} (z/2)^{2k} (k!)^{-2}$  is the modified Bessel function of order 0; because this function is complicated,  $\Psi(t, u)$  is not considered very interesting.

### (III) General remarks on generating functions

We return to the case of a simple sequence  $a_n$ .

(1) If the power series  $f(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n$  converges for all complex  $z$  ( $\Leftrightarrow f(z)$  is an entire function), then the Cauchy integral theorem gives:

$$[13i] \quad a_n = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int f(z) z^{-n-1} dz,$$

where the integral is taken over a simple curve enclosing the origin, and oriented counterclockwise. Usually, when  $f(z)$  is ‘elementary’, [13i] can very well be used for estimating  $a_n$  for great  $n$  by the Laplace method or the saddlepoint method (see, for instance, [\*De Bruijn, 1961]). In the case that the radius of convergence of  $f(z)$  is finite, a Darboux type method can be used (see p. 277).

(2) Of course one can associate with the sequence still others than those of [13a]. For example:

$$[13j] \quad \Omega(t) = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n \frac{n!}{\langle t \rangle_{n+1}}$$

$$[13k] \quad A(t) = \sum_{n \geq 1} a_n \frac{t^n}{1-t^n}$$

$$[13l] \quad N(t) = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n \frac{(t)_n}{n!},$$

which are called respectively ‘factorial GF’ (mostly studied by [\*Nörlund,

1924]), ‘*Lambert GF*’ (see Exercise 16, p. 161), and ‘*Newton GF*’ (see Exercise 6, p. 221).

(3) Among the several GF defined in [13a, j, k, l] are all kinds of relations that allow us to pass from one to the other. We cite for example:  $\Phi(1/z)=z \int_0^\infty e^{-zt} \Psi(t) dt$  (called the Laplace-Carson transform of  $\Psi$ ),  $\Omega(z)=\int_0^1 t^{z-1} \Phi(1-t) dt$ .

#### 1.14. LIST OF THE PRINCIPAL GENERATING FUNCTIONS

##### (I) Bernoulli and Euler numbers and polynomials

Bernoulli numbers  $B_n$ , Euler numbers  $E_n$ , Bernoulli polynomials  $B_n(x)$  and Euler polynomials  $E_n(x)$  are defined by:

$$[14a] \quad \frac{t}{e^t - 1} := \sum_{n \geq 0} B_n \frac{t^n}{n!}, \quad \frac{te^{tx}}{e^t - 1} := \sum_{n \geq 0} B_n(x) \frac{t^n}{n!}$$

$$[14b] \quad \frac{2e^t}{e^{2t} + 1} = \frac{1}{\operatorname{ch} t} := \sum_{n \geq 0} E_n \frac{t^n}{n!}, \quad \frac{2e^{tx}}{e^t + 1} = \sum_{n \geq 0} E_n(x) \frac{t^n}{n!}.$$

(Many generalizations have been suggested). Bernoulli numbers, denoted by  $b_n$  in Bourbaki, are sometimes also defined by:

$$t(e^t - 1)^{-1} = 1 - \frac{1}{2}t + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{k+1} B_k t^{2k}/(2k)!$$

Each  $B_k$  is then  $>0$ , and equals  $(-1)^{k+1} B_{2k}$  as a function of our Bernoulli numbers.

Their most important properties are:

$$[14c] \quad B_n = B_n(0), \quad E_n = 2^n E_n(\frac{1}{2})$$

$$[14d] \quad B_{2k+1} = E_{2k-1} = 0, \quad \text{for } k = 1, 2, 3, \dots$$

$$[14e] \quad B'_n(x) = nB_{n-1}(x), \quad E'_n(x) = nE_{n-1}(x)$$

$$[14f] \quad \begin{aligned} B_n(x+1) - B_n(x) &= nx^{n-1}, \\ E_n(x+1) + E_n(x) &= 2x^n \end{aligned}$$

$$[14g] \quad \begin{aligned} B_n(x) &= \sum_k \binom{n}{k} B_k x^{n-k}, \\ E_n(x) &= \sum_k \binom{n}{k} \frac{E_k}{2^k} \left(x - \frac{1}{2}\right)^{n-k} \end{aligned}$$

$$[14h] \quad B_n(1-x) = (-1)^n B_n(x), \quad E_n(1-x) = (-1)^n E_n(x).$$

For instance, [14d] follows from the fact that the functions  $t(e^t - 1)^{-1} - B_0 - B_1 t$  and  $(ch t)^{-1}$  are even; [14e] follows from the fact that, for  $\Phi := te^{tx}(e^t - 1)^{-1}$ , we have  $\partial\Phi/\partial x = t\Phi$ , etc. (For a table of  $B_n$  and  $E_n$ , see [\*Abramovitz, Stegun, 1964], p. 810, for  $n \leq 60$ , and [Knuth, Buckholtz, 1967] for  $n \leq 250$  and  $n \leq 120$ . Applications are found in Exercises 36 and 37, pp. 88 and 89.) The first values of  $B_n$  and  $E_n$  are:

$n$	0	1	2	4	6	8	10	12
$B_n$	1	$-\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{6}$	$-\frac{1}{30}$	$\frac{1}{42}$	$-\frac{1}{30}$	$\frac{5}{66}$	$-\frac{691}{2730}$
$E_n$	1	0	-1	5	-61	1385	-50521	2702765

$n$	14	16	18	20
$B_n$	$\frac{7}{6}$	$-\frac{3617}{510}$	$\frac{43867}{798}$	$-\frac{174611}{330}$
$E_n$	-199360981	19391512145	-2404879675441	370371188237525

(For more information about this subject, see, for instance, [\*Campbell, 1966], [\*Jordan, 1947], [\*Nielsen, 1906].)

We may also define *Genocchi numbers*  $G_n$  by:

$$\frac{2t}{e^t + 1} = t(1 - \operatorname{th} \frac{t}{2}) = \sum_{n \geq 1} G_n \frac{t^n}{n!}.$$

Then we have  $G_3 = G_5 = G_7 = \dots = 0$  and  $G_{2m} = 2(1 - 2^{2m}) B_{2m} = 2mE_{2m-1}(0)$ , which shows their close relationship with the Bernoulli numbers (used in Exercise 36, p. 89 for ‘computing’  $B_n$ ).

$n$	1	2	4	6	8	10	12	14	16	18	20
$G_n$	1	-1	1	-3	17	-155	2073	-38227	929569	-28820619	1109652905

## (II) Some sequences of ‘orthogonal’ polynomials

(Their most complete study is made by [\*Szegö, 1967].)

We list their GF:

$$[14i] \quad \text{The Chebishev polynomials of the first kind } T_n(x):$$

$$\frac{1 - tx}{1 - 2tx + t^2} := \sum_{n \geq 0} T_n(x) t^n.$$

[14j] The *Chebishev polynomials of the second kind*  $U_n(x)$ :

$$\frac{1}{1 - 2tx + t^2} := \sum_{n \geq 0} U_n(x) t^n.$$

After some manipulations this implies:

$$[14k] \quad \cos n\varphi = T_n(\cos \varphi), \quad \frac{\sin(n+1)\varphi}{\sin \varphi} = U_n(\cos \varphi).$$

[14l] The *Legendre polynomials*  $P_n(x)$ :

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - 2tx + t^2}} := \sum_{n \geq 0} P_n(x) t^n.$$

[14m] The *Gegenbauer polynomials*  $C^{(\alpha)}(x)$ :

$$(1 - 2tx + t^2)^{-\alpha} := \sum_{n \geq 0} C_n^{(\alpha)}(x) t^n,$$

where  $\alpha \in \mathbf{C}$ ; hence  $C_n^{(1/2)} = P_n$ ,  $C_n^{(1)} = U_n$ . (These are also called *ultraspherical polynomials*. See Exercise 35, p. 87.)

[14n] The *Hermite polynomials*  $H_n(x)$ :

$$\exp(-t^2 + 2tx) := \sum_{n \geq 0} H_n(x) \frac{t^n}{n!}.$$

[14o] The *Laguerre polynomials*  $L_n^{(\alpha)}(x)$ :

$$(1 - t)^{-1-\alpha} \exp \frac{tx}{t-1} := \sum_{n \geq 0} L_n^{(\alpha)}(x) t^n \quad (\alpha \in \mathbf{C}).$$

### (III) Stirling numbers

The *Stirling numbers of the first kind*  $s(n, k)$  and *of the second kind*  $S(n, k)$  can be defined by the following double GF:

$$[14p] \quad (1 + t)^u := 1 + \sum_{1 \leq k \leq n} s(n, k) \frac{t^n}{n!} u^k$$

$$[14q] \quad \exp \{u(e^t - 1)\} := 1 + \sum_{1 \leq k \leq n} S(n, k) \frac{t^n}{n!} u^k.$$

Because these numbers are very important in combinatorial analysis, we will make a special study of them in Chapter V.

The double GF in their definition can be avoided, if we observe that:

$$(1+t)^u = \exp\{u \log(1+t)\} = \sum_{k \geq 0} u^k \frac{\log^k(1+t)}{k!} \Rightarrow$$

[14r]  $\frac{\log^k(1+t)}{k!} := \sum_{n \geq k} s(n, k) \frac{t^n}{n!}$

$$\exp\{u(e^t - 1)\} = \sum_{k \geq 0} u^k \frac{(e^t - 1)^k}{k!} \Rightarrow$$

[14s]  $\frac{(e^t - 1)^k}{k!} := \sum_{n \geq k} S(n, k) \frac{t^n}{n!}.$

#### (IV) Eulerian numbers

The Eulerian numbers  $A(n, k)$  (not to be confused with Euler numbers  $E_n$ , p. 48) are generated as follows:

$$[14t] \quad \mathfrak{A}(t, u) := \frac{1-u}{e^{t(u-1)}-u} := 1 + \sum_{1 \leq k \leq n} A(n, k) \frac{t^n}{n!} u^{k-1}.$$

It is easily verified that:

$$(u - u^2) \frac{\partial \mathfrak{A}}{\partial u} + (tu - 1) \frac{\partial \mathfrak{A}}{\partial t} + \mathfrak{A} = 0,$$

from which follows, if we put the coefficient of  $u^{k-1}t^n/n!$  in this partial differential equation equal to 0, the following recurrence relation:

$$[14u] \quad A(n+1, k) = (n-k+2)A(n, k-1) + kA(n, k), \\ n \geq 0, \quad k \geq 2,$$

with initial conditions:  $A(n, 1) = 1$  for  $n \geq 0$  and  $A(0, k) = 0$  if  $k \geq 2$ . Another GF, denoted by  $\mathfrak{A}_1$ , is sometimes easier to handle:

$$[14v] \quad \mathfrak{A}_1(t, u) := \mathfrak{A}\left(tu, \frac{1}{u}\right) = 1 + u\{\mathfrak{A}(t, u) - 1\} = \\ = 1 + \sum_{1 \leq k \leq n} A(n, k) \frac{t^n}{n!} u^k = \frac{1-u}{1-ue^{t(1-u)}}.$$

(A combinatorial interpretation and a table of  $A(n, k)$  is given on p. 243.)

### 1.15. BRACKETING PROBLEMS

We will treat in some detail these famous examples of the use of GF.

#### (I) *Catalan problem*

Consider a product  $P$  of  $n$  numbers  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$  in this order,  $P = X_1 X_2 \dots X_n$ . We want to determine the number of different ways of putting brackets in this product, each way corresponding to a computation of the product by successive multiplications of precisely two numbers each time ([Catalan, 1838]). Thus,  $a_2 = 1$ ,  $a_3 = 2$  and  $a_4 = 5$ , according to the following list of bracketings:

$$[15a] \quad (X_1 X_2) (X_3 X_4), \quad \{(X_1 X_2) X_3\} X_4, \quad \{X_1 (X_2 X_3)\} X_4, \\ X_1 \{(X_2 X_3) X_4\}, \quad X_1 \{X_2 (X_3 X_4)\}.$$

One could also suppose that the sequence, or *word*,  $S := X_1, X_2 \dots, X_n$  is taken from a set with a multiplicatively written composition law, which is neither associative nor commutative; then  $a_n$  is the number of correct ways of putting brackets, also called *well-bracketed words*, in  $S$ . One can also reason from a single element  $X \in E$ , and observe that  $a_n$  is the number of ways we can interpret a product all whose  $n$  factors equal  $X$  in  $E$ . For  $n=4$  we get then for the list in [15a] the following:

$$[15b] \quad X^2 \cdot X^2, \quad (X^2 \cdot X) X, \quad (X \cdot X^2) X, \quad X(X^2 \cdot X), \quad X(X \cdot X^2).$$

Notations [15a, b] become quickly clumsy and difficult to handle, but we observe that any nonassociative product also can be represented by a *bifurcating tree*. Figure 9 (corresponding to  $n=4$ ) shows what we mean. The *height* of the tree is the number of levels above the *root*  $R$  (it

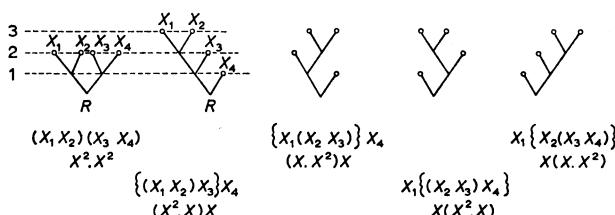


Fig. 9.

is 2 for the first tree, and 3 for the four others). There are  $n - 2$  nodes, or bifurcations different from  $R$ .

We try to find a recurrence relation between the  $a_n$ . The last multiplication, which ends the product of all factors  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$ , in this order, operates on a product of the first  $k$  letters and a product of the last  $n - k$  letters, for some  $k$  such that  $1 \leq k \leq n - 1$ . The first  $k$  letters can be bracketed in  $a_k$  different ways, and the  $(n - k)$  last ones can be bracketed in different ways. Thus we get, collecting all possibilities as  $k$  ranges over  $[n - 1]$ :

$$[15c] \quad a_n = \sum_{1 \leq k \leq n-1} a_k a_{n-k}, \quad n \geq 2.$$

We put:

$$[15d] \quad a_0 := 0, \quad a_1 := 1.$$

Let now  $\mathfrak{A}(t)$  be the GF of the  $a_n$ . Then we get, using [15c] for equality (\*) and [15d] for (\*\*) and Theorem B of p. 39 for (\*\*\*):

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{A} &= \mathfrak{A}(t) := \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n t^n = t + \sum_{n \geq 2} a_n t^n \\ &\stackrel{(*)}{=} t + \sum_{n \geq 2} t^n \left( \sum_{1 \leq k \leq n-1} a_k a_{n-k} \right) \\ &\stackrel{(**)}{=} t + \sum_{h, k \geq 0} a_h a_k t^{h+k} \\ &\stackrel{(***)}{=} t + \left( \sum_{h \geq 0} a_h t^h \right) \left( \sum_{k \geq 0} a_k t^k \right) = t + \mathfrak{A}^2 \\ &\Rightarrow \mathfrak{A}^2 - \mathfrak{A} + t = 0, \quad \mathfrak{A}(0) = 0 \\ &\stackrel{****}{\Rightarrow} \mathfrak{A}(t) = \frac{1}{2} (1 - \sqrt{1 - 4t}). \end{aligned}$$

In the implication (\*\*\*\*), we have considered  $\mathfrak{A}$  as a *function* of  $t$ , hence as solution of the preceding quadratic equation. The expansion of the root with [12e] (p. 37) gives us then the required value of  $a_n$ , which is often called the *Catalan number*:

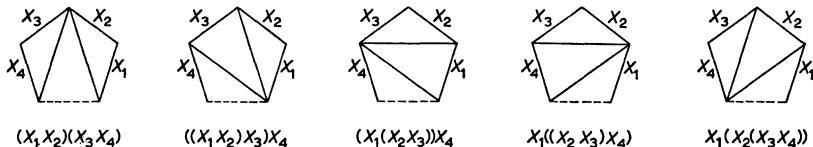
$$[15e] \quad a_n = \frac{1}{n} \binom{2n-2}{n-1}.$$

We list the first few values of  $a_n$ :

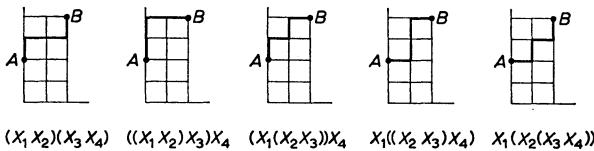
$n$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17
$a_n$	1	1	2	5	14	42	132	429	1430	4862	16796	58786	208012	742900	2674440	9694845	35357670

Let us finally mention two other representations of Catalan bracketings.

(1) *Triangulations of a convex polygon* (see also Exercise 8, p. 74). The following example clearly explains the rule:



(2) *Majority paths* (from André, p. 22). Every path joins  $A(0, 2)$  to  $B(n-2, n)$  with the following convention: any opening bracket ( signifies a vertical step and any letter different from  $X_{n-1}$  and  $X_n$  a horizontal step.



Using Theorem B (p. 21), with  $p=n-2$ ,  $q=n$ , we easily obtain [15e].

## (II) Wedderburn-Etherington commutative bracketing problem

([Wedderburn, 1922], [Etherington, 1937], [Harary, Prins, 1959]. For another aspect of this problem, see [Melzak, 1968].)

We suppose  $E$  this time to be *commutative*, and we call the number of interpretations of  $X^n$  in the sense of [15b] (p. 52) now  $b_n$ . Thus  $b_2=1$  and  $b_3=1$ , because  $X^2 \cdot X = X \cdot X^2$ ,  $b_4=2$ , because  $(X^2 \cdot X)X = (X \cdot X^2)X = X(X \cdot X^2) = X(X^2 \cdot X)$ . If one prefers, one can also consider  $b_n$  as the number of *binary trees*, two trees being considered identical if and only if one can be transformed into the other by reflections with respect to the vertical axes through the nodes. Thus, Figure 10 shows that  $b_5=3$ :

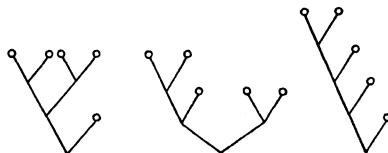


Fig. 10.

We obtain again a recurrence relation, this time again by inspecting the last multiplication performed, but now it depends on whether  $n$  is odd or even:

$$b_{2p-1} = b_1 b_{2p-2} + b_2 b_{2p-3} + \cdots + b_{p-1} b_p; \quad p \geq 2.$$

$$b_{2p} = b_1 b_{2p-1} + b_2 b_{2p-2} + \cdots + b_{p-1} b_{p+1} + \binom{b_p + 1}{2}; \quad p \geq 1.$$

This can also be written, when we put  $b_0 := 0$ ,  $b_1 := 1$ ,  $b_2 := 1$ ,  $b_x := 0$  for  $x \notin \mathbb{N}$ , as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} b_n &= \sum_{\substack{0 \leq i < j \leq n \\ i+j=n}} b_i b_j + \frac{1}{2} b_{n/2} + \frac{1}{2} (b_{n/2})^2, \quad n \geq 2, \\ \mathfrak{B}(t) := \sum_{n \geq 0} b_n t^n &= t + \underbrace{\sum_{n \geq 2} t^n \left( \sum_{\substack{0 \leq i < j \leq n \\ i+j=n}} b_i b_j \right)}_{(1)} + \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{n \geq 2} b_{n/2} t^n + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{n \geq 2} (b_{n/2})^2 t^n. \end{aligned}$$

Now:

$$\begin{aligned} (1) &= \sum_{j > i \geq 0} b_i b_j t^{i+j} = \frac{1}{2} \left( \sum_{i, j \geq 0} b_i b_j t^{i+j} - \sum_{i \geq 0} b_i^2 t^{2i} \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} (\mathfrak{B}^2(t) - \sum_{i \geq 0} b_i^2 t^{2i}). \end{aligned}$$

Hence:

$$\mathfrak{B}(t) = t + \frac{1}{2} \mathfrak{B}^2(t) + \frac{1}{2} \mathfrak{B}(t^2).$$

This is a functional equation, which can be simplified by putting  $\mathcal{B}(t) = 1 - \mathfrak{B}(t) = 1 - \sum_{n \geq 1} b_n t^n$ ; then we get:

$$[15f] \quad \mathcal{B}(t^2) = 2t + \mathfrak{B}^2(t).$$

$n$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17
$b_n$	1	1	1	2	3	6	11	23	46	98	207	451	983	2179	4850	10905	24631

$n$	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26
$b_n$	56011	127912	293547	676157	1563372	3626149	8436379	19680277	46026618

For a method giving an asymptotic equivalent, see [Otter, 1948]; after a computation due to Bender,  $b_n \sim 0.31877662 \dots (2.48325354 \dots)^n n^{-3/2}$ .

## (III) Generalized bracketing problem of Schröder ([Schröder, 1870])

We return to the *noncommutative* case, and we compute the number  $c_n$  of bracketings of  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$ , where we allow this time in each bracket an arbitrary number of *adjacent* factors. For example, for  $n=4$ , we must extend the list of [15a] by the following of Figure 11: (thus  $c_4=11$ )

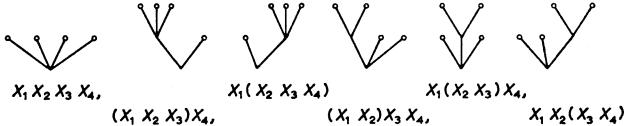


Fig. 11.

For a recurrence relation we consider again the last multiplication: this time there are not just two factors to be multiplied, but  $l (\geq 2)$ , of which  $l_1$  factors consist of one letter,  $l_2$  of two letters, etc. Hence:

$$\begin{aligned} [15g] \quad l_1 + l_2 + \dots + l_{n-1} + l_n &= l, \\ l_1 + 2l_2 + \dots + (n-1)l_{n-1} + nl_n &= n, \end{aligned}$$

with  $l_n=0$ , because  $l \geq 2$ . Now, there are  $l!/(l_1! l_2! \dots l_n!)$  different ways to arrange these  $l$  factors of the last operation, because the choice of a particular sequence of these  $l$  factors just means giving a  $(l_1, l_2, \dots, l_n)$ -division of  $[l]$  (cf. p. 27). Hence:

$$c_n = \sum \frac{l!}{l_1! l_2! \dots l_n!} c_1^{l_1} c_2^{l_2} \dots c_n^{l_n}, \quad n \geq 2, \quad c_0 := 0, \quad c_1 := 1,$$

where the summation takes place over the  $l_1, l_2, \dots$  such that [15g] and  $l \geq 2 (\Rightarrow n \geq 2)$ . Thus:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{C} &:= \sum_{n \geq 0} c_n t^n = t + \sum_{n \geq 2} c_n t^n \\ &= t + \sum_{l_1+l_2+\dots=l} \frac{(l_1 + l_2 + \dots)!}{l_1! l_2! \dots} (c_1 t)^{l_1} (c_2 t^2)^{l_2} \dots \\ &= t + \sum_{l \geq 2} \left\{ \sum_{l_1+l_2+\dots=l} \frac{l!}{l_1! l_2! \dots} (c_1 t)^{l_1} (c_2 t^2)^{l_2} \dots \right\} \\ &= t + \sum_{l \geq 2} (c_1 t + c_2 t^2 + \dots)^l = t + \sum_{l \geq 2} \mathfrak{C}^l = t + \frac{\mathfrak{C}^2}{1 - \mathfrak{C}} \\ &\Rightarrow 2\mathfrak{C}^2 - (1 + t)\mathfrak{C} + t = 0, \quad \mathfrak{C}(0) = 0. \end{aligned}$$

Hence, when we consider  $\mathfrak{C}(t)$  as a function of  $t$ , we get:

$$\mathfrak{C}(t) = \frac{1}{4}(1 + t - \sqrt{1 - 6t + t^2}).$$

If we expand the root  $(1+u)^{1/2}$ ,  $u = -6t + t^2$ , and rearrange the  $t^n$ , we get by using [12m] (p. 41):

$$[15h] \quad c_n = \sum_{0 \leq v \leq (n/2)} (-1)^v \frac{1 \cdot 3 \cdot \dots \cdot (2n - 2v - 3)}{v! (n - 2v)!} 3^{n-2v} 2^{-v-2}.$$

In fact, the  $c_n$  can be computed more quickly if we have a linear recurrence relation for them. Such a recurrence relation always exists for the Taylor coefficients of any algebraic function ([Comtet, 1964]), the coefficients being polynomials in  $n$ . In the case of  $\mathfrak{C}(t)$ , which is clearly algebraic, we get, with the necessary simplifications:

$$[15i] \quad (n-1) c_{n+1} = 3(2n-1) c_n - (n-2) c_{n-1}, \\ n \geq 2; \quad c_1 = c_2 = 1.$$

$n$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
$c_n$	1	1	3	11	45	197	903	4279	20793	103049	518859	2646723	13648869	71039373
$n$	15	16	17	18	19	20								
$c_n$	372693519	1968801519	10463578353	55909013009	300159426963	1618362158587								
$n$	21	22	23	24	25									
$c_n$	8759309660445	47574827600981	259215937709463	1416461675464871	7760733824437545									

### 1.16. RELATIONS

**DEFINITION A.** An  $m$ -ary relation  $\mathfrak{R}$  between  $m (\geq 2)$  sets  $N_1, N_2, \dots, N_m$  is a (possibly empty) subset of the product set  $N_1 \times N_2 \times \dots \times N_m$ . An  $m$ -tuple  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_m)$  is said to satisfy  $\mathfrak{R}$ , if and only if  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_m) \in \mathfrak{R}$ . If  $N_1 = N_2 = \dots = N_m = N$ , then  $\mathfrak{R}$  is called an  $m$ -ary relation on  $N$ ,  $\mathfrak{R} \subset N^m$ .

The case that is most interesting for us, is the case of the *binary* ( $m=2$ ) relations on  $N$ ,  $\mathfrak{R} \subset N^2$ . In this case we denote  $u\mathfrak{R}v$  [or not  $u\mathfrak{R}v$ ] if  $(u, v) \in \mathfrak{R}$  [or if  $(u, v) \notin \mathfrak{R}$ ]. For  $N$  finite, a good visualization of  $\mathfrak{R}$  is obtained by numbering the elements of  $N$ ,  $N := \{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n\}$  and then

make a rectangular *lattice* consisting of  $n$  vertical lines  $V_i$ , each corresponding to an  $x_i \in N$ ,  $i \in [n]$  and  $n$  horizontal lines  $H_j$ , each corresponding as well to an  $x_j \in N$  (in Figure 12,  $n=7$ ). The points of the intersections of  $V_i$  and  $H_j$  represent the points of  $N^2$ , and each point of  $\mathfrak{R}$  is indicated by a little dot  $\bullet$ . For instance, in Figure 12,  $x_2 \mathfrak{R} x_5$ , not  $x_6 \mathfrak{R} x_7$ . The points  $(x_i, x_i)$ ,  $i \in [n]$  are the points on the *diagonal*  $\Delta$  (see p. 3). The *lattice* representation thus introduced can also be applied to any relation between two sets  $N_1$  and  $N_2$ , if we think of  $N_1$  as the ‘abscissa’, and of  $N_2$  as the ‘ordinate’.

Another representation, called *matrix* representation of  $\mathfrak{R} \subset N_1 \times N_2$ ,  $|N_1|=n_1$ ,  $|N_2|=n_2$ , consists of associating with this relation an  $n_1 \times n_2$  matrix of 0 and 1, defined by  $a_{i,j}=1$  if  $(x_i, x_j) \in \mathfrak{R}$  and 0 otherwise, called the *incidence matrix* of  $\mathfrak{R}$ .

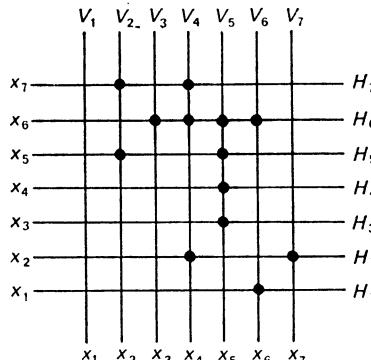


Fig. 12.

**DEFINITION B.** Let  $\mathfrak{R}$  be a binary relation on  $N$ ,  $\mathfrak{R} \subset N^2$ . (I) The reciprocal or inverse relation of  $\mathfrak{R}$ , denoted  $\mathfrak{R}^{-1}$  is defined by  $x \mathfrak{R}^{-1} y \Leftrightarrow y \mathfrak{R} x$  (the lattice image of  $\mathfrak{R}^{-1}$  is hence obtained from the lattice image of  $\mathfrak{R}$ , by reflection with respect to the diagonal  $\Delta$ ). (II)  $\mathfrak{R}$  is called total or complete, if and only if for all  $(x, y) \in N^2$   $x \mathfrak{R} y$  or  $y \mathfrak{R} x$  ( $\Leftrightarrow \mathfrak{R} \cup \mathfrak{R}^{-1} = N^2$ ). A relation which is not total, is called partial. (III)  $\mathfrak{R}$  is called reflexive, if and only if for all  $x \in N$ ,  $x \mathfrak{R} x$  ( $\Leftrightarrow \Delta \subset \mathfrak{R}$ ).  $\mathfrak{R}$  is antireflexive if and only if for all  $x \in N$ , not  $x \mathfrak{R} x$  ( $\Leftrightarrow \Delta \cap \mathfrak{R} = \emptyset$ ). (IV)  $\mathfrak{R}$  is called symmetric if and only if  $x \mathfrak{R} y \Rightarrow y \mathfrak{R} x$  ( $\Leftrightarrow \mathfrak{R} = \mathfrak{R}^{-1}$ ).  $\mathfrak{R}$  is antisymmetric or proper, if and only if  $(x \mathfrak{R} y, y \mathfrak{R} x) \Rightarrow x = y$  ( $\Leftrightarrow \mathfrak{R} \cap \mathfrak{R}^{-1} \subset \Delta$ ). (V)  $\mathfrak{R}$  is called transitive if and only if

$(xRy, yRz) \Rightarrow xRz$ . (VI) For  $x \in N$ , the first section, or vertical section of  $R$  along  $x$  is the subset  $\langle x | R \rangle$  of  $N$  consisting of the  $y \in N$  such that  $xRy$ . Similarly, the second section, or horizontal section  $\langle R | y \rangle$ ,  $y \in N$  is the set of  $x \in N$  satisfying  $xRy$ . If  $R$  is symmetric, then  $\langle x | R \rangle = \langle R | x \rangle$ . (VIII) The first projection of  $R$  on  $N$ , denoted by  $pr_1 R$  equals  $\{x \mid x \in N, \exists y \in N, xRy\}$ . Similarly, the second projection is  $pr_2 R := \{y \mid y \in N, \exists x \in N, xRy\}$ .

Finally, we recall the two most important binary relations.

**DEFINITION C.** An equivalence relation  $R$  on  $N$  is a binary relation, that is reflexive, symmetric and transitive. Then we say that  $x$  and  $y$  are equivalent, if and only if  $xRy$ . The section  $\langle x | R \rangle = \langle R | x \rangle$  is called equivalence class of  $x$ : this is the set of  $y$  that are equivalent to  $x$ .

The number  $w(n)$  of equivalence relations on  $N$ ,  $|N|=n$ , in other words, the number of partitions of  $N$  will be extensively studied (see p. 204).

**DEFINITION D.** An order relation  $R$  on  $N$  is a binary relation on  $N$ , which is reflexive, antisymmetric, and transitive. Often  $x \leq y$  is written instead of  $xRy$ . A set is said to be ordered, if it has been provided with an order relation; if, moreover, for all  $x, y \in N$ ,  $x \leq y$  or  $y \geq x$ , then the set is called totally ordered. The section  $\langle x | R \rangle = \{v \mid x \leq v\}$  is called the set of upper bounds of  $x$  and the section  $\langle R | y \rangle = \{u \mid u \leq y\}$  is called the set of lower bounds of  $y$ . For  $x, y \in N$  the segment  $[x, y]$  is the set of  $z \in N$  such that  $x \leq z \leq y$ .  $x < y$  means  $x \leq y$  and  $x \neq y$ . A chain with  $k$  vertices (and length  $k-1$ ) connecting  $x, y \in N$  is a finite set  $z_1, z_2, \dots, z_k$  such that  $x = z_1 < z_2 < \dots < z_k = y$ . A lattice is an ordered set  $N$  such that for each pair  $(x, y)$  of elements of  $N$  there exist: (1) an element  $b \in N$ , often denoted by  $x \vee y$ , which is the smallest element of the set of upper bounds for both  $x$  and  $y$  (also called least upper bound), in the sense that  $x \leq b$ ,  $y \leq b$  and  $x \leq v$ ,  $y \leq v \Rightarrow b \leq v$ ; (2) an element  $a \in N$ , often denoted by  $x \wedge y$ , the largest lower bound of both  $x$  and  $y$  (also called greatest lower bound), in the sense that  $a \leq x$ ,  $a \leq y$  and  $u \leq x$ ,  $u \leq y \Rightarrow u \leq a$ .

The number  $d_n$  of the order relations on  $N$ ,  $|N|=n$ , equals the number of  $T_0$ -topologies of  $N$  ([\*Birkhoff, 1967, p. 117]) and the existence of a simple explicit formula seems completely impossible; even asymptotic

estimates for  $d_n$  when  $n \rightarrow \infty$  turns out to be a very difficult combinatorial problem ([Comtet, 1966], [Harary, 1967], [Kleitman, Rotschild, 1970], [(J.) Wright, 1972]. See also Exercise 25, p. 229).

The following is the list of known values of  $d_n$  and the numbers  $d_n^*$  of the nonisomorphic order relations (two relations are called isomorphic if one can be changed into the other by simply rearranging the numbering of the elements of  $N$ . The value  $d_g$  due to [Erné, 1974]).

$n$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
$d_n$	1	3	19	219	4231	130023	6129859	431723379	44511042511
$d_n^*$	1	2	5	16	63	318	2045		

Actually, we can introduce the numbers  $D(n, k)$  of (labelled) order relations of which the longest chain has  $k$  vertices (of course,  $d_n = \sum_k D(n, k)$ ):

$n/k$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
1	1							
2	1	2						
3	1	12	6					
4	1	86	108	24				
5	1	840	2310	960	120			
6	1	11642	65700	42960	9000	720		
7	1	227892	2583126	2510760	712320	90720	5040	
8	1	6285806	142259628	199424904	71243760	11481120	987840	40320

### 1.17. GRAPHS

Though we do not want to study graphs, we will sometimes use a little of the language of graph theory, hence this and the next section. We have to make a choice among the various current names of certain concepts, since in this field, the terminology is not yet completely standardized. Actually, this situation has some advantages, as it compels each publication on this subject to define its terms carefully. Any book on graphs can be used as a first introduction to graph theory. (For example [\*Berge, 1958], [\*Busacker, Saaty, 1965], [\*Fiedler, 1964], [\*Flament, 1965], [\*Ford, Fulkerson, 1967], [\*Harary, 1967a, b], [\*Harary, Norman, Cartwright, 1965], [\*Kaufman, 1968a, b], [\*König, 1936], [\*Moon, 1968], [\*Ore, 1962, 1963, 1967], [\*Pellet, 1968], [\*Ringel, 1959],

[\*Sainte-Lagüe, 1926], [\*Sheshu, Reed, 1961], [\*Tutte, 1966], and particularly, in the viewpoint adopted here, the attractive book by [\*Harary, 1969].)

Let  $N$  be a finite set. We recall that a *pair*  $B$  of  $N$  is a 2-block of  $N$  ( $=$  2-combination, or subset of two elements, p. 7);  $B \in \mathfrak{P}_2(N)$ .

**DEFINITION A.** *A graph (over  $N$ ) is a pair  $(N, \mathcal{G})$ , in which  $\mathcal{G}$  is a set (possibly empty) of pairs of  $N$ ,  $\mathcal{G} \subset \mathfrak{P}_2(N)$ . The elements of  $N$  are called the nodes or vertices of the graph, and the pairs ( $\in \mathcal{G}$ ) are called edges of the graph. One often says “the graph  $\mathcal{G}$ ” rather than “the graph  $(N, \mathcal{G})$ ”, when the set  $N$  is given once and for all.*

**THEOREM A.** *Giving a graph  $\mathcal{G}$  on  $N$  is equivalent to giving a binary relation  $\mathcal{I}$  on  $N$ ,  $\mathcal{I} \subset N^2$ , which is symmetric and antireflexive, called incidence relation associated with  $\mathcal{G}$ .*

■ Define  $\mathcal{I}$  by  $x\mathcal{I}y \Leftrightarrow \{x, y\} \in \mathcal{G}$  ■

A convenient *plane* representation of a graph consists in drawing the nodes as points and the edges as straight or curved segments, and ignoring their intersections. Figure 13 represents  $N := \{a, b, c, \dots, k, l\}$  and  $\mathcal{G} := \{\{a, b\}, \{b, c\}, \{c, d\}, \{c, f\}, \{d, e\}, \{d, g\}, \{e, k\}, \{e, f\}, \{f, g\}, \{f, j\}, \{h, i\}\}$ .

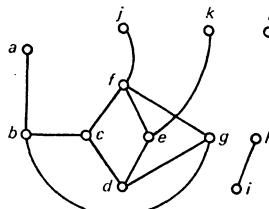


Fig. 13.

**DEFINITION B.** Let  $\mathcal{G} (\subset \mathfrak{P}_2(N))$  be a graph over  $N$ . (I) An edge containing a node  $x (\in N)$  is called incident with  $x$ , and  $\mathcal{G}(x)$  designates the set of these edges. The number  $|\mathcal{G}(x)|$  of edges incident with  $x$ , also denoted by  $\delta(x)$ , is called the degree of  $x$ . Two nodes  $x$  and  $y$  are called adjacent, if  $\{x, y\} \in \mathcal{G}$ . Similarly, two edges are called adjacent if they have a node in common. A node is called an end point or terminal node, if its degree

equals 1; the edge adjacent to  $x$  (which is unique) is also called terminal. An isolated node is one with degree 0. (II)  $(N', \mathcal{G}')$  is a subgraph of  $(N, \mathcal{G})$  if  $N' \subset N$ ,  $\mathcal{G}' \subset \mathcal{G}$ ,  $\mathcal{G}' \subset \mathfrak{P}_2(N')$ ; it is called a complete subgraph (or a clique), with support  $N'$  if  $\mathcal{G}' = \mathfrak{P}_2(N')$ . An independent set  $L (\subset N)$  in a graph  $\mathcal{G}$  is a set such that  $\mathfrak{P}_2(L) \cap \mathcal{G} = \emptyset$ ; hence is a complete subgraph of the complementary graph, which is the graph  $\bar{\mathcal{G}} := \mathfrak{P}_2(N) - \mathcal{G}$ . (III) A path or chain connecting  $a$  and  $b (\in N)$  is a sequence of adjacent edges  $\{a_1, x_1\}, \{x_1, x_2\}, \dots, \{x_{l-1}, b\}$ ; this path  $\{a, x_1, x_2, \dots, x_{l-1}, b\}$  is said to have length  $l$  (multiple points may occur, as in the case of the path  $\{j, f, c, d, e, f, g\}$  of Figure 13). A cycle or circuit is a closed path. (For instance,  $\{c, f, g, d, c\}$  in Figure 13.) An Euler circuit is a circuit in which all edges of  $\mathcal{G}$  occur precisely once. A Hamiltonian circuit is a circuit that passes exactly once through every node. (IV) A graph is called connected if every two nodes are connected by at least one path. (V) A tree is a connected acyclic (=without cycles) graph. The distance between two points in a tree is the number of the edges in the (unique) path joining  $a$  with  $b$  (no repetitions of edges allowed to occur in this path).

We indicate now a way to draw a tree  $\mathcal{T}$  of  $N$ . We choose a node  $x_0 (\in N)$ . From  $x_0$  we trace the edges connecting  $x_0$  with the adjacent nodes (those who have distance 1 to  $x_0$ ), say  $x_{1,1}, x_{1,2}, \dots$ . We arrange these on a horizontal line (Figure 14). From these points, we trace the edges that connect them with the points situated at distance 2 from  $x_0$  (hence adjacent to  $x_{1,i}$  and not equal to  $x_0$ ), etc. A tree in which such a special

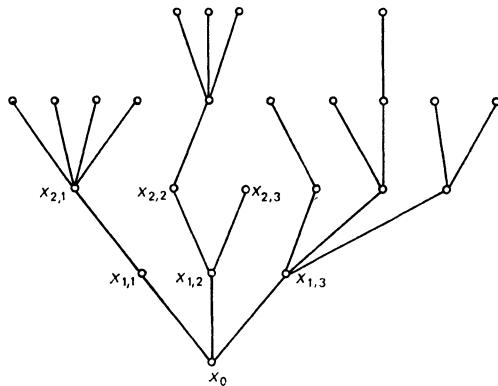


Fig. 14.

point  $x_0$ , the *root*, has been chosen, is also called *rooted tree*. The preceding construction proves Figure 14.

**THEOREM B.** *Each tree has at least two endpoints, and for  $n \geq 3$ , at least two terminal edges.*

Another characterization of trees is:

**THEOREM C.** *Any two of the following three conditions (1), (2) and (3) imply the third, and moreover, imply that the graph  $\mathcal{G}$  over  $N$ ,  $|N|=n$  is a tree: (1)  $\mathcal{G}$  is connected; (2)  $\mathcal{G}$  is acyclic; (3)  $\mathcal{G}$  has  $(n-1)$  edges.*

■ (1), (2) $\Rightarrow$ (3). In other words, by Definition B (V), any tree with  $n$  vertices has  $n-1$  edges. This is true for  $n=2$ . We prove the statement by complete induction, and we suppose it to be true for all trees having up to  $(n-1)$  edges. In a tree  $\mathcal{G}$  with  $n$  nodes, we cut off one of the terminal nodes and its incident edge. The new graph obtained in this way is evidently a tree, hence it contains  $(n-1)$  nodes, so  $|\mathcal{G}'|=n-2$  according to the induction hypothesis; hence  $|\mathcal{G}|=n-1$ .

(1), (3) $\Rightarrow$ (2). We reason by *reductio ad absurdum*. Suppose that there exists  $(N, \mathcal{G})$ ,  $|N|=n$ ,  $|\mathcal{G}|=n-1$ , which is connected, and with at least one cycle  $\mathcal{C}$ . We break the cycle  $\mathcal{C}$  by omitting one edge. Thus we obtain a new graph  $(N, \mathcal{G}_1)$ , still connected, with  $|\mathcal{G}_1|=n-2$ . We repeat this operation until there are no cycles left, so we have a connected *acyclic* graph  $(N, \mathcal{G}_i)$ , with  $n-1-i$  edges, for some  $i \geq 1$ , which contradicts the statement that (1), (2) imply (3).

(2), (3) $\Rightarrow$ (1). If not, there exists  $(N, \mathcal{G})$ ,  $|N|=n$ ,  $|\mathcal{G}|=n-1$ , with two nodes  $a, b \in N$  not connected by a path of  $\mathcal{G}$ . If we connect  $a$  and  $b$  by a new edge  $\{a, b\}$ , we obtain a new graph  $(N, \mathcal{G}_1)$ , which is still acyclic, with  $|\mathcal{G}_1|=n$ . Repeating this procedure, we finally obtain a *connected* acyclic graph  $(N, \mathcal{G}_i)$  with  $n-1+i$  edges, for some  $i \geq 1$ , which again contradicts that (1), (2) imply (3). ■

Let us now prove the famous *Cayley theorem* ([Cayley, 1889]).

**THEOREM D.** *The number of trees over  $N$ ,  $|N|=n$ , equals  $n^{n-2}$ .*

There are many proofs of this theorem. One kind, of constructive type,

establishes a bijection between the set of trees over  $[n]$  and the set  $[n]^{[n-2]}$  of  $(n-2)$ -tuples of  $[n]$ ,  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_{n-2})$ ,  $x_i \in [n]$ . ([Foata, Fuchs, 1970], [Neville, 1953], [Prüfer, 1918], and, for a generalization to  $k$ -trees, [Foata, 1971]. See also p. 71.) Others follow the path of obtaining the various enumerations suggested by the problem. ([Clarke, 1958], [Dziobek, 1917], [Katz, 1955], [Mallows, Riordan, 1968], [Moon, 1963, 1967a, b], [Riordan, 1957a, 1960, 1965, 1966], [Rényi, 1959].) We give here the proof of Moon, which is of the second type.

**THEOREM E.** Let  $\mathbf{T} = \mathbf{T}(N; d_1, d_2, \dots, d_n)$  be the set of trees over  $N := := \{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n\}$  whose node  $x_i$  has degree  $d_i (\geq 1)$ ,  $i \in [n]$ , where  $d_1 + d_2 + \dots + d_n = 2(n-1)$ . Then:

$$\begin{aligned}[17a] T(n; d_1, d_2, \dots, d_n) &:= |\mathbf{T}(N; d_1, d_2, \dots, d_n)| \\ &= (d_1 - 1, d_2 - 1, \dots, d_n - 1). \end{aligned}$$

(We use here the notation for the multinomial coefficients introduced in [10c'], p. 27.)

It is clear that  $T(n; d_1, d_2, \dots) = 0$  if  $d_1 + d_2 + \dots \neq 2(n-1)$ , because every tree over  $N$  has  $(n-1)$  edges (Theorem C., p. 63). We first prove three lemmas.

**LEMMA A.** Let integers  $b_i \geq 1$ ,  $i \in [s]$ , be given such that  $\sum_{i=1}^s b_i = m$ . Then:

$$[17b] \quad (b_1, \dots, b_s) = \sum_{k=1}^s (b_1, b_2, \dots, b_k - 1, \dots, b_s).$$

(So, this formula is a generalization of the binomial relation  $(b, c) = (b-1, c) + (b, c-1)$ , [5e] p. 10.)

■ Let be given a set  $M$ ,  $|M| = m$ . The left-hand member of [17b] enumerates the set  $\mathbf{p}$  of divisions  $\mathcal{P} = (B_1, B_2, \dots, B_s)$  of  $M$ , where  $|B_i| = = b_i$ ,  $i \in [s]$  (p. 27). Now we choose an  $x \in M$  and we put  $\mathbf{p}_k = \{\mathcal{P} \mid \mathcal{P} \in \mathbf{p}, x \in B_k\}$ ; then [17b] follows from the fact that:

$$\mathbf{p} = \sum_{1 \leq k \leq s} \mathbf{p}_k, \quad |\mathbf{p}_k| = (b_1, b_2, \dots, b_k - 1, \dots, b_s). \quad \blacksquare$$

Then the next lemma follows immediately:

**LEMMA B.** Let be given integers  $a_j \geq 0, j \in [t]$  such that  $\sum_{j=1}^t a_j = m$ . Then:

$$[17c] \quad (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_t) = \sum_{j=1}^t (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_j - 1, \dots, a_t),$$

where the summation is taken over all  $j$  such that  $a_j \geq 1$ . (If not, then the multinomial coefficient under the summation sign equals 0 by definition. Compare with [Tauber, 1963])

Now we return to [17a], and we suppose that:

$$[17d] \quad d_1 \geq d_2 \geq \dots \geq d_n.$$

This amounts to changing the numbering of the  $x_i$ .

**LEMMA C.** Summing over the  $i$  such that  $d_i \geq 2$ , the following holds,

$$[17e] \quad T(n; d_1, d_2, \dots, d_n) = \sum_{i: d_i \geq 2} T(n-1; d_1, \dots, d_i-1, \dots, d_{n-1}).$$

■ It follows from [17d] and from Theorem B that  $d_n = 1$ . Let  $T_i := \{ \mathcal{T} \mid \mathcal{T} \in T, x_n \text{ adjacent to } x_i \}$ . Hence  $i \leq n-1$  and  $d_i \geq 2$ . Now we have the division  $T = \sum T_i$ , where we sum over all  $i$  such that  $d_i \geq 2$ . Hence [17e], if we observe that

$$|T_i| = |T(N - \{x_n\}; d_1, \dots, d_i-1, \dots, d_{n-1})|. \quad \blacksquare$$

*Proof of Theorem E.* We prove formula [17a] by induction. It is clearly true for  $n=3$ . Suppose true for  $n-1$  and smaller. Then, with [17e] and the induction hypotheses for equality (\*),  $d_n = 1$  for (\*\*) and [17c] for (\*\*\*):

$$\begin{aligned} T(n; d_1, d_2, \dots, d_n) &= \\ &\stackrel{(*)}{=} \sum_{i: d_i \geq 2} (d_1 - 1, \dots, d_i - 2, \dots, d_{n-1} - 1) \\ &\stackrel{(**)}{=} \sum_{i: d_i \geq 2} (d_1 - 1, \dots, d_i - 2, \dots, d_n - 1) \stackrel{(***)}{=} [17a]. \quad \blacksquare \end{aligned}$$

**THEOREM F.** The number  $L(n, k)$  of trees  $\mathcal{T}$  over  $N$  such that a given node, say  $x_n$ , has degree  $k$ , equals:

$$[17f] \quad L(n, k) = \binom{n-2}{k-1} (n-1)^{n-k-1}.$$

■ We have, using [17a] for equality (\*), and  $c_i := d_i - 1$ ,  $i \in [n-1]$  for (\*\*), and [10f] (p. 28) for (\*\*\*):

$$\begin{aligned}
 L(n, k) &\stackrel{(*)}{=} \sum_{d_1 + \dots + d_{n-1} = 2n-2-k} (d_1 - 1, \dots, d_{n-1} - 1, k - 1) \\
 &\stackrel{(**)}{=} \sum_{c_1 + \dots + c_{n-1} = n-k-1} (c_1, c_2, \dots, c_{n-1}, k - 1) \\
 &= \binom{n-2}{k-1} \sum_{c_1 + \dots + c_{n-1} = n-k-1} (c_1, c_2, \dots, c_{n-1}) \\
 &\stackrel{(***)}{=} \binom{n-2}{k-1} (n-1)^{n-k-1}. \quad \blacksquare
 \end{aligned}$$

*Proof of Theorem D.* By Theorem F, the total number of trees over  $N$  equals:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \sum_{k \geq 1} L(n, k) &= \sum_{1 \leq k \leq n-1} \binom{n-2}{k-1} (n-1)^{n-k-1} \\
 &= \{1 + (n-1)\}^{n-2} = n^{n-2}.
 \end{aligned}$$

To finish this section on graphs, we discuss the *Hasse diagram* of an order relation over  $N$ . This graph is obtained by joining  $a$  and  $b$  if and only if  $a \leq b$  and  $a \leq c \leq b \Rightarrow c = a$  or  $c = b$  ( $\Leftrightarrow b$  covers  $a$ ). In this case  $b$  is placed over  $a$ . For example, Figure 15 is the Hasse diagram of the order relation  $\leq$  on  $N = \{a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j\}$  defined by  $a \leq b$ ,  $a \leq d$ ,  $b \leq c$ ,  $d \leq e$ ,  $d \leq f$ ,  $e \leq c$ ,  $f \leq c$ ,  $g \leq i$ ,  $g \leq h$ . If one wants to avoid, in this diagram, the difficulty of putting every point on different heights, then one must orient the edges; in this case one obtains a *transitive digraph*, as in Figure 16.

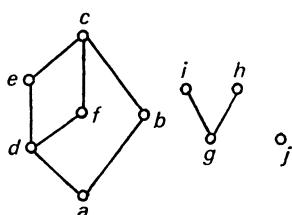


Fig. 15.

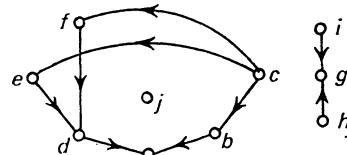


Fig. 16.

## 1.18. DIGRAPHS; FUNCTIONS FROM A FINITE SET INTO ITSELF

(I) *Digraphs in general*

We call a 2-arrangement  $(x, y)$  of  $N$  an *ordered pair*, that is a pair in which we distinguish a first element,  $(x, y) \in \mathfrak{A}_2(N)$ , (see p. 6).

**DEFINITION A.** A digraph  $(N, \mathcal{D})$  or directed graph (over  $N$ ) is a pair, is such that  $\mathcal{D}$  is a (possibly empty) set of ordered pairs from  $N$ ,  $\mathcal{D} \subset \mathfrak{A}_2(N)$ . The elements of  $N$  are then called the nodes or vertices of the digraph, and the ordered pairs are called the arcs. One often says "digraph  $\mathcal{D}$ ", rather than "digraph  $(N, \mathcal{D})$ ", in case the set  $N$  is given once and for all.

Most of the concepts introduced in the previous section have their analogue in digraphs. For instance, the *outdegree* of  $x ( \in N )$ , denoted by  $od(x)$  is the number of arcs leaving  $x$ ; the *indegree*, denoted by  $id(x)$  is the number of arcs entering  $x$ . An oriented cycle is a cycle on which the orientation of the arcs is such that of two consecutive arcs always the first one is entering their common node, and the other is leaving it (or vice versa). Other definitions are adapted in the same manner.

**THEOREM A.** Giving a digraph  $\mathcal{D}$  over  $N$  is equivalent to giving an antireflexive binary relation  $\mathfrak{J}$  on  $N$ ,  $\mathfrak{J} \subset N^2$ , called the incidence relation of  $\mathcal{D}$ .

■ Define  $\mathfrak{J}$  by:  $x \mathfrak{J} y \Leftrightarrow (x, y) \in \mathcal{D}$  ■

There is again a plane representation, analogous the one introduced on p. 61, but with arrows added. Figure 17 shows a digraph and its associated relation. If the relation was not antireflexive, we had to introduce loops into the digraph. But digraphs with loops permitted and relations are the same.

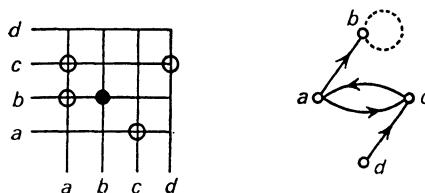


Fig. 17.

(II) *Tournaments*

**DEFINITION B.** A tournament (over  $N$ ) is a digraph  $\mathcal{D}$  such that every pair  $\{x_i, x_j\} \in \mathfrak{P}_2(N)$  is connected by precisely one arc. If the arc  $x_i x_j$  belongs to  $\mathcal{D}$ , we say that  $x_i$  dominates  $x_j$ . The score  $s_i$  of  $x_i$  is the number of nodes  $x_j$  that are dominated by  $x_i$ . Usually, the nodes ( $\in N$ ) of  $\mathcal{D}$  are numbered in such a way that:

$$[18a] \quad (0 \leqslant) \quad s_1 \leqslant s_2 \leqslant \cdots \leqslant s_n \quad (\leqslant n - 1).$$

The  $n$ -tuple  $(s_1, s_2, \dots, s_n) \in \mathbb{N}^n$  is then called the score vector of  $\mathcal{D}$ .

The relation  $\mathcal{I}$  (the incidence relation on  $N$ ) associated with  $\mathcal{D}$  is hence total, antireflexive and antisymmetric. Figure 18 represents a tournament in which  $s_1 = s_2 = 1$ ,  $s_3 = s_4 = 2$ .

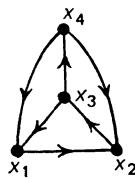


Fig. 18.

**THEOREM B.** A sequence  $(s_1, s_2, \dots, s_n)$  of integers such that [18a] holds, is a score vector if and only if:

$$[18b] \quad \sum_{i=1}^n s_i = \binom{n}{2}$$

$$[18c] \quad \text{For all } k \in [n], \quad \sum_{i=1}^k s_i \geqslant \binom{k}{2}.$$

■ We only show that the condition is necessary. (For sufficiency, see the beautiful book by [\*Moon, 1968] on tournaments, or the papers by [Landau, 1953] or [Ryser, 1964]. The reader is also referred to [\*André, 1900] and [André, 1898–1900].) For all  $x \in N$  let  $\mathcal{A}(x)$  be the set of arcs issuing from  $x$ ,  $|\mathcal{A}(x_i)| = s_i$ ; [18b] follows then from considering the cardinalities in the division  $\sum_{i=1}^n \mathcal{A}(x_i) = \mathcal{D}$ . On the other hand, for all

$K \subset N$ , the set of  $\binom{k}{2}$  arcs whose two nodes belong to  $K$ , clearly is contained in  $\sum_{x \in K} \mathcal{A}(x)$ ; hence [18c], by considering the cardinalities of the sets involved. ■

(III) *Maps of a finite set into itself*

DEFINITION C. A digraph over  $N$  is called *functional* if the outdegree of every node equals 0 or 1:  $\forall x \in N, od(x) \leq 1$ .

There exists a bijection between the set  $N^N$  of maps  $\varphi$  of  $N$  into itself and the set of such digraphs  $\mathcal{D}$ . In fact, we may associate  $\mathcal{D}$  with  $\varphi$  by  $(x, y) \in \mathcal{D} \Leftrightarrow \varphi(x) = y, y \neq x$ . In this case  $\mathcal{D}$  is called the ‘functional digraph associated with  $\varphi$ ’. Figure 19 corresponds to a  $\varphi \in [22]^{[22]}$ .

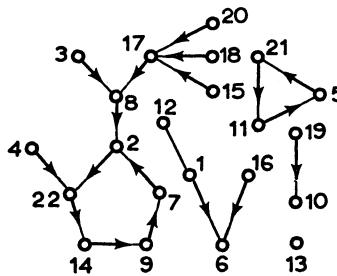


Fig. 19.

The map  $\varphi$  will be a permutation if, moreover, for all  $x \in N$ ,  $id(x) \leq 1$ .

THEOREM C. The relation  $\mathcal{E}$  on  $N$  defined by:  $x \mathcal{E} y \Leftrightarrow \exists p \in \mathbb{N}, \exists q \in \mathbb{N}$  such that  $\varphi^p(x) = \varphi^q(y)$  is an equivalence relation. The restriction of  $\varphi$  to each class of  $\mathcal{E}$  has for associated digraph an oriented cycle, to which (possibly) some trees are attached. Such a digraph is sometimes called an ‘excycle’ (Weaver).

The classes of  $\mathcal{E}$  are the connected components of  $\mathcal{D}$ . In the case of Figure 19, there are 5 excycles. In this way each map  $\varphi \in N^N$  can be decomposed into a product of disjoint excycles, this result being analogous to the decomposition of a permutation into cyclic permutations. (For

other properties of  $N^N$  see, for example, [Dénes, 1966, 1968], [Harary, 1959b], [Hedrlin, 1963], [Read, 1961], [Riordan, 1962a], [Schützenberger, 1968]. For the ‘probabilistic’ aspect see [Katz, 1955], [Purdom, Williams, 1968].)

**DEFINITION D.** A map  $\varphi \in N^N$  is called acyclic if each of its excycles is a rooted tree. In other words, giving  $\varphi$  is equivalent to giving a rooted forest over  $N$ , i.e. a covering of  $N$  by disjoint rooted trees.

For instance, the map  $\varphi$  of Figure 19 is not acyclic, but the following is:  $\psi(i) := i+1$  for  $i \in [21]$  and  $\psi(22) := 22$ .

**THEOREM D.** The number of acyclic maps of  $N$  into itself, that is, the number of rooted forests over  $N$ ,  $|N|=n$ , equals  $(n+1)^{n-1}$ .

■ We adjoin a point  $x$  to the set  $N$ , and we let  $P := \{x\} \cup N$ ;  $|P| = n+1$ . Each tree  $T$  over  $P$  becomes a rooted forest if we chop off the branches issuing from  $x$ . We call this rooted forest  $\varphi(T)$ . Its roots are just the nodes adjacent to  $x$  in  $T$ . This map establishes, evidently, a bijection between the rooted forests over  $N$  and the trees over  $P$ , hence by Theorem D (the Cayley theorem) (p. 63),  $|P|^{|P|-2} = (n+1)^{n-1}$ . ■

**THEOREM E.** The number of acyclic maps of  $N$  into itself, with exactly  $k$  roots, equals  $\binom{n-1}{k-1} n^{n-k}$ .

■ As before, by joining a  $(n+1)$ -th point  $x$  to each root, we get a tree with  $n+1$  nodes, in which  $x$  has degree  $k$ . Then apply [17f] (p. 65). ■

(IV) Coding functions of a finite set ([Foata, 1970]).

After labeling, we can work with the set  $[n] := \{1, 2, 3, \dots, n\}$ . Let us explain how to represent any map  $f$  of  $[n]$  into itself, that is to say any function  $f \in [n]^{\{n\}}$ , by a word  $\mathfrak{x} = \mathfrak{x}(f)$  in the noncommutative indeterminates (or letters)  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$ , where each  $x_i$  is identified with the element (or label)  $i \in [n]$ .

Every cycle of  $f$  (p. 69) supplies letters of a word, whose first letter, or label, is its greatest element, the other letters following in the opposite

*direction* of the arrows. For example, the cycle  $(5 \rightarrow 21 \rightarrow 11 \rightarrow 5)$  of Figure 19 gives  $x_{21}x_5x_{11}$ . Now, juxtaposing from left to right the preceding words by *increasing labels*, we get a word  $w_0$  which represents the cyclic part of  $f$ . Here,  $w_0 = x_6x_{10}x_{13}x_{21}x_5x_{11}x_{22}x_2x_7x_9x_{14}$ . Considering then the *first leaf* (terminal node  $x$  of the digraph, such that  $idx=0$ ,  $odx=1$ , with the *smallest label*), we construct a word  $w_1$  which is the path joining this leaf to  $w_0$ , *leaf excluded, root included*, but written *from root to leaf*. Here the first leaf being 3, we have  $w_1 = x_2x_8$ . The same operation applied to the *second leaf* (here 4) with the path joining it to  $w_0w_1$  gives a word  $w_2$  (here  $x_{22}$ ). The third leaf (12) would introduce  $w_3 = x_6x_1$  and so on. Finally, we define  $\mathfrak{x} = \mathfrak{x}(f) := w_0w_1w_2w_3\dots$ . Here,  $\mathfrak{x} = x_6x_{10}x_{13}x_{21}x_5x_{11}x_{22}x_2x_7x_9x_{14}x_2x_8x_{22}x_6x_1x_8x_{17}x_6x_{17}x_{10}x_{17}$ . Of course, no leaf is represented in  $\mathfrak{x}$ , and the first repetition in  $\mathfrak{x}$  ends the cyclic part of  $f$ . So, it could be easily shown that  $\mathfrak{x}$  establishes a *bijection* between  $[n]^{[n]}$  and the set  $[n]^*$  of words with  $n$  letters (or  $n$ -arrangements, p. 18) on the alphabet  $\{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n\}$ .

To train the reader to code and decode, the following examples are given. (1) If  $f$  is the identity, then  $\mathfrak{x} = x_1x_2\dots x_n$ . (2)  $f(1)=1, f(2)=f(3)=\dots=f(n)=1$ ;  $\mathfrak{x} = x_1^n$ . (3)  $f$  is *circular*:  $f(1)=2, f(2)=3, f(3)=4, \dots, f(n-1)=n, f(n)=1$ ;  $\mathfrak{x} = x_nx_{n-1}\dots x_2x_1$ . (4)  $f(1)=1, f(2)=1, f(3)=2, f(4)=3, \dots, f(n)=n-1$ ;  $\mathfrak{x} = x_1^2x_2x_3\dots x_{n-1}$ . (5)  $f(1)=f(m+1)=1, f(2)=f(m+2)=2, \dots, f(m)=f(2m)=m$ ;  $\mathfrak{x} = (x_1x_2\dots x_m)^2$ . (6)  $f(1)=f(2)=1, f(3)=f(m+1)=2, f(4)=f(m+2)=3, \dots, f(m)=f(2m-2)=m-1, f(2m-1)=f(2m)$ ;  $\mathfrak{x} = x_1^2x_2^2\dots x_m^2$ .

Instead of  $\mathfrak{x} = \mathfrak{x}(f)$ , it could be useful to introduce the *Abelian word*  $t = t(f)$ , that is  $\mathfrak{x}$  in which letters  $x_1, x_2, \dots$  are replaced by commutative variables  $t_1, t_2, \dots$ . So, in the case of Figure 19, we get  $t(f) = t_1t_2^2t_5t_6^2t_7t_8^2t_9t_{10}^2t_{11}t_{13}t_{14}t_{17}^3t_{21}t_{22}$ .

#### (V) Enumerator of a subset of $[n]^{[n]}$

Given  $E \subset [n]^{[n]}$ , it would be worthwhile to consider the *enumerator* of  $E$ , that is the (commutative) polynomial  $\mathcal{T} = \mathcal{T}_E = \sum_{f \in E} t(f)$ . Let us give a few examples. (1) If  $E = [n]^{[n]}$ , then  $\mathcal{T} = (t_1 + t_2 + \dots + t_n)^n$ . (2) If  $E$  is the set of functions of  $[n]$  for which  $1, 2, 3, \dots, k$  are *fixed points*, then  $\mathcal{T} = t_1t_2\dots t_k(t_1 + t_2 + \dots + t_n)^{n-k}$ . (3) If  $E$  is the set of *acyclic functions* whose fixed points (roots) are  $1, 2, 3, \dots, k$ , then  $\mathcal{T} = (t_1t_2\dots t_k)(t_1 + t_2 + \dots + t_k)(t_1 + t_2 + \dots + t_n)^{n-k-1}$ . Of course,  $\mathcal{T}_E(1, 1, 1, \dots) = |E|$ .

So, the three preceding examples allow us to obtain (again) the numbers (1)  $n^n$  of functions of  $[n]$ , (2)  $n^{n-k}$  of functions with  $k$  given fixed points, (3)  $k \cdot n^{n-k-1}$  of trees with  $k$  given roots (especially Cayley if  $k=1$ ). Similarly, the coefficient of  $t_1^{\alpha_1} t_2^{\alpha_2} \dots$  in  $\mathcal{T}_E(t_1, t_2, \dots)$  is the number of  $f \in E$  such that  $\mathfrak{x}(f)$  has  $\alpha_1$  occurrences of  $n_1$ ,  $\alpha_2$  occurrences of  $n_2$ , etc.

For any *division* of  $E$ ,  $E=E_1+E_2+\dots$ , we have  $\mathcal{T}_E=\mathcal{T}_{E_1}+\mathcal{T}_{E_2}+\dots$  obviously. Finally, let us consider a division of  $[n]$ ,  $[n]=\sum A_i$ , and a family of sets  $E_i$  of functions,  $E_i \subset [n]^{[n]}$ , having the following property: every  $f \in E_i$  acts on  $A_i$  only, i.e.  $f \in E_i \Rightarrow \forall x \notin A_i, f(x)=x$ . Then the set  $E=E_1 E_2 E_3 \dots$  of all functions which can be *factorized*  $f=f_1 f_2 f_3 \dots$  (in the sense of the composition of functions, here commutative), where  $f_1 \in E_1, f_2 \in E_2, \dots$  is such that  $\mathcal{T}_{E_1}=\mathcal{T}_{E_2} \cdot \mathcal{T}_{E_3} \cdots$ .

## SUPPLEMENT AND EXERCISES

(As far as possible we follow the order of the sections.)

**1. *n points in a plane.*** Let  $N$  be a set of  $n$  points or nodes in the plane such that no three among them are collinear. Moreover, we suppose that each pair among the  $\binom{n}{2}$  straight lines connecting each pair of points is intersecting, and also no three among these lines have a point in common other than one of the given nodes. Show that these  $\binom{n}{2}$  lines intersect each other in  $\frac{1}{8}n(n-1)(n-2)(n-3)$  points different from those in  $N$ , and that they divide the plane into  $\frac{1}{8}(n-1)(n^3-5n^2+18n-8)$  (connected) regions, including  $n(n-1)$  unbounded regions.

**\*2. *Partitions by lines, planes, hyperplanes.*** (1) Let be given  $n$  lines in the plane, each two of them having a point in common but no three of them having a point in common. These lines divide the plane into  $\frac{1}{2}(n^2+n+2)$  regions. [*Hint:* Show that the number  $a_n$  which is asked satisfies the relation  $a_n=a_{n-1}+n$ ,  $a_1=2$ .] (2) More generally,  $n$  hyperplanes in  $\mathbf{R}^k$ , in general position, determine  $a(n, k)$  ‘regions’, with  $a(n, k)=\sum_{i=0}^k \binom{n}{i}=2^n-\sum_{j=0}^{n-k-1} 2^j \binom{n-j-1}{k}$ ; the number of bounded regions is  $\binom{n-1}{k}$ .

(3) For a system  $\mathcal{D}$  of  $n$  lines, satisfying the conditions of (1), let  $a_{n,k}(\mathcal{D})$  be the number of regions with  $k$  sides in  $\mathcal{D}$ . Clearly,  $\sum_{k=2}^n a_{n,k}(\mathcal{D}) = \frac{1}{2}(n^2 + n + 2)$  and  $\sum_{k=2}^n k a_{n,k}(\mathcal{D}) = 2n^2$ . It is an open problem to find some lower and upper bounds for  $a_{n,k}(\mathcal{D})$ , or even better, the values taken by  $a_{n,k}(\mathcal{D})$ . (For more information about this problem see [<sup>\*</sup>Grünbaum, 1967], pp. 390–410, and [<sup>\*</sup>Grünbaum, 1972].)

3. *Circles.*  $n$  circles divide the plane into at most  $n^2 - n + 2$  regions. The  $\binom{n}{3}$  circles that are the circumscribed circles of all triangles whose vertices lie in a given set  $N$  of  $n$  points (in general position) in the plane, intersect each other in  $\frac{1}{2}(n)_5(2n-1)$  points different from those of  $N$ .

4. *Spheres.*  $n$  spheres divide the 3-dimensional space into at most  $n(n^2 - 3n + 8)/3$  regions;  $n$  great circles divide the surface of a sphere into at most  $n^2 - n + 2$  regions. More generally,  $n$  hyperspheres divide  $\mathbf{R}^k$  into at most  $\binom{n-1}{k} + \sum_{i=0}^k \binom{n}{i}$  regions.

5. *Convex polyhedra.*  $F, V, E$  stand for the number of faces, vertices and edges of a convex polyhedron. To show the famous *Euler* formula  $F + V = E + 2$  [*Hint:* For any open polyhedral surface the formula  $F + V = E + 1$  can be shown to hold by induction on the number of faces] (<sup>\*</sup>Grünbaum, 1967] gives a thorough treatment of *polytopes* in arbitrary dimension  $d$ , with an abundance of bibliography and of open problems. See also [<sup>\*</sup>Klee, 1966].)

6. *Inscribed and escribed spheres of a tetrahedron.* Let be given a tetrahedron  $T$ , and let  $A_1, A_2, A_3, A_4$  be the areas of its four faces. To show that the number of spheres which are tangent to all four planes that contain the faces of  $T$  (inscribed and escribed) is equal to  $8 - s$ , where  $s$  is the number of equalities satisfied by  $A_1, A_2, A_3, A_4$ , the equalities being taken from  $A_1 + A_2 = A_3 + A_4$ ,  $A_1 + A_3 = A_2 + A_4$ ,  $A_1 + A_4 = A_2 + A_3$  (hence  $0 \leq s \leq 3$ ). If possible, generalize to higher dimensions. (See [Vaughan, Gabai, 1967] and [Gerber, 1972].)

\*7. *Triangles with integer sides.* (1) The number of non-congruent tri-

angles with integer sides and given perimeter  $n$  equals  $\lfloor \frac{1}{48} (n^2 + 3n + 21) + (-1)^{n-1} 3n \rfloor$  ( $\lfloor x \rfloor$  denotes here the largest integer smaller or equal to  $x$ , also called the integral part of  $x$ ). (2) The number of triangles that can be constructed with  $n$  segments of lengths  $1, 2, \dots, n$  equals  $\frac{1}{16} \{1 + (-1)^n\} + \frac{1}{8} (n+1) + \frac{1}{4} \binom{n+2}{2} + \frac{1}{2} \binom{n+3}{3}$ .

**8. Some enumeration problems related to convex polygons.** Let  $A_1, A_2, \dots, A_n$  be the  $n$  vertices of a convex polygon  $P$  in the plane. We call *diagonal* of  $P$ , any segment  $A_iA_j$  which is not a side of  $P$ . We suppose that any three diagonals have no common point, except a vertex. (1) Show that the diagonals intersect each other in  $\binom{n}{4}$  interior points of the polygon, and in  $\frac{1}{12} n(n-3)(n-4)(n-5)$  exterior points. (2) The sides and the diagonals divide the interior of  $P$  into  $\frac{1}{4} (n-1)(n-2)(n^2 - 3n + 12)$  convex regions (in the case of Figure 20, we have 11 such regions), and the whole plane into  $\frac{1}{8}(n^4 - 6n^3 + 23n^2 - 26n + 8)$  regions. (3) The number  $d_n$  of ways to cut up the polygon  $P$  into  $(n-2)$  triangles by means of  $n-3$  nonintersecting diagonals (triangulations of  $P$ ) equals  $(n-1)^{-1} \binom{2n-4}{n-2}$ , the Catalan number  $a_{n-1}$  of p. 53; so, this number is that of well-bracketed words with  $(n-1)$  letters. (The heavy lines in Figure 20 give an example of such a triangulation.) [Hint: Choose a fixed side, say  $A_nA_1$ ; from each triangulation, remove the triangle with  $A_nA_1$  as side; then two triangulated polygons are left; hence  $d_n = d_2 d_{n-1} + d_3 d_{n-2} + \dots + d_{n-1} d_2$ ; then check the formula, or use [15c] of p. 53.]

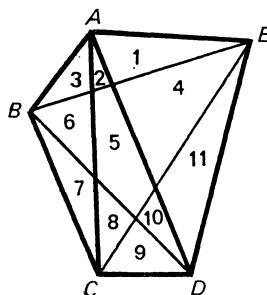


Fig. 20.

Moreover,  $2(n-3) d_n = n(d_3 d_{n-1} + d_4 d_{n-2} + \dots + d_{n-1} d_3)$ . [Hint: Use the two triangulated polygons on each side of each of the  $2(n-3)$  diagonal vectors  $\overrightarrow{A_i A_j}$ .] ([Guy, 1967a]. Very interesting generalizations of the concept of triangulation are found in the papers by Brown, Mullin and Tutte cited in the bibliography.) Finally, there are  $n2^{n-5}$  triangulations in which each triangle has at least one side which is side of  $P$ ,  $n \geq 4$ .

(4) There are  $\frac{1}{d} \binom{n-3}{d-1} \binom{n}{d-1}$  ways of decomposing  $P$  into  $d$  subsets with  $a-1$  diagonals that do not intersect in the interior of the polygon ([Prouhet, 1866]). (5) There are  $\frac{1}{6!}(n)_3$  ( $n^3 + 18n^2 + 43n + 60$ ) triangles in the interior of  $P$  such that every side is side or diagonal of  $P$ . (6) Suppose  $n$  even. The number of graphs with  $n/2$  edges that intersect each other outside of the polygon, equals  $(n+1)^{-1} \binom{n+1}{n/2}$  (in Figure 21 the 5 graphs corresponding to  $n=6$  are pictured). (See [\*Yaglom, 1964] I, p. 14.) (7) The number of broken open lines without self-intersections (= the number

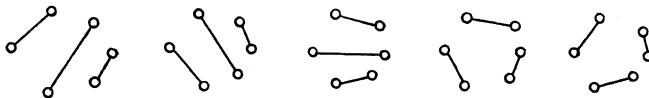


Fig. 21.

of piecewise linear homeomorphic images of the segment  $[0, 1]$  contained in the union of  $P$  with its diagonals) whose vertices are vertices of  $P$ , equals  $n2^{n-3}$ . (In Figure 20,  $BCAED$  is an example of such a line.) ([Camille) Jordan, 1920].)

**9. The total number of arrangements of a set with  $n$  elements.** This number  $P_n := \sum_{k=0}^n (n)_k$  satisfies  $P_n = nP_{n-1} + 1$ ,  $n \geq 1$ ,  $P_0 := 1$  and  $P_n = n! \times \sum_{k=p}^n (1/k!)$ . Hence  $P_n$  equals the integer closest to  $e \cdot n!$ . Moreover, we have as GF:  $\sum_{n \geq 0} P_n t^n / n! = e^t (1-t)^{-1}$ .

**10. ‘Binomial’ expansions of an integer.** Let  $k$  be an integer  $\geq 1$ . With every integer  $n \geq 1$  is associated exactly one sequence of integers  $b_i$  such that  $n = \binom{b_1}{1} + \binom{b_2}{2} + \dots + \binom{b_k}{k}$  and  $0 \leq b_1 < b_2 < \dots < b_k$ . There also exists  $0 \leq c_1 < c_2 < \dots < c_k$  such that  $n = \binom{c_1+1}{1} + \binom{c_2+2}{2} + \dots + \binom{c_k+k}{k}$ .

- 11.** *Greatest common divisor of several integers.* Let  $N := \{a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n\}$  be a set of  $n$  integers  $\geq 1$ . Let  $P_k$  be the product of the  $\binom{n}{k}$  LCM's of all the  $k$ -blocks of  $N$ ; show that the GCD of  $N$  equals  $P_1 P_3 P_5 \dots / P_2 P_4 P_6 \dots$ .

- 12.** *Partial sums of the binomial expansion.* Show that for  $0 \leq k \leq n-1$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{i=0}^k \binom{n}{i} a^{n-i} b^i &= (n-k) \binom{n}{k} \int_b^{a+b} t^k (a+b-t)^{n-k-1} dt \\ &= (n-k) \binom{n}{k} (a+b)^n \int_0^{a/b} \frac{u^{n-k-1}}{(1+u)^{n+1}} du \end{aligned}$$

(See also Exercise 2, (2), p. 72).

- 13.** *Transversals of the Pascal triangle.* Show that  $\binom{n}{0} + \binom{n-1}{1} + \binom{n-2}{2} + \dots = F_n$ , the Fibonacci number (see p. 45) and  $\sum_{k \leq n} \binom{n-k}{k} x^k = (B^{n+1} - A^{n+1})(B-A)^{-1}$ , where  $A, B = (1 \pm \sqrt{1+4x})/2$ . More generally, let  $u, v, w$  be integers such that  $v \geq 0, w \geq 1, u < w$  and let:

$$a_n = a_n(u, v, w) := \binom{n}{v} + \binom{n+u}{v+w} + \binom{n+2u}{v+2w} + \dots;$$

then

$$\sum_{n \geq 0} a_n t^n = \frac{t^v (1-t)^{w-1-v}}{(1-t)^w - t^{w-u}}.$$

([\*Riordan, 1958], p. 40. See also Exercise 26, p. 84.)

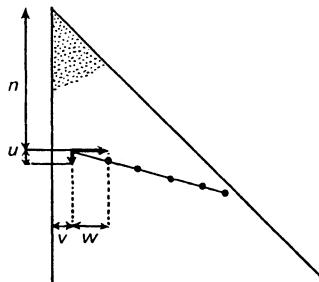


Fig. 22.

- 14.** *The number of binomial coefficients.* For each set  $E$  of integers  $\geq 0$ ,

$E \subset \mathbf{N}$ , and every real number  $x > 0$  we put  $E(x) := E \cap [0, x]$ . Let  $E$  be the set of values of  $\binom{n}{k}$ , where  $k$  and  $n$  are variables with  $2 \leq k \leq n-2$  (one may even suppose that  $k \leq n/2$ ). Show that  $|E(x)| = \sqrt{2x} + o(\sqrt{x})$ .  
 [Hint: let  $E_k := \left\{ \binom{n}{k} \mid n \geq 2k \right\}$ ; then  $E = \bigcup_{k \geq 2} E_k$ ; hence:  $|E_2(x)| \leq |E(x)| \leq |E_2(x)| + \sum_{k \geq 3} |E_k(x)|$ . (For a generalization to multinomial coefficients, see [Erdős, Niven, 1954].)]

**15. Generalization of  $\binom{p}{n} \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$  to multinomial coefficients** ([André, 1873]). Let  $M := \{a_1, a_2, \dots, a_m\} \subset N^*$  be a set of integers  $\geq 1$ , not necessarily distinct. For  $n := a_1 + a_2 + \dots + a_m$  Theorem A (p. 27) shows that the number  $n!/(a_1! a_2! \dots a_m!)$  is always an integer. This property can be refined as follows. We put, for each integer  $d \geq 2$ ,  $M(d) := \{x \mid x \in M, d \text{ divides } x\}$  and we let  $\gamma(M) := \max_{d \geq 2} |M(d)|$ . Clearly,  $0 \leq \gamma(M) \leq m$ , and  $\gamma(M) = m$  if the  $a_i$  are not relatively prime,  $\gamma(M) = 1$  if each two among  $a_i$  are relatively prime, and  $\gamma(M) = 0$  if the  $a_i$  equal 1. Show then that the number  $\{n - (m - \gamma(M))\!/\!(a_1! a_2! \dots a_m!)\}$  is always an integer (for  $n$  prime and  $m = 2$  we recover Theorem C, p. 14).

**16. Polynomial coefficients** ([André, 1875], [Montel, 1942]). This is the name we give to the coefficients of  $f(t) = (1 + t + t^2 + \dots + t^{q-1})^x := \sum_{k \geq 0} \binom{x, q}{k} t^k$ , for  $q$  arbitrary integer  $\geq 0$ , and complex  $x$ . Evidently,  $\binom{x, 2}{k} = \binom{x}{k}$  and  $\binom{-x, \infty}{k} = \binom{x}{k}$ . (1)  $\binom{x, q}{k} = \sum \binom{x}{i} \binom{x}{j}$ , where  $qi + j = k$ .  
 [Hint:  $f = (1 - t^q)^x (1 - t)^{-x}$ ]. (2) If  $x = n$  is an integer  $\geq 0$ , then  $\binom{n, q}{k}$  is the number of  $k$ -combinations of  $[n]$  having less than  $q$  repetitions. Generalize the most important properties of the  $\binom{n}{k}$  to these combinatorial coefficients: arithmetical triangle, recurrence relations, congruences, etc., and prove the formula

$$\binom{n, q}{k} = \frac{2}{\pi} \int_0^{\pi/2} \left( \frac{\sin q\varphi}{\sin \varphi} \right)^n \cos(n(q-1) - 2k)\varphi \, d\varphi.$$

Using this integral representation, find the asymptotic equivalent

$$\sup_k \binom{n, q}{k} \sim q^n \sqrt{\frac{6}{(q^2 - 1)\pi n}}, \quad n \rightarrow \infty.$$

Here are the first values of *trinomial* coefficients  $\binom{n, 3}{k} = \binom{n-1, 3}{k-2} + \binom{n-1, 3}{k-1} + \binom{n-1, 3}{k}$  (See also Exercise 19, p. 163):

$n \setminus k$	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
0	1												
1	1	1	1										
2	1	2	3	2	1								
3	1	3	6	7	6	3	1						
4	1	4	10	16	19	16	10	4	1				
5	1	5	15	30	45	51	45	30	15	5	1		
6	1	6	21	50	90	126	141	126	90	50	21	6	1
7	1	7	28	77	161	266	357	393	357	266	161	77	28
8	1	8	36	112	266	504	784	1016	1107	1016	784	504	266

and of *quadrinomial* coefficients  $\binom{n, 4}{k} = \binom{n-1, 4}{k-3} + \dots + \binom{n-1, 4}{k}$ :

$n \setminus k$	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
0	1												
1	1	1	1	1									
2	1	2	3	4	3	2	1						
3	1	3	6	10	12	12	10	6	3	1			
4	1	4	10	20	31	40	44	40	31	20	10	4	1
5	1	5	15	35	65	101	135	155	155	135	101	65	35
6	1	6	21	56	120	216	336	456	546	580	546	456	336
7	1	7	28	84	203	413	728	1128	1554	1918	2128	2128	1918
8	1	8	36	120	322	728	1428	2472	3823	5328	6728	7728	8092

\*17. *Arithmetic of binomial coefficients.* In the following we denote the GCD of  $a$  and  $b$  by  $(a, b)$ ;  $c \mid d$  means ‘ $c$  divides  $d$ ’,  $p$  stands for an arbitrary prime number, and  $\equiv$  means congruence modulo this  $p$ . (1)  $\binom{n}{p} \equiv \llbracket n/p \rrbracket$ , the integral part of  $n/p$ . (2)  $\binom{p+1}{k} \equiv 0$ ,  $\binom{p-1}{k} \equiv (-1)^k$ ,  $\binom{p-2}{k} \equiv (-1)^k (k+1)$ ,  $\binom{p-3}{k} \equiv (-1)^k \binom{k+2}{2}$ , ... (Lucas).

(3) If  $(k, n)=1$ , then  $n \mid \binom{n}{k}$  (generalization of [6g], p. 14). (4) Let  $1 \leq k \leq p^b$  and let  $a$  be the exponent of  $p$  in  $k$ :  $p^a \mid k$ ,  $p^{a+1} \nmid k$ ; then  $p^{b-a}$

divides  $\binom{pb}{k}$  and  $p^{b-a+1}$  does not divide  $\binom{pb}{k}$  [(Cartier, 1970)]. (5) If  $(k, n) = (k, n-1) = 1$ , then  $n(n-1) \mid \binom{n}{k}$ . If  $(k+1, n+1) = (k+2, n+1) = (k+2, n+2) = 1$ , then  $(k+1)(k+2) \mid \binom{n}{k}$  (Cesaro). For all  $m$  and  $n$ ,  $m!n!(m+n)! \mid (2m)!(2n)!$  (6) All  $\binom{n}{k}$ ,  $n$  fixed,  $0 \leq k \leq n$ , are odd if and only if  $n = 2^j - 1$ . (7) For  $2 \leq k \leq n-2$ , the coefficient  $\binom{n}{k}$  does not equal any power of a prime number ([Hering, 1968], [Stahl, 1969]).  
 [Hint: The exponent of  $p$  in  $n!$  equals  $[n/p] + [n/p^2] + [n/p^3] + \dots$ ] (8) Let  $a$  and  $b$  be integers  $\geq 0$ , written base  $p$  as follows:  $a_0 + a_1p + a_2p^2 + \dots$  and  $b_0 + b_1p + b_2p^2 + \dots$ . Then  $\binom{a}{b} \equiv \binom{a_0}{b_0} \binom{a_1}{b_1} \binom{a_2}{b_2} \dots$  ([Lucas, 1878]). See also [Fine, 1947], [Carlitz, 1963b, 1967], [Howard, 1971, 1973]). [Hint: By [6g'], p. 14,  $(1+x)^{p^k} \equiv 1 + x^{p^k}$ , hence  $(1+x)^a \equiv (1+x)^{a_0}(1+x^p)^{a_1}(1+x^{p^2})^{a_2} \dots$ ] (9) The largest exponent of  $p$  in  $\binom{a+b}{a}$  equals the number of carry overs in the addition of  $a$  and  $b$  base  $p$  (Kummer). (10) If  $p \geq 5$ ,  $\binom{2p-1}{p-1} \equiv 1 \pmod{p^3}$  (Wolstenholme) and, more generally,  $\binom{kp-1}{p-1} \equiv k-1 \pmod{p^3}$  (Guérin). Many results mentioned here can be generalized to multinomial coefficients with the methods given by [Letac, 1972]. (10)  $2^{3^n}$  always divides  $\binom{2^{n+1}}{2^n} - \binom{2^n}{2^{n-1}}$  (Fjeldstad).

- 18. Maps from  $[k]$  into  $[n]$ .** (1) The number of strictly increasing maps of  $[k]$  into  $[n]$  equals  $\binom{n}{k}$ . (2) The number of increasing maps (but not necessarily strictly increasing) of  $[k]$  into  $[n]$  equals  $\binom{n}{k} = \binom{n+k-1}{k}$ . (3) The number of strictly increasing maps  $\varphi$  from  $[k]$  into  $[n]$  such that  $x$  and  $\varphi(x)$  are simultaneous odd or even for all  $x \in [k]$ , equals  $\binom{q}{k}$ , where  $q$  is the largest integer  $\leq (n+k)/2$  (the so-called *Terquem* problem; for a generalization see [Moser, Abramson, 1969], [\*Netto, 1927], p. 313). (4) Compute the number of *convex* functions of  $[k]$  into  $[n]$ .

**19.** *Sequences or ‘runs’.* These are the names for intervals  $S = \{i, i+1, \dots; i+s-1\}$  contained in a given  $A \subset [n]$  such that  $S \subset A$  and  $i-1 \notin A$ ,  $i+s \notin A$ . Let  $\varrho(A)$  be the number of runs of  $A$ . Then, the number of  $a$ -blocks  $A \subset [n]$  with  $r$  runs ( $|A|=a$ ,  $\rho(A)=r$ ) equals  $\binom{a-1}{r-1} \binom{n-a+1}{r}$ . For the circular  $a$ -blocks with  $r$  runs,  $A \subset [\bar{n}]$ , p. 24, the number is  $\frac{n}{n-a} \binom{n-a}{r} \binom{a-1}{r-1}$ . More generally, compute the number of divisions  $A_1 + A_2 + \dots + A_c = [n]$ , where  $|A_i| = a_i$  are fixed integers  $\geq 1$ ,  $i \in [c]$  and for which  $\sum_{i=1}^c \varrho(A_i) = \gamma$ .

**\*20.** *Generalizations of the ballot problem* (Theorem B, p. 21.) (1) Let  $p, q, r$  be integers  $\geq 1$ , with  $q \geq rp$ . Show that the number of ‘minimal paths’ of p. 20, joining  $O$  with the point  $B(p, q)$  such that each point  $M(x, y)$  satisfies  $y > rx$  (instead of  $y > x$  in Theorem B), equals  $\frac{q-rp}{q+p} \times \binom{p+q}{q}$ . (For  $r$  real  $> 0$ , see [Takács, 1962]). [Hint: The formula evidently holds for the points  $B(p, q)$  such that  $p=0$  or  $q=rp$ ; show next that if it holds for  $(p-1, q)$  and  $(p, q-1)$ , then it holds for  $(p, q)$  as well.] (2) If in the preceding problem, the condition  $y > rx$  is replaced by  $y \geq rx$ , then the number of paths becomes  $\frac{q+1-rp}{q+1} \binom{p+q}{p}$ . (3) More generally, let  $\mathbf{P}$  be the probability that a path  $\mathcal{C}$  of  $\mathbb{N}^d$  joining  $O$  with the point  $B(p_1, p_2, \dots, p_d)$  is such that each of its points  $M(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_d)$  satisfies  $x_1 \leq x_2 \leq \dots \leq x_d$  (integers  $p_i$  satisfy  $0 \leq p_i \leq p_1 \leq p_2 \dots \leq p_d$ ). Then:

$$\mathbf{P} = \prod_{1 \leq s \leq t \leq d} \left( 1 - \frac{p_s}{p_t + t - s} \right).$$

([\*MacMahon, 1915], p. 133. See also [Narayana, 1959].)

**21.** *Minimal paths with diagonal steps* ([Goodman, Narayana, 1967], [Moser, Zayachkowski, 1963], [Stocks, 1967]). We generalize the concept of minimal path (p. 20) by allowing also diagonal steps. Figure 23 shows a path with 4 horizontal steps, 3 vertical steps, and 2 diagonal steps. (1)  $(q-p)/(q+p-d)$  is the probability that a minimal path with  $d$  diagonal

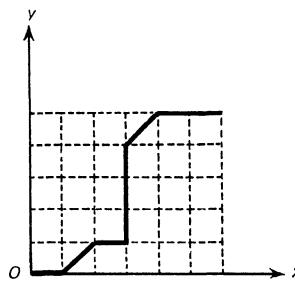


Fig. 23.

steps joining  $O$  with  $(p, q)$  satisfies  $x < y$  (except in  $O$ ). (2) The total number  $D(p, q)$  of paths (of the preceding type) going from  $O$  to  $(p, q)$  is called *Delannoy number*. It equals  $\sum_d \binom{q}{d} \binom{p+q-d}{q}$  or also  $\sum_d 2^d \binom{p}{d} \binom{q}{d}$ . We have  $D(p, q) = D(p, q-1) + D(p-1, q-1) + D(p-1, q)$ . Hence, we get the following table of the first values of  $D(p, q)$ :

$q \setminus p$	0	1	2	3	4	5	6
0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
1	1	3	5	7	9	11	13
2	1	5	13	25	41	61	85
3	1	7	25	63	129	231	377
4	1	9	41	129	321	681	1289
5	1	11	61	231	681	1683	3653
6	1	13	85	377	1289	3653	8989

The GF  $\sum_{p, q \geq 0} D(p, q) x^p y^q$  is  $(1 - x - y - xy)^{-1}$  and the diagonal series  $\sum_{n \geq 0} D(n, n) t^n$  equals  $(1 - 6t + t^2)^{-1/2}$ . (3) The total number of paths joining  $O$  with  $(n, n)$ , and diagonals allowed, is  $P_n(3)$ , where  $P_n$  is the Legendre polynomial [141] (p. 50). (4) Let  $q_n$  be the number of paths with the property of (3) and satisfying  $x < y$  (except at the ends). Then  $(n+2) \times q_{n+2} = 3(2n+1) q_{n+1} - (n-1) q_n$ ,  $q_1 = 1$ ,  $q_2 = 2$ . Thus show that  $q_n = 2c_n$  for  $n \geq 2$ , where  $c_n$  is the number of generalized bracketings (see p. 56).

\*22. *Minimal paths and the diagonal; Chung-Feller theorem.* In the following ‘path’ will mean ‘minimal path’ in the sense of p. 20. (1) The number of paths joining the origin  $O$  with  $(n, n)$  equals  $u_n := \binom{2n}{n}$ . Furthermore,  $\sum_{n \geq 0} u_n t^n = (1 - 4t)^{-1/2}$ . (2) The number of paths starting at the origin  $O$ , and of length  $2n$  and such that  $x \neq y$ , except in  $O$ , also equals  $u_n$ . [Hint:

Use Theorem B, p. 21.] (3) The number of paths joining  $O$  with  $(n, n)$  and such that  $x \neq y$  (except at the ends) equals  $f_n := \frac{1}{(2n-1)} \binom{2n}{n} = u_n / (2n-1) = (2/n) \cdot u_{n-1}$ ,  $n \geq 1$ . Compute  $\sum_{n \geq 1} f_n t^n$ . (4) The number of paths starting at the origin  $O$ , of length  $2n$ , and with exactly  $r$  points (different from  $O$ ) on the diagonal  $x=y$  is equal to  $2^r \binom{2n-r}{n}$ . Solve an analogous problem for the paths joining the origin  $O$  with  $(p, q)$ . (5)  $u_n$  and  $f_n$  are defined as in (1), (2) and (3); show that  $u_n = f_1 u_{n-1} + f_2 u_{n-2} + \dots + f_n u_0$ ,  $n \geq 1$ . (6) Let  $b_{n,k}$  be the number of paths of length  $2n$  with the property that  $2k$  segments (of the total  $2n$ ) lie above the diagonal  $x=y$ ,  $0 \leq k \leq n$  (in Figure 24,  $n=8$ ,  $k=4$ ). Let the abscissa of the first passage of the diagonal (different from  $O$ ) be called  $r$  ( $\geq 1$ ) (so, in Figure 24,  $r=3$ ). Show that:

$$2b_{n,k} = \sum_{1 \leq r \leq k} f_r b_{n-r, k-r} + \sum_{1 \leq r \leq n-k} f_r b_{n-r, k}.$$

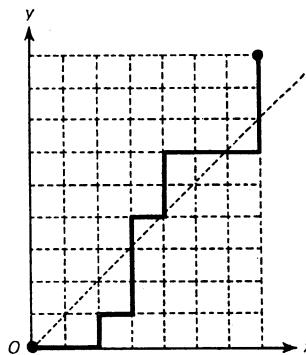


Fig. 24.

(7) Use this to show by induction (on  $n$ ) that  $b_{n,k} = u_k u_{n-k} = \binom{2k}{k} \times \binom{2n-2k}{n-k}$  ([Chung, Feller, 1949], [\*Feller, I, 1968], p. 83). (8) Let  $c_{n,k}$  be the number of paths of length  $2n$  joining  $O$  with  $(n, n)$  such that  $2k$  segments lie above the diagonal. Let  $r$  be as in (6) the abscissa of first passage of the diagonal. Show that  $c_{n,k}$  does not depend on  $k$ , and that it equals  $c_n := 1/(n+1) \cdot u_n = 1/(n+1) \cdot \binom{2n}{n}$ , a *Catalan number* of p. 53.

([Chung, Feller, 1949], [\*Feller, I, 1968], p. 94. See also [Narayana, 1967], [Poupard, 1967].) [Hint: The  $c_{n,k}$  satisfy the same recurrence relation as the  $b_{n,k}$  in (6). Then replace the  $f_r$  by  $(2/r) \cdot u_{r-1}$ , (3); change the variable in the second summation,  $r := n+1-r$ . The value of  $c_n$  can then inductively be verified.]

**23. Multiplication table of the factorial polynomials.** We consider the polynomials  $(x)_m$ ,  $m=0, 1, 2, \dots$ , [4f] p. 6; then the product  $(x)_m(x)_n$  can be expressed as a linear combination of these polynomials, and actually equals  $\sum_k \binom{m}{k} \binom{n}{k} k! (x)_{m+n-k}$ , where  $k \leq \min(m, n)$ . [Hint: Use  $(1+t+u+tu)^x = (1+t)^x (1+u)^x$  with [12m] p. 41.] Same problem for the polynomials  $\binom{x}{m}$ ,  $\langle x \rangle_m$  and  $\langle x \rangle_m$ .

**24. Formal series and difference operator  $\Delta$ .** (1) With the notations of [6e] (p. 14) show that  $\sum_{n \geq 0} \Delta^k (x^n) t^n / n! = e^{tx} (e^t - 1)^k$  and that  $\sum_{n \geq 0} \Delta^k (x^h) t^n / n! = e^{tx} (x-1)^k$ . (2) If  $f = \sum_{n \geq 0} f_n t^n / n!$ , then, with the notations of pp. 13 and 41:

$$\sum_{m \geq 0} (\Delta^k f_m) \frac{t^m}{m!} = \sum_{h=0}^k (-1)^{k-h} \binom{k}{h} D^h f.$$

(3) If  $f = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n t^n$ , then  $\sum_{n \geq 0} (\Delta^k a_n) t^{n+k} = (1-t)^k f(t)$  and  $\sum_{n \geq 0} (\Delta^n a_0) t^n = (1+t)^{-1} f(t(1+t)^{-1})$ .

**25. Harmonic triangle and Leibniz numbers.** Let us define the Leibniz numbers by  $\mathfrak{L}(n, k) = (n+1)^{-1} \binom{n}{k}^{-1} = (k+1)^{-1} \binom{n+1}{k+1}^{-1} = k! \{(n+1) n(n-1) \cdots (n-k+1)\}^{-1}$  if  $0 \leq k \leq n$ , and  $\mathfrak{L}(n, k) = 0$  in the other cases. The first values are:

$n \setminus k$	0	1	2	3	4	5
0	$1^{-1}$					
1	$2^{-1}$	$2^{-1}$				
2	$3^{-1}$	$6^{-1}$	$3^{-1}$			
3	$4^{-1}$	$12^{-1}$	$12^{-1}$	$4^{-1}$		
4	$5^{-1}$	$20^{-1}$	$30^{-1}$	$20^{-1}$	$5^{-1}$	
5	$6^{-1}$	$30^{-1}$	$60^{-1}$	$60^{-1}$	$30^{-1}$	$6^{-1}$

Of course,  $\mathfrak{L}(x, k)$  could be defined for any real number

$x \notin \{-1, 0, 1, 2, \dots, k-1\}$  by the same manner. This “harmonic” triangle of numbers has properties very similar to those of the ‘arithmetic triangle’ (of binomial coefficients p. 12). (1) For  $k \geq 1$ ,  $\mathfrak{L}(n, k) + \mathfrak{L}(n, k-1) = \mathfrak{L}(n-1, k-1)$  and  $\sum_{m=1}^n \mathfrak{L}(m, k) = \mathfrak{L}(l-1, k-1) - \mathfrak{L}(n, k-1)$ . So,  $\sum_{n=l}^{\infty} \mathfrak{L}(n, k) = \mathfrak{L}(l-1, k-1)$ . (2)  $\sum_{h=0}^k (-1)^h \mathfrak{L}(n, h) = \mathfrak{L}(n+1, 0) + (-1)^k \mathfrak{L}(n+1, k+1)$ . (3)  $\Delta^k(n^{-1}) = (-1)^k \mathfrak{L}(n+k-1, k)$ .

(4) The following GF holds:

$$\sum_{0 \leq k \leq n} \mathfrak{L}(n, k) t^{n+1} u^k = \frac{-\log((1-t)(1-ut))}{1+u(1-t)}.$$

So,  $\sum_k \mathfrak{L}(n, k) u^k = \sum_{i=1}^{n+1} ((1+u^i)/i) (u(1+u)^{-1})^{n+1-i}$  and  $\varphi_k := \sum_{n \geq k} \mathfrak{L}(n, k) t^{n+1} = \sum_{i=1}^k (-1)^{k-i} i^{-1} t^i (1-t)^{k-i} + (t-1)^k (-\log(1-t))$  (See Exercise 15, p. 294). (5) Let  $I(n, k)$  be the ‘inverse’ of  $\mathfrak{L}(n, k)$ ; in other words:  $b_n = \sum_k \mathfrak{L}(n, k) a_k \Leftrightarrow a_n = \sum_k I(n, k) b_k$  (see p. 143). Then  $I(n, k) = c(n-k) (k+1)!/n!$ , where  $(1+1!t+2!t^2+\dots)^{-1} := \sum_{n \geq 0} c(n) t^n$ ,  $c(0), c(1), c(2), \dots = 1, -1, -1, -3, -13, -71, -461, \dots$  (see Exercise 16, p. 294).

**26. Multisection of series.** Let  $f$  be a formal series with complex coefficients,  $f=f(t)=\sum_{n \geq 0} a_n t^n$  and  $\omega := \exp(2\pi i/v)$  a  $v$ -th root of unity,  $v$  an integer  $> 0$ . Then for each integer  $u$ ,  $0 \leq u < v$ :

$$a_u t^u + a_{u+v} t^{u+v} + a_{u+2v} t^{u+2v} + \dots = \frac{1}{v} \sum_{k=0}^{v-1} \omega^{-ku} f(\omega^k t).$$

For example:  $\binom{n}{0} + \binom{n}{2} + \binom{n}{4} + \dots = \binom{n}{1} + \binom{n}{3} + \binom{n}{5} + \dots = 2^{n-1}$ ,  $\binom{n}{0} + \binom{n}{3} + \binom{n}{6} + \dots = \frac{1}{3} (2^n + 2 \cos(n\pi/3))$ ,  $\binom{n}{1} + \binom{n}{4} + \binom{n}{7} + \dots = \frac{1}{3}(2^n + 2 \cos(n\pi/3))$ ,  $\binom{n}{1} + \binom{n}{4} + \binom{n}{7} + \dots = \frac{1}{3}(2^n + 2 \cos((n-2)\pi/3))$ ,  $\binom{n}{2} + \binom{n}{5} + \binom{n}{8} + \dots = \frac{1}{3}(2^n + 2 \cos((n+2)\pi/3))$ , and, more generally,

$$\begin{aligned} \binom{n}{u} + \binom{n}{u+v} + \binom{n}{u+2v} + \dots &= \\ &= \frac{1}{v} \sum_{j=0}^{v-1} \left( 2 \cos j \frac{\pi}{v} \right)^n \cos \left( j(n-2u) \frac{\pi}{v} \right). \end{aligned}$$

(More in [\*Riordan, 1968], p. 131. Cf. Exercise 13, p. 76.)

**27. *p-bracketings.*** Instead of computing the products of the factors pair by pair, as on p. 52, we take now  $p$  at a time, but still *adjacent*. We keep  $p$  fixed  $\geq 2$ . Then the number  $a_{n,p}$  of these  $p$ -bracketings ( $a_{n,2}=a_n$  as defined on p. 52) satisfies  $a_{k(p-1)+1,p}=(1/k)\binom{kp}{k-1}$ ,  $k\geq 1$ , and  $a_{n,p}$  is zero if  $n$  is not of the form  $k(p-1)+1$ . [Hint:  $t=y-y^p$ , where  $y:=\sum_{n\geq 0} a_{n,p}t^n$ , then use Lagrange formula, p. 148.]

**28. *A multiple sum.*** We sum over all systems of integers  $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_k \geq 0$  such that  $c_1+c_2+\dots+c_k=n$ ; show that  $a_n:=\sum c_1c_2\dots c_k=n(n^2-1^2)\dots(n^2-(k-1)^2)/(2k-1)!$  [Hint:  $\sum_{n\geq 0} a_nt^n=(\sum_{m\geq 0} mt^m)^k$ .]

**29. *Hurwitz series.*** A formal series  $f=\sum_{n\geq 0} f_nt^n/n!$  is called a *Hurwitz series* if all of its coefficients are integers ( $\in \mathbb{Z}$ ). When  $\mathfrak{H}$  stands for the set of all such series, show the following properties: (1)  $f \in \mathfrak{H} \Rightarrow Df$  and  $Pf \in \mathfrak{H}$  ( $D$  and  $P$ , the differentiation and primitivation operators are defined on p. 41). (2)  $f, g \in \mathfrak{H} \Rightarrow f+g, f-g, fg \in \mathfrak{H}$ . (3)  $f, g \in \mathfrak{H}, g_0=\pm 1 \Rightarrow fg^{-1} \in \mathfrak{H}$ . (4)  $f \in \mathfrak{H}, f_0=0 \Rightarrow \forall m \in \mathbb{N}, f^m/m! \in \mathfrak{H}$ . (5)  $f, g \in \mathfrak{H}, g_0=0 \Rightarrow f \circ g \in \mathfrak{H}$ , where  $f \circ g$  is the composition of  $g$  with  $f$  (p. 40). (6)  $f \in \mathfrak{H}, f_0=0 \Rightarrow f^{(\alpha)} \in \mathfrak{H}$ , where  $\alpha$  is any integer  $\geq 0$  and  $f^{(\alpha)}$  is the  $\alpha$ -th iterate of  $f$  (p. 145), with the condition  $f_1=\pm 1$  if  $\alpha<0$ . (7) Let us consider

$$f = f(x, y) = \sum_{k, l \geq 0} f_{k,l} \frac{x^k}{k!} \cdot \frac{y^l}{l!},$$

a two-variable Hurwitz series, where the Taylor coefficients  $f_{k,l}$  are integers ( $\in \mathbb{Z}$ ). If  $f_{0,0}=0$  and  $f_{0,1}=\pm 1$ , then the *implicit* formal series  $y=\varphi(x)=\sum_{n\geq 1} \varphi_n x^n/n!$  such that  $f(x, \varphi(x))=0$  is also an Hurwitz series: every  $\varphi_n \in \mathbb{Z}$  (see [Comtet, 1968, 1974] and p. 153).

**\*30. *Hadamard product.*** The Hadamard product ([Hadamard, 1893]; see also [Benzaghou, 1968]) of two formal series  $f:=\sum_{n\geq 0} a_nx^n$ ,  $g:=\sum_{n\geq 0} b_nx^n$  is defined by  $f \circ g:=\sum_{n\geq 0} a_nb_nx^n$ . (1) The set of all formal series with complex coefficients is an *algebra* for the operations  $+$  and  $\circ$ . (2) Now we suppose that  $f(t)$  and  $g(t)$  are *convergent* in a neighbourhood of 0,  $t \in \mathbb{C}$ . Then:

$$(f \circ g)(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int f(z) g\left(\frac{t}{z}\right) \frac{dz}{z} = \mathcal{C}_{z^0} f(z) g\left(\frac{t}{z}\right).$$

where the integration contour goes around the origin in such a way that  $f(z)$  is analytic on the interior, and  $g(t/z)$  is analytic on the exterior,  $t$  fixed and small. The symbol  $C_{z_0}$  means ‘coefficient of the constant term in the Laurent series’. (Compare [12q], p. 42.) (3) If  $f$  and  $g$  are expansions of rational fractions, then  $f \odot g$  is too. Thus, for  $f := (x^2 - sx + p)^{-1}$ ,  $p \neq 0$ , we have  $f \odot f = (p+x)(p-x)^{-1}(p^2 - x(s^2 - 2p) + x^2)^{-1}$ . More generally, compute  $f^{\odot n}$  in this case. (4) If  $f$  is rational, and  $g$  is algebraic, then  $f \odot g$  is algebraic ([Jungen, 1931], [Schützenberger, 1962]) (5) If  $f$  and  $g$  satisfy a differential equation with polynomial coefficients, then  $f \odot g$  does.

**\*31. Powers of the Fibonacci numbers.** Let  $\Phi_k(t) := \sum_{n \geq 0} F_n^k t^n = \Phi(t))^{\odot n}$  with the  $F_n$  p. 45 and the preceding exercise. Then:

$$(1 - 2t - 2t^2 + t^3) \Phi_2(t) = 1 - t.$$

[Use that  $F_n = (\beta^{n+1} - \alpha^{n+1})/\sqrt{5}$ .] More generally determine explicitly and inductively the sequence  $\Phi_k(t)$ . ([Riordan, 1962b], [Carlitz, 1962c], [Horadam, 1965].)

**32. Integers generated by  $\operatorname{ch} t / \cos t$ .** We define the Salié’s integers  $S_{2n}$  by:

$$\varphi(t) := \frac{\operatorname{ch} t}{\cos t} = \sum_{n \geq 0} S_{2n} \frac{t^{2n}}{(2n)!}.$$

We want to show that  $S_{2n}$  is divisible by  $2^n$ . More precisely, there exist integers  $S'_{2n}$  such that

$$[\#a] \quad S_{2n} = 2^n S'_{2n};$$

$$[\#b] \quad S'_{2n} \equiv (-1)^{\binom{n}{2}} \pmod{4}.$$

([Carlitz, 1959, 1965c], [Gandhi, Singh, 1966]. We give the method of [Salié, 1963].) (1) The expansion  $(\operatorname{ch} tu) / \cos t := \sum S_{2n}(u) t^{2n} / (2n)!$  defines polynomials  $S_{2n}(u)$  such that  $S_{2n} = S_{2n}(1)$ , satisfying  $u^{2n} = \sum_h (-1)^{n-h} \binom{2n}{2h} S_{2h}(u)$ . (2) Thus  $(1+u^2)^n = \sum_{0 \leq l \leq n/2} (-1)^l \binom{n}{2l} \times 2^{2l} S_{2n-2l}(u)$ . (3) Hence, by inversion,  $S_{2n}(u) = \sum_{h=1}^n 2^{2h-2} C(n, h) \times (1+u^2)^{n-h+1}$ , where the  $C(n, h)$  are integers. (4) Moreover,  $C(n, 1) = 1$ ,

$C(n, 2) = \binom{n}{2}$ ,  $C(n, 3) = \binom{n}{2} \binom{n-1}{2} - \binom{n}{4}$ . (5) [<#a>] then follows from (3), with  $u=1$ . (6) Hence, by (3),  $S'_{2n} = \sum_{h=1}^n 2^{h-1} C(n, h)$ , so [<#b>] follows. (7) Show that  $S_{2n} = \sum_k \binom{2n}{2k} |E_{2k}|$ ;  $E_{2k}$  is an Euler number (p. 48).

$2n$	0	2	4	4	8	10	12	14	16
$S'_{2n}$	1	1	3	19	217	3961	105963	3908059	190065457

33. *Generating function of min.* ([Carlitz, 1962a], where the GF of  $\max(n_1, n_2, \dots, n_k)$  is also found.) Show that:

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n_1, n_2, \dots, n_k \geq 1} \min(n_1, n_2, \dots, n_k) t_1^{n_1} t_2^{n_2} \dots t_k^{n_k} &= \\ &= \frac{t_1 t_2 \dots t_k}{(1-t_1)(1-t_2) \dots (1-t_k)(1-t_1 t_2 \dots t_k)}. \end{aligned}$$

\*34. *Expansion of a rational fraction.* Let  $\mathfrak{R}$  be the set of rational fractions with complex coefficients in one indeterminate  $t$ :  $f \in \mathfrak{R}$  if and only if  $f = P(t)/Q(t)$  where  $P$  and  $Q$  are polynomials,  $Q(0) \neq 0$ . Show the equivalence of the following four definitions: (1)  $\mathfrak{R}$  'is' the set of sums  $W(z) = \sum_{(j,k) \in E} b_{j,k} (1-\beta_j z)^{-n_{j,k}}$ , where  $b_{j,k}, \beta_j \in \mathbb{C}$ ,  $n_{j,k}$  integers  $\geq 1$ , and  $E$  a finite subset of  $\mathbb{N}^2$ . (2)  $\mathfrak{R}$  'is' the set of formal series  $\sum_{n \geq 0} a_n t^n$  whose coefficients satisfy a linear recurrence with constant coefficients  $c_j: \sum_{j=0}^r c_j a_{n+j} = 0$ ,  $n \geq n_0$ . (3)  $\mathfrak{R}$  'is' the set of formal series whose coefficients are of the form  $a_n = \sum_{j=1}^r A_j(n) \beta_j^n$ ,  $n \geq n_0$ , where the  $A_j$  are polynomials, and the  $\beta_j \neq 0$ . (4)  $\mathfrak{R}$  is the set of formal series  $f = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n t^n$  such that for each series there exist two integers  $d$  and  $q$  for which  $H_{d+j}^{(q+1)}(f) = 0$  for all integers  $j \geq 0$ , where  $H_n^{(k)}(f)$  are the *Hankel determinants* of  $f$ :

$$H_n^{(k)}(f) := \begin{vmatrix} a_n & a_{n+1} \dots a_{n+k-1} \\ a_{n+1} & a_{n+2} \dots a_{n+k} \\ \vdots & \\ a_{n+k-1} & a_{n+k} \dots a_{n+2k-2} \end{vmatrix}.$$

35. *Explicit values of the Chebishev, Legendre and Gegenbauer polynomials.*

Use  $(1-tx)(1-2tx+t^2)^{-1} = (1-tx)(1+t^2)^{-1}(1-2tx(1+t^2)^{-1})^{-1}$

(p. 50) to show that  $T_n(x) = (n/2) \sum_{0 \leq m \leq n/2} (-1)^m (n-m-1)! \{m!(n-2m)!\}^{-1} \cdot (2x)^{n-2m}$  (compare Exercise 1, p. 155). Similarly, calculate the polynomials  $U_n(x)$  and  $C_n^x(x)$  (from which  $P_n(x)$  can be obtained).

Finally, establish the following expressions with determinants of order  $n$ :

$$T_n(\cos \varphi) = \cos n\varphi = \begin{vmatrix} \cos \varphi & 1 & 0 & 0 & \dots \\ 1 & 2 \cos \varphi & 1 & 0 & \dots \\ 0 & 1 & 2 \cos \varphi & 1 & \dots \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 \cos \varphi & \dots \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \end{vmatrix}$$

$$U_n(\cos \varphi) = \frac{\sin(n+1)\varphi}{\sin \varphi} =$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} 2 \cos \varphi & 1 & 0 & 0 & \dots \\ 1 & 2 \cos \varphi & 1 & 0 & \dots \\ 0 & 1 & 2 \cos \varphi & 1 & \dots \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 \cos \varphi & \dots \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \end{vmatrix}.$$

**36. Miscellaneous Taylor coefficients using Bernoulli numbers.** Use  $\operatorname{th}x = (e^{2x}-1)(e^{2x}+1)^{-1} = 1 - 2(e^{2x}-1)^{-1} + 4(e^{4x}-1)^{-1}$ , and [14a] (p. 48) to show that  $\operatorname{th}x = \sum_{m \geq 1} B_{2m} 2^{2m} (2^{2m}-1) x^{2m-1} / (2m)!$ . From this, obtain:  $\operatorname{tg}x = x + \frac{1}{3}x^3 + \frac{2}{15}x^5 + \frac{17}{315}x^7 + \frac{62}{2835}x^9 + \frac{1382}{155925}x^{11} + \dots = \sum_{m \geq 1} B_{2m} (-1)^{m+1} 2^{2m} (2^{2m}-1) x^{2m-1} / (2m)!$ . (See also Exercise 11 of p. 258.) Complex variables methods can be used to show that the radius of convergence of the preceding series equals  $\pi/2$ .

$$\cot g x = x^{-1} - \frac{1}{3}x - \frac{1}{45}x^3 - \frac{2}{945}x^5 - \frac{1}{4725}x^7 - \dots$$

$$= x^{-1} + \sum_{m \geq 1} B_{2m} (-1)^m \frac{2^{2m} x^{2m-1}}{(2m)!}.$$

$$(\sin x)^{-1} = x^{-1} + \frac{1}{6}x + \frac{7}{360}x^3 + \frac{31}{15120}x^5 + \frac{127}{604800}x^7 + \dots$$

$$= x^{-1} + \sum_{m \geq 1} B_{2m} (-1)^{m+1} (2^{2m}-2) \frac{x^{2m-1}}{(2m)!}.$$

Use this to obtain  $\log(\cos x) = \sum_{m \geq 1} (-1)^m B_{2m} 2^{2m-1} (2^{2m}-1) x^{2m} / m(2m)!$  and  $\log((\sin(x)/x)) = \sum_{m \geq 1} (-1)^m B_{2m} 2^{2m-1} x^{2m} / m(2m)!$ .

Put now  $\zeta(s) = \sum_{n \geq 1} n^{-s}$  with  $s > 1$ . Use either the Fourier expansion

$$B_{2k}(x) = 2(-1)^{k-1} (2k)! \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\cos 2n\pi x}{(2n\pi)^{2k}}$$

or the expansion in rational functions

$$\cot g t = 1/t + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} 2t(t^2 - n^2\pi^2)^{-1}$$

to show, by [14c] (p. 48), that

$$\zeta(2k) = \frac{(2\pi)^{2k}}{2(2k)!} |B_{2k}| \text{ or } \sum_{k \geq 1} \zeta(2k) t^{2k} = \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2}\pi t \cot g \pi t.$$

Thus,  $\zeta(2) = \pi^2/6$ ,  $\zeta(4) = \pi^4/90$ ,  $\zeta(6) = \pi^6/945$ ,  $\zeta(8) = \pi^8/9450$ .

Use this and Exercise 11, p. 258, ([Chowla, Hartung, 1972]) to obtain an *explicit formula* for the Bernoulli numbers, with only a *simple* sum (p. 31) and  $[x]$ , the greatest integer  $\leq x$ :

$$B_{2n} = (-1)^{n-1} \frac{1 + [\varphi_n]}{2(2^{2n} - 1)}, \quad \text{where } \varphi_n = \frac{2(2^{2n} - 1)(2n)!}{2^{2n-1}\pi^{2n}} \sum_{k=1}^{3n} \frac{1}{k^{2n}}.$$

(Compare with Exercise 4, p. 220.) Finally, prove that

$$\sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{1}{(2n)} = \frac{1}{3} + \frac{2\pi\sqrt{3}}{27}, \quad \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{1}{n(2n)} = \frac{\pi\sqrt{3}}{9}, \quad \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{1}{n^2(2n)} = \frac{\pi^2}{18}, \quad \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{1}{n^4(2n)} = \frac{17\pi^4}{3240}.$$

**37. Using the Euler numbers.** We put  $\beta(s) = \sum_{n \geq 0} (-1)^n (2n+1)^{-s}$ , with  $s > 0$ . Then, by [14c] (p. 48), and using either the Fourier expansion

$$E_{2k}(x) = 4(-1)^k (2k)! \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{\sin(2n+1)\pi x}{((2n+1)\pi)^{2k+1}},$$

or the expansion into rational functions

$$\frac{1}{\operatorname{ch} t} = 4\pi \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n (2n+1)}{4t^2 + (2n+1)^2 \pi^2},$$

show that

$$\beta(2k+1) = \frac{(\pi/2)^{2k+1}}{2(2k)!} |E_{2k}|.$$

Thus,  $\beta(1) = \pi/4$ ,  $\beta(3) = \pi^3/32$ ,  $\beta(5) = 5\pi^5/1536$ .

**38. Sums of powers of binomial coefficients.** For any real number  $z$ , let us denote  $B(n, r) := \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k}^r$ . Evidently,  $B(n, 0) = n+1$ ,  $B(n, 1) = 2^n$ ,  $B(n, 2) = \binom{2n}{n}$  (p. 154). (1) Prove the following recurrences:  $n^2 B(n, 3) = (7n^2 - 7n + 2) B(n-1, 3) + 8(n-1)^2 B(n-2, 3)$  and  $n^3 B(n, 4) = 2(2n-1)(3n^2 - 3n + 1) B(n-1, 4) + (4n-3)(4n-4)(4n-5) B(n-2, 4)$  ([Franel, 1895]). (2) More generally, for every integer  $r \geq 0$ , the function  $f_r(t) := \sum_k \binom{n}{k}^r t^k = (1+t)^{\odot r}$  is algebraic and  $B(n, r)$  ( $r$  fixed) satisfies a linear recurrence of which the coefficients are polynomials in  $n$ . [Hint: (4) Exercise 30 p. 85, and [Comtet, 1964].] (3) For any real number  $\beta > 0$ , we have  $B(\beta, 2) := \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \binom{\beta}{k}^2 = 2^{2\beta} \pi^{-1/2} \Gamma(\beta+1/2)/\Gamma(\beta+1)$ . (4) For any  $r > 0$ , we have ([\*Pólya, Szegő, I], p. 42) the asymptotic result:

$$B(n, r) \sim \frac{2^{rn}}{\sqrt{r}} \left( \frac{2}{\pi n} \right)^{(r-1)/2}, \quad n \rightarrow \infty.$$

**39. Transitive closure of a binary relation.** For two relations  $\mathfrak{R}$  and  $\mathfrak{S}$  on  $N$ , the *transitive product*  $\mathfrak{R} \circ \mathfrak{S}$  is defined by  $x(\mathfrak{R} \circ \mathfrak{S}) y \Leftrightarrow \exists z \in N, x \mathfrak{R} z, z \mathfrak{S} y$ . The transitive closure  $\hat{\mathfrak{R}}$  of a relation  $\mathfrak{R}$  is the ‘smallest’ transitive relation containing  $\mathfrak{R}$  (= the intersection of transitive relations containing  $\mathfrak{R}$ ). Show that  $\hat{\mathfrak{R}} = \mathfrak{R} \cup \mathfrak{R} \circ \mathfrak{R} \cup \mathfrak{R} \circ \mathfrak{R} \circ \mathfrak{R} \cup \dots$ .

**40. Forests and introductions.** We consider a graph  $\mathcal{G}$  over  $E$  (possibly infinite), which is a *forest*. In other words, there exist trees  $(A_1, \mathcal{A}_1)$ ,  $(A_2, \mathcal{A}_2) \dots$  such that  $E = A_1 + A_2 + \dots$  and  $\mathcal{G} = \mathcal{A}_1 + \mathcal{A}_2 + \dots$ .

(1) Show that  $E$  can be divided into two subsets  $V$  and  $W$ ,  $E = V + W$ , such that  $\mathfrak{P}_2(V) \subset \mathcal{G}$  and  $\mathfrak{P}_2(W) \subset \mathcal{G}$  ( $\mathcal{G}$  means the complementary graph of  $\mathcal{G}$ , p. 62). [Hint: Choose  $x_i \in A_i$ , then divide  $A_i$  into  $V_i + W_i$ , where  $V_i$  is the set of  $x \in A_i$  whose distance to  $x_i$  is even (p. 62); then take  $V := V_1 \cup V_2 \cup \dots$ .]

(2) In any meeting of citizens of a city  $X$ , the number of necessary introductions is less than the number of people present at that meeting. Show that the population of  $X$  can be divided into two classes, such that in each of these two classes all people know each other.

**41.** *The pigeon-hole principle.* (1) If  $(n+1)$  objects are distributed over  $n$  containers, then one container at least contains at least 2 objects. More generally, let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a system of  $m$  subsets (not necessarily distinct) of  $N$ ,  $|N|=n$ ,  $|\mathcal{C}|=m$ , such that  $\sum_{B \in \mathcal{C}} |B|=w$ . Then a sufficient condition for  $b$  points of  $N$  to be  $h$  times covered by  $\mathcal{C}$ , is  $w \geq (h-1)n + (b-1) \times (m-h+1)+1$ . (2) Let  $N$  be a set of  $n (\geq 1)$  objects, not necessarily distinct. For one of the two following is the case: (I)  $(a+1)$  objects are identical; (II)  $(a+1)$  are distinct.

**42.** *Filter bases.* This is the name for a system  $\mathcal{S}$  of  $N$ ,  $\mathcal{S} \subset \mathfrak{P}'(N)$ , such that for  $A, B \in \mathcal{S}$  there exists a  $C \in \mathcal{S}$  such that  $C \subset A \cap B$ . The number of filter bases of  $N$ ,  $|N|=n$ , equals  $\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \binom{n}{k} 2^{2^k-1}$  and this is asymptotically equal to  $n2^{2^{n-1}-1}$  for  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . ([Comtet, 1966]).

**43.** *Idempotents of  $\mathfrak{F}(N)$  and forests of height  $\leq h$ .* Let  $\mathfrak{F}(N)$  be the set of maps of a finite set  $N$  into itself,  $\mathfrak{F}(N)=N^N$ ,  $|N|=n$ ;  $\mathfrak{F}(N)$  is also the symmetric semigroup (or monoid) of  $N$ . A map  $f \in \mathfrak{F}(N)$  is called idempotent if and only if for all  $x \in N$ ,  $f(f(x))=f(x)$ . (1)  $f$  is idempotent if and only if the restriction of  $f$  to its image  $f(N)$  is the identity. (2) The number  $i(n)$  of idempotent maps equals  $\sum_{k=1}^n \binom{n}{k} k^{n-k}$  ([Harris, Schœnfeld, 1967], [Tainiter, 1968]).

$n$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
$i(n)$	1	3	10	41	196	1057	6322	41393	293608	2237921

(3) Observe that  $1 + \sum_{n \geq 1} i(n) z^n/n! = \exp(ze^z)$ . Use this to give an asymptotic estimate of  $i(n)$ . (*Hint:* Use the saddle point method ([\*De Bruijn, 1961], p. 77). (4) Let  $F(n, h)$  be the number of forests (p. 70) such that the height of every rooted tree is  $\leq h$  (p. 70). Show that  $F(n, 1) = i(n)$ . Compute  $F(n, h)$  ([Riordan, 1968a]).

**44.** *Finite geometries.* Let  $S$  be a projective space of dimension  $n$  over a finite field  $K$  (= the Galois field  $GF(q)$ ) of  $q=p^r$  elements, where  $p$  is a prime number. One often writes that  $S$  is a  $PG(n, q)$ .  $E$  is the vector space from which  $S$  is obtained;  $\dim E=n+1$ . (1) The number of non-

zero vectors of  $E$  is  $q^{n+1} - 1$ ; use this to show that the number of points of  $S$  equals  $(q^{n+1} - 1)/(q - 1)$ . (2) The number of sets of  $k + 1$  independent points (obtained from  $(k + 1)$  independent vectors of  $E$ ) equals  $\binom{k+1}{2} (q^{n+1} - 1) (q^n - 1) \cdots (q^{n-k+1} - 1) (q - 1)^{-k-1}$ . (3) Deduce that the number of projective varieties of dimension  $k$  in  $S$  equals:

$$\frac{(q^{n+1} - 1) (q^n - 1) \cdots (q^{n-k+1} - 1)}{(q^{k+1} - 1) (q^k - 1) \cdots (q - 1)}.$$

(For other analogous formulas, see [\*Vajda, 1967a, b]. Compare also Exercise 11, p. 118.)

**\*45. Bipartite trees.** Let a bipartition of a set  $P$  be given,  $M + N = P$  such that  $m = |M| \geq 1$ ,  $n = |N| \geq 1$ . Show that the number of *trees* over  $P$  such that each of  $(m+n-1)$  edges of such a tree connects a point of  $M$  with a point of  $N$ , equals  $m^{n-1} n^{m-1}$ . (On this subject, see [Austin, 1960], [\*Berge, 1968], p. 91, [Glicksman, 1963], [Raney, 1964], [Scoins, 1962], and especially [Knuth, 1968].)

**46. Binomial determinants.** We recall the notation  $(a, b) = \binom{a+b}{a}$  (cf. p. 8). The following determinants of order  $r$ , taken from the table of binomial coefficients satisfy:

$$\begin{aligned} & \left| \begin{array}{ccc} \binom{n}{k} & \binom{n}{k+1} & \cdots \binom{n}{k+r-1} \\ \binom{n+1}{k} & \binom{n+1}{k+1} & \cdots \binom{n+1}{k+r-1} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\ \binom{n+r-1}{k} & \binom{n+r-1}{k+1} & \cdots \binom{n+r-1}{k+r-1} \end{array} \right| = \\ &= \frac{\binom{n}{k} \binom{n+1}{k} \cdots \binom{n+r-1}{k}}{\binom{k}{k} \binom{k+1}{k} \cdots \binom{k+r-1}{k}}; \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} & \left| \begin{array}{cccc} (a, b) & (a, b+1) & \dots & (a, b+r-1) \\ (a+1, b) & (a+1, b+1) & \dots & (a+1, b+r-1) \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ (a+r-1, b) & (a+r-1, b+1) & \dots & (a+r-1, b+r-1) \end{array} \right| = \\ & = \frac{(a, b)(a+1, b)\cdots(a+r-1, b)}{(0, b)(1, b)\cdots(r-1, b)}. \end{aligned}$$

Generalize this to determinants extracted from the table of binomial coefficients with row or column indices in arithmetic progression. (See [Zeipel, 1865] and [\*Netto, 1927], p. 256.)

**\*47. Equal binomial coefficients.** Determine all solutions in positive integers  $u, v, x, y$  of  $\binom{v}{u} = \binom{y}{x}$ . Examples:  $\binom{10}{3} = \binom{16}{2} = 120$ ,  $\binom{14}{6} = \binom{15}{5} = 3003$ .

## CHAPTER II

### PARTITIONS OF INTEGERS

The concept of partition of integers belongs to number theory as well as to combinatorial analysis. This theory was established at the end of the 18-th century by Euler. (A detailed account of the results up to ca. 1900 is found in [\*Dickson, II, 1919], pp. 101–64.) Its importance was enhanced by [Hardy, Ramanujan, 1918] and [Rademacher, 1937a, b, 1938, 1940, 1943] giving rise to generalizations, which have not been exhausted yet. We will treat here only a few elementary (combinatorial and algebraical) aspects. For further reading we refer to [\*Hardy, Wright, 1965], [\*MacMahon, 1915–16], [Andrews, 1970, 1972b], [\*Andrews, 1971], [Gupta, 1970], [Sylvester, 1884, 1886] (or *Collected Mathematical Papers*, Vol. 4, 1–83), and, for the beautiful asymptotic problems, to [\*Ayoub, 1963] and [\*Ostmann, 1956]. We use mostly the notations of the tables of [\*Gupta, 1962], which are the most extensive ones on this matter.

#### 2.1. DEFINITIONS OF PARTITIONS OF AN INTEGER $n$

**DEFINITION A.** *Let  $n$  be an integer  $\geq 1$ . A partition of  $n$  is a representation of  $n$  as a sum of integers  $\geq 1$ , not considering the order of terms of this sum. These terms are called summands, or parts, of the partition.*

We list all partitions of the integers 1 through 5:  $1$ ;  $2=1+1$ ;  $3=2+1=1+1+1$ ;  $4=3+1=2+2=2+1+1=1+1+1+1$ ;  $5=4+1=3+2=3+1+1=2+2+1=2+1+1+1=1+1+1+1+1$ .

It is important to distinguish clearly between a partition of a set (p. 30) and a partition of an integer. But in the first case as well as in the second case, the order of the blocks and the order of the summands respectively does not play a role, and no block is empty, just like no summand equals zero.

Let  $p(n)$  be the number of partitions of  $n$ , and let  $P(n, m)$  be the number of partitions of  $n$  into  $m$  summands. Thus, by the preceding list,  $p(1)=1$ ,  $p(2)=2$ ,  $p(3)=3$ ,  $p(4)=5$ ,  $p(5)=7$  and  $P(5, 1)=P(5, 4)=P(5, 5)=1$ ,

$P(5, 2) = P(5, 3) = 2$ . Clearly,  $p(n) = \sum_{m=1}^n P(n, m)$  and, since the order of the summands does not matter, we have:

**DEFINITION B.** *Each partition of  $n$  into  $m$  summands can be considered as a solution with integers  $y_i \geq 1$ ,  $i \in [m]$ , (the summands of the partition) of:*

$$[1a] \quad y_1 + y_2 + \cdots + y_m = n, \quad y_1 \geq y_2 \geq \cdots \geq y_m \geq 1.$$

With such a partition, we can associate a minimal increasing path (in the sense of p. 20) starting from  $W(0, 1)$ , with  $m$  horizontal steps and with area contained under its graph equal to  $n$ . Figure 24' clarifies this idea for the partition  $1+3+3+5$  of 12. But the interpretation related to Ferrers diagram (p. 100) will turn out to be more rewarding.

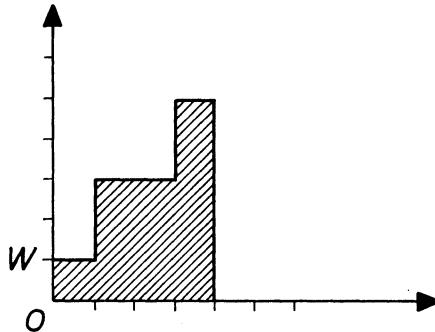


Fig. 24'.

**THEOREM A.** *Giving a partition of  $n$ , in other words, giving a solution of [1a], is equivalent to giving a solution with integers  $x_i \geq 0$  (the number of summands equal to  $i$ ) of:*

$$[1b] \quad x_1 + 2x_2 + \cdots + nx_n = n \quad (\text{also denoted by } x_1 + 2x_2 + \cdots = n).$$

*If the partition has  $m$  summands, we must add to [1b] the following condition:*

$$[1c] \quad x_1 + x_2 + \cdots + x_n = m \quad (\text{also denoted by } x_1 + x_2 + \cdots = n).$$

■ Evident. ■ If  $(x_{i_1}, x_{i_2}, \dots)$  are the nonzero  $x_i$  in [1b], we call the

corresponding partition “the partition with specification  $i_1^{x_1} i_2^{x_2} \dots$ ”, omitting the exponents  $x_i$  which equal 1. Written in this way, the partitions of 5 become 5, 14, 23,  $1^2 3$ ,  $1^2 2$ ,  $1^5$ .

We write  $p(n, m)$  for the number of partitions of  $n$  with *at most*  $m$  summands, or also ‘distribution function’ of the number of partitions of  $n$  with respect to the number of summands,  $p(n, m) = \sum_{k=1}^m P(n, k)$ ,  $P(n, m) = p(n, m) - p(n, m-1)$ . (The analogy with a stochastic distribution function will be noted.)

**THEOREM B.** *If  $m \geq n \geq 1$ , then  $p(n, m) = p(n)$ , and for  $n \geq m \geq 2$ :*

$$[1d] \quad p(n, m) = p(n, m-1) + p(n-m, m); \quad p(n, 1) = 1, \quad p(0, m) := 1.$$

■  $p(n, m)$  is the number of solutions of [1b] that satisfy  $x_1 + x_2 + \dots \leq m$  also. So we divide the set of solutions into two parts: first the solutions of [1b] that *also* satisfy  $x_1 + x_2 + \dots \leq m-1$ ; there are  $p(n, m-1)$  of these; then the solutions of [1b] which *also* satisfy  $x_1 + x_2 + \dots = m$ ; these are just the solutions of  $x_2 + 2x_3 + \dots = n-m$  and  $x_2 + x_3 + \dots \leq m$  (since  $x_1 \geq 0$ ); hence there are  $p(n-m, m)$  of these. ■

The following table shows the first values of  $p(n, m)$  (boldface printed:  $p(n)$ ). (See also [\*Gupta, 1962],  $n \leq 400$ ,  $m \leq 50$ . For a table of  $p(n, m)$  and  $p(n)$  see p. 307.)

$m \setminus n$	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
1	1	<b>1</b>	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
2	1	1	<b>2</b>	2	3	3	4	4	5	5
3	1	1	2	<b>3</b>	4	5	7	8	10	12
4	1	1	2	3	<b>5</b>	6	9	11	15	18
5	1	1	2	3	5	<b>7</b>	10	13	18	23
6	1	1	2	3	5	7	<b>11</b>	14	20	26
7	1	1	2	3	5	7	11	<b>15</b>	21	28
8	1	1	2	3	5	7	11	15	<b>22</b>	29
9	1	1	2	3	5	7	11	15	22	<b>30</b>

## 2.2. GENERATING FUNCTIONS OF $p(n)$ AND $P(n, m)$

**THEOREM A.** *The generating function of the number  $p(n)$  of partitions of  $n$  equals:*

$$[2a] \quad \Phi(t) := 1 + \sum_{n \geq 1} p(n) t^n = \prod_{i \geq 1} (1 - t^i)^{-1} = \\ = \frac{1}{(1-t)(1-t^2)(1-t^3)\dots}.$$

■ The family of formal series  $u_i := (1-t^i)^{-1} = 1+t^i+t^{2i}+\dots$  is indeed multiplicable, since  $\omega(u_i-1)=i$  (cf. p. 39). If we let  $x_i$  stand for integers  $\geq 0$ , we obtain:

$$[2b] \quad \prod_{i \geq 0} (1-t^i)^{-1} = \prod_{i \geq 1} (1+t^i+t^{2i}+\dots) = \\ = \prod_{i \geq 1} \left( \sum_{x_i \geq 0} t^{ix_i} \right) = \sum_{x_1, x_2, \dots \geq 0} t^{x_1+2x_2+\dots},$$

and this proves that the coefficient of  $t^n$  in [2b] is just the number of solutions of [1b] p. 95, hence  $p(n)$ . ■

One could prove that  $\Phi(t)$ , written in the form [2a] as a series or as an infinite product, is convergent for  $|t| < 1$ .

For given integer  $n$ , the *actual* computation of  $p(n)$  by [2a] is evidently performed by just considering the *finite* product  $\prod_{i=1}^n (1-t^i)^{-1}$ .

**THEOREM B.** *The generating function of the number  $P(n, m)$  of the partitions of  $n$  into  $m$  summands equals:*

$$[2c] \quad \Phi(t, u) := 1 + \sum_{1 \leq m \leq n} P(n, m) t^m u^m = \prod_{i \geq 1} (1 - ut^i)^{-1} = \\ = \frac{1}{(1-ut)(1-ut^2)(1-ut^3)\dots}.$$

■ As in the preceding proof, we have:

$$[2d] \quad \prod_{i \geq 1} (1 - ut^i)^{-1} = \prod_{i \geq 1} \left( \sum_{x_i \geq 0} u^{x_i} t^{ix_i} \right) = \\ = \sum_{x_1, x_2, \dots \geq 0} t^{x_1+2x_2+\dots} u^{x_1+x_2+\dots}.$$

Hence indeed the coefficient of  $t^n u^m$  in [2d] equals the number of solutions of [1b, c] (p. 95). ■

### 2.3. CONDITIONAL PARTITIONS

More generally, let  $p(n | \mathcal{P}_1, \mathcal{P}_2)$  be the number of partitions of  $n$  such that the *number* of summands has the property  $\mathcal{P}_1$ , and the *value* of each summand has the property  $\mathcal{P}_2$ ; we indicate by a star \* the absence of a condition (notations from [\*Ayoub, 1963], p. 193). Thus,  $p(n, m) = p(n | \leq m, *)$ ,  $P(n, m) = p(n | m, *)$ . We also denote the number of partitions of  $n$ , that satisfy  $\mathcal{P}_1$  and  $\mathcal{P}_2$  in the sense above, and whose summands are *all unequal*, by  $q(n | \mathcal{P}_1, \mathcal{P}_2)$ . Thus,  $q(n | *, \leq r)$  is the number of partitions of  $n$  into unequal summands, that are all  $\leq r$ .

**THEOREM A.** *Let:*

$$[3a] \quad \Xi(t, u) := \sum_{n, m \geq 0} p(n | m, \mathcal{S}) t^n u^m;$$

*then:*

$$[3b] \quad \sum_{n \geq 0} p(n | *, \mathcal{S}) t^n = \Xi(t, 1)$$

$$[3c] \quad \sum_{n \geq 0} p(n | \text{even}, \mathcal{S}) t^n = \frac{1}{2} \{\Xi(t, 1) + \Xi(t, -1)\}$$

$$[3d] \quad \sum_{n \geq 0} p(n | \text{odd}, \mathcal{S}) t^n = \frac{1}{2} \{\Xi(t, 1) - \Xi(t, -1)\}$$

$$[3e] \quad \sum_{n, m \geq 0} p(n | \leq m, \mathcal{S}) t^n u^m = (1 - u)^{-1} \Xi(t, u).$$

Analogous inequalities hold when everywhere in [3a, b, c, d, e] if  $p$  is replaced by  $q$ .

■ [3b] follows from  $p(n | *, \mathcal{S}) = \sum_{m \geq 1} p(n | m, \mathcal{S})$ ; [3c] from  $p(n | \text{even}, \mathcal{S}) = \sum_{m \geq 0} p(n | 2m, \mathcal{S})$ ; [3d] from  $p(n | \text{odd}, \mathcal{S}) = \sum_{m \geq 0} p(n | 2m+1, \mathcal{S})$ ; [3e] from  $p(n | \leq m, \mathcal{S}) = \sum_{i=0}^m p(n | i, \mathcal{S})$ . ■

**THEOREM B.** *Let  $\mathfrak{A}$  be an infinite matrix consisting of 0 and 1,  $\mathfrak{A} = [[\alpha_{i,j}]]$ ,  $i \geq 1, j \geq 0$ ,  $\alpha_{i,j} = 0$  or 1. Denoting by  $p(n | m, \mathfrak{A})$  the number of partitions of  $n$  into  $m$  summands such that the number of summands equal to  $i$ , equals one of the integers  $j \geq 0$  for which  $\alpha_{i,j} = 1$ . Then we have:*

$$[3f] \quad \sum_{n, m \geq 0} p(n | m, \mathfrak{A}) t^n u^m = \prod_{i \geq 1} \left( \sum_{x \geq 0} \alpha_{i,x} u^x t^{ix} \right).$$

where the (bound) variable  $x$  takes only integer values.

■ The number of partitions of the indicated kind is equal to the number of solutions with integer  $x_i \geq 0$ ,  $i=1, 2, \dots$ , of:

$$[3g] \quad x_1 + 2x_2 + \dots = n, \quad x_1 + x_2 + \dots = m, \\ x_i \in \{j \mid j \geq 0, \alpha_{i,j} = 1\} \quad (\Leftrightarrow \alpha_{i,x_i} = 1).$$

Now, the right-hand member of [3f] can be written:

$$\prod_{i \geq 1} \left( \sum_{x_i \geq 0} \alpha_{i,x_i} u^{x_i} t^{ix_i} \right) = \\ = \sum_{x_1, x_2, \dots \geq 0} \alpha_{1,x_1} \alpha_{2,x_2} \dots u^{x_1+x_2+\dots} t^{x_1+2x_2+\dots},$$

which proves that the coefficient of  $u^m t^n$  is just equal to the number of solutions of [3g]. ■

For example, if  $\alpha_{i,0} = \alpha_{i,1} = 1$  and  $\alpha_{i,j} = 0$  if  $j \geq 2$ , then we have  $p(n \mid m, \mathfrak{U}) = Q(n, m)$  = the number of partitions of  $n$  into  $m$  unequal summands; hence, by [3f]:

$$[3h] \quad \Psi(t, u) := 1 + \sum_{n, m \geq 1} Q(n, m) t^n u^m = \prod_{i \geq 1} (1 + ut^i).$$

Similarly, with  $q(n)$  = the number of partitions of  $n$  into unequal summands =  $\sum_{m \geq 1} Q(n, m)$ , we obtain with [3b, h]:

$$[3i] \quad \Psi(t, 1) = 1 + \sum_{n \geq 1} q(n) t^n = \prod_{i \geq 1} (1 + t^i).$$

Here are a few values of  $q(n)$ :

$n$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22
$q(n)$	1	1	2	2	3	4	5	6	8	10	12	15	18	22	27	32	38	46	54	64	76	89

With the same method, or otherwise, we get also:

$$[3j] \quad 1 + \sum_{n, m \geq 1} p(n \mid m, \leq l) t^n u^m = \prod_{1 \leq i \leq l} (1 - ut^i)^{-1}$$

$$[3k] \quad 1 + \sum_{n, m \geq 1} q(n \mid m, \leq l) t^n u^m = \prod_{1 \leq i \leq l} (1 + ut^i).$$

## 2.4. FERRERS DIAGRAMS

A convenient and instructive representation of a partition of  $n$  into summands  $y_i$  such that [1a] p. 95 consists of a figure having  $m$  horizontal rows

of points (the lines), the bottom one having  $y_1$  points, the next to bottom one having  $y_2$  points, etc., in such a way that the initial points of every line are all on one vertical line; hence the number of points on every vertical line or column decreases going from left to right. Such a figure, the *Ferrers diagram (or relation)*, clearly determines a unique partition of  $n$ . For example, Figure 25 shows the diagram of the partition  $6+5+5+2+2+1$  of 21. If one considers the *columns* from left to right, the

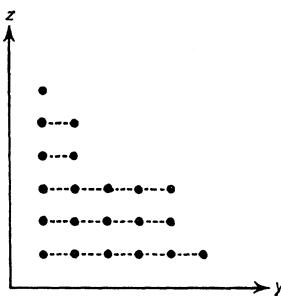


Fig. 25.

number of points in these will constitute another partition of  $n$ , with summands  $z_1, z_2, \dots$ , which is called the *conjugate* partition of the partition with summands  $y_1, y_2, \dots$ . In the case of the figure shown, the conjugate partition is  $6+5+3+3+3+1$ . Certain properties of a partition  $y_1+y_2+\dots$  have an immediate translation into terms of the conjugate partition. Thus we have:

**THEOREM A.** *The number of partitions of  $n$  into at most (or exactly)  $m$  summands is equal to the number of partitions of  $n$  into summands that are all  $\leq m$  (or whose maximum is  $m$ ), in other words, the number of partitions of  $n+m$  whose maximum summand equals  $m$ .*

**THEOREM B.** *The number of partitions of  $n$  into unequal odd summands equals the number of 'self-conjugate' partitions of  $n$  (that is, whose diagram is symmetric with respect to the line  $x=y$ ).*

■ Theorem A is evident. For Theorem B, we associate with every

partition  $(2z_1 - 1) + (2z_2 - 1) + \dots = n$ , where  $z_1 > z_2 > \dots$ , the partition whose diagram is obtained by ‘folding’ the rows of the original diagram in the middle, so they form the sides of isosceles straight-angled triangles, and fitting them then one by one, beginning with the largest, into each other. For instance, Figure 26 corresponds to  $11 + 7 + 3 + 1 \rightarrow 6 + 5 + 4 + 4 + 2 + 1$ . ■



Fig. 26.

**THEOREM C.** Let  $q_0(n)$  (or  $q_1(n)$ ) be the number of partitions of  $n$  into an even (or odd) number of unequal summands. Then:

$$[4a] \quad q_0(n) - q_1(n) = \begin{cases} (-1)^k & \text{if } n = \frac{3k^2 \pm k}{2} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

(This theorem is due to Euler; the proof given here is due to [Franklin, 1881]. See also the paper by [Andrews, 1972a] which applies the Franklin type technique to various other problems.)

■ Let  $\mathbf{q}_0 = \mathbf{q}_0(n)$  (or  $\mathbf{q}_1 = \mathbf{q}_1(n)$ ) be the set of Ferrers diagrams of the partitions of  $n$  into an even (or odd) number of unequal summands. For each diagram  $D$  (Figure 27a) we denote the ‘northernmost’ horizontal line of  $D$  by  $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{n}(D)$  (quite possibly  $|\mathbf{n}| = 1$ ); we denote by  $\mathbf{e} = \mathbf{e}(D)$  the ‘easternmost’ line that makes an angle of  $45^\circ$  with the horizontal direction ( $|\mathbf{e}| \geq 1$ ). Now we define  $D' = \varphi(D)$  as the diagram which is obtained by sliding  $\mathbf{n}$  down to the east, if  $|\mathbf{n}| \leq |\mathbf{e}|$  (Figure 27a) or by transporting  $\mathbf{e}$  to the north, if  $|\mathbf{n}| > |\mathbf{e}|$  (Figure 27b). This transformation  $\varphi$  is defined in  $\mathbf{q}_0 \cup \mathbf{q}_1$ , except if  $|\mathbf{n} \cap \mathbf{e}| = 1$ , with  $|\mathbf{n}| = |\mathbf{e}|$  (Figure 28a) or with  $|\mathbf{n}| = |\mathbf{e}| + 1$  (Figure 28b). Let  $\mathbf{a}_0$  and  $\mathbf{b}_0$  (or  $\mathbf{a}_1$  and  $\mathbf{b}_1$ ) be the set of  $D \in \mathbf{q}_0$  (or  $\mathbf{q}_1$ ) corresponding to the case of Figures 28a and b.

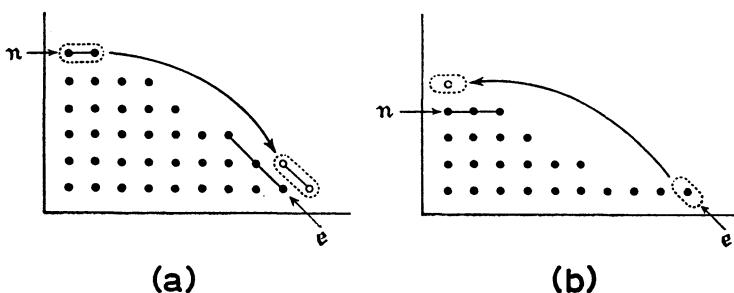


Fig. 27.

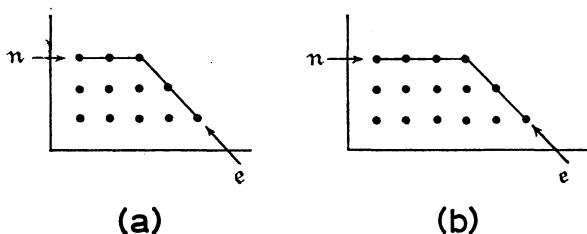


Fig. 28.

Clearly  $\varphi$  is a *bijection* of  $q_0 - (a_0 + b_0)$  onto  $q_1 - (a_1 + b_1)$ . Thus:

$$\begin{aligned} [4b] \quad q_0(n) - q_1(n) &= |q_0| - |q_1| = |a_0| + |b_0| - |a_1| - |b_1| := \\ &:= a_0 + b_0 - a_1 - b_1. \end{aligned}$$

Now, in the case of Figure 28a,  $n$  is of the form  $k + (k+1) + \dots + (2k-1) = (3k^2 - k)/2$ , while in the case of Figure 28b,  $n = (k+1) + (k+2) + \dots + 2k = (3k^2 + k)/2$ , with  $k := |\epsilon|$  = the number of summands of  $D$ . Hence  $a_0, b_0, a_1, b_1$  equal 0 except  $a_0$  (or  $a_1$ ) = 1, if  $n = (3k^2 - k)/2$  and  $k$  even (or odd), and  $b_0$  (or  $b_1$ ) = 1, if  $n = (3k^2 + k)/2$  and  $k$  even (or odd). This implies [4a] if we substitute these values into [4b]. ■

The concept of a Ferrers diagram can be generalized easily to higher dimensions. We call a  $d$ -dimensional partition of  $n$ , for  $d \geq 2$ , any set  $F$  containing  $n$  points with integer coordinates  $\geq 1$  in the Euclidean space  $\mathbf{R}^d$  that satisfies the condition that  $(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_d) \in F$  implies that all points  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_d)$ , where  $1 \leq x_i \leq a_i$  with  $i \in [d]$ , also belong to  $F$ . Let  $p_d(n)$  be the number of these sets  $F$ . Clearly  $p_2(n) = p(n)$ . A beautiful

result of MacMahon states ([\*MacMahon, II, 1916], p. 171):

$$[4c] \quad \sum_{n \geq 0} p_3(n) t^n = \prod_{i \geq 1} (1 - t^i)^{-i},$$

but the proof is very difficult ([Chaundy, 1931, 1932]). No other simple GF for  $d \geq 4$  is known. ([Atkin, Bratley, Macdonald, Mackay, 1967]. See also [Gordon, Houten, 1968], [\*Stanley, 1972], [Stanley, 1971a, b], [Wright, 1965a].)

## 2.5. SPECIAL IDENTITIES; ‘FORMAL’ AND ‘COMBINATORIAL’ PROOFS

First we prove two typical identities, which may serve as sample of many others.

**THEOREM A.** *The formal series introduced in [2a, c] (p. 97) also satisfy:*

$$[5a] \quad \Phi(t) = 1 + \sum_{n \geq 1} p(n) t^n \quad \left( = \prod_{i \geq 1} (1 - t^i)^{-1} \right) \\ = 1 + \sum_{m \geq 1} \frac{t^m}{(1-t)(1-t^2)\dots(1-t^m)}$$

$$[5b] \quad \Phi(t, u) = 1 + \sum_{1 \leq m \leq n} P(n, m) t^n u^m \quad \left( = \prod_{i \geq 1} (1 - ut^i)^{-1} \right) \\ = 1 + \sum_{m \geq 1} \frac{t^m u^m}{(1-t)\dots(1-t^m)}.$$

In the literature, often  $t=q$  and  $u=x$  (in honour of the elliptic functions); hence the name of ‘ $q$ -identity’, often given to this kind of identity. (See also Exercise 11, p. 118).

■ *Formal proof* (also called ‘algebraic’ proof). We expand  $\Phi(t, u)$  in to a formal series in  $u$ :

$$[5c] \quad \Phi(t, u) = \sum_{m \geq 0} C_m u^m, \quad C_m = C_m(t).$$

The evident functional relation  $\Phi(t, tu) = (1 - tu)\Phi(t, u)$ , which is satisfied by  $\Phi(t, u) = \prod_{i \geq 0} (1 - ut^i)^{-1}$ , gives, when [5c] is substituted into it:

$$[5d] \quad \sum_{n \geq 0} C_n t^n u^n = (1 - tu) \sum_{n \geq 0} C_n u^n.$$

If we compare the coefficients of  $u^n$  of both members of [5d], we get  $t^n C_n = C_n - t C_{n-1}$ ; hence:

$$\begin{aligned} [5e] \quad C_n &= \frac{t}{1 - t^n} C_{n-1} = \frac{t^2}{(1 - t^n)(1 - t^{n-1})} C_{n-2} = \dots \\ &= \frac{t^n}{(1 - t^n)(1 - t^{n-1}) \cdots (1 - t^2)(1 - t)}, \end{aligned}$$

which, by [5c], proves [5b]. By putting  $u=1$  we get [5a].

*Combinatorial proof.* As an example we prove [5a]. By [3j] (p. 99), the coefficient of  $t^k$  in  $\{(1-t)(1-t^2)\cdots(1-t^l)\}^{-1}$  equals  $p(k | *, \leq l)$ , which is the number of partitions of  $k$  into summands smaller or equal to  $l$ , here denoted by  $s(k, l)$ . Hence, for proving [5a], we just have to verify that the coefficients of  $t^n$  on both sides are equal; this means that we must prove that:

$$[5f] \quad p(n) = s(n-1, 1) + s(n-2, 2) + \dots.$$

By Theorem A (p. 98)  $s(k, l)$  equals the number  $\bar{r}(k+l, l)$  of partitions of  $k+l$  whose largest summand equals  $l$ . So [5f] is equivalent to  $p(n) = \bar{r}(n, 1) + \bar{r}(n, 2) + \dots$  and this last equality follows from the division of the set of partitions of  $n$  according to the value of the largest summand. ■

**THEOREM B.** (Sometimes called ‘pentagonal theorem’ of Euler). *We have the following identity [5g] between formal series and the recurrence relation [5h] between the  $p(n)$ :*

$$\begin{aligned} [5g] \quad \prod_{i \geq 1} (1 - t^i) &= \sum_{k \in \mathbf{Z}} (-1)^k t^{k(3k+1)/2} \\ &\stackrel{(*)}{=} 1 + \sum_{k \geq 1} (-1)^k \{t^{k(3k-1)/2} + t^{k(3k+1)/2}\} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} [5h] \quad p(n) &= p(n-1) + p(n-2) - p(n-5) - \dots = \\ &= \sum_{k \geq 1} (-1)^{k-1} \left\{ p\left(n - \frac{k(3k-1)}{2}\right) + \right. \\ &\quad \left. + p\left(n - \frac{k(3k+1)}{2}\right) \right\}. \end{aligned}$$

■ *Formal proof.* Use the Jacobi identity, which is Theorem D below, and Exercise 14 (1) (p. 119).

*Combinatorial proof.* By using [3h] for (\*\*), and the notations of Theorem C (p. 101), for (\*\*\*)<sup>1</sup>, we get:

$$\prod_{i \geq 1} (1 - t^i) \stackrel{(**)}{=} \Psi(t, -1) \stackrel{(***)}{=} 1 + \sum_{n \geq 1} \{q_0(n) - q_1(n)\} t^n,$$

and thus [5g (\*)] follows from [4a]. For [5h], substitute [5g] into [5i] (which is equivalent to [2a], p. 97):

$$[5i] \quad \left\{ \prod_{i \geq 1} (1 - t^i) \right\} \cdot \left\{ 1 + \sum_{n \geq 1} p(n) t^n \right\} = 1,$$

and by observing that the coefficient of  $t^n (n \geq 1)$  of the left-hand member equals 0, we obtain the result. ■

**THEOREM C.** *The number of partitions of  $n$  into  $m$  unequal summands equals the number of partitions of  $n - \binom{m+1}{2}$  into at most  $m$  summands (that is, into summands which are all  $\leq m$ , by Theorem A, p. 100):*

$$[5j] \quad Q(n, m) = p\left(n - \binom{m+1}{2}, m\right) \\ = p\left(n - \binom{m+1}{2} \mid *, \leq m\right).$$

■ *Formal proof.* This is carried out by a method analogous to the method used in the formal demonstration of Theorem A (p. 103), but this time the functional relation  $\Psi(t, u) = (1 + tu) \Psi(t, tu)$  is used. We get:

$$[5k] \quad \Psi(t, u) = 1 + \sum_{1 \leq m \leq n} Q(n, m) t^m u^m = \prod_{i \geq 1} (1 + ut^i) = \\ = 1 + \sum_{m \geq 1} \frac{u^m t^{\binom{m+1}{2}}}{(1-t)(1-t^2)\cdots(1-t^m)}.$$

Hence,  $Q(n, m)$  equals the coefficient of  $t^{n-\binom{m+1}{2}}$  in  $\{(1-t)(1-t^2)\cdots(1-t^m)\}^{-1}$ , which is  $p(n - \binom{m+1}{2} \mid * \leq m)$ , because of [3j] p. 99, hence equal to  $p(n - \binom{m+1}{2}, m)$ , by Theorem A (p. 100).

*Combinatorial proof.* The number of solutions of

$$[5l] \quad y_1 + y_2 + \cdots + y_m = n, \quad y_1 > y_2 > \cdots > y_m \geq 1$$

is evidently equal to  $Q(n, m)$ . We put  $z_1 := y_1 - y_2 - 1, \dots, z_{m-1} := y_{m-1} - y_m - 1, z_m := y_m - 1$ . Hence  $y_m = 1 + z_m, y_{m-1} = 2 + z_{m-1} + z_m, \dots, y_1 = m + z_1 + z_2 + \cdots + z_m$ . Then equation [5l] is equivalent to:

$$[5m] \quad z_1 + 2z_2 + \cdots + mz_m = n - \binom{m+1}{2}, \quad z_i \geq 0, \quad i \in [m].$$

Now, the number of solutions of [5m] is clearly equal to the number of partitions of  $n - \binom{m+1}{2}$  into summands not exceeding  $m$ , in other words,  $p(n - \binom{m+1}{2}, m)$ , by Theorem A (p. 100). ■

**THEOREM D.** (*Jacobi identity*):

$$[5n] \quad \prod_{i \geq 0} \{(1 - t^{2i+2})(1 + t^{2i+1}u)(1 + t^{2i+1}u^{-1})\} = \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} t^{n^2} u^n.$$

Both sides of [5n] have a generalized formal series in  $u$ , with positive and negative exponents: the theory of such series is easily developed, as on p. 43. We give here the ‘formal’ proof of [Andrews, 1965]. A beautiful ‘combinatorial’ proof is found in [Wright, 1965b]. See also [\*Hermite], *Oeuvres*, Vol. II, pp. 155–56, and [Stolarsky, 1969].)

■ We replace  $tu$  by  $u$  in [5k], and  $tu$  by  $-u$  in [5b]. Then we get:

$$[5o] \quad \prod_{i \geq 0} (1 + t^i u) = \sum_{n \geq 0} \frac{t^{\binom{n}{2}} u^n}{(1-t)(1-t^2)\cdots(1-t^n)}$$

$$[5p] \quad \prod_{i \geq 0} (1 + t^i u)^{-1} = \sum_{n \geq 0} \frac{(-1)^n u^n}{(1-t)(1-t^2)\cdots(1-t^n)}.$$

It follows (justifications at the end) that:

$$\begin{aligned}
& \prod_{i \geq 0} (1 + t^{2i+1}u) = \\
& \stackrel{(*)}{=} \sum_{n \geq 0} \frac{t^{n^2} u^n}{(1-t^2) \cdots (1-t^{2n})} = \sum_{n \geq 0} t^{n^2} u^n \frac{\prod_{j \geq 0} (1 - t^{2n+2+2j})}{\prod_{j \geq 0} (1 - t^{2j+2})} = \\
& \stackrel{(**)}{=} \frac{1}{\prod_{j \geq 0} (1 - t^{2j+2})} \sum_{n \in \mathbf{Z}} t^{n^2} u^n \prod_{j \geq 0} (1 - t^{2n+2+2j}) = \\
& \stackrel{(***)}{=} \frac{1}{\prod_{j \geq 0} (1 - t^{2j+2})} \sum_{n \in \mathbf{Z}} \left\{ t^{n^2} u^n \sum_{m \geq 0} \frac{(-1)^m t^{m^2+m+2mn}}{(1-t^2) \cdots (1-t^{2m})} \right\} = \\
& \stackrel{(**)}{=} \frac{1}{\prod_{j \geq 0} (1 - t^{2j+2})} \sum_{m \geq 0} \left\{ \frac{(-1)^m (tu^{-1})^m}{(1-t^2) \cdots (1-t^{2m})} \sum_{n \in \mathbf{Z}} t^{(m+n)^2} u^{m+n} \right\} \\
& \stackrel{(***)}{=} \frac{1}{\prod_{j \geq 0} (1 - t^{2j+2})} \left\{ \prod_{j \geq 0} (1 + t^{2j+1}u^{-1}) \right\}^{-1} \cdot \sum_{n \in \mathbf{Z}} t^{n^2} u^n.
\end{aligned}$$

(\*) In [5o] replace  $t$  by  $t^2$  and  $u$  by  $tu$ .

(\*\*) All the terms of the summation that have negative nonzero  $n$ , are zero, because a factor 0 occurs in the product, namely when  $j = -n-1$ .

(\*\*\*) In [5o], replace  $t$  by  $t^2$  and  $u$  by  $-t^{2n+2}$ .

$\binom{**}{**}$  Interchange of summations.

$\binom{**}{***}$  In [5p], replace  $t$  by  $t^2$  and  $u$  by  $tu^{-1}$ . ■

The natural setting for identities such as [5n] is actually the theory of elliptic functions, which is of an altogether fascinating beauty. (See, among others, [Alder, 1969], [Andrews, 1970, 1972b], and [\*Bellman, 1961].) We mention here, pro memori, the famous *Rogers-Ramanujan* identities (for a simple proof, see [Dobbie, 1962]):

$$\begin{aligned}
1 + \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{t^{n^2}}{(1-t)(1-t^2) \cdots (1-t^n)} &= \\
&= \prod_{n \geq 1} \frac{1}{(1-t^{5n-1})(1-t^{5n-4})}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 1 + \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{t^{n(n+1)}}{(1-t)(1-t^2)\cdots(1-t^n)} &= \\
 &= \prod_{n \geq 1} \frac{1}{(1-t^{5n-2})(1-t^{5n-3})}.
 \end{aligned}$$

(See also Exercises 9, 10, 11 and 12, p. 117.)

## 2.6. PARTITIONS WITH FORBIDDEN SUMMANDS; DENUMERANTS

Now we consider partitions of  $n$  whose summands are taken (repetitions allowed) from a sequence of integers  $(a) := (a_1, a_2, \dots)$ ,  $1 \leq a_1 < a_2 < \dots$ . As in Theorem A (p. 95), giving such a partition is equivalent to giving a solution of

$$[6a] \quad a_1x_1 + a_2x_2 + a_3x_3 + \cdots = n, \quad x_i \text{ integer } \geq 0.$$

In other words, the matrix  $\mathfrak{A} = [[\alpha_{i,j}]]$  (p. 98) is such that  $\alpha_{i,j} = 1$  for  $i \in (a)$ , for all  $j \geq 0$ , and  $\alpha_{i,j} = 0$  otherwise, except that  $\alpha_{i,0} = 1$ . From Theorem B (p. 98) (or by direct computation) it follows immediately that:

**THEOREM A.** *The generating function of the number  $D(n; (a)) = D(n; a_1, a_2, \dots)$  of solutions of [6a], called the denumerant of  $n$  with respect to the sequence  $(a)$ , equals:*

$$[6b] \quad \mathfrak{D}_{(a)}(t) := 1 + \sum_{n \geq 1} D(n; (a)) t^n = \prod_{i \geq 1} (1 - t^{a_i})^{-1}.$$

For  $(a) = \{1, 2, 3, \dots\}$ , we find back [2a] of p. 97.

For example, in the *money changing problem*, one has as many coins of 5, 10, 20 and 50 centimes as one needs. In how many ways can one make with these a given amount of, say, 5 francs? (1 franc = 100 centimes). This is equivalent to finding the number of integer solutions of  $5x_1 + 10x_2 + 20x_3 + 50x_4 = 500$ , or equivalently, of  $x_1 + 2x_2 + 4x_3 + 10x_4 = 100$ . The solution is hence  $D(100; 1, 2, 4, 10)$ , which is 2691 (see p. 113).

Another example: it is immediately clear, by [5b] p. 103 and [6b] that

$$[6b'] \quad D(n; 1, 2, 3, \dots, k) = P(n+k, k) = Q(n+k(k+1)/2, k).$$

We investigate the case of a *finite* sequence  $(a) := (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_k)$ ,

$1 \leq a_1 < a_2 < \dots < a_k (\Leftrightarrow a_i = 0, \text{ if } i > k)$ . The GF [6b] is then a *rational fraction*:

$$[6b''] \quad \mathfrak{D}_{(a)}(t) = 1 + \sum_{n \geq 1} D(n; (a)) t^n = \prod_{i=1}^k (1 - t^{a_i})^{-1}.$$

A first method for computing the denumerant  $D(n; (a))$  is provided by a decomposition of the *rational fraction* [6b''] into *partial fractions*. For instance:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{D}_{(1, 2)}(t) &= \frac{1}{(1-t)(1-t^2)} \\ &= \frac{1}{4} \left( \frac{1}{1+t} + \frac{1}{1-t} + \frac{2}{(1-t)^2} \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{4} \left\{ \sum_{n \geq 0} (-t)^n + \sum_{n \geq 0} t^n + 2 \sum_{n \geq 0} (n+1) t^n \right\}, \end{aligned}$$

which gives as coefficient of  $t^n$ :

$$[6c] \quad D(n; 1, 2) = \frac{1}{4} \{2n + 3 + (-1)^n\}.$$

Similarly, for  $\mathfrak{D}_{(1, 2, 3)}(t) = \{(1-t)(1-t^2)(1-t^3)\}^{-1}$  we have two decompositions. (The first one, called the *first type*, is a decomposition into ordinary partial fractions; the second one is called the *second type* or *Herschelian type*. See [Herschel, 1818].)

$$\begin{aligned} [6d] \quad \mathfrak{D}_{(1, 2, 3)} &= \frac{1}{6(1-t)^3} + \frac{1}{4(1-t)^2} + \\ &+ \frac{17}{72(1-t)} + \frac{1}{8(1+t)} + \frac{2+t}{9(1+t+t^2)} = \\ &= \frac{1}{6(1-t)^3} + \frac{1}{4(1-t)^2} + \frac{1}{4(1-t^2)} + \frac{1}{3(1-t^3)}. \end{aligned}$$

We denote the periodic sequence with period  $T$  (integer  $\geq 1$ ), that is equal to  $d_i$  for  $n \equiv i \pmod{T}$ ,  $i = 0, 1, \dots, T-1$ , by:  $(d_0, d_1, \dots, d_{T-1})$  cr  $T_n$  (cr for *circulator*; this notation is from Herschel). If, moreover, for each divisor  $S$  of  $T$ ,  $1 \leq S \leq T$ , we have  $d_R + d_{R+S} + d_{R+2S} + \dots + d_{R+(T-S)} = 0$  for all  $R = 0, 1, 2, \dots, S-1$ , then we rather denote the above sequence by  $(d_0, d_1, \dots, d_{T-1})$  pcr  $T_n$  (pcr stands for *prime circulator*, the notation is due to Cayley). The expansion of [6d] into a

power series gives then the following two forms for  $D(n; 1, 2, 3)$ :

$$[6e] \quad \frac{n^2}{12} + \frac{n}{2} + \frac{47}{72} + \frac{1}{8}(1, -1) \text{pcr } 2_n + \frac{1}{9}(2, -1, -1) \text{pcr } 3_n$$

$$[6e'] \quad \frac{1}{12}(n+1)(n+5) + \frac{1}{4}(1, 0) \text{cr } 2_n + \frac{1}{3}(1, 0, 0) \text{cr } 3_n.$$

For each  $x \in \mathbb{R}$  such that  $(x - \frac{1}{2})$  is not integer, we put:

$$[6f] \quad \|x\| := \text{the integer closest to } x.$$

By [6c] we find:

$$[6g] \quad D(n; 1, 2) = \left\| \frac{2n+3}{4} \right\|.$$

A similar formula using  $\|\dots\|$  for  $D(n; 1, 2, 3)$  can be found as it follows. We transform [6e'] by grouping first the two cr's, then replacing  $(n+1)(n+5)$  by  $(n+3)^2 - 4$ :

$$\begin{aligned} D(n; 1, 2, 3) &= \frac{1}{12}\{(n+1)(n+5) + (7, 0, 3, 4, 3, 0) \text{cr } 6_n\} \\ &= \frac{1}{12}\{(n+3)^2 + (3, -4, -1, 0, -1, -4) \text{cr } 6_n\}. \end{aligned}$$

Now,  $\varphi(n) := \frac{1}{12}(3, -4, -1, 0, -1, -4) \text{cr } 6_n$ , a sequence of period 6, satisfies  $|\varphi(n)| \leq \frac{4}{12} = \frac{1}{3} < \frac{1}{2}$ . Hence,

$$[6g'] \quad D(n; 1, 2, 3) = \left\| \frac{1}{12}(n+3)^2 \right\|.$$

This way of writing by means of  $\|\dots\|$  is not unique. In the same way one will find for  $D(n; 1, 2, 3)$  slightly more complicated formulas  $\|\frac{1}{12}(n^2 + 6n + 7)\|$ ,  $\|\frac{1}{12}(n+2)(n+4)\|$  and  $\|\frac{1}{12}(n^2 + 6n + 10)\|$ . The first values of  $D(n) = D(n; 1, 2, 3)$  are:

$n$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
$D(n)$	1	2	3	4	5	7	8	10	12	14	16	19	21	24	27	30	33	37	40	44

The following is a second method for computing the denumerant.

**THEOREM B.** ([Bell, 1943]). *Let  $A$  be the least common multiple of the integers  $(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_k)$ ,  $1 \leq a_1 < a_2 < \dots < a_k$ . For every integer  $B$  such that  $0 \leq B \leq A-1$ , and every integer  $m \geq 0$ , we have:*

$$\begin{aligned} [6h] \quad D(Am + B; a_1, a_2, \dots, a_k) &= D(Am + B; (a)) = \\ &= D(Am + B) = \delta(m) = c_0 + c_1 m + \dots + c_{k-1} m^{k-1}, \end{aligned}$$

where the  $c_i$ ,  $i+1 \in [k]$ , are constants independent of  $m$ , and where the denumerant  $\delta(m)$  is as defined as in Theorem A (p. 108).

■ Let  $\alpha$  be the complex number such that  $\alpha^A=1$ ,  $\arg \alpha=2\pi/A$ ; then we put, with  $D(n):=D(n; a_1, \dots, a_k)$ :

$$[6i] \quad A := a_j q_j, \quad j \in [k]; \quad P(t) := \prod_{1 \leq j \leq k} (1 - t^{a_j}).$$

The roots of  $P(t)=0$  are hence of the form  $\alpha^{m_j a_j}$ , where  $m_j+1 \in [a_j]$  and  $j \in [k]$ . Let  $\varepsilon_0 (=1)$ ,  $\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \varepsilon_r$  be the  $(r+1)$  different values of these roots:

$$[6j] \quad P(t) = \left(1 - \frac{t}{\varepsilon_0}\right)^k \left(1 - \frac{t}{\varepsilon_1}\right)^{n_1} \cdots \left(1 - \frac{t}{\varepsilon_r}\right)^{n_r},$$

where  $\varepsilon_0=1$ ,  $\varepsilon_i \neq \varepsilon_j$  for  $i \neq j$ , and  $k+n_1+n_2+\cdots+n_r=a_1+a_2+\cdots+a_k$ . Necessarily,  $n_1, n_2, \dots \leq k$ , because every root of  $t^{a_j}-1=0$  is simple, so a multiple root of order  $s$  of  $P(t)=0$  must come from  $s$  different factors  $(1-t^{a_j})$ ,  $l \in [s]$ , where  $s \leq k$ . Now we decompose the rational fraction  $1/P(t)$  into partial fractions, using [6j]: there exist complex constants  $C_{u,v}$  (zero if  $n_u < v \leq k$ ) such that:

$$[6k] \quad \mathfrak{D}(t) = \frac{1}{P(t)} = \sum_{\substack{0 \leq u \leq r \\ 1 \leq v \leq k}} C_{u,v} \left(1 - \frac{t}{\varepsilon_u}\right)^{-v}.$$

Identifying in [6k] the coefficients of  $t^n$ , calculated by using the expansion of  $(1-T)^{-N}$  in the right-hand member (see [12e'], p. 37), we obtain:

$$[6l] \quad D(n) = \sum_{\substack{0 \leq u \leq r \\ 1 \leq v \leq k}} C_{u,v} \frac{\langle v \rangle_n}{n!} \cdot \varepsilon_u^{-n}.$$

If we put  $n=Am+B$  in [6l], we get by using  $\varepsilon_u^A=1$ :

$$[6m] \quad \delta(m) = \sum_{1 \leq v \leq k} P_v(m) \left( \sum_{0 \leq u \leq r} C_{u,v} \varepsilon_u^{-B} \right),$$

where the polynomial  $P_v(m)=\langle v \rangle_n/(n!) = \langle n+1 \rangle_{v-1}/(v-1)!$  is the product of  $(v-1)$  factors of the first degree in  $m$  (because  $n=Am+B$ ), and hence of degree  $(v-1)$  ( $\leq k-1$ ); [6h] follows. ■

The polynomial  $\delta(m)$ , of degree  $(k-1)$  in  $m$ , is known by [6h], when the values  $\delta(m_i)$  are known in  $k$  different points  $m_i, i \in [k]$ . For this, we can use either the determinant [6n], of order  $(k+1)$ , which eliminates the constants  $c_j, (j+1) \in [k]$ , from [6h]:

$$[6n] \quad \begin{vmatrix} \delta(m) & 1 & m & m^2 \dots m^{k-1} \\ \delta(m_1) & 1 & m_1 & m_1^2 \dots m_1^{k-1} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\ \delta(m_k) & 1 & m_k & m_k^2 \dots m_k^{k-1} \end{vmatrix} = 0,$$

or the Lagrange interpolation formula:

$$[6o] \quad \delta(m) = \sum_{i=1}^k \delta(m_i) \mu_i,$$

where

$$\mu_i := \frac{(m - m_1) \dots (m - m_{i-1})(m - m_{i+1}) \dots (m - m_k)}{(m_i - m_1) \dots (m_i - m_{i-1})(m_i - m_{i+1}) \dots (m_i - m_k)}.$$

Particularly, for  $m=i, i \in [k]$ , [6o] becomes:

$$[6p] \quad \delta(m) = \binom{m-1}{k} \sum_{1 \leq i \leq k} (-1)^{k-i} \binom{k}{i} \frac{i}{m-i} \delta(i).$$

For example, to calculate  $D(n; 1, 2, 4) := D(n)$  by means of [6p], one may use the first values of  $D(n)$  (computed from  $D(n; 1, 2)$ , [6c]):

$n$	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
$D(n)$	4	4	6	6	9	9	12	12	16	16	20	20

This gives  $D(4m) = D(4m+1) = (m+1)^2, D(4m+2) = D(4m+3) = (m+1)(m+2)$ . It is then verified that:

$$[6q] \quad D(n; 1, 2, 4) = \| \{(n+2)(n+5) + (-1)^n n\} / 16 \|.$$

We now show, by two examples, an *efficient* practical use of Theorem B, *without* decomposition of rational fractions into partial fractions, which works particularly well if the LCM  $A$  of  $(a_1, a_2, a_3, \dots)$  is not large. We abbreviate  $x_h = (1 - t^h)^{-1}$  and we use a point (for saving place) to denote the center of symmetry of any reciprocal polynomial. (Examples:  $1 + t + t^2 + \dots = 1 + t + t^2 + t^3 + t^5, 1 + 2t + \dots = 1 + 2t + 2t^2 + t^3$ ).

(1) We return to  $D(n; 1, 2, 3)$ , [6d] (p. 109). We have

$$\begin{aligned}\mathfrak{D}_{1,2,3}(t) &= x_1x_2x_3 = (1+t)x_2^2x_3 = (1+t)(1+t^2+t^4)^2(1+t^3)x_6^3 \\ &= (1+t+2t^2+3t^3+4t^4+5t^5+4t^6+5t^7+\dots)\sum \binom{m+2}{2} t^{6n}.\end{aligned}$$

Hence, identifying the coefficients in the first and last member, we get:

$$D(6m+B; 1, 2, 3) = \alpha \binom{m+2}{2} + \beta \binom{m+1}{2} + \gamma \binom{m}{2}, \text{ where, for } B=0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, \text{ we have } \alpha=1, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, \beta=4, 5, 4, 3, 2, 1, \gamma=1, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0,$$

respectively.

(2) Similarly, we compute  $D(n; 1, 2, 4, 10)$ , used p. 108. We have

$$\begin{aligned}\mathfrak{D}_{1,2,4,10}(t) &= x_1x_2x_4x_{10} = (1+t)x_2^2x_4x_{10} = (1+t)(1+t^2)^2x_4^3x_{10} = \\ &= (1+t)(1+t^2)^2(1+t^4+t^8+t^{12}+t^{16})^3(1+t^{10})(1-t^{20})^{-4} = (1+t) \\ &\quad (1+2t^2+4t^4+6t^6+9t^8+13t^{10}+18t^{12}+24t^{14}+31t^{16}+39t^{18}+ \\ &\quad 45t^{20}+52t^{22}+57t^{24}+63t^{26}+67t^{28}+69t^{30}+69t^{32}+\dots+2t^{60}+t^{62}) \times \\ &\quad \times \sum \binom{m+3}{3} t^{20m}. \text{ Hence } D(20m+2b+(0 \text{ or } 1); 1, 2, 4, 10) = \alpha \binom{m+3}{3} + \\ &\quad + \beta \binom{m+2}{3} + \gamma \binom{m+1}{3} + \delta \binom{m}{3}, \text{ where, for } b=0, 1, 2, \dots, 9, \text{ we have:} \\ &\alpha=1, 2, 4, 6, 9, 13, 18, 24, 31, 39, \beta=45, 52, 57, 63, 67, 69, 69, 67, \\ &63, 57, \gamma=52, 45, 39, 31, 24, 18, 13, 9, 6, 4, \delta=2, 1, 0, 0, \dots, 0, \text{ respectively.}\end{aligned}$$

Let us now give a more precise version of Theorem B (p. 110):

**THEOREM C.** *Supposing each pair  $(a_i, a_j)$  relatively prime, we have:*

$$\begin{aligned}[6r] D(n; a_1, a_2, \dots, a_k) &:= D(n) = \sum_{j=0}^{k-1} d_j n^j + \\ &\quad + V_{a_1}(n) + \dots + V_{a_k}(n),\end{aligned}$$

where each  $V_{a_j}(n)$  is a pcr of period  $a_j$ ,  $j=1, 2, \dots, k$ . So,  $D(n)$  is a polynomial of degree  $k-1$  in  $n$ , plus a sequence  $V_A(n) := V_{a_1}(n) + \dots + V_{a_k}(n)$ , with period  $A = LCM(a_1, \dots, a_k)$ . Moreover, denoting  $S_1 := a_1 + a_2 + a_3 + \dots$ ,  $S_2 = a_1^2 + a_2^2 + a_3^2 + \dots$ , ...,  $P = a_1 a_2 a_3 \dots a_k$ , the following formulas hold:

$$\begin{aligned}[6s] d_{k-1} &= \frac{1}{(k-1)!P}, & d_{k-2} &= \frac{S_1}{2(k-2)!P}, \\ d_{k-3} &= \frac{3S_1^2 - S_2}{24(k-3)!P}, & d_{k-4} &= \frac{S_1^3 - S_1 S_2}{48(k-4)!P}.\end{aligned}$$

■ Let us write  $\mathfrak{P}_i = \mathfrak{P}_i(t)$  for any polynomial whose degree is  $\leq i$ . The theory of fractional decomposition implies:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathfrak{D}(t) &:= \sum_{n \geq 0} D(n) t^n = \frac{1}{(1-t^{a_1})(1-t^{a_2})\dots} = \\ &= \frac{1}{(1-t)^k (1+t+t^2+\dots+t^{a_1-1})(1+t+t^2+\dots+t^{a_2-1})\dots} = \\ &= \frac{\mathfrak{P}_{k-1}}{(1-t)^k} + \frac{\mathfrak{P}_{a_1-2}}{1+t+t^2+\dots+t^{a_1-1}} + \frac{\mathfrak{P}_{a_2-2}}{1+t+t^2+\dots+t^{a_2-1}} + \dots \\ &= \frac{\mathfrak{P}_{k-1}}{(1-t)^k} + \frac{\mathfrak{P}_{a_1-1}}{1-t^{a_1}} + \frac{\mathfrak{P}_{a_2-1}}{1-t^{a_2}} + \dots.\end{aligned}$$

So, we obtain [6r], and the relations  $\mathfrak{P}_{a_1-1}(1)=\mathfrak{P}_{a_2-1}(1)=\dots=0$  involving the numerators of the preceding line imply the pcr condition (concerning the sum of values which must be equal to 0, p. 109). The standard methods for determining  $\mathfrak{P}_{k-1}$  give [6s]. ■ (For many other explicit formulas, see [Glaisher, 1909], [Sylvester, 1882].)

As an example, let us calculate  $D(n; 3, 5, 7) := D(n)$ . Here,  $S_1 = 3+5+7 = 15$ ,  $S_2 = 3^2+5^2+7^2 = 83$ ,  $P = 3.5.7 = 105$ . So, with [6r, s]:

$$\begin{aligned}[6t] D(n) &= \frac{1}{210} n^2 + \frac{1}{14} n + \frac{74}{315} + [x_1, x_2, x_3] + \\ &\quad + [x_4, x_5, \dots, x_8] + [x_9, \dots, x_{15}],\end{aligned}$$

where  $[x_1, x_2, x_3]$  abbreviates  $(x_1, x_2, x_3)$  pcr  $3_n$ , etc. Now, it is easy to compute  $D(0), D(1), D(2), \dots, D(11) = 1, 0, 0, 1, 0, 1, 1, 1, 1, 2, 1$  by carrying out  $(1-t^3)^{-1}(1-t^5)^{-1}(1-t^7)^{-1} = (1+t^3+t^6+t^9) \times (1+t^5+t^{10})(1+t^7)$  (up to degree 11) or by using the recurrence  $D(n) = D(n-3) + D(n-5) + D(n-7) - D(n-8) - D(n-10) - D(n-12) + D(n-15)$ . If we insert these values of  $D(n)$  in [6t], we must solve the following linear system of 15 equations with unknowns  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_{15}$  (the three last ones are the pcr condition, p. 109):  $x_1 + x_4 + x_9 = 241/315$ ,  $x_2 + x_5 + x_{10} = -98/315$ ,  $x_3 + x_6 + x_{11} = -125/315$ ,  $x_1 + x_7 + x_{12} = 160/315$ ,  $x_2 + x_8 + x_{13} = -188/315$ ,  $x_3 + x_4 + x_{14} = -91/315$ ,  $x_1 + x_5 + x_{15} = 52/315$ ,  $x_2 + x_6 + x_9 = 10/315$ ,  $x_3 + x_7 +$

$$+x_{10} = -35/315, x_1+x_8+x_{11} = -83/315, x_2+x_4+x_{12} = 181/315, x_3+x_5+x_{13} = -188/315, x_1+x_2+x_3 = x_4+x_5+\cdots+x_8 = x_9+\cdots+x_{15} = 0.$$

Solving this linear system, we find:  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_{15}) = (70, -35, -35; 126, -63, 0, 0, -63; 45, 0, -90, 90, -90, 0, 45)/315 = (2/9, -1/9, -1/9; 2/5, -1/5, 0, 0, -1/5; 1/7, 0, -2/7, 2/7, -2/7, 0, 1/7)$ . For example,  $1000 \equiv 1 \pmod{3}$ ,  $1000 \equiv 0 \pmod{5}$ ,  $1000 \equiv 6 \pmod{7}$ ; thus,  $D(1000) = 10^6/210 + 10^3/14 + 74/315 + x_2 (= -1/9) + x_4 (= 2/5) + x_{15} (= 1/7) = 4834$ . Here, the use of a sum of 3 Cayley's pcr requires only  $3+5+7-3=12$  unknowns to find, whereas the use of one Herschel's cr would require 105 unknowns, this number being the length 3.5.7 of the oscillating term in  $D(n)$ .

### SUPPLEMENT AND EXERCISES

**1. Recurrence relation for  $P(n, m)$ .** If  $P(n, m)$  stands for the number of partitions of the integer  $n$  into  $m$  summands (p. 94 and table p. 307), show that  $P(n, m) = P(n-1, m-1) + P(n-m, m)$ , and that, for  $m \geq n/2$ ,  $P(n, m) = p(n-m)$ . [Hint: Distinguish, in [1b, c], p. 95, the solutions with  $x_1 = 0$  from those with  $x_1 \geq 1$ .]

**2. Recurrence relation for  $Q(n, m)$ .** As in the preceding exercise, prove that the number  $Q(n, m)$  of partitions of the integer  $n$  into  $m$  different summands satisfies:  $Q(n, m) = Q(n-m, m) + Q(n-m, m-1)$ . Hence the first values of  $Q(n, m)$  and  $q(n) = \sum_m Q(n, m)$ :

$q(n)$	1	1	2	2	3	4	5	6	8	10	12	15	18	22	27	32	38	46	54	64	76	89	104	122	142	165	192	222	256	296
$m \setminus n$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	
2		1	1	2	2	3	3	4	4	5	5	6	6	7	7	8	8	9	9	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14	
3			1	1	2	3	4	5	7	8	10	12	14	16	19	21	24	27	30	33	37	40	44	48	52	56	61			
4				1	1	2	3	5	6	9	11	15	18	23	27	34	39	47	54	64	72	84	94	108						
5					1	1	2	3	5	7	10	13	18	23	30	37	47	57	70	84										
6						1	1	2	3	5	7	11	14	18	23	30	37	47	57	70	84									
7							1	1	2	3	5	7	11	14	20	26							1	1	2					

**3. Convexity of  $p(n)$ .** The number  $p^*(n)$  of partitions of  $n$  into summands all  $> 1$  equals  $p(n) - p(n-1)$  and this is an increasing function of  $n$ . Deduce that the sequence  $p(n)$  (=the number of partitions of  $n$ ) is convex, in other words, that  $\Delta^2 p(n) = p(n+2) - 2p(n+1) + p(n) \geq 0$ . More generally,  $\Delta^k p(n) \geq 0$  for all  $k \geq 1$ .

**4.** Some values of  $P(n, m)$  and  $Q(n, m)$ . For shortness, we write the sequence  $(d_0, d_1, \dots, d_{T-1})$  cr  $T_n$  of p. 109 as  $[d_0, d_1, \dots, d_{T-1}]$ .  $P(n, m)$  (or  $Q(n, m)$ ) is the number of partitions of  $n$  into  $m$  arbitrary (or unequal) summands (see p. 99). Use  $P(n, m) = Q(n + \binom{m}{2}, m)$  (which can be proved combinatorially), and hence  $Q(n, m) = P(n - \binom{m}{2}, m)$  to show:

$$P(n, 2) = (1/4)(2n - 1 + [1, -1])$$

$$Q(n, 2) = (1/4)(2n - 3 - [1, -1])$$

$$P(n, 3) = (1/72)(6n^2 - 7 - 9[1, -1] + 8[2, -1, -1])$$

$$Q(n, 3) = (1/72)(6n^2 - 36n + 47 + 9[1, -1] + 8[2, -1, -1])$$

$$P(n, 4) = (1/288)(2n^3 + 6n^2 - 9n - 13 + (9n + 9) \times [1, -1] - 32[1, -1, 0] + 36[1, 0, -1, 0])$$

$$Q(n, 4) = (1/288)(2n^3 - 30n^2 + 135n - 175 + (9n - 45) \times [1, -1] - 32[1, -1, 0] - 36[1, 0, -1, 0]).$$

**\*5.** Upper and lower bounds for  $P(n, m)$ . Show that  $P(n, m)$  and  $Q(n, m)$ , as defined on p. 94 and 99, satisfy:

$$Q(n, m) \leq \frac{1}{m!} \binom{n-1}{m-1} \leq P(n, m).$$

Use the fact that  $Q(n, m) = P(n - \binom{m+1}{2}, m)$ , [5j] p. 105, to prove that

$$P(n, m) \leq \frac{1}{m!} \binom{n + \binom{m+1}{2} - 1}{m-1} \text{ and } P(n, m) \sim \frac{1}{m!} \binom{n-1}{m-1}$$

for  $n \rightarrow \infty$  and  $m = O(n^{1/3})$ . ([Erdős, Lehmer, 1941], [Gupta, 1942], [Rieger, 1959], [Wright, 1961].)

**6.** The size of the smallest summand is given. Let  $a(n, m)$  be the number of partitions of  $n$  such that the smallest summand equals  $m$ . Then:

$$\sum_{n \geq 0} a(n, m) t^n = t^m \{(1 - t^m)(1 - t^{m+1}) \dots\}^{-1},$$

and

$$a(n, m) = a(n - m, m) + a(n + 1, m + 1),$$

where

$$a(n, n) = 1, \quad a(n, 1) = p(n - 1).$$

**7. Odd summands.** Let  $p_1(n)$  be the number of partitions of  $n$  into summands which are all odd, then we have  $\sum_{n \geq 0} p_1(n) t^n = \{(1-t)(1-t^3) \times (1-t^5)\dots\}^{-1}$ , and  $p_1(n) = q(n)$  (the number of partitions into unequal summands, p. 99). Prove this by formal methods and by combinatorial methods.

**8. The summands are bounded in number and size.** Let  $p(n | \leq m, \leq l)$  be the number of partitions of  $n$  into at most  $m$  summands all  $\leq l$ . Show that:

$$\Lambda(t, u) := \sum_{n, m \geq 0} p(n | \leq m, \leq l) t^n u^m = \prod_{i=0}^l (1 - ut^i)^{-1}.$$

Use a method analogous to that on p. 98 to show that:

$$\Lambda(t, u) = 1 + \sum_{m \geq 1} \frac{(1 - t^{l+1})(1 - t^{l+2}) \dots (1 - t^{l+m})}{(1 - t)(1 - t^2) \dots (1 - t^m)} u^m.$$

Deduce:

$$\sum_{n \geq 0} p(n | \leq m, \leq l) t^n = \frac{(1 - t^{l+1})(1 - t^{l+2}) \dots (1 - t^{l+m})}{(1 - t)(1 - t^2) \dots (1 - t^m)}.$$

**9. The factorial number system.** For all  $m \geq 1$  we have:

$$(1+t)(1+t^{2!}+t^{2 \cdot 2!}) \dots (1+t^{m!}+t^{2 \cdot m!}+\dots+t^{m \cdot m!}) = \\ = 1+t+t^2+t^3+\dots+t^{(m+1)!-1}.$$

[Hint: This is equivalent to  $1 \cdot 1! + 2 \cdot 2! + \dots + n \cdot n! = (n+1)! - 1$ , which can be proved either by induction or by a combinatorial interpretation.]

Use this to prove:

$$\prod_{j \geq 1} \sum_{0 \leq k_j \leq j} t^{k_j j!} = (1 - t)^{-1},$$

and, for every integer  $x \geq 0$ , the existence of a unique sequence of integers  $x_i$  such that

$$x = x_1 \cdot 1! + x_2 \cdot 2! + \dots,$$

where  $0 \leq x_i \leq i$ ,  $i = 1, 2, 3, \dots$  (See also Exercise 4, p. 255.)

**10.** *With the binary number system.* (1) For all  $m \geq 1$ , we have:

$$(1 + ut)(1 + ut^2) \cdots (1 + ut^{2^m}) = \sum_{n=0}^{2^{m+1}-1} u^{D(n)} t^n.$$

Here,  $D(n)$  stands for the number of ones in the binary (=base 2) representation of  $n$ . Consequently (generalization in [Ostrowski, 1929]):

$$\prod_{i \geq 0} (1 + ut^{2^i}) = \sum_{n \geq 0} u^{D(n)} t^n.$$

(2) Also prove  $t(1-t)^{-1} = \sum_{k \geq 0} 2^k t^{2^k} (1+t^{2^k})^{-1}$  ([Teixeira, 1904]).

**11.**  *$q$ -binomial coefficients.* Let  $0 < q < 1$ . We introduce

$$\begin{aligned} ((x))_k &= \frac{(1 - q^x)(1 - q^{x-1}) \cdots (1 - q^{x-k+1})}{(1 - q)^k} \\ \langle\langle x \rangle\rangle_k &= \frac{(1 - q^x)(1 - q^{x+1}) \cdots (1 - q^{x+k-1})}{(1 - q)^k} \\ ((x)) &= ((x))_1 = \langle\langle x \rangle\rangle = \langle\langle x \rangle\rangle_1 = \frac{1 - q^x}{1 - q}, ((k))! := \langle\langle 1 \rangle\rangle_k, \\ &\quad ((0))! := 1. \end{aligned}$$

The  $q$ -binomial coefficients are defined by

$$\begin{aligned} \binom{(x)}{k} &= \frac{((x))_k}{((k))!} = \frac{(1 - q^x)(1 - q^{x-1}) \cdots (1 - q^{x-k+1})}{(1 - q)(1 - q^2) \cdots (1 - q^k)} \\ \left\langle \binom{x}{k} \right\rangle &= \frac{\langle\langle x \rangle\rangle_k}{((k))!} = \frac{(1 - q^x)(1 - q^{x+1}) \cdots (1 - q^{x+k-1})}{(1 - q)(1 - q^2) \cdots (1 - q^k)}. \end{aligned}$$

They tend to the ordinary binomial coefficients when  $q \rightarrow 1$ .

- (1) We have  $\binom{(x)}{k} = \frac{((x))}{((k))} \cdot \binom{(x-1)}{k-1}$ ,
- $$\binom{(x)}{k} = \binom{(x-1)}{k-1} + q^k \binom{(x-1)}{k}, \binom{(-x)}{k} = (-1)^k q^{-kx} q^{-\binom{k}{2}} \left\langle \binom{x}{k} \right\rangle.$$
- (2)  $\prod_{r=0}^{n-1} (1 + xq^r) = \sum_{k=0}^n q^{\binom{k}{2}} \binom{n}{k} x^k$ ,
- $$\prod_{r=0}^{n-1} (1 - xq^r)^{-1} = \sum_{k \geq 0} \left\langle \binom{n}{k} \right\rangle x^k.$$

(Observe the analogies with the expansions of  $(1+x)^n$  and  $(1-x)^{-n}$ ...). For  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , we recover [5k] (p. 105) and [5b] (p. 103). (3)  $b_n = \sum_{k=0}^n$

$$\left(\binom{n}{k}\right) a_k \Leftrightarrow a_n = \sum_{k=0}^n (-1)^k q^{\binom{k}{2}} \left(\binom{n}{k}\right) b_k. \text{ (Compare [6a, e], p. 143.)}$$

(This is a very large subject, and we only touch upon it. For a completely updated presentation, see [Goldman, Rota, 1970].)

**12. Prime numbers.** To every integer  $n \geq 1$ ,  $n = p_1^{\alpha_1} p_2^{\alpha_2} \dots$  as prime factor decomposition, we associate the number  $\omega(n) := \alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + \dots$ ,  $\omega(1) := 0$ . Thus,  $\omega(3500) = \omega(2^2 \cdot 5^3 \cdot 7) = 2 + 3 + 1 = 6$ . Then, for all complex numbers  $s$  and  $t$ , such that  $\operatorname{Re}s > 1$ , and  $|t| \leq 1$ , the following equality between functions of  $s$  and  $t$  holds:

$$\prod \left(1 - \frac{t}{p^s}\right)^{-1} = \sum_{n \geq 0} \frac{t^{\omega(n)}}{n^s}.$$

Here, in the infinite product,  $p$  runs through the set of all prime numbers (for  $t=1$ , this is the famous factorization of the *Riemann zeta function*  $\zeta(s) := \sum_{n \geq 1} n^{-s}$ . See also Exercise 16, p. 162).

**13. Durfee square identity for  $\sum p(n) t^n$ .** Prove the identity:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{(1-t)(1-t^2)(1-t^3)\dots} &= 1 + \frac{t}{(1-t)^2} + \\ &+ \frac{t^4}{(1-t)^2(1-t^2)^2} + \frac{t^9}{(1-t)^2(1-t^2)^2(1-t^3)^2} + \dots \end{aligned}$$

[Hint: Put  $\Phi(t, u) := \{(1-tu)(1-t^2u)\dots\}^{-1} = \sum C_m(t) u^m \prod_{k=1}^m (1-t^k u)^{-1} = \sum C_m(t) u^m F_m(t, u)$ ; observe that  $\Phi(t, tu) = (1-tu)\Phi(t, u)$  and  $F_m(t, tu) = (1-tu)\{F_m(t, u) + t^{m+1}u F_{m+1}(t, u)\}$ ; obtain  $C_m(t)$ .]

**14. Some applications of the Jacobi identity.** If we replace  $t$  by  $t^k$  and  $u$  by  $\pm t^k$  in the Jacobi identity, [5n] (p. 106),  $k$  and  $l$  integers  $> 0$ , prove:

$$\prod_{i \geq 0} \{(1 + t^{2ki+k-l})(1 + t^{2ki+k+l})(1 - t^{2ki+2k})\} = \sum_{n \in \mathbf{Z}} t^{kn^2+ln}$$

$$\prod_{i \geq 0} \{(1 - t^{2ki+k-l})(1 - t^{2ki+k+l})(1 - t^{2ki+2k})\} = \sum_{n \in \mathbf{Z}} (-1)^n t^{kn^2+ln}.$$

(1) Use this to prove the Euler identity, [5g] (p. 104), by putting  $k = \frac{3}{2}$ ,  $l = \frac{1}{2}$ .

(2) If  $k = \frac{5}{2}$ ,  $l = \frac{3}{2}$ :

$$\prod_{i \geq 0} \{(1 - t^{5i+1})(1 - t^{5i+4})(1 - t^{5i+5})\} = \sum_{n \in \mathbf{Z}} (-1)^n t^{n(5n+3)/2}.$$

(3) If  $k = \frac{5}{2}$ ,  $l = \frac{1}{2}$ :

$$\prod_{i \geq 0} \{(1 - t^{5i+2})(1 - t^{5i+3})(1 - t^{5i+4})\} = \sum_{n \in \mathbf{Z}} (-1)^n t^{n(5n+1)/2}.$$

(4) If  $k = 1$ ,  $l = 0$ :

$$\prod_{i \geq 0} \{(1 - t^{2i+1})^2 (1 - t^{2i+2})\} = \sum_{n \in \mathbf{Z}} (-1)^n t^{n^2}$$

$$\prod_{i \geq 0} \{(1 + t^{2i+1})^2 (1 - t^{2i+2})\} = \sum_{n \in \mathbf{Z}} t^{n^2}.$$

**15.** Use of the function  $\|x\|$ , the integer closest to  $x$ . With the notation of [6f] (p. 110), we have, in addition to [6g, q]:

$$D(n; 1, 2, 5) = \|(n+4)^2/20\|;$$

$$D(n; 1, 2, 7) = \|(n+3)(n+7)/28\|;$$

$$D(n; 1, 3, 5) = \|(n+3)(n+6)/30\|;$$

$$D(n; 1, 3, 7) = \|(n+3)(n+8)/42\|;$$

$$D(n; 1, 5, 7) = \|(n^2 + 13n + 36)/70\|;$$

$$\begin{aligned} D(n; 1, 2, 3, 5) &= \|(n+3)(2n+9)(n+9)/360\| = \\ &= \|(n+2)(n+8)(2n+13)/360\|; \end{aligned}$$

$$P(n, 2) = Q(n+1, 2) = \|(2n-1)/4\|;$$

$$P(n, 3) = Q(n+3, 3) = \|n^2/12\|;$$

$$P(n, 4) = Q(n+6, 4) = \|n^2(n+3)/144\| \text{ for } n \text{ even,}$$

$$\text{and } = \|(n-1)^2(n+5)/144\| \text{ for } n \text{ odd}$$

(For plenty of other such formulas, see [Popoviciu, 1953]).

**16.** Infinite power series as an infinite product. To any sequence  $(a_1, a_2, a_3, \dots)$ , let us associate  $(b_1, b_2, b_3, \dots)$  such that

$$f(t) := 1 + \sum_{m \geq 1} a_m t^m = \prod_{n \geq 1} (1 + b_n t^n).$$

(1) We have  $a_n = \sum b_1^{\varepsilon_1} b_2^{\varepsilon_2} b_3^{\varepsilon_3} \dots$ , where  $\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \varepsilon_3, \dots = 0$  or 1, and  $\varepsilon_1 + 2\varepsilon_2 + 3\varepsilon_3 + \dots = n$ . So,  $a_1 = b_1$ ,  $a_2 = b_2$ ,  $a_3 = b_3 + b_1 b_2$ ,  $a_4 = b_4 + b_1 b_3$ ,

$a_5 = b_5 + b_1 b_4 + b_2 b_3, \dots$ . Evidently,  $b_1 = b_2 = \dots = 1$  implies  $a_m = q(m)$ , the number of partitions of  $n$  into unequal summands (p. 99). (2) Conversely, calculate  $b_n$  as a polynomial in  $a_1, a_2, \dots$ . So,  $b_1 = a_1$ ,  $b_2 = a_2$ ,  $b_3 = a_3 - a_2 a_1$ ,  $b_4 = a_4 - a_2 a_1 + a_2 a_1^2$ ,  $b_5 = a_5 - (a_4 a_1 + a_3 a_2) + (a_3 a_1^2 + a_2 a_1^3) - a_2 a_1^3$ ,  $b_6 = a_6 - (a_5 a_1 + a_4 a_2) + (a_4 a_1^2 + a_3 a_2 a_1) - (a_3 a_1^3 + a_2 a_1^2) + a_2 a_1^4$ ,  $b_7 = a_7 - (a_6 a_1 + a_5 a_2 + a_4 a_3) + (a_5 a_1^2 + 2a_4 a_2 a_1 + a_3 a_1^2 + a_3 a_2^2) - (a_4 a_1^3 + 3a_3 a_2 a_1^2 + a_2 a_1^3) + (a_3 a_1^4 + 2a_2 a_1^3) - a_2 a_1^5, \dots$ . If  $a_1 = a_2 = \dots = 1$ , then  $b_n = 0$ , except  $b_{2k} = 1$ . (3) When  $f(t) = e^{-t}$ , prove the following property:  $(b_n = 1/n) \Leftrightarrow (n \text{ is prime})$  ([Kolberg, 1960]).

**17. Three summations of denumerants.** Verify the following summation formulas ([\*Pólya, Szegő, I, 1926], p. 3, Exercises 22, 23, 24):  $\sum_{i \geq 0} D(n-i; 1+i, 2+i) = n+1$ ;  $\sum_{i \geq 0} D(n-2i-1; 1+i, 2+i) = n+2-d(n)$ , where  $d(n)$  is the number of divisors of  $n$ . [Hint: Use Exercise 16, p. 162];  $\sum_{i \geq 1} D((2i+1)n-i^2; i^2, (i+1)^2) = n$ .

**18. Integer points.** (1) The number of points  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) \in \mathbf{Z}^n$ , with integer coordinates,  $x_i \in \mathbf{Z}$ , such that  $|x_1| + |x_2| + \dots + |x_n| \leq p$ ,  $p$  integer  $\geq 0$ , equals:  $\sum_{i=0}^n 2^{n-i} \binom{n}{i} \binom{p}{n-i}$  ([\*Pólya, Szegő, I, 1926], p. 4, Exercise 29). (2) The number of solutions with integers  $x_i \geq 1$ ,  $i \in [n]$ , that satisfy  $(1 \leq) x_1 \leq x_2 \leq \dots \leq x_n$ ,  $x_1 \leq k+1$ ,  $x_2 \leq k+2, \dots, x_n \leq k+n$ , equals  $\binom{k+2n}{n} (k+1)/(k+n+1)$ . ([\*Whitworth, 1901], p. 115–16, [Barbenson, 1965,], [Carlitz, Roselle, Scoville, 1971].)

**\*19. Rational points in a polyhedron** ([Ehrhart, 1967]). We denote the set of points in  $\mathbf{R}^d$  whose coordinates are multiples of  $1/n$  by  $G_n^{(d)}$ . The problem of the denumerants ([6b] p. 109), which can also be written  $a_1(x_1/n) + a_2(x_2/n) + \dots + a_k(x_k/n) = 1$ , is hence equivalent to finding the number  $I(n)$  of points of  $G_n^{(k)}$  lying in the hyperplane part defined by  $a_1 X_1 + a_2 X_2 + \dots + a_k X_k = 1$ ,  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_k \geq 0$ , whose  $k$  vertices are the points  $A_1 = (1/a_1, 0, 0, \dots)$ ,  $A_2 = (0, 1/a_2, 0, \dots)$ , etc. More generally, let  $\mathcal{P}$  be a polyhedral region of  $\mathbf{R}^d$ , whose vertices are  $A_1, A_2, \dots, A_k$ , with rational coordinates; each face may or may not belong to  $\mathcal{P}$ . For each vertex  $A_i$ , let  $a_i$  be the LCM of the denominators of  $A_i$ . Then we denote the number of points in  $\mathcal{P} \cap G_n^{(d)}$  by  $I(n)$ ; we put  $I(0) := 1$ . (1) There

exists a polynomial  $P(t)$  of degree less than  $\sum a_i$  such that

$$\mathcal{I}(t) := \sum_{n \geq 0} I(n) t^n = \frac{P(t)}{\prod_{i=1}^k (1 - t^{a_i})} = \frac{P(t)}{\prod(t)}.$$

[Hint: First treat the case of a simplex.] For example, if  $\mathcal{P}$  is the open polygon in  $R^2$  whose vertices are  $A_1=(0, 0)$ ,  $A_2(1, 0)$ ,  $A_3=(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{3})$ ,  $A_4=(0, 1)$ , we have  $a_1=a_2=a_4=1$ ,  $a_3=6$ . Hence  $\sum_{n \geq 0} I(n) t^n = P(t)(1-t)^{-3}(1-t^6)^{-1}$ ,  $\deg P \leq 8$ . (2) The rational fraction  $\mathcal{I}(t)$  can be simplified so that the exponent of the factor  $(1-t)$  in the denominator is  $\leq d+1$ . For the preceding example we then get  $\mathcal{I}(t)=P_1(t)(1-t)^{-2} \times (1-t^6)^{-1}$  and  $P_1(t)$  can be determined by  $I(0), I(1), I(2), \dots, I(7)=1, 0, 0, 1, 3, 6, 9, 13, 18$ , respectively, which we obtain by direct inspection. Hence  $P_1(t)=1-2t+t^2+t^3+t^4+t^5-t^6+3t^7$ . From this, it follows that  $I(n)=\|n(5n-14)/12\|+1$ . [Hint: Use the asymptotic order of  $I(n)$  when  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .] (3) Use the preceding to prove the following values of  $I(n)$  which are the solutions with integers  $x, y, \dots \in \mathbb{Z}$  of certain relations. (1)  $x+2y+3z+u=3n$ ,  $x+y \geq n$ ,  $x, y, z, u \geq 0 \Rightarrow I(n)=\binom{n+2}{3}+\binom{n+3}{3}$ . (2)  $x+y < 3n/4$ ,  $x-y < 3n/4$ ,  $-x/2 < y < 2x \Rightarrow I(n)=\|(9n^2+18-\frac{1}{16}n)(7, 4, 1, 10) \text{ cr } 4_n\|$ . (3)  $4x+6y+3nz < 12n$ ,  $x, y, z > 0 \Rightarrow I(n)=\|\{21n^2+6(-1)^n\}/8\|-n\{17+(-1)^n\}/4+2$ .

**20. Concerning ordinals.** Let  $f(n)$  be the number of integer solutions  $x_i (\geq 0)$  of the system  $1 \leq x_1 < x_2 < \dots < x_n$ ,  $x_i < 2^i$ ,  $i \in [n]$  (hence  $x_1=1$ ). ([Peddicord, 1962], [Carlitz, Roselle, Scoville, 1971]; in fact, in this problem are counted the sets  $\alpha$  of  $n$  elements such that  $x \subset \alpha$  if  $x \in \alpha$ , in the sense of the *axiomatic* set theory; cf. [\*Krivine, 1969], p. 25.) (1) Let  $F(n, k)$  stand for the number of solutions such that  $x_n=k$ ,  $F(n, k)=0$  if  $k < n$  or if  $k \geq 2^n$ ,  $f(n)=\sum_k F(n, k)$ . Show that:

$$[\alpha] \quad f(n+1) = F(n+1, 2^n)$$

$$[\beta] \quad F(n, k) = \sum_{i \leq k} F(n-1, i).$$

(2) Let  $\Phi(t, u):=\sum_{n,k} F(n, k) t^n u^k$ ,  $\Phi_k(t):=\sum_{n \geq 0} F(n, k) t^n$ . Then  $\Phi_{2^k+j}(t)=(1+t)^j \Phi_{2^k}(t)$ ,  $0 \leq j < 2^k$ . [Use  $[\beta]$ .] (3) Defining  $\Psi_k$  by  $\Phi_{2^k}(t)=t^{2^k+1} \Psi_k(t)$ , obtain from (2) a recurrence relation for the  $\Psi_k$ ,

hence for the  $f(n)$  (*via*  $[\alpha]$ ),  $n=3, 4, \dots$ :

$$f(n+1) = \binom{2^n - 2}{n-1} - \sum_{j=1}^{n-2} f(j+1) \binom{2^n - 2^{j+1}}{n-j}.$$

$n$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
$f(n)$	1	1	2	9	88	1802	75598	6421599	1097780312	376516036188

\*21. *The number of score vectors of a tournament.* (Defined on p. 68. See [Bent, Narayana, 1964] and [\*Moon, 1968], p. 66.) We want to determine the number of solutions with integers  $s_i$  of:

$$[\alpha] \quad 1 \leq s_1 \leq s_2 \leq \cdots \leq s_n \leq n-1$$

$$[\beta] \quad s_1 + s_2 + \cdots + s_k \geq \binom{k}{2}, \quad k \in [n-1]$$

$$[\gamma] \quad s_1 + s_2 + \cdots + s_n = \binom{n}{2}.$$

Let  $[t, l]^n$  be the number of solutions of  $[\alpha, \beta, \delta]$ :

$$[\delta] \quad s_1 + s_2 + \cdots + s_n = l, \quad s_n = t.$$

Hence  $[t, l]^1 = 1$  for  $t=l$  and  $=0$  if not. (1) We have  $[t, l]^n = \sum_{h \leq t} [h, l-h]^{n-1}$ . (2) Hence  $s(n) = \sum_t [t, \binom{n}{2}]^n$ . (3) Compute from this the first few values. (There is no exact formula for  $s(n)$  and there is a conjecture that the ratio  $s(n+1)/s(n)$  increases towards 4.)

$n$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
$s(n)$	1	1	2	4	9	22	59	167	490	1486	4639	14805

22. *Relatively prime summands.* The number  $R_k(n)$  of integer solutions  $x_i \geq 1$  of  $x_1 + x_2 + \cdots + x_k = n$  such that these integers are relatively prime, is such that ([Gould, 1964a]. See also Exercise 16 (5), p. 161):

$$\sum_{n \geq k} R_k(n) \frac{t^n}{1-t^n} = \frac{t^k}{(1-t)^k}.$$

23. *Compositions.* (1) A *composition* of the integer  $n$  into  $m$  summands, or  $m$ -composition, is any solution  $x = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_m)$  of  $x_1 + x_2 + \cdots + x_m = n$  with integer  $x_i \geq 1$ ,  $i \in [m]$  (the order of the summands counts!);  $\mathfrak{C}_m(n)$  stands for the set of  $m$ -compositions of  $n$ . Show that  $C(n, m) := |\mathfrak{C}_m(n)| =$

$=\binom{n-1}{m-1}$  has the following GF:  $\sum_{m,n} C(n, m)t^n u^m = tu\{1 - t(1+u)\}^{-1}$   
 (2) More generally, the number  $C(n, m; A)$  of solutions of  $\sum_{i=1}^m x_i = n$ , where for all  $i \in [m]$ ,  $x_i \in A := \{a_1, a_2, a_3 \dots\}$ ,  $1 \leq a_1 < a_2 < \dots$ , is such that:

$$1 + \sum_{n \geq m \geq 1} C(n, m; A)t^n u^m = \{1 - u(t^{a_1} + t^{a_2} + \dots)\}^{-1}.$$

In how many ways can one put stamps to a total value of 30 cents on an envelope, if one has stamps of 5, 10 and 20 cents, which are glued in a single row onto the envelope (so the order of the stamps counts!).  
 [Answer: 18.] More generally, for  $5n$  cents (instead of 30, where  $n=6$ ) and using notation [6f] on p. 110, the number of ways becomes:  $\|0,609367\dots(1,754878\dots)^n\| \dots!$  (3) Returning to (1), we endow  $\mathfrak{C}_m(n)$  with an *order relation* by putting, for  $x = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_m)$  and  $x' = (x'_1, x'_2, \dots, x'_m)$ :

$$x \leq x' \Leftrightarrow \forall k \in [m], \quad \sum_{i=1}^k x_i \leq \sum_{i=1}^k x'_i.$$

Show that  $\mathfrak{C}_m(n)$  becomes a *distributive lattice* in this way. (4) For each  $x \in \mathfrak{C}_m(n)$  let  $\check{x} := \{v \mid v \in \mathfrak{C}_m(n), v \leq x\}$ , then  $\sum_{\check{x} \in \mathfrak{C}_m(n)} |\check{x}| = (1/n) \binom{n}{m} \binom{n}{m-1}$  ([Narayana, 1955]).

**24. Denumerants with multi-indexes.** For vectors  $(n) = (n_1, n_2, \dots, n_k)$  (or multi-indexes, p. 36), a partition theory can be developed analogous to that given in this chapter. See for instance [\*MacMahon, II, 1916], p. 54 and [Blakley, 1964a]. Let  $\mathcal{S}$  be the system of  $k$  equations:

$$a_{i,1}x_1 + a_{i,2}x_2 + a_{i,3}x_3 + \dots = n_i, \quad i \in [k],$$

where the  $a_{i,j}$  are integers such that  $1 \leq a_{i,1} < a_{i,2} < a_{i,3} < \dots$ . Show that the number  $D((n); (a))$  of solutions of  $\mathcal{S}$  in integers  $x_i \geq 0$  has for GF:

$$\sum_{n_1, n_2, \dots, n_k \geq 0} D((n), (a)) t_1^{n_1} t_2^{n_2} \dots t_k^{n_k} = \prod_{j \geq 1} \left(1 - \prod_{i=1}^k t_i^{a_{ij}}\right)^{-1}.$$

**\*25. Counting magic squares.** Let  $Q(n, r)$  be the number of arrays (or matrices) of integers  $a_{i,j} \geq 0$ ,  $1 \leq i, j \leq n$ , such that  $\sum_{i=1}^n a_{i,j} = \sum_{j=1}^n a_{i,j} = r$  for all  $i, j$ . (1)  $Q(1, r) = 1$ ,  $Q(2, r) = r+1$ ,  $Q(3, r) = \binom{r+2}{2} + 3\binom{r+3}{4}$ ,  $Q(4, r) = \binom{r+3}{3} + 20\binom{r+4}{5} + 152\binom{r+5}{7} + 352\binom{r+6}{9}$ . More generally,  $Q(n, r)$  is a polynomial with degree  $(n-1)^2$  with respect to  $r$ . (2)

$Q(n, 1)=n!$ ,  $Q(n, 2)=4^{-n} \sum (2n-2\alpha)! \alpha! \binom{n}{\alpha}^2 2^\alpha$ ,  $Q(n, 3)=36^{-n} \times \sum \alpha_1! \alpha_2! \alpha_3! \times \binom{n}{\alpha_2, \alpha_3}^2 (18)^{\alpha_2} (12)^{\alpha_3}$ , where  $\alpha_1+2\alpha_2+3\alpha_3=3n$ , and the multinomial coefficient is denoted as in [10c''] p. 27. (3) Let  $a_n=Q(n, 2)$ , then  $\sum_{n \geq 0} a_n t^n (n!)^{-2} = e^{t/2} (1-t)^{-1/2}$  and  $a_n=n^2 a_{n-1} - (n-1) \binom{n}{2} a_{n-2}$ . Moreover,  $a_n=n! 2^{-[n/2]} A_n$ , where the  $A_n$  are integers.

([Anand, Dumir, Gupta, 1966], [Békessy, 1972], [Carlitz, 1966b], [Ehrhart, 1973], [Mano, 1961], [Stanley, 1973]. Compare p. 235.)

$n$	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
$A_n$	1	1	3	7	47	207	2249	14501	216273
$a_n$	1	1	3	21	282	6210	202410	9135630	545007960

(4) Let  $b_n=Q(n, 3)$  and  $\varphi(x):=\sum_{k \geq 0} (3k)! (k!)^{-2} x^k$ ; then  $\sum b_n t^n (n!)^{-2} = e^{t/3} (1-t/2)^{-1} \varphi((t/3)(1-t/2)^{-3})$ . Use this to obtain for  $b_n$  a linear recurrence relation of the 6-th order with coefficients that are polynomials in  $n$ .

$n$	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
$b_n$	1	1	4	5	2008	153040	20933840	4662857360	1579060246400

\*26. *Standard tableaux*. Each Ferrers diagram representing a certain partition of  $n$  can be considered in the obvious way as a ‘descending wall’  $M$ , or ‘profile’. Figure 29 represents the wall associated with the diagram of Figure 25 (p. 100). The ‘stone’  $(i, j)$  is the one with ‘abscissa’  $i$  and ‘ordinate’  $j$ . We are interested in the number  $v(M)$  of different ways in which  $M$  can be built up by piling stones one by one on top of each other, in such a way that at every stage the already constructed part is a ‘descending wall’. Figure 30 gives a permissible numbering of the stones, thereby defining a so-called ‘standard’ tableau, also called *Young tableau*. For a given wall  $M$  we write on each stone  $(i, j)$  the number of stones situated above and to the right of it, itself included. The table of numbers  $z(i, j)$ , obtained in this way, is represented in Figure 31. Hence the number of *standard tableaux*  $v(M)$ , equals  $n! \{ \prod_{(i, j) \in M} z(i, j) \}^{-1}$ . (We refer to [Kreweras, 1965, 1966a, b, 1967] for a study and a very complete bibliography of the problem, as well as for a

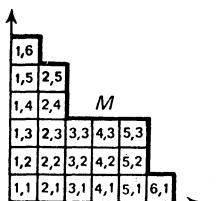


Fig. 29.

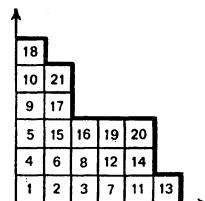


Fig. 30.

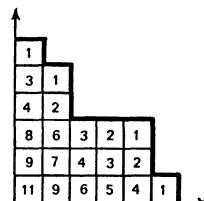


Fig. 31.

generalization to the case that part of the wall, say  $M'$ , already exists, that is, it will be incorporated into  $M$ . See also [\*Berge, 1968], pp. 49–59. We remark that the generalization to higher dimensions, in the sense of p. 103, is still an open problem.)

**27. Perfect partitions.** A *perfect* partition of an integer  $n \geq 1$ , is one that ‘contains’ precisely one partition of each integer less than  $n$ . In other words, if we consider the partition as a solution of  $x_1 + 2x_2 + \dots = n$ , we call it perfect if for each integer  $l \leq n$  there exists a *single* solution of  $t_1 + 2t_2 + \dots = l$ , where  $0 \leq t_i \leq x_i$ ,  $i = 1, 2, \dots$ . So a perfect partition represents a set of weights such that each weight of  $l$  grams,  $1 \leq l \leq n$ , can be realized in exactly *one way*.

Show that the number of perfect partitions of  $n$  equals the number of *ordered* factorisations of  $n+1$ , omitting unit factors. Thus, for  $n=7$ , we have  $8=4\cdot 2=2\cdot 4=2\cdot 2\cdot 2$ , hence there are 4 perfect partitions,  $1^7$ ,  $1^3 4$ ,  $12^3$ ,  $124$ .

**28. Sums of multinomial coefficients.** Let us write  $A(n)$  for the sum of the multinomial coefficients which occur in the expansion of  $(x_1+x_2+\dots+x_m)^n$ . For example since  $(x_1+x_2+\dots+x_m)^3=\sum x_i^3 + 3\sum x_i x_j^2 + 6\sum x_i x_j x_k$  (see p. 29) we have  $A(3)=1+3+6=10$ . Prove that

$$\sum_{n \geq 0} A(n) \frac{t^n}{n!} = \frac{1}{\left(1 - \frac{t}{1!}\right)\left(1 - \frac{t^2}{2!}\right)\left(1 - \frac{t^3}{3!}\right)\dots}$$

and study other properties of these numbers.

$n$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
$A(n)$	1	3	10	47	246	1602	11481	95503	871030	8879558

## CHAPTER III

### IDENTITIES AND EXPANSIONS

This chapter is basically devoted to various results on formal series. The relation with counting problems is clear: for a sequence of integers with combinatorial meaning, the existence of a ‘simple’ formula is most frequently equivalent with the existence of a ‘simple’ generating function.

#### 3.1. EXPANSION OF A PRODUCT OF SUMS; ABEL IDENTITY

The following notations slightly generalize the binomial and multinomial identities of pp. 12 and 28.

**THEOREM A.** Let  $\mathfrak{R}$  be a relation between two finite sets  $M$  and  $N$  ( $\mathfrak{R} \subset M \times N$ ,  $|M|=m$ ,  $|N|=n$ ), Figure 32, and let  $u(x, y)$  be a double sequence defined on  $\mathfrak{R}$  and with values in a ring  $A$  (mostly  $A=\mathbf{R}$  or  $\mathbf{C}$ ). If  $\langle x | \mathfrak{R} \rangle$  stands for the first section (p. 59) of  $\mathfrak{R}$  by  $x$ , then we have:

$$[1a] \quad \prod_{x \in M} \sum_{y \in \langle x | \mathfrak{R} \rangle} u(x, y) = \sum_{\varphi \in N^M} \prod_{\substack{x \in M \\ (x, \varphi(x)) \in \mathfrak{R}}} u\{x, \varphi(x)\}.$$

The summation in the second member of [1a] is taken over all maps  $\varphi$  of  $M$  into  $N$ , whose ‘graphical representation’ is a subset of  $\mathfrak{R}$ .

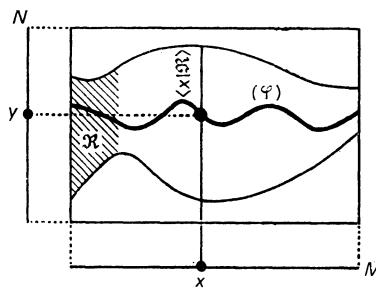


Fig. 32.

■ Let us suppose that the projection of  $\mathfrak{R}$  onto  $M$  is just equal to  $M$ ,

because if not, then both members of [1a] equal zero. We number the elements of  $M$  and  $N$ ,  $M := \{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_m\}$ ,  $N := \{y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n\}$ . If  $\mathfrak{R} = M \times N$ , then the first member of [1a] can be written as  $\prod_{i=1}^m \sum_{j=1}^n u(x_i, y_j)$ . This is a product of  $m$  sums: The choice of a term in each of the  $m$  factors gives one term of the expansion, and two different choices give rise to two differently written terms. Now, any such choice is just a map  $\varphi$  from  $M$  into  $N$ ; hence [1a]. If  $\mathfrak{R} \neq M \times N$ , then  $u(x, y) := 0$  for  $(x, y) \notin \mathfrak{R}$ . Then we can apply the preceding result, observing that the  $\varphi$  whose graph is not contained in  $\mathfrak{R}$  give a contribution zero to the second member of [1a]. ■

Using [1a], the binomial and multinomial identities can easily be recovered.

We now show a deep generalization of the binomial identity.

**THEOREM B.** (*Abel identity* [Abel, 1826]). *For all  $x, y, z$  we have:*

$$[1b] \quad (x + y)^n = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} x (x - kz)^{k-1} (y + kz)^{n-k}.$$

(In a commutative ring, for instance. But [1b] also can be considered as an identity in the ring of polynomials in three indeterminates  $x, y, z$ .) For  $z=0$  we recover the binomial identity [6a] (p. 12).

■ *First proof* (Lucas). We introduce the *Abel polynomials*

$$[1c] \quad a_k(x, z) := x (x - kz)^{k-1} / k! \quad \text{for } k \geq 1, \quad a_0 := 1.$$

We have, successively,

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial}{\partial x} a_k(x, z) &= \{(x - kz)^{k-1} + (k-1)x(x - kz)^{k-2}\} / k! = \\ &= a_{k-1}(x - z, z) \\ \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} a_k(x, z) &= \frac{\partial}{\partial x} a_{k-1}(x - z, z) = a_{k-2}(x - 2z, z) \\ [1d] \quad \frac{\partial^j}{\partial x^j} a_k(x, z) &= a_{k-j}(x - jz, z). \end{aligned}$$

Now, for fixed  $z$ , the  $a_k(x, z)$  form a basis of the set of polynomials in  $x$ , because their degree equals  $k (= 0, 1, 2, \dots)$ . Hence, every polynomial

$P(x)$  can be uniquely expressed in the form  $P(x) = \lambda_0 a_0 + \lambda_1 a_1 + \lambda_2 a_2 + \dots$ , where the  $\lambda_j$  only depend on  $z$ . Now, with [1d] for (\*):

$$P^{(j)}(x) = \frac{d^j}{dx^j} P(x) = \sum_k \lambda_k \frac{\partial^j}{\partial x^j} a_k \stackrel{*}{=} \lambda_j + \lambda_{j+1} a_1(x - jz, z) + \dots$$

which gives  $\lambda_j = P^{(j)}(jz)$ , by putting  $x = jz$ . So finally, for every polynomial  $P(x)$  we have:

$$[1e] \quad P(x) = \sum_{k \geq 0} a_k(x, z) P^{(k)}(kz),$$

from which [1b] follows by putting  $P(x) = (x+y)^n$ . ■

We still observe that if we apply [1e] to  $P(x) = a_n(x+y, z)$ , then we get the *convolution*

$$[1f] \quad a_n(x+y, z) = \sum_{k=0}^n a_k(x, z) a_{n-k}(y, z).$$

See also [Hurwitz, 1902], [Jensen, 1902], [Kaucky, 1968], [\*Riordan, 1968], p. 18–27, [Robertson, 1962], and [Salié, 1951], who gives a large bibliography.

■ *Second proof* (Françon). All the notions of p. 71 concerning the Foata coding of  $[n]^{[n]}$  will be supposed known. Let  $E \subset [n+2]^{[n+2]}$  be the set of functions of  $[n+2] := \{1, 2, \dots, n, n+1, n+2\}$  such that elements  $(n+1)$  and  $(n+2)$  are *fixed points*. So,  $\mathcal{T}_E = t_{n+1} t_{n+2} (\sum_{i=1}^{n+2} t_i)^n$ . Now, consider for any set  $\kappa \subset [n]$  the set  $E(\kappa) \subset E$  of functions whose excycle containing the element  $(n+1)$  has  $A_1 := \kappa + \{n+1\}$  as set of nodes. Obviously, the *factorization*  $E(\kappa) = E_1 E_2$  holds, where  $E_1$  is the set of *acyclic* functions *acting* on  $A_1$  with the root  $(n+1)$  only, and  $E_2$  is the set of functions acting on  $[n+2] \setminus A_1$  and having the element  $(n+2)$  as a fixed point. Then

$$\mathcal{T}_{E(\kappa)} = \mathcal{T}_{E_1} \cdot \mathcal{T}_{E_2} = t_{n+1}^2 (t_{n+1} + \sum_{i \in \kappa} t_i)^{|\kappa|-1} \cdot t_{n+2} \cdot (t_{n+2} + \sum_{i \notin \kappa} t_i)^{n-|\kappa|}.$$

But we have the *division*  $E = \sum_{\kappa \subset [n]} E(\kappa)$ . Therefore,  $\mathcal{T}_E = \sum_{\kappa \subset [n]} \mathcal{T}_{E(\kappa)}$ . In other words, after cancelling  $t_{n+1} t_{n+2}$ :

$$(t_1 + t_2 + \dots + t_{n+2})^n = \sum_{\kappa \subset [n]} t_{n+1} \left( t_{n+1} + \sum_{i \in \kappa} t_i \right)^{|\kappa|-1} \times \\ \times \left( t_{n+2} + \sum_{i \notin \kappa} t_i \right)^{n-|\kappa|}.$$

Now, put  $t_{n+1}=x$ ,  $t_{n+2}=y-n$ ,  $t_1=t_2=\dots=t_n=-z$  to obtain [1b] after collecting the  $\varkappa$  such that  $|\varkappa|=k$ . ■

Of course, considering more than 2 fixed points, or other sets of functions, would give interesting other results (see Exercise 20, p. 163).

The following is an equivalent formulation of the Abel identity [1b], which generalizes [1e].

**THEOREM C.** *For any formal series (hence for each polynomial)  $f(t)$ , we have:*

$$[1g] \quad f(t) = \sum_{k \geq 0} \frac{t(t-ku)^{k-1}}{k!} f^{(k)}(ku),$$

where  $u$  is a new indeterminate, and  $f^{(k)}$  the  $k$ -th derivative of  $f$ .

(For a study of the convergence of [1g],  $t, u \in \mathbb{C}$ , see [Halphen, 1881, 1882], [Pincherle, 1904].)

For  $u=0$ , we find back the ordinary (formal) Taylor formula.

■ In fact, we have, with [1b] p. 128,  $x \mapsto t$ ,  $y \mapsto 0$ ,  $z \mapsto u$  for (\*):

$$\begin{aligned} f(t) &:= \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n t^n \stackrel{(*)}{=} \sum_{n \geq 0} \left\{ a_n \sum_k \binom{n}{k} t(t-ku)^{k-1} (ku)^{n-k} \right\} = \\ &= \sum_{k \geq 0} \left\{ \frac{t(t-ku)^{k-1}}{k!} \sum_{n \geq 0} (n)_k a_n (ku)^{n-k} \right\} = \text{QED.} \quad ■ \end{aligned}$$

### 3.2. PRODUCT OF FORMAL SERIES; LEIBNIZ FORMULA

The series used in this chapter will be always formal *Taylor series*. By definition, such a series is written as follows (for the meaning of the abbreviated notations  $\varkappa, k$ , etc., see p. 36):

$$\begin{aligned} [2a] \quad f = f(t) &= f(t_1, t_2, \dots, t_k) = \sum_{\varkappa \in \hat{k}} f_\varkappa \frac{t^\varkappa}{\varkappa!} = \\ &= \sum_{\varkappa_1, \varkappa_2, \dots, \varkappa_k \geq 0} f_{\varkappa_1, \varkappa_2, \dots, \varkappa_k} \frac{t_1^{\varkappa_1}}{\varkappa_1!} \cdot \frac{t_2^{\varkappa_2}}{\varkappa_2!} \cdots \frac{t_k^{\varkappa_k}}{\varkappa_k!}. \end{aligned}$$

The  $f_\varkappa$  are called *Taylor coefficients* of  $f$ .

**THEOREM A (Leibniz formula).** *Let  $f$  and  $g$  be two formal series, with Taylor coefficients  $f_\varkappa$  and  $g_\lambda$ ,  $\varkappa, \lambda \in \hat{k}$ , and let  $h$  be the product series,*

$h=fg$ . Then, the Taylor coefficients  $h_\mu$  of  $h$  can be expressed as follows:

$$[2b] \quad h_\mu = h_{\mu_1, \mu_2, \dots, \mu_k} = \sum \frac{\mu_1! \mu_2! \dots \mu_k!}{x_1! \lambda_1! x_2! \lambda_2! \dots x_k! \lambda_k!} f_{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_k} g_{\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_k},$$

where the summation takes place over all systems of integers  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_k, \lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_k$  such that  $x_1 + \lambda_1 = \mu_1, x_2 + \lambda_2 = \mu_2, \dots, x_k + \lambda_k = \mu_k$ . In other words:

$$[2c] \quad h_{\mu_1, \dots, \mu_k} = \sum_{x_1, \dots, x_k} \binom{\mu_1}{x_1} \dots \binom{\mu_k}{x_k} f_{x_1, \dots, x_k} g_{\mu_1 - x_1, \dots, \mu_k - x_k},$$

or, in abbreviated notation:

$$[2d] \quad h_\mu = \sum_{x+\lambda=\mu} \frac{\mu!}{x! \lambda!} f_x g_\lambda.$$

■ It suffices to apply definition [12g] (p. 37) of the product  $fg$ . ■

Formula [2d] can immediately be generalized to a product  $h$  of  $r$  formal series  $f_{\langle 1 \rangle}, f_{\langle 2 \rangle}, \dots, f_{\langle r \rangle}$ ,  $h = \prod_{i=1}^r f_{\langle i \rangle}$ . So:

$$[2e] \quad h_\mu = \sum \frac{\mu!}{\lambda_{\langle 1 \rangle}! \dots \lambda_{\langle r \rangle}!} f_{\langle 1 \rangle, \lambda_{\langle 1 \rangle}} \dots f_{\langle r \rangle, \lambda_{\langle r \rangle}},$$

where the summation is extended over systems of multi-indices  $\lambda_{\langle i \rangle} \in \hat{k}$ ,  $i \in [r]$  such that:

$$[2f] \quad \lambda_{\langle 1 \rangle} + \lambda_{\langle 2 \rangle} + \dots + \lambda_{\langle r \rangle} = \mu.$$

We observe, by [2f] and Theorems B and D (p. 15), that the summation of [2e] contains  $\prod_{j=1}^k \binom{\mu_j + r - 1}{r - 1}$  terms which is the number of solutions of [2f].

Actually, the exact formula [2b] allows us to calculate effectively the (partial) derivatives of a product of two functions. For each function  $F(x) = F(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_k)$  defined in a neighbourhood of  $a = (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_k) \in \mathbb{R}^k$  and of class  $C^\infty$  in this point, and for any  $x = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_k) \in \hat{k}$ , we put:

$$[2g] \quad \begin{aligned} f_x &:= \frac{\partial^{|x|} F}{\partial x^x} \Big|_{x=a} = \\ &= \frac{\partial^{x_1 + \dots + x_k}}{\partial x_1^{x_1} \dots \partial x_k^{x_k}} F(x_1, \dots, x_k) \Big|_{(x_1, \dots, x_k) = (a_1, \dots, a_k)}, \\ f_{(0)} &= f_{0, 0, \dots, 0} := F(a_1, \dots, a_k) \end{aligned}$$

and let:

$$[2h] \quad f := \tau_a(F) = \sum_{x \in k} f_x \frac{t^x}{x!}$$

be the formal Taylor series associated with the function  $F$  in  $a$ .

**THEOREM B.** Let the two functions  $F$  and  $G$  be of class  $C^\infty$  in  $a \in \mathbb{R}^k$ , and let  $H := F \cdot G$ . Between the three formal series [2i]:  $f := \tau_a(F)$ ,  $g := \tau_a(G)$ ,  $h := \tau_a(H)$ , there exists the relation  $h = fg$  in the sense of the product of formal series ([12g], p. 37).

■ This is a well-known property of functions of class  $C^\infty$  in a point. ■  
(See, for example, [\*Valiron, I, 1958], p. 235.)

**THEOREM C.** Let  $r (\geq 2)$  functions  $F_{\langle i \rangle} = F_{\langle i \rangle}(x)$ ,  $i \in [r]$ ,  $x \in \mathbb{R}^k$ , be given, all of class  $C^\infty$  in  $a \in \mathbb{R}^k$ , and let  $f_{\langle i \rangle} := \tau_a(F_{\langle i \rangle})$ ,  $i \in [r]$ ,  $f_{\langle i \rangle} := \sum_{\lambda \in [k]} f_{\langle i \rangle, \lambda \langle i \rangle} t^{\lambda \langle i \rangle} / \lambda \langle i \rangle!$  be their associated formal Taylor series (cf. [2h]). Then, the successive derivatives  $h_m$  of the function  $H := \prod_{i=1}^r F_{\langle i \rangle}$  in  $a$  are given by formula [2e] (and particularly by [2b, c, d] if  $r = 2$ ).

■ This is an immediate consequence of Theorems A and B. ■  
In this way we recover for the product  $H(x) = F(x) G(x)$  of two functions of one variable the usual Leibniz formula:

$$[2i] \quad h_m = \sum_{l=0}^m \binom{m}{l} f_l g_{m-l},$$

where

$$f_l := \left. \frac{d^l F(x)}{dx^l} \right|_{x=a},$$

etc.,  $f_0 := f(a)$ , ... . Similarly, for the product  $H(x) = F_{\langle 1 \rangle}(x) \dots F_{\langle r \rangle}(x)$  of  $r$  functions we get:

$$[2j] \quad h_m = \sum \binom{m}{l_{\langle 1 \rangle}, \dots, l_{\langle r \rangle}} f_{\langle 1 \rangle, l_{\langle 1 \rangle}} \dots f_{\langle r \rangle, l_{\langle r \rangle}}$$

where:

$$l_{\langle 1 \rangle} + \dots + l_{\langle r \rangle} = m, \quad f_{\langle i \rangle, l_{\langle i \rangle}} := \left. \frac{d^{l_{\langle i \rangle}} F_{\langle i \rangle}(x)}{dx^{l_{\langle i \rangle}}} \right|_{x=a}, \quad i \in [r].$$

*Remark and example.* All we said before can be summed up in the following rule: The derivative  $f_{n_1, n_2, \dots} := \partial^{n_1+n_2+\dots} F(x_1, x_2, \dots) / \partial x_1^{n_1} \partial x_2^{n_2} \dots$  of a certain function  $F = F(x_1, x_2, \dots)$  in the point  $(x_1, x_2, \dots)$  is the coef-

ficient of  $t_1^{n_1}t_2^{n_2}\dots/n_1!n_2!\dots$  in the expansion of  $f=f(t_1, t_2, \dots):=F(x_1+t_1, x_2+t_2, \dots)$  by any known method.

For example, if  $F=(x_2+x_3)^{a_1}(x_3+x_1)^{a_2}(x_1+x_2)^{a_3}$ , where  $a_1, a_2, a_3$  are fixed real numbers, we find by abbreviating  $\xi_1:=x_2+x_3$ ,  $\xi_2:=x_3+x_1$ ,  $\xi_3:=x_1+x_2$ :

$$\begin{aligned} f &= f(t_1, t_2, t_3) = (x_2 + t_2 + x_3 + t_3)^{a_1} \times \\ &\quad \times (x_3 + t_3 + x_1 + t_1)^{a_2} (x_1 + t_1 + x_2 + t_2)^{a_3} = \\ &= F \cdot \left(1 + \frac{t_2}{\xi_1} + \frac{t_3}{\xi_1}\right)^{a_1} \left(1 + \frac{t_3}{\xi_2} + \frac{t_1}{\xi_2}\right)^{a_2} \left(1 + \frac{t_1}{\xi_3} + \frac{t_2}{\xi_3}\right)^{a_3}, \end{aligned}$$

that we can expand by [12m] (p. 41) (be aware of the multinomial notation, [10c"], p. 27!):

$$\begin{aligned} f &= F \cdot \sum_{\substack{k_2, k'_3 \geq 0 \\ k_3, k'_1 \geq 0 \\ k_1, k'_2 \geq 0}} \binom{a_1}{k_2, k'_3} \binom{a_2}{k_3, k'_1} \binom{a_3}{k_1, k'_2} \times \\ &\quad \times \frac{t_1^{k_1+k'_1} t_2^{k_2+k'_2} t_3^{k_3+k'_3}}{\xi_1^{k_2+k'_3} \xi_2^{k_3+k'_1} \xi_3^{k_1+k'_2}}. \end{aligned}$$

Finally, taking the coefficient of  $t_1^{n_1}t_2^{n_2}t_3^{n_3}/n_1!n_2!n_3!$ , we obtain:

$$\begin{aligned} f_{n_1, n_2, n_3} &= \frac{\partial^{n_1+n_2+n_3} F}{\partial x_1^{n_1} \partial x_2^{n_2} \partial x_3^{n_3}} = \sum_{\substack{k_1 \leq n_1 \\ k_2 \leq n_2 \\ k_3 \leq n_3}} \binom{n_1}{k_1} \binom{n_2}{k_2} \binom{n_3}{k_3} \times \\ &\quad \times \frac{(a_1)_{n_3+k_2-k_3} (a_2)_{n_1+k_3-k_1} (a_3)_{n_2+k_1-k_2}}{\xi_1^{n_3+k_2-k_3} \xi_2^{n_1+k_3-k_1} \xi_3^{n_2+k_1-k_2}}. \end{aligned}$$

### 3.3. BELL POLYNOMIALS

**DEFINITION.** The (exponential) partial Bell polynomials are the polynomials  $\mathbf{B}_{n, k}=\mathbf{B}_{n, k}(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_{n-k+1})$  in an infinite number of variables  $x_1, x_2, \dots$ , defined by the formal double series expansion:

$$\begin{aligned} [3a] \quad \Phi &= \Phi(t, u) := \exp\left(u \sum_{m \geq 1} x_m \frac{t^m}{m!}\right) = \sum_{n, k \geq 0} \mathbf{B}_{n, k} \frac{t^n}{n!} u^k = \\ &= 1 + \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{t^n}{n!} \left\{ \sum_{k=1}^n u^k \mathbf{B}_{n, k}(x_1, x_2, \dots) \right\} \end{aligned}$$

or, what amounts to the same, by the series expansion:

$$[3a'] \quad \frac{1}{k!} \left( \sum_{m \geq 1} x_m \frac{t^m}{m!} \right)^k = \sum_{n \geq k} \mathbf{B}_{n, k} \frac{t^n}{n!}, \quad k = 0, 1, 2, \dots$$

The (exponential) complete Bell polynomials  $\mathbf{Y}_n = \mathbf{Y}_n(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$  are defined by:

$$[3b] \quad \Phi(t, 1) = \exp\left(\sum_{m \geq 1} x_m \frac{t^m}{m!}\right) = 1 + \sum_{n \geq 1} \mathbf{Y}_n(x_1, x_2, \dots) \frac{t^n}{n!},$$

in other words:

$$[3c] \quad \mathbf{Y}_n = \sum_{k=1}^n \mathbf{B}_{n,k}, \quad \mathbf{Y}_0 := 1.$$

([Bell, 1934], [Carlitz, 1961, 1962b, 1964, 1966a], [Frucht, 1965a, b, 1966a], [Frucht, Rota, 1965], [Kaucky, 1965].)

**THEOREM A.** *The partial Bell polynomials have integral coefficients, are homogeneous of degree  $k$ , and of weight  $n$ ; their exact expression is:*

$$\begin{aligned} [3d] \quad \mathbf{B}_{n,k}(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_{n-k+1}) &= \\ &= \sum \frac{n!}{c_1! c_2! \dots (1!)^{c_1} (2!)^{c_2} \dots} x_1^{c_1} x_2^{c_2} \dots, \end{aligned}$$

where the summation takes place over all integers  $c_1, c_2, c_3, \dots \geq 0$ , such that:

$$\begin{aligned} [3e] \quad c_1 + 2c_2 + 3c_3 + \dots &= n, \\ c_1 + c_2 + c_3 + \dots &= k. \end{aligned}$$

It follows that  $\mathbf{B}_{n,k}$  contains  $P(n, k)$  monomials, where  $P(n, k)$  stands for the number of partitions of  $n$  into  $k$  summands, [1b, c] (p. 95).

■ We use the definition of the exponential series (p. 37) for relation (\*), and the multinomial identity [10f] (p. 28) for (\*\*):

$$\begin{aligned} [3f] \quad \Phi(t, u) &\stackrel{(*)}{=} \sum_{k \geq 0} \frac{u^k}{k!} \left( \sum_{m \geq 1} x_m \frac{t^m}{m!} \right)^k = \\ &\stackrel{(**)}{=} \sum_{k \geq 0} \frac{u^k}{k!} \left\{ \sum_{c_1+c_2+\dots=k} \frac{k!}{c_1! c_2! \dots} \times \right. \\ &\quad \left. \times \left( x_1 \frac{t}{1!} \right)^{c_1} \left( x_2 \frac{t^2}{2!} \right)^{c_2} \dots \right\} = \\ &= \sum_{c_1, c_2, \dots \geq 0} \frac{u^{c_1+c_2+\dots} t^{c_1+2c_2+\dots}}{c_1! c_2! \dots (1!)^{c_1} (2!)^{c_2} \dots} x_1^{c_1} x_2^{c_2} \dots. \end{aligned}$$

Hence [3d] follows, if we take in [3f] the coefficient of  $(t^n u^k)/(n!)$ . To see that the coefficients of  $\mathbf{B}_{n,k}$  are integral, it suffices to observe that  $(n!)/\{1!)^{c_1} (2!)^{c_2} \dots\}$  is the number of divisions of  $[n]$  into  $c_1$  1-parts,  $c_2$  2-parts, etc., since  $c_1+2c_2+\dots=n$  (p. 27); hence  $(n!)/\{c_1! c_2! \dots (1!)^{c_1} (2!)^{c_2} \dots\}$  is the number of *unordered* divisions (or partitions of the set  $[n]$ , when omitting every ‘empty part’ corresponding to any  $c_i=0$ ), where the numbering of equal parts has been removed. Finally,  $\mathbf{B}_{n,k}(abx_1, ab^2x_2, ab^3x_3, \dots) = a^k b^n \mathbf{B}_{n,k}(x_1, x_2, x_3, \dots)$  follows from [3d, e].

We have  $\mathbf{B}_{0,0}=1$ ,  $\mathbf{B}_{1,1}=x_1$ ,  $\mathbf{B}_{2,1}=x_2$ ,  $\mathbf{B}_{2,2}=x_1^2$ ,  $\mathbf{B}_{3,1}=x_3$ ,  $\mathbf{B}_{3,2}=3x_1x_2$ ,  $\mathbf{B}_{3,3}=x_1^3, \dots$ ,  $\mathbf{B}_{n,1}=x_n$ ,  $\mathbf{B}_{n,n}=x_1^n$ . A table of the  $\mathbf{B}_{n,k}$ ,  $k \leq n \leq 12$ , is found on p. 307. ■

**THEOREM B.** *The following are particular values of the  $\mathbf{B}_{n,k}$ :*

$$[3g] \quad \mathbf{B}_{n,k}(1, 1, 1, \dots) = S(n, k) \quad (\text{Stirling number of the second kind, p. 50})$$

$$[3h] \quad \mathbf{B}_{n,k}(1!, 2!, 3!, \dots) = \binom{n-1}{k-1} \frac{n!}{k!} \quad (\text{Lah number, p. 156})$$

$$[3i] \quad \mathbf{B}_{n,k}(0!, 1!, 2!, \dots) = |s(n, k)| = s(n, k) \quad (\text{signless Stirling number of the first kind, p. 50})$$

$$[3i'] \quad \mathbf{B}_{n,k}(1, 2, 3, \dots) = \binom{n}{k} k^{n-k} \quad (\text{idempotent number, p. 91})$$

■ For [3g], we put  $x_1=x_2=\dots=1$  in [3a]; we obtain  $\Phi=\exp\{u(e^t-1)\}$ , so we get indeed the Stirling numbers of the second kind  $S(n, k)$ , [14q] (p. 50). For [3h], with  $x_m=m!$  in [3a], we get:

$$\begin{aligned} [3j] \quad \Phi &= \exp(u \sum_{m \geq 1} t^m) = \exp\{tu(1-t)^{-1}\} \\ &= \sum_{k \geq 0} \frac{t^k u^k}{k!} (1-t)^{-k} = \sum_{k, l \geq 0} \frac{t^{k+l} u^k}{k! l!} \langle k \rangle_l; \end{aligned}$$

hence the result follows when we identify the coefficients of  $u^k t^n / n!$  in the first and last member of [3j]. For [3i],  $\Phi=\exp\{u \sum_{m \geq 1} t^m / m\} = \exp\{-u \log(1-t)\} = (1-t)^{-u}$ , which is the generating function of the absolute values of the numbers  $s(n, k)$ , [14p] (p. 50). Finally, [3i'] results from  $\Phi=\exp(ute^t)$  here. (See Exercise 43, p. 91.) ■

The following relations can be proved easily ( $n \geq 1$ ):

$$[3k] \quad k \mathbf{B}_{n,k} = \sum_{l=k-1}^{n-1} \binom{n}{l} x_{n-l} \mathbf{B}_{l,k-1}$$

$$\begin{aligned} [3l] \quad \mathbf{B}_{n,k}(x_1, x_2, \dots) &= \sum_{l=0}^k \binom{n}{l} x_1^l \mathbf{B}_{n-l,k-l}(0, x_2, x_3, \dots) \\ &= \sum_{l=0}^k \frac{n!}{(n-k)! l!} x_1^l \mathbf{B}_{n-k,k-l}\left(\frac{x_2}{2}, \frac{x_3}{3}, \dots\right) \end{aligned}$$

$$[3l'] \quad \mathbf{B}_{n,k}\left(\frac{x_2}{2}, \frac{x_3}{3}, \dots\right) = \frac{n!}{(k+n)!} \mathbf{B}_{n+k,k}(0, x_2, x_3, \dots)$$

$$[3l''] \quad \mathbf{B}_{n,k}\left(\frac{x_{q+1}}{\binom{q+1}{q}}, \frac{x_{q+2}}{\binom{q+2}{q}}, \dots\right) = \frac{n!}{(n+qk)!} \mathbf{B}_{n+qk,k} \times (\dots, 0, 0, x_{q+1}, x_{q+2}, \dots)$$

$$\begin{aligned} [3m] \quad \mathbf{B}_{n,n-a}(x_1, x_2, \dots) &= \sum_{j=a+1}^{2a} \binom{n}{j} x_1^{n-j} \mathbf{B}_{j,j-a}(0, x_2, x_3, \dots) \\ &= \sum_{j=a+1}^{2a} \frac{n!}{(n-j)! a!} x_1^{n-j} \mathbf{B}_{a,j-a}\left(\frac{x_2}{2}, \frac{x_3}{3}, \dots\right) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} [3n] \quad \mathbf{B}_{n,k}(x_1 + x'_1, x_2 + x'_2, \dots) &= \\ &= \sum_{\substack{x \leq k, y \leq n}} \binom{n}{v} \mathbf{B}_{v,x}(x_1, x_2, \dots) \mathbf{B}_{n-v,k-x}(x'_1, x'_2, \dots) \end{aligned}$$

$$[3n'] \quad \mathbf{B}_{n,k}(0, 0, \dots, 0, x_j, 0, \dots) = 0, \quad \text{except } \mathbf{B}_{jk,k} = \frac{(jk)!}{k!(j!)^k} x_j^k.$$

*Remark.* The  $\mathbf{B}_{n,k}$ , as given by [3a, a'], will give a simple way of writing the Taylor coefficients (= successive derivatives) of the formal series that we now are going to study. Meanwhile, if one works with ordinary coefficients, as on pp. 36–43, it is better to use the polynomials  $\hat{\mathbf{B}}_{n,k}$  (still with integral coefficients), defined by [3o, o'] instead of [3a, a'] (and tabulated on p. 309):

$$[3o] \quad \hat{\Phi} = \hat{\Phi}(t, u) := \exp(u \sum_{m \geq 1} x_m t^m) = \sum_{k \leq n} \hat{\mathbf{B}}_{n,k}(x_1, x_2, \dots) t^n \frac{u^k}{k!}$$

$$[3o'] \quad \left( \sum_{m \geq k} x_m t^m \right)^k = \sum_{n \geq 1} \hat{\mathbf{B}}_{n,k} t^n$$

that we call *ordinary*, in contrast to the  $\mathbf{B}_{n,k}$  already introduced, that we

called *exponential*. More generally, just as in the case of the GF, [13a] (p. 44), let  $\Omega_1, \Omega_2, \dots$  be a reference sequence,  $\Omega_1=1, \Omega_n \neq 0$ , given once and for all; the *Bell polynomials with respect to  $\Omega$* ,  $\mathbf{B}_{n,k}^{\Omega} = \mathbf{B}_{n,k}^{\Omega}(x_1, x_2, \dots)$  are defined as follows:

$$[3p'] \quad \Omega_k \left( \sum_{m \geq 1} \Omega_m x_m t^m \right)^k = \sum_{n \geq k} \mathbf{B}_{n,k}^{\Omega} \Omega_n t^n$$

( $\Omega_n = 1/n!$  in the ‘exponential’ case, and  $\Omega_n = 1$  in the ‘ordinary’ case).  $\mathbf{B}_{1,1}^{\Omega} = x_1; \mathbf{B}_{2,1}^{\Omega} = x_2, \mathbf{B}_{2,2}^{\Omega} = x_1^2; \mathbf{B}_{3,1}^{\Omega} = x_3, \mathbf{B}_{3,2}^{\Omega} = 2\Omega_2^2 \Omega_3^{-1} x_1 x_2, \mathbf{B}_{3,3}^{\Omega} = x_1^3; \dots$  Meanwhile, it should be perfectly clear, once and for all, that the polynomials  $\mathbf{B}_{n,k}$  which occur in the sequel of this book always mean the exponential Bell polynomials ([3d] p. 134), unless explicitly stated otherwise.

### 3.4. SUBSTITUTION OF ONE FORMAL SERIES INTO ANOTHER; FORMULA OF FAÀ DI BRUNO

**THEOREM A** (Faà di Bruno formula). ([Faà di Bruno, 1855, 1857]. See also [\*Bertrand, 1864] I, p. 138, [Cesàro, 1885], [Dederick, 1926], [Français, 1815], [Marchand, 1886], [Teixeira, 1880], [Wall, 1938].) Let  $f$  and  $g$  be two formal (Taylor) series:

$$[4a] \quad f := \sum_{k \geq 0} f_k \frac{t^k}{k!}, \quad g := \sum_{m \geq 0} g_m \frac{t^m}{m!}, \quad \text{with } g_0 = 0,$$

and let  $h$  be the formal (Taylor) series of the composition of  $g$  by  $f$  (Theorem C, p. 40):

$$[4b] \quad h := \sum_{n \geq 0} h_n \frac{t^n}{n!} = f \circ g = f[g].$$

Hence, the coefficients  $h_n$  are given by the following expression:

$$[4c] \quad h_0 = f_0, \quad h_n = \sum_{1 \leq k \leq n} f_k \mathbf{B}_{n,k}(g_1, g_2, \dots, g_{n-k+1}),$$

where the  $\mathbf{B}_{n,k}$  are the exponential Bell polynomials ([3d] p. 134).

■ By definition [4b] of  $h$ , it is clear that the  $h_n$  are linear combinations of the  $f_k$ :

$$[4d] \quad h_n = \sum_{1 \leq k \leq n} A_{n,k} f_k,$$

and that the  $A_{n,k}$  only depend on  $g_1, g_2, \dots$ . Now these  $A_{n,k}$  are determined by choosing for  $f(u)$  the special formal series  $f^*(u) := \exp(au)$ , where  $a$  is a new indeterminate. Then:

$$[4e] \quad j_k^* = \left. \frac{\partial^k f^*}{\partial u^k} \right|_{u=0} = a^k.$$

Hence, by [3a] (p. 133), for (\*), and by [4d] for (\*\*):

$$[4f] \quad h^* := f^* \circ g = \exp(ag) = \exp \left( a \sum_{m \geq 1} g_m \frac{t^m}{m!} \right) \\ \stackrel{(*)}{=} 1 + \sum_{1 \leq k \leq n} \mathbf{B}_{n,k}(g_1, g_2, \dots) \frac{t^n}{n!} a^k$$

$$[4g] \quad = \sum_{n \geq 0} h_n^* \frac{t^n}{n!} \stackrel{(**)}{=} 1 + \sum_{n \geq 1} \left\{ \frac{t^n}{n!} \sum_{k=1}^n A_{n,k} f_k^* \right\} \\ = 1 + \sum_{1 \leq k \leq n} A_{n,k} \frac{t^n}{n!} a^k,$$

from which it follows that  $A_{n,k} = \mathbf{B}_{n,k}$  by identifying the last members of [4f] and [4g]. ■

So, we find (see p. 307):  $h_1 = f_1 g_1$ ,  $h_2 = f_1 g_2 + f_2 g_1^2$ ,  $h_3 = f_1 g_3 + 3f_2 g_1 g_2 + f_3 g_1^3$ ,  $h_4 = f_1 g_4 + f_2 (4g_1 g_3 + 3g_2^2) + 6f_3 g_1^2 g_2 + f_4 g_1^4, \dots$

By the Faà di Bruno formula we can effectively calculate the successive derivatives of a function of a function.

**THEOREM B.** Let two functions  $F(y)$  and  $G(x)$  of a real variable be given,  $G(x)$  of class  $C^\infty$  in  $x=a$ , and  $F(y)$  of class  $C^\infty$  in  $y=b=G(a)$ , and let  $H(x) := (F \circ G)(x) = F[G(x)]$ . If we put:

$$[4h] \quad g_m := \left. \frac{d^m G}{dx^m} \right|_{x=a}, \quad f_k := \left. \frac{d^k F}{dy^k} \right|_{y=b}, \quad h_n := \left. \frac{d^n H}{dx^n} \right|_{x=a} \\ g_0 := G(a), \quad f_0 := F(b) = h_0 := H(a) = F[G(a)],$$

and we define the associated formal Taylor series:

$$g(t) := \sum_{m \geq 1} g_m t^m / (m!), \quad f(u) = \sum_{k \geq 0} f_k u^k / (k!), \\ h(t) = \sum_{n \geq 0} h_n t^n / (n!),$$

then we have formally:  $h = f \circ g$ . (Be careful! For  $g$ , the summation begins at  $m=1$ , so there is no constant term.)

■ If the Taylor expansions are convergent for  $a$  and  $t$  real,  $|t| < R$ , then we have:  $H(a+t) = h(t) = F(b+g(t)) = \sum_{k \geq 0} f_k g^k(t)/(k!) = (f \circ g)(t)$ . If there is no convergence, then operate with expansions of  $f$  and  $g$  considered as asymptotic expansions. ■

**THEOREM C.** *Notations and hypotheses as in Theorem B for the functions  $F, G, H, H = F \circ G$ . Then the  $n$ -th order derivative of  $H$  in  $x=a$ ,  $n \geq 1$ , equals:*

$$[4i] \quad h_n := \left. \frac{d^n H}{dx^n} \right|_{x=a} = \sum_{k=1}^n f_k \mathbf{B}_{n,k}(g_1, g_2, \dots, g_{n-k+1}),$$

where the  $\mathbf{B}_{n,k}$  are given explicitly by [3d].

■ Apply Theorems A and B. ■

*Example.* What is the  $n$ -th derivative of  $F(x) = x^{ax}$ ? ( $x > 0$  and  $a$  is any fixed real number  $\neq 0$ ). We can make the same observation as on p. 133. So, we must expand  $f(t) := F(x+t)$  as a power series in  $t$ . Now, after a few manipulations:

$$\begin{aligned} f(t) &= (x+t)^{a(x+t)} = \\ &= F(x) \cdot \exp(at \log x) \cdot \exp\left(ax\left(1+\frac{t}{x}\right)\log\left(1+\frac{t}{x}\right)\right). \end{aligned}$$

Let us introduce the integers  $b(n, k)$  such that

$$\frac{1}{k!} ((1+T) \log(1+T))^k := \sum_{n \geq k} b(n, k) \frac{T^n}{n!}, \quad b(0, 0) := 1$$

It is easy to verify:  $b(n+1, k) = nb(n-1, k-1) + b(n, k-1) + (k-n) \times b(n, k)$ , hence the following table for  $b(n, k)$ :

$n \setminus k$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
1	1									
2	1	1								
3	-1	3	1							
4	2	-1	6	1						
5	-6	0	5	10	1					
6	24	4	-15	25	15	1				
7	-120	-28	49	-35	70	21	1			
8	720	188	-196	49	0	154	28	1		
9	-5040	-1368	944	0	-231	252	294	36	1	
10	40320	11016	-5340	-820	1365	-987	1050	510	45	1

Moreover,  $b(n, k) = \sum_l \binom{l}{k} k^{l-k} s(n, l)$  with the Stirling numbers  $s(n, l)$  of p. 50.

Returning to  $f(t)$ , we get consequently:

$$f(t) = F(x) \sum_{j \geq 0, k \leq m} \frac{(at \log x)^j}{j!} \cdot b(m, k) \frac{(t/x)^m}{m!} (ax)^k.$$

Finally, collecting the coefficients of  $t^n/n!$  in  $f(t)$  and abbreviating  $\lambda := \log x$ ,  $\xi := (ax)^{-1}$ , we obtain the following formula for the  $n$ -th derivative:

$$f_n = \frac{d^n (x^{ax})}{dx^n} = a^n x^{ax} \sum_{j=0}^n \left\{ \binom{n}{j} \lambda^j \sum_{h=0}^{n-j} b(n-j, n-h-j) \xi^h \right\}.$$

For instance,  $f_4 = a^4 x^{ax} \{1 + 6\xi - \xi^2 + 2\xi^3 + 4\lambda(1 + 3\xi - \xi^2) + 6\lambda^2(1 + \xi) + 4\lambda^3 + \lambda^4\}$ .

### 3.5. LOGARITHMIC AND POTENTIAL POLYNOMIALS

The following are three examples of applications of the Faà di Bruno formula.

**THEOREM A** (*successive derivatives of  $\log G$* ). *The logarithmic polynomials  $L_n$  defined by:*

$$\begin{aligned} [5a] \quad \log \left( \sum_{n \geq 0} g_n \frac{t^n}{n!} \right) &= \log \left( 1 + g_1 t + g_2 \frac{t^2}{2!} + \dots \right) \\ &= \sum_{n \geq 1} L_n \frac{t^n}{n!} \quad (g_0 = 1), \end{aligned}$$

*which are expressions for the  $n$ -th derivative of  $\log[G(x)]$  in the point  $x=a$ , equal (for the notation, cf. [3d] p. 134 and [4h] p. 138):*

$$\begin{aligned} [5b] \quad L_n &= L_n(g_1, g_2, \dots, g_n) \\ &= \sum_{1 \leq k \leq n} (-1)^{k-1} (k-1)! B_{n,k}(g_1, g_2, \dots). \quad (L_0 = 0) \end{aligned}$$

■ Use [4c, i] with  $F(y) := \log y$ ,  $b=1$ ,  $f_k = (-1)^{k-1} (k-1)!$  ■

From [5a, b] the following expansion is easily deduced:

$$[5c] \quad \log\left(g_0 + g_1 t + g_2 \frac{t^2}{2!} + \dots\right) = \log g_0 + \\ + \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{t^n}{n!} \left\{ \sum_{1 \leq k \leq n} (-1)^{k-1} (k-1)! g_0^{-k} \mathbf{B}_{n,k}(g_1, g_2, \dots) \right\}.$$

where  $g_0 > 0$ . A table of logarithmic polynomials is given on p. 308. (On this subject, see also [Bouwkamp, De Bruijn, 1969].)

**THEOREM B** (*successive derivatives of  $G'$* ). *The potential polynomials  $\mathbf{P}_n^{(r)}$  defined for each complex number  $r$  by:*

$$[5d] \quad \left( \sum_{n \geq 0} g_n \frac{t^n}{n!} \right)^r = \left( 1 + g_1 t + g_2 \frac{t^2}{2!} + \dots \right)^r \\ = 1 + \sum_{n \geq 1} \mathbf{P}_n^{(r)} \frac{t^n}{n!} \quad (g_0 = 1),$$

which are expressions for the  $n$ -th derivative of  $[G(x)]^r$  in the point  $x=a$ , equal (notations as in [3d] p. 134, and [4h] p. 138):

$$[5e] \quad \mathbf{P}_n^{(r)} = \mathbf{P}_n^{(r)}(g_1, g_2, \dots, g_n) \\ = \sum_{1 \leq k \leq n} (r)_k \mathbf{B}_{n,k}(g_1, g_2, \dots). \quad (\mathbf{P}_0^{(r)} = 1)$$

■ Use [4c, i] with  $F(y) := y^r$ ,  $b = 1$ ,  $f_k = (r)_k$ . ■

From [5d, e] we obtain easily the expansion:

$$[5f] \quad \left( g_0 + g_1 t + g_2 \frac{t^2}{2!} + \dots \right)^r = \\ = g_0^r + \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{t^n}{n!} \left\{ \sum_{1 \leq k \leq n} (r)_k g_0^{r-k} \mathbf{B}_{n,k}(g_1, g_2, \dots) \right\}.$$

where  $g_0 > 0$  for  $r$  an arbitrary real or complex number,  $g_0 \neq 0$  for  $r$  an arbitrary integer, and  $g_0$  arbitrary for  $r$  an integer  $> 0$ . When  $g_0 = 0$  in [5f], and  $r$  is an integer  $> 0$ , then we find back [3a'] (p. 133), and when  $r$  is integer  $< 0$ , we get the following Laurent series, whose expansion is given by [5d] ( $g_1 \neq 0$ ):

$$[5g] \quad \left( g_1 t + g_2 \frac{t^2}{2!} + \dots \right)^r = (g_1 t)^r \left( 1 + \frac{g_2}{2g_1} \cdot \frac{t}{1!} + \frac{g_3}{3g_1} \cdot \frac{t^2}{2!} + \dots \right)^r.$$

Finally, by [31"], one may show that for all integers  $l$  and  $q \geq 0$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} & \left( g_q \frac{t^q}{q!} + g_{q+1} \frac{t^{q+1}}{(q+1)!} + \dots \right)^{-l} = \\ & = \frac{(q!)^l}{(g_1)^l} \cdot \frac{1}{t^{ql}} \sum_{m \geq 0} t^m \sum_{j \leq m} \frac{(-1)^j (q!)^j \langle l \rangle_j}{(m+qj)! (g_q)^j} B_{m+qj, j} \underbrace{(0, 0, \dots, 0)}_{q \text{ times}}, \end{aligned}$$

**THEOREM C.** *For any complex number  $r$ , we have:*

$$[5h] \quad \mathbf{P}_n^{(-r)} = r \binom{n+r}{n} \sum_{1 \leq j \leq n} (-1)^j \frac{1}{r+j} \binom{n}{j} \mathbf{P}_n^{(j)}.$$

In other words, for  $G(x) \in C^\infty$  in the point  $a$ ,  $g_0 = G(a) = 1$ :

$$[5i] \quad \frac{d^n}{dx^n} G^{-r}(x) \Big|_{x=a} = r \binom{n+r}{n} \sum_{1 \leq j \leq n} (-1)^j \frac{1}{r+j} \binom{n}{j} \frac{d^n}{dx^n} G^j(x) \Big|_{x=a}.$$

■ Let  $g = 1 + \sum_{n \geq 1} g_n t^n / (n!)$ ; then we get

$$\begin{aligned} [5j] \quad g^{-r} &= 1 + \sum_{n \geq 1} \mathbf{P}_n^{(-r)} \frac{t^n}{n!} = \{1 + (g - 1)\}^{-r} = \\ &= \sum_{k \geq 0} \binom{-r}{k} (g - 1)^k. \end{aligned}$$

Now  $t^k$  divides  $(g - 1)^k = (g_1 t + g_2 t^2/2 + \dots)^k$ ; hence, by virtue of [5j],  $\mathbf{P}_n^{(-r)}$  equals the coefficient of  $t^n / (n!)$  in:

$$\sum_{k=0}^n \binom{-r}{k} (g - 1)^k = \sum_{0 \leq j \leq k \leq n} \binom{-r}{k} \binom{k}{j} (-1)^{k-j} g^j.$$

Hence

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{P}_n^{(-r)} &= \sum_{0 \leq j \leq k \leq n} \binom{-r}{k} \binom{k}{j} (-1)^{k-j} \mathbf{P}_n^{(j)} = \\ &= \sum_{0 \leq j \leq n} (-1)^j \mathbf{P}_n^{(j)} \cdot \gamma, \end{aligned}$$

where, using [7g] (p. 17), for (\*):

$$\begin{aligned}\gamma &= \sum_{j \leq k \leq n} \binom{r+k-1}{k} \binom{k}{j} = \binom{r+j-1}{j} \sum_{j \leq k \leq n} \binom{r+k-1}{k-j} = \\ &\stackrel{(*)}{=} \binom{r+j-1}{j} \binom{r+n}{n-j} = \frac{r}{r+j} \binom{n+r}{n} \binom{n}{j}. \quad \blacksquare\end{aligned}$$

### 3.6. INVERSION FORMULAS AND MATRIX CALCULUS

We just treat two examples and for the rest we refer to [\*Riordan, 1968], pp. 43–127, for a very extensive study of the subject.

#### (I) Binomial coefficients

Let two sequences be given, consisting, for instance of real numbers (more generally, in a commutative ring with identity) such that:

$$[6a] \quad f_n = \sum_{0 \leq k \leq n} \binom{n}{k} g_k, \quad n \geq 0.$$

We want to express  $g_n$  as a function of the  $f_n$ .

The simplest method consists of observing that [6a] means that:

$$[6b] \quad \mathbf{F} = \mathbf{P}\mathbf{G},$$

where  $\mathbf{F}$ ,  $\mathbf{G}$  are matrices consisting of a single (infinite) column, and  $\mathbf{P}$  the (infinite triangular) Pascal matrix:

$$[6c] \quad \mathbf{F} := \begin{pmatrix} f_0 \\ f_1 \\ f_2 \\ \vdots \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{G} := \begin{pmatrix} g_0 \\ g_1 \\ g_2 \\ \vdots \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{P} := \begin{pmatrix} 1 & & & & \\ 1 & 1 & & & \\ 1 & 2 & 1 & & \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \end{pmatrix}.$$

We take for  $\mathbf{F}$  and  $\mathbf{G}$  special matrices such that  $f_n = y^n$ ,  $g_n = x^n$ ; in this case we get, by [6a],  $y = 1 + x$ . Hence  $x^n = (y - 1)^n = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} (-1)^{n-k} y^k$ ; consequently:

$$[6d] \quad \mathbf{P}^{-1} = \left[ \left[ (-1)^{n-k} \binom{n}{k} \right] \right]_{n, k \geq 0} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & & & & \\ -1 & 1 & & & \\ 1 & -2 & 1 & & \\ -1 & 3 & -3 & 1 & \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots \end{pmatrix}$$

So,  $\mathbf{P}^{-1}$  is the same as  $\mathbf{P}$ , except that signs — appear in a chessboard pattern. (Because  $\mathbf{P}$  is triangular, [6d] also holds, if the matrices are cut off at the  $n$ -th line, and thus turned into finite matrices.) Finally, if we take into account that  $\mathbf{G} = \mathbf{P}^{-1}\mathbf{F}$ :

$$[6e] \quad g_n = \sum_{0 \leq k \leq n} (-1)^{n-k} \binom{n}{k} f_k.$$

### (II) Stirling numbers

We now show that the matrix  $\mathbf{s} := [[s(n, k)]]_{n, k \geq 0}$  consisting of the Stirling numbers of the first kind, is the inverse of the matrix  $\mathbf{S} := [[S(n, k)]]_{n, k \geq 0}$  of the Stirling numbers of the second kind; this means, like in the preceding case of the binomial coefficients:

$$[6f] \quad f_n = \sum_k S(n, k) g_k \Leftrightarrow g_n = \sum_k s(n, k) f_k.$$

Now, using [14s] (p. 51) for (\*), and using the notation:

$$f := \sum_{m \geq 0} f_m t^m / m!, \quad g := \sum_{n \geq 0} g_n t^n / n!,$$

we get:

$$\begin{aligned} [6g] \quad f &= f(t) = \sum_{m \geq 0} \frac{t^m}{m!} (\sum_k S(m, k) g_k) = \\ &= \sum_{k \geq 0} g_k \left( \sum_{m \geq k} S(m, k) \frac{t^m}{m!} \right) \stackrel{(*)}{=} \sum_{k \geq 0} g_k \frac{(e^t - 1)^k}{k!} = g(e^t - 1). \end{aligned}$$

Putting  $u := e^t - 1$ , let  $t = \log(1 + u)$ . Then [6g] gives, with [14r] (p. 51) for (\*\*):

$$\begin{aligned} [6h] \quad g &= g(u) = f(\log(1 + u)) = \sum_{k \geq 0} f_k \frac{\log^k(1 + u)}{k!} = \\ &\stackrel{(**)}{=} \sum_{k \geq 0} f_k \left( \sum_{n \geq 0} s(n, k) \frac{u^n}{n!} \right) = \sum_{n \geq 0} \frac{u^n}{n!} \{ \sum_k s(n, k) f_k \}, \end{aligned}$$

which proves [6f], if we identify the coefficients of  $u^n/n!$  of the first and the last member of [6h].

### 3.7. FRACTIONARY ITERATES OF FORMAL SERIES

The Faà di Bruno formula, [4c] (p. 137), with  $f = g$ , gives the coefficients or derivatives of  $f \circ f$ , and more generally, it also gives the coefficients of

the iterate of order  $\alpha$  of the formal series  $f$  (when  $f_0=0$ ,  $\alpha$  integer  $\geq 1$ ), denoted by  $f^{(\alpha)}$ , and defined as follows:

$$[7a] \quad f^{(1)} = f, \quad f^{(2)} = f \circ f, \dots, f^{(\alpha)} = f \circ f^{(\alpha-1)}.$$

We now want to define the iterate (analytical or fractionary) of order  $\alpha$  of  $f$ , also denoted by  $f^{(\alpha)}$ , for any  $\alpha$  from the field of the coefficients of  $f$ ; in the case we consider, this will be the field of the complex numbers (this constitutes no serious loss of generality). In this section every formal series  $f$  is supposed to be of the form:

$$[7b] \quad f = \sum_{n \geq 1} \Omega_n f_n t^n,$$

where  $\Omega_1, \Omega_2, \dots$  is a reference sequence, given once and for all,  $\Omega_1=1$ ,  $\Omega_n \neq 0$  (p. 44); in this way we treat at the same time the case of ‘ordinary’ coefficients of  $f$  ( $\Leftrightarrow \Omega_n=1$ ), and the case of ‘Taylor coefficients’ ( $\Leftrightarrow \Omega_n=1/n!$ ).

With every series  $f$  we associate the infinite lower *iteration matrix* (with respect to  $\Omega$ ):

$$[7c] \quad \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{B}(f) := \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{B}_{1,1} & 0 & 0 & \dots \\ \mathbf{B}_{2,1} & \mathbf{B}_{2,2} & 0 & \dots \\ \mathbf{B}_{3,1} & \mathbf{B}_{3,2} & \mathbf{B}_{3,3} & \dots \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots \end{pmatrix},$$

where  $\mathbf{B}_{n,k} = \mathbf{B}_{n,k}^{\Omega}(f_1, f_2, \dots)$  is the Bell polynomial with respect to  $\Omega$  ([3p'] p. 137), defined as follows:

$$[7d] \quad \Omega_k f^k = \sum_{n \geq k} \mathbf{B}_{n,k} \Omega_n t^n.$$

Thus, the matrix of the binomial coefficients is the iteration matrix for  $f=t(1-t)^{-1}$ ,  $\Omega_n=1$ , and the matrix of the Stirling numbers of the second kind  $S(n, k)$  is the iteration matrix for  $f=e^t-1$ ,  $\Omega_n=1/n!$ .

**THEOREM A.** *For three sequences  $f, g, h$  (written as in [7b])  $h=f \circ g$  is equivalent to the matrix equality:*

$$[7e] \quad \mathbf{B}(h) = \mathbf{B}(g) \cdot \mathbf{B}(f).$$

([Jabotinski, 1947, 1949, 1963]). If we transpose the matrices, we get  $h=f \circ g \Leftrightarrow {}^t \mathbf{B}(h) = {}^t \mathbf{B}(f) \cdot {}^t \mathbf{B}(g)$ , which looks better. However, the classical

combinatorial matrices, as the binomial and the Stirling matrices, are most frequently denoted as lower triangular matrices, hence our choice.)

■ For each integer  $k \geq 1$ , we have, with [7d] for (\*):

$$\begin{aligned} [7f] \quad & \sum_{n \geq k} \mathbf{B}_{n,k}(h_1, h_2, \dots) \Omega_n t^n = \\ & \stackrel{(*)}{=} \Omega_k h^k = \Omega_k (f(g))^k \stackrel{(*)}{=} \sum_{l \geq k} \mathbf{B}_{l,k}(f_1, f_2, \dots) \Omega_l g^l = \\ & \stackrel{(*)}{=} \sum_{\substack{n \geq l \geq k \\ n \geq l}} \mathbf{B}_{n,l}(g_1, g_2, \dots) \mathbf{B}_{l,k}(f_1, f_2, \dots) \Omega_n t^n, \end{aligned}$$

from which [7e] follows if we collect the coefficient of  $\Omega_n t^n$  at both ‘ends’ of [7f]. ■

If we consider in [7e] the first column of  $\mathbf{B}(h)$  only, we obtain again the formula of Faà di Bruno ([4i] p. 139), if we take  $\Omega_n = 1/n!$ . More generally, if we have  $\alpha$  series  $f_{\langle 1 \rangle}, f_{\langle 2 \rangle}, \dots, f_{\langle \alpha \rangle}$ , then [7e] gives the matrix equality  $\mathbf{B}(f_{\langle \alpha \rangle} \circ \dots \circ f_{\langle 2 \rangle} \circ f_{\langle 1 \rangle}) = \mathbf{B}(f_{\langle 1 \rangle}) \mathbf{B}(f_{\langle 2 \rangle}) \dots \mathbf{B}(f_{\langle \alpha \rangle})$ . In other words, if we consider again the first column only, we obtain a generalized Faà di Bruno formula for the  $n$ -th derivative of the composite of  $\alpha$  functions (again, we must take  $\Omega_n = 1/n!$ ). Similarly,  $\mathbf{B}(f^{\langle \alpha \rangle}) = (\mathbf{B}(f))^{\alpha}$  for all integers  $\alpha \geq 1$ , which leads to an explicit formula for integral order iterates ([Tambs, 1927]).

Now we suppose that the coefficient of  $t$  in  $f$  equals 1,  $f_1 = 1$ ; shortwise, we say that  $f$  is *unitary*. Furthermore, we assign values to  $\mathbf{B}^\alpha = (\mathbf{B}(f))^\alpha$ ,  $\alpha$  complex, in the following way: denoting the unit matrix by  $\mathbf{I}$ , and putting  $\mathcal{B} := \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{I}$  (which is  $\mathbf{B}$  with all 1’s on the diagonal erased), we define:

$$[7g] \quad \mathbf{B}^\alpha = (\mathbf{I} + \mathcal{B})^\alpha = \sum_{j \geq 0} \binom{\alpha}{j} \mathcal{B}^j.$$

In other words, between the coefficients of  $\mathbf{B}^\alpha$ , denoted by  $\mathbf{B}_{n,k}^{\langle \alpha \rangle}$  ( $n$  is the row number and  $k$  is the column number), and the coefficients of  $\mathcal{B}^j$ , denoted by  $[\mathcal{B}^j]_{n,k}$ , the following relation holds:

$$[7h] \quad \mathbf{B}_{n,k}^{\langle \alpha \rangle} = \sum_{1 \leq j \leq n-k} \binom{\alpha}{j} [\mathcal{B}^j]_{n,k},$$

by which the matrix  $\mathbf{B}^\alpha$  can actually be computed. For all  $\alpha, \alpha'$ , the reader will verify the matrix equalities:

$$[7i] \quad \mathbf{B}^\alpha \mathbf{B}^{\alpha'} = \mathbf{B}^{\alpha+\alpha'} = \mathbf{B}^{\alpha'} \mathbf{B}^\alpha, \quad (\mathbf{B}^\alpha)^{\alpha'} = \mathbf{B}^{\alpha\alpha'} = (\mathbf{B}^{\alpha'})^\alpha.$$

**DEFINITION.** For each complex number  $\alpha$ , the  $\alpha$ -th order fractionary iterate  $f^{(\alpha)}$  of the unitary series  $f$  is the unitary series, whose iteration matrix is  $\mathbf{B}^\alpha$ . In other words,  $f^{(\alpha)} := \sum_{n \geq 1} f_n^{(\alpha)} \Omega_n t^n$ , where the coefficients  $f_n^{(\alpha)}$  have the following expression, using  $b_{n,j} := [\mathcal{B}^j]_{n,1}$ ,  $n \geq 2$ :

$$[7j] \quad f_n^{(\alpha)} = \mathbf{B}_{n,1}^{(\alpha)} = \sum_{1 \leq j \leq n-1} \binom{\alpha}{j} b_{n,j}, \quad n \geq 2, \quad f_1^{(\alpha)} = 1.$$

Series  $f^{(\alpha)}$ , thus defined, does not depend on the reference sequence  $\Omega_n$ .

Evidently,  $f^{(0)}$  is the ‘identity’ series,  $f^{(0)}(t) = t$ . In the case of ‘Taylor coefficients’,  $\Omega_n = 1/n!$ , we obtain, by computing the powers  $\mathcal{B}^j$ , the following first values for the *iteration polynomials*  $b_{n,j}$ :

$$\begin{aligned} b_{2,1} &= f_2 \mathbb{I} b_{3,1} = f_3, & b_{3,2} &= 3f_2^2 \mathbb{I} b_{4,1} = f_4, & b_{4,2} &= 10f_2f_3 + 3f_2^3, \\ b_{4,3} &= 18f_2^3 \mathbb{I} b_{5,1} = f_5, & b_{5,2} &= 15f_2f_4 + 10f_3^2 + 25f_2^2f_3, & b_{5,3} &= \\ &= 130f_2^2f_3 + 75f_2^4, & b_{5,4} &= 180f_2^4 \mathbb{I} b_{6,1} = f_6, & b_{6,2} &= 21f_2f_5 + \\ &+ 35f_3f_4 + 60f_2^2f_4 + 70f_2f_3^2 + 15f_2^3f_3, & b_{6,3} &= 270f_2^2f_4 + 350f_2f_3^2 + \\ &+ 1065f_2^3f_3 + 180f_2^5, & b_{6,4} &= 2310f_2^3f_3 + 1935f_2^5, & b_{6,5} &= 2700f_2^5 \mathbb{I} \\ b_{7,1} &= f_7, & b_{7,2} &= 28f_2f_6 + 56f_3f_5 + 35f_4^2 + 126f_2^2f_5 + 350f_2f_3f_4 + \\ &+ 70f_3^3 + 105f_2^2f_3^2 + 105f_2^3f_4, & b_{7,3} &= 504f_2^2f_5 + 1610f_2f_3f_4 + \\ &350f_3^3 + 3255f_2^3f_4 + 5705f_2^2f_3^2 + 4935f_2^4f_3 + 315f_2^6, & b_{7,4} &= 6300 \\ f_2^3f_4 + 11900f_2^2f_3^2 + 42420f_2^4f_3 + 13545f_2^6, & b_{7,5} &= 54810f_2^4f_3 + \\ &+ 59535f_2^6, & b_{7,6} &= 56700f_2^6 \mathbb{I}. \end{aligned}$$

From these values we obtain immediately, by [7j], the expressions for the first derivatives  $f_n^{(\alpha)}$  of the iterate  $f^{(\alpha)}$ . For example, the fractionary iterate of  $f(t) = e^t - 1 = \sum_{n \geq 1} t^n/n!$  is  $f^{(\alpha)}(t) = t + \sum_{n \geq 2} f_n^{(\alpha)} t^n/n!$ , where  $f_n^{(\alpha)} = \sum_{j=1}^{n-1} \binom{\alpha}{j} b_{n,j}$  for  $n \geq 2$ ; the first few values of  $b_{n,j}$  are:

$n \setminus j$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
2	1						
3	1	3					
4	1	13	18				
5	1	50	205	180			
6	1	201	1865	4245	2700		
7	1	875	16674	74165	114345	56700	
8	1	4138	155477	1208830	3394790	3919860	1587600

Evidently, the alternating row sums  $\sum_{j=1}^{n-1} (-1)^j b_{n,j}$  equal  $(-1)^{n-1} \times (n-1)!$ , since  $f_n^{(-1)}(t) = \log(1+t)$ .

**THEOREM B.** *For all complex numbers  $\alpha, \alpha'$ , the fractionary iterates of the unitary series  $f$  satisfy:*

$$[7k] \quad f^{(\alpha)} \circ f^{(\alpha')} = f^{(\alpha+\alpha')} = f^{(\alpha')} \circ f^{(\alpha)}; \\ (f^{(\alpha)})^{(\alpha')} = f^{(\alpha\alpha')} = (f^{(\alpha')})^{(\alpha)}.$$

■ This follows immediately from [7i]. ■

### 3.8. INVERSION FORMULA OF LAGRANGE

For every formal series  $f = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n t^n$ , we denote the derivative by  $f'$  or  $Df$ , or  $df/dt$ ; let furthermore:

$$[8a] \quad C_{t^n} f := a_n = \text{the coefficient of } t^n \text{ in } f.$$

Supposing  $a_0 = 0, a_1 \neq 0$ , we are going to compute the coefficients  $a_n^{(-1)}$  of the *reciprocal* series, which is:

$$f^{(-1)} = \sum_{n \geq 1} a_n^{(-1)} t^n,$$

such that  $f \circ f^{(-1)} = f^{(-1)} \circ f = t$  (inversion problem for formal series).

**THEOREM A.** (*inversion formula of Lagrange*). *With the notation [8a], we have, for all integers  $k, 1 \leq k \leq n$ :*

$$[8b] \quad C_{t^n} (f^{(-1)})^k = \frac{k}{n} C_{t^{n-k}} \left( \frac{f(t)}{t} \right)^{-n}.$$

([Lagrange, 1770]. See also [Lagrange, Legendre (Bürmann), 1799]. The formal demonstration given here is due to [Henrici, 1964]. There is an

immense literature on this problem, and we mention only [Blakley, 1964a, b, c], [Brun, 1955], [Good, 1960, 1965], [\*Gröbner, 1960] p. 50–68, [Percus, 1964], [Raney, 1960, 1964], [Sack, 1965a, b, 1966], [Stieltjes, 1885], [Tyrrell, 1962].) In (8b),  $(f/t)^{-n}$  means evidently  $a_1^{-n}(1 + (a_2/a_1)t + (a_3/a_1)t^2 + \dots)^{-n}$ .

■ According to Theorem A (p. 145), all we need to prove is that the product of the matrix whose  $n$ -th row– $k$ -th column coefficient is the right-hand member of [8b], by the matrix whose  $n$ -th row– $k$ -th column coefficient is  $C_{t^n} f^k$  (this is the matrix  $\mathbf{B}(f)$ , with respect to  $\Omega_n = 1$ , [7c], p. 145), equals the identity matrix  $\mathbf{I}$ . Now, the coefficient on the  $n$ -th row and  $k$ -th column, say  $\pi_{n,k}$ , of this product matrix, is by definition equal to:

$$\pi_{n,k} := \sum_{k \leq l \leq n} \left\{ \frac{l}{n} C_{t^{n-l}} \left( \frac{f(t)}{t} \right)^{-n} \cdot C_{t^l} f^k \right\}.$$

So we only have to prove that  $\pi_{n,k} = 1$  for  $n=k$  and  $=0$  for  $n \neq k$ . For this, we observe that  $l C_{t^l} f^k = C_{t^n} (t D(f^k)) = k C_{t^n} (t f^{k-1} f')$ . Hence, with [12g] (p. 37) for (\*):

$$\begin{aligned} \pi_{n,k} &= \frac{k}{n} \sum_l \{ C_{t^{n-l}} (f/t)^{-n} \cdot C_{t^l} (t f^{k-1} f') \} = \\ &\stackrel{(*)}{=} \frac{k}{n} C_{t^n} (f/t)^{-n} t f^{k-1} f' = \frac{k}{n} C_{t^n} (t^{n+1} f^{-n+k-1} f'), \end{aligned}$$

which implies immediately that  $\pi_{n,n} = 1$ , for  $n = 1, 2, \dots$ . For  $n > k$ , on the other hand, we have:

$$\pi_{n,k} = \frac{k}{n} C_{t^0} \left\{ t D \left( \frac{f^{-n+k}}{-n+k} \right) \right\},$$

where the series following the differentiation sign  $D$  is now a *Laurent series* (p. 43). In the derivative of such a series terms  $t^{-1}$  cannot occur, so indeed  $\pi_{n,k} = 0$ . ■

Here are other forms of the Lagrange formula [8b].

**THEOREM B.** *With notations as above, and  $u := f^{\langle -1 \rangle}(t)$  we have for any*

formal series  $\Phi$ :

$$[8c] \quad \Phi(u) = \Phi(0) + \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{t^n}{n} C_{t^{n-1}} \Phi'(t) \left( \frac{f(t)}{t} \right)^{-n}$$

or, if one likes that more:

$$[8c'] \quad n C_{t^n} \Phi(f^{\langle -1 \rangle}(t)) = C_{t^{n-1}} \Phi'(t) \left( \frac{f(t)}{t} \right)^{-n}.$$

■ Let  $\Phi(v) := \sum_{k \geq 0} \varphi_k v^k$ ; it suffices to show [8c] for  $v^k$ ; but this is just [8b]. ■

**THEOREM C.** Let  $y = y_0 + xF(y)$  determine  $y$  as a series in  $x$ , with constant term  $y_0$ . Then:

$$[8c''] \quad \Xi(y) = \Xi(y_0) + \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{x^n}{n!} \frac{d^{n-1}}{dy_0^{n-1}} (\Xi(y_0) F^n(y_0)).$$

■ Writing  $y = y_0 + u$ , we get  $x = u(F(y_0 + u))^{-1} := f(u)$ . Then apply [8c], with  $t = x$ ,  $\Phi(u) = \Xi(y_0 + u)$ . ■

**THEOREM D.** ([Hermite, 1891]). With notations as above, and  $u = f^{\langle -1 \rangle}(t)$ , we have for all formal series  $\Psi$ :

$$[8d] \quad \frac{t\Psi(u)}{uf'(u)} = \sum_{n \geq 0} t^n C_{t^n} \Psi(t) \left( \frac{f(t)}{t} \right)^{-n},$$

in other words:

$$[8d'] \quad C_{t^n} \frac{t\Psi(u)}{uf'(u)} = C_{t^n} \Psi(t) \left( \frac{f(t)}{t} \right)^{-n}.$$

■ If we take the derivative of [8c] with respect to  $t$ , then, using  $t = f(u)$ ,  $du/dt = 1/f'(u)$ , we get:

$$[8e] \quad \Phi'(u) \frac{du}{dt} = \frac{\Phi'(u)}{f'(u)} = \sum_{n \geq 0} t^n C_{t^n} \Phi'(t) \left( \frac{f(t)}{t} \right)^{-n-1}.$$

So we only need to substitute  $\Psi(u) := u\Phi'(u)/f(u)$  into [8e]. ■

**THEOREM E.** The Taylor coefficients of the formal series  $f^{\langle -1 \rangle} = \sum_{n \geq 1} f_1^{\langle -1 \rangle} t^n / n!$ , which is the reciprocal of  $f = \sum_{n \geq 1} f_n t^n / n!$  can be expressed

as function of the Taylor coefficients  $f_n$  of  $f$  in the following manner:

$$[8f] \quad f_n^{(-1)} = \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} (-n)_k f_1^{-n-k} \mathbf{B}_{n-1,k} \left( \frac{f_2}{2}, \frac{f_3}{3}, \dots \right)$$

$$[8g] \quad = \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} (-1)^k f_1^{-n-k} \mathbf{B}_{k+n-1,k} (0, f_2, f_3, \dots)$$

with  $f_1^{(-1)} = 1/f_1$ , and with  $\mathbf{B}_{p,k}$  the exponential Bell polynomials. ([3d], p. 134. For this problem see also [Bödewadt, 1942], [Kamber, 1946], [Ostrowski, 1957] and [\*1966], p. 235, [\*Riordan, 1968], pp. 148 and 177.)

■ [8f] is an immediate consequence of [8b], with  $k=1$ , where the right-hand member is expressed by means of [5f] (p. 141); then [8g] follows from [3l'] (p. 136). ■

The first values of  $f_n^{(-1)}$  are:  $f_1^{(-1)} = f_1^{-1} \mid f_2^{(-1)} = -f_1^{-3} f_2 \mid$   
 $f_3^{(-1)} = -f_1^{-4} f_3 + 3f_1^{-5} f_2^2 \mid f_4^{(-1)} = -f_1^{-5} f_4 + 10f_1^{-6} f_2 f_3 -$   
 $-15f_1^{-7} f_2^3 \mid f_5^{(-1)} = -f_1^{-6} f_5 + f_1^{-7} (15f_4 f_2 + 10f_3^2) - 105f_1^{-8} f_3 f_2^2 +$   
 $+ 105f_1^{-9} f_2^4 \mid f_6^{(-1)} = -f_1^{-7} f_6 + f_1^{-8} (21f_5 f_2 + 35f_3 f_2) -$   
 $-f_1^{-9} (210f_4 f_2^2 + 280f_3^2 f_2) - 1260f_1^{-10} f_3 f_2^3 + 945f_1^{-11} f_2^5 \mid f_7^{(-1)} =$   
 $-f_1^{-8} f_7 + f_1^{-9} (28f_6 f_2 + 56f_5 f_3 + 35f_4^2) - f_1^{-10} (378f_5 f_2^2 +$   
 $1260f_4 f_3 f_2 + 280f_3^3) + f_1^{-11} (3150f_4 f_2^3 + 6300f_3^2 f_2^2) - 17325f_1^{-12} f_3 f_2^4$   
 $+ 10395f_1^{-13} f_2^6 \mid f_8^{(-1)} = -f_1^{-9} f_8 + f_1^{-10} (36f_7 f_2 + 84f_6 f_3 +$   
 $+ 126f_5 f_4) - f_1^{-11} (630f_6 f_2^2 + 2520f_5 f_3 f_2 + 1575f_4^2 f_2 + 2100f_4 f_3^2) +$   
 $+ f_1^{-12} (6930f_5 f_3^2 + 34650f_4 f_3 f_2^2 + 15400f_4^2 f_2) - f_1^{-13} (51975f_4 f_2^4 +$   
 $+ 138600f_3^2 f_2^3) + 270270f_1^{-14} f_3 f_2^5 - 135135f_1^{-15} f_2^7 \mid.$

To check this table, observe that the coefficient of  $(-1)^k f_1^{-n-k}$ , when  $f_1 = f_2 = \dots = 1$ , is exactly  $S_2(k+n-1, k)$  of p. 222.

**THEOREM F.** Let  $a$  be an integer  $\geq 1$ . For  $f(t) = t(1 - \sum_{m \geq 1} x_m t^{am}/m!)$ , we have  $f^{(-1)}(t) = t(1 + \sum_{m \geq 1} y_m t^{am}/m!)$ , where

$$[8h] \quad y_m = \sum_{k=1}^m (am+k)_{k-1} \mathbf{B}_{m,k}(x_1, x_2, \dots).$$

■ Apply [8b] (p. 148). ■

Formula [8h] could save time and place. For example, if we want to invert  $f(t) = (1/2)(\sinh t \cosht + \cosh t \sinht) = t(1 + \sum_{m \geq 1} (-4)^m t^{4m}/(4m+1)!)$ ,

up to  $t^{13}$ , we need the  $\mathbf{B}_{n,k}$  up to  $n=12$  by [8f], and only up to  $n=3$  by [8h]. So,  $f^{(-1)}(t) = t - t^5/30 + t^9/22680 - t^{13}/97297200 + \dots$  ([Zyczkowski, 1965]).

**THEOREM G.** *We have the following formula, using only coefficients of powers of  $f(t)$  with positive integral exponents ( $f(t) = a_1 t + a_2 t^2 + \dots$ ,  $a_1 \neq 0$ ):*

$$[8i] \quad \mathcal{C}_{t^n}(f^{(-1)}(t))^k = k \binom{2n-k}{n} \sum_{j=1}^{n-k} \frac{(-1)^j}{n+j} \binom{n-k}{j} \times \\ \times a_1^{-n-j} \mathcal{C}_{t^{n-k+j}}(f(t))^j.$$

■ Use [8b] (p. 148) and [5h] (p. 142). ■

*Remark.* The correspondence between a formal series and its iteration matrix was already used when we inverted the Stirling matrix  $\mathbf{S}$  (p. 144): we took the inverse function of  $f(t) := e^t - 1$ , whose iteration matrix was  $\mathbf{S}$  (with respect to  $\Omega_n = 1/n!$ )

### Applications

(I) The most classical example is undoubtedly that of computing the coefficients of the inverse function  $f^{(-1)}(t)$  for the case  $f(t) = te^{-t}$ . By [8b] (p. 148),  $k=1$ , we get:

$$\mathcal{C}_{t^n} f^{(-1)} = \frac{1}{n} \mathcal{C}_{t^{n-1}} \left( \frac{te^{-t}}{t} \right)^{-n} = \frac{1}{n} \mathcal{C}_{t^{n-1}} e^{nt} = \frac{1}{n} \cdot \frac{n^{n-1}}{(n-1)!}.$$

Hence  $f^{(-1)}(t) = \sum_{n \geq 1} n^{n-1} t^n / n!$ . (See also Exercise 18, p. 163.)

(II) For given fixed complex  $z$ , what is the ‘value’ of the series  $F(t) := \sum_{n \geq 0} \binom{nz}{n} t^n$ ? Since

$$F(t) = \sum_{n \geq 0} t^n \mathcal{C}_{t^n} (1+t)^{nz},$$

we can apply [8d] with  $f(t) := t(1+t)^{-1}$  and  $\Psi(t) = 1$ . After simplifications, we obtain  $F(t) = (1+u) \{1-(z-1)u\}^{-1}$ , where  $u := f^{(-1)}(t)$  is the reciprocal of  $f(t)$ . (For  $z=2$  we find back (1) of Exercise 22, p. 81.)

(III) Calculate the  $n$ -th derivative of an implicit function. We consider a Taylor formal expansion in two variables:  $f(x, y) = \sum_{m,n} f_{m,n} x^m y^n / (m!n!)$ , where  $f_{0,0} = 0$ ,  $f_{0,1} \neq 0$ . Therefore,  $f(x, y) = \sum_{n \geq 1} \varphi_n(x) y^n / n!$ , with  $\varphi_n(x) = \sum_{m \geq 0} f_{m,n} x^m / m!$ . We want to find a formal series  $y = \sum_{n \geq 1} y_n x^n / n!$

such that  $f(x, y)=0$  (the problem of ‘implicit functions’). For that, we solve  $\sum_{n \geq 1} \varphi_n y^n / n! = -\varphi_0$  by the Lagrange formula, where the variable is  $-\varphi_0$ , the unknown function is  $y$ , all the  $\varphi_1, \varphi_2, \varphi_3, \dots$  being temporarily considered as constants, and collect afterwards the terms in  $x^n / n!$  in the expression of  $y$  just found, where  $\varphi_0 = \varphi_0(x)$ ,  $\varphi_1 = \varphi_1(x)$ , etc. Putting  $a := f_{1,0}$ ,  $b = -(f_{0,1})^{-1}$ , we find ([Comtet, 1968], [David, 1887], [Goursat, 1904], [Sack, 1966], [Teixeira, 1904], [Worontzoff, 1894] and p. 175):  $y_1 = ab$  (this is the well-known formula  $y' = -f'_x / f'_y$ ) |  $y_2 = b(f_{2,0} + 2abf_{1,1} + a^2b^2f_{0,2})$  |  $y_3 = b\{f_{3,0} + 3bf_{2,0}f_{1,1} + 3abf_{2,1} + ab^2(6f_{1,1}^2 + 3f_{2,0}f_{0,2}) + 3a^2b^2f_{1,2} + 9a^2b^3f_{1,1}f_{0,2} + a^3b^3f_{0,3} + 3a^3b^4f_{0,2}^2\}$  |  $y_4 = b\{f_{4,0} + b(4f_{3,0}f_{1,1} + 6f_{2,0}f_{2,1}) + b^2(12f_{2,0}f_{1,1}^2 + 3f_{2,0}^2f_{0,2}) + 4abf_{3,1} + ab^2 \times (12f_{2,0}f_{1,2} + 24f_{1,1}f_{2,1} + 4f_{3,0}f_{0,2}) + ab^3(24f_{1,1}^3 + 36f_{2,0}f_{1,1}f_{0,2}) + 6a^2b^2f_{2,2} + a^2b^3(36f_{1,1}f_{1,2} + 18f_{2,1}f_{0,2} + 6f_{2,0}f_{0,3}) + a^2b^4(72f_{1,1}^2 \times f_{0,2} + 18f_{2,0}f_{0,2}^2) + 4a^3b^3f_{1,3} + a^3b^4(24f_{0,2}f_{1,2} + 16f_{1,1}f_{0,3}) + 60a^3b^5f_{1,1}f_{0,2}^2 + a^4b^4f_{0,4} + 10a^4b^5f_{0,2}f_{0,3} + 15a^4b^6f_{0,2}^3\}$ . |

(IV) Solve the equation  $y = x + x^p y^{q+1}$ , where  $p$  and  $q$  are integers  $\geq 0$ . We have  $x = y(1 - x^p y^q) = f(y)$ . So, with [8b] p. 148,  $y = \sum_{n \geq 1} b_n x^n$ , where  $b_n = b_n(x) = (1/n) C_{t^{n-1}}(1 - x^p t^q)^{-n}$ . Therefore,

$$y = x \sum_{k \geq 0} \frac{1}{kq + 1} \binom{kq + k}{k} x^{k(p+q)}, \quad |x| < 1.$$

(V) Let us give another proof of *Abel formula* ([1b] p. 128). For that, take  $f(t) = te^{xt}$ ,  $\Phi(t) = e^{xt}$  in [8c]. Then  $\Phi(u) = e^{xu} = 1 + \sum_{k \geq 1} (t^k/k) \times C_{t^{k-1}}(xe^{xt})(e^{xt})^{-k} = \sum_{k \geq 0} t^k x(x - kz)^{k-1}/k!$ . Now, multiply the preceding by  $e^{yu}$ , replace  $t$  by  $t = f(u) = ue^{zu}$ , and take coefficient of  $u^n/n!$ .

### 3.9. FINITE SUMMATION FORMULAS

Now we want, in the simplest cases, to express a sum  $A := \sum_{k=1}^n a(k)$  by means of an *explicit* (or *closed*) formula, called a *summation formula*, that is an expression in which the summation sign  $\sum$  does not occur anymore (neither little dots!).

*Example 1.* Show that  $A := \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} = 2^n$ . In fact,  $A = (1+1)^n$ , because of the binomial formula.

*Example 2.* Compute  $A_n(x) := \sum_k k \binom{n}{k} x^k$ . We have  $\sum_k \binom{n}{k} x^k = (1+x)^n$ . Taking the derivative, we get  $\sum_k k \binom{n}{k} x^{k-1} = n(1+x)^{n-1}$ .

Hence  $A_n(x) = nx(1+x)^{n-1}$ . Particularly,  $A_n(1) = \sum k \binom{n}{k} = n2^{n-1}$  and  $A_n(-1) = \sum (-1)^k k \binom{n}{k} = 0$ , except  $A_1(-1) = 1$ .

*Example 3.* Compute  $A := \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k}^2$ . Observe that  $A = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} \times \binom{n}{n-k}$ , which means that  $A$  equals the coefficient of  $t^n$  in the product of  $(1+t)^n$  with itself:

$$A = C_{t^n}(1+t)^n(1+t)^n = C_{t^{2n}}(1+t)^{2n} = \binom{2n}{n}.$$

(See Exercise 38, p. 90.) More generally, we have the *convolution identity* of Vandermonde:

$$[9a] \quad \sum_h \binom{m}{h} \binom{n-m}{k-h} = \binom{n}{k}, \quad k, m \leq n,$$

which follows from p. 26 or [13c] on p. 44, or also, as before, from:

$$\binom{n}{k} = C_{t^k}(1+t)^n = C_{t^k}(1+t)^m(1+t)^{n-m}.$$

In other cases,  $A = A(n) = \sum_{k=1}^n a(k)$  and a summation formula expresses now that  $A = \sum_{l=1}^m b(l)$ , where  $b(l)$  is another sequence. If  $m < n$ , we save making additions in this way. More generally, a *summation formula* is an equality between two expressions, one of which contains one or more summations. A summation formula is interesting if it establishes a connection between expressions which are built up from known or tabulated expressions.

*Example 4.* Use the Bernoulli polynomials ([14a], p. 48), to compute for each integer  $r \geq 0$ :

$$[9b] \quad Z = Z(n, r) := \sum_{1 \leq k \leq n} k^r = 1^r + 2^r + \cdots + n^r.$$

For this we consider the formal series:

$$f_n(t) := \sum_{r \geq 0} \{Z(n, r) t^{r+1}/r!\}.$$

We get, by [14a] (p. 48), for (\*):

$$[9c] \quad f_n(t) = t \sum_{\substack{r \geq 0 \\ 1 \leq k \leq n}} k^r \frac{t^r}{r!} = t \sum_{1 \leq k \leq n} \left\{ \sum_{r \geq 0} \frac{(kt)^r}{r!} \right\} = t \sum_{1 \leq k \leq n} e^{kt}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= t \frac{e^{(n+1)t} - e^t}{e^t - 1} = t \frac{e^{(n+1)t}}{e^t - 1} - \frac{t}{e^t - 1} - t = \\
 &\stackrel{(*)}{=} \sum_{v \geq 0} \frac{t^v}{v!} B_v (n+1) - \sum_{v \geq 0} \frac{t^v}{v!} B_v - t.
 \end{aligned}$$

Hence, by identification of the coefficient of  $t^{r+1}/r!$  in the first and last member of [9c], we get, by [14g] (p. 48), for (\*\*),  $r \geq 1$  ( $Z(n, 0) = n$ ):

$$\begin{aligned}
 [9d] \quad Z(n, r) &= \frac{1}{r+1} \{B_{r+1}(n+1) - B_{r+1}\} = \\
 &\stackrel{(**)}{=} \frac{1}{r+1} \sum_{0 \leq k \leq r} B_k \cdot \binom{r+1}{k} (n+1)^{r+1-k}.
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus we find, by the table on p. 49 (a table of the  $Z(n, r)$ ,  $r \leq 10$ ,  $n \leq 100$  is found in [\*Abramovitz, Stegun, 1964], pp. 813–17; see also [Carlitz, Riordan, 1963], Exercise 4, p. 220 and Exercise 31, p. 169):

$$Z(n, 1) = n(n+1)/2,$$

$$Z(n, 2) = n(n+1)(2n+1)/6,$$

$$Z(n, 3) = n^2(n+1)^2/4,$$

$$Z(n, 4) = n(n+1)(2n+1)(3n^2+3n-1)/30,$$

$$Z(n, 5) = n^2(n+1)^2(2n^2+2n-1)/12,$$

$$Z(n, 6) = n(n+1)(2n+1)(3n^4+6n^3-3n+1)/42,$$

$$Z(n, 7) = n^2(n+1)^2(3n^4+6n^3-n^2-4n+2)/24.$$

$$Z(n, 8) = n(n+1)(2n+1)(5n^6+15n^5+5n^4-15n^3-n^2+9n-3)/90$$

As additional properties of  $Z(n, r)$ , we have:

$$(1) \quad Z(n, r) = r \int_0^n Z(v, r-1) dv + B_r n$$

$$(2) \quad Z(n, 2) \text{ divides } Z(n, 2k) \text{ and } Z(n, 3) \text{ divides } Z(n, 2k+1), \\ k \geq 1.$$

## SUPPLEMENT AND EXERCISES

**1. Two relatives of the binomial identity.** Show that:

$$(x+y)^{2n} = \sum_{1 \leq k \leq n} \binom{2n-k-1}{n-1} (x^k + y^k) (x+y)^k (xy)^{n-k}$$

$$x^n + y^n = \sum_{0 \leq k \leq n/2} (-1)^k \frac{n}{n-k} \binom{n-k}{k} (xy)^k (x+y)^{n-2k}.$$

[Hint: Induction. See also Exercise 35, p. 87 and p. 198.]

**2. Lah numbers** ([\*Riordan, 1958], p. 43). These are the numbers  $L_{n,k} := (-1)^n \binom{n-1}{k-1} n!/k!$  which appeared in [3h] (p. 135),  $\exp\{tu \times (1-t)^{-1}\} = 1 + \sum_{1 \leq k \leq n} L_{n,k} (-t)^n u^k / n!\$ . (1)  $L_{n+1,k} = -(n+k) L_{n,k} -$

$n \setminus k$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
1	-1									
2	2	1								
3	-6	-6	-1							
4	24	36	12	1						
5	-120	-240	-120	-20	-1					
6	720	1800	1200	300	30	1				
7	-5040	-15120	-12600	-4200	-630	-42	-1			
8	40320	141120	141120	58800	11760	1176	56	1		
9	-362880	-1451520	-1693440	-846720	-211680	-28224	-2016	-72	-1	
10	3628800	16329600	21772800	12700800	3810240	635040	60480	3240	90	1

$-L_{n,k-1}$ . (2)  $(-x)_n = (-1)^n \langle x \rangle_n = \sum_{k=0}^n (x)_k L_{n,k}$ . (3)  $a_n = \sum L_{n,k} b_k$  is equivalent to  $b_n = \sum L_{n,k} a_k$ . (4)  $L_{n,k} = \sum (-1)^j s(n,j) S(j,k)$ , where  $s(n,j)$  and  $S(j,k)$  are the Stirling numbers of the first and second kind.

**3. Bell, potential and logarithmic polynomials.** (1) Show that  $k! B_{n,k} = \sum_{r \leq k} \binom{k}{r} (-1)^{k-r} P_n^{(r)}$ . Which property of derivatives does this formula give when combined with the Faà di Bruno formula of p. 137? (2) Use  $\log(1+g) = \sum_{r \geq 1} (-1)^{r-1} r^{-1} g^r$ , where  $g := \sum_{n \geq 1} g_n t^n / n!$  to show that  $\mathbf{L}_n = \sum_{r=1}^n (-1)^{r-1} r^{-1} P_n^{(r)}$ . Translate this formula in terms of derivatives. Similarly, with  $s(l,k)$ , the Stirling number of the first kind:

$$C_{r^n} \frac{\log^k(1+g)}{k!} = \sum_{l=k}^n \frac{s(l,k)}{l!} C_{r^n} g^l.$$

**4.  $P_n^{(r)}$  as a function of a single Bell polynomial when  $r$  is integer.** If  $r$

is a positive integer, show that:

$$\mathbf{P}_n^{(r)} = \binom{n+r}{r}^{-1} \mathbf{B}_{n+r,r}(1, 2g_1, 3g_2, \dots).$$

[Hint: We get  $(1+g_1t+g_2t^2/2!+\cdots)^r = t^{-r}(t+2g_1t^2/2!+3g_2t^3/3!+\cdots)^r$ , by [5g], p. 141.]

**5. Determinantal expressions.** (1) Let  $f := \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n t^n$ ,  $a_0 \neq 0$ , and  $g = \sum_{n \geq 0} b_n t^n := f^{-1}$ . Then  $b_n = (-1)^n a_0^{-n-1} \det [[c_{i,j}]]$ , where  $c_{i,j} := := a_{j-i+1}$ ,  $1 \leq i, j \leq n$ ;  $a_k := 0$  for  $k < 0$ . (This gives a determinantal expression for  $\mathbf{P}_n^{(-1)}$ ). (2) The Faà di Bruno formula ([4i] p. 139) can be restated operationally in the following form ([Ivanoff, 1958]), using the Pascal triangle of dimension  $n$ , with an upper diagonal of  $-1$ :

$$h_n = \begin{vmatrix} g_1 D & -1 & 0 & 0 & \dots \\ g_2 D & g_1 D & -1 & 0 & \dots \\ g_3 D & 2g_2 D & g_1 D & -1 & \dots \\ g_4 D & 3g_3 D & 3g_2 D & g_1 D & \dots \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \end{vmatrix} f,$$

where  $D^k f := f_k$ . For example,

$$h_2 = \begin{vmatrix} g_1 D & -1 \\ g_2 D & g_1 D \end{vmatrix} f = (g_1^2 D^2 + g^2 D) f = g_1^2 f_2 + g_2 f_1.$$

**6. Successive derivatives of  $F(\log x)$  and  $F(e^x)$ .** Expressed as a function of the Stirling numbers of the first kind  $s(n, k)$  and of the second kind  $S(n, k)$  we have:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d^n}{dx^n} F(\log x) &= x^{-n} \sum_{k=1}^n s(n, k) F^{(k)}(\log x) \\ \frac{d^n}{dx^n} F(e^x) &= \sum_{k=1}^n S(n, k) e^{kx} F^{(k)}(e^x) \end{aligned}$$

Moreover, for  $y = x_1 x_2 \dots x_n$ , we have

$$\frac{\partial^n F(y)}{\partial x_1 \partial x_2 \dots \partial x_n} = \sum_{k=1}^n S(n, k) y^{k-1} F^{(k)}(y).$$

**7. Successive derivatives of  $F(x^\alpha)$ .** Let  $\alpha$  be a real constant and  $F(x)$  a function of class  $C^\infty$  in the point  $x=a (>0)$ . Using the notations of [4h]

(p. 138), and the Faà di Bruno formula [4i] of p. 139, show that the  $n$ -th derivative of  $H(x) := F(x^\alpha)$  in the point  $x=a$  equals  $h_n = \sum_{k=1}^n f_k a^{ak-n} Z_{n,k}(\alpha)$ , where the  $Z_{n,k}(\alpha)$  are generated by  $((1+T)^\alpha - 1)^k / k! = \sum_{n \geq k} Z_{n,k}(\alpha) T^n / n!$  (See Exercise 21, p. 163.)

Deduce the well-known formulas:

$$\begin{aligned} Z_{n,k}(-1) &= (-1)^n \frac{n!}{k!} \binom{n-1}{k-1} \\ Z_{n,k}\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) &= (-1)^{n-k} \frac{(n-1)!}{(k-1)!} \binom{2n-k-1}{n-1} \frac{1}{2^{2n-k}} \\ Z_{n,k}(2) &= \frac{n!}{k!} \binom{k}{n-k} 2^{2k-n}. \end{aligned}$$

**8.** *Expansions of the coordinates with respect to the Frenet-Serret trihedron in terms of arc length.* Let  $\varrho = \varrho(s)$  be the curvature of a plane curve  $M = M(s)$  as a function of the length  $s$  of the arc with origin  $M(0)$  (intrinsic equation).

We introduce the Frenet-Serret trihedron  $(M(0), \vec{t}, \vec{n})$ , where  $\vec{t} = dM/ds|_{s=0}$ ,  $\vec{\varrho} = d\vec{t}/ds|_{s=0}$ ,  $\varrho > 0$ , and  $\overrightarrow{M(0)M(s)} = \vec{x}\vec{t} + \vec{y}\vec{n}$ ,  $x = \sum_{n \geq 1} x_n s^n / n!$ ,  $y = \sum_{n \geq 1} y_n s^n / n!$ . Putting  $\varrho_k = d^k \varrho / ds^k|_{s=0}$ ,  $\varrho_0 = \varrho(0)$ ,  $\mathbf{B}_{n,k} = \mathbf{B}_{n,k}(\varrho_0, \varrho_1, \varrho_2, \dots)$ , we have:

$$\begin{aligned} x_{n+1} &= \sum_h (\mathbf{B}_{n,4h} - \mathbf{B}_{n,4h+2}), \\ y_{n+1} &= \sum_h (\mathbf{B}_{n,4h+1} - \mathbf{B}_{n,4h+3}). \end{aligned}$$

For example,  $x_1 = 1$ ,  $x_2 = 0$ ,  $x_3 = -\varrho_0^2$ ,  $x_4 = -3\varrho_0\varrho_1$ ,  $x_5 = -4\varrho_0\varrho_2 - 3\varrho_1^2$ , ...,  $y_1 = 0$ ,  $y_2 = \varrho_0$ ,  $y_3 = \varrho_1$ ,  $y_4 = \varrho_2 - \varrho_0^2$ ,  $y_5 = \varrho_3 - 6\varrho_0\varrho_1$ , ....

\* Find similar formulas for a space curve with respect to the curvature  $\varrho = \varrho(s)$  and the torsion  $\tau = \tau(s)$ .

**9.** *Symmetric functions.* A symmetric function, abbreviated SF, is a polynomial  $P(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$  in the  $n$  variables  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$ , with coefficients in a field  $K$  (often =  $\mathbb{R}$  or  $\mathbb{C}$ ), and which is invariant under any permutation of the variables: for any  $\sigma \in \mathfrak{S}(n)$ ,  $P(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) = P(x_{\sigma(1)}, \dots, x_{\sigma(n)})$ . A *monomial symmetric function* (abbreviated MSF) is a symmetric function of the form:

$$f = \sum x_{i_1}^{q_1} x_{i_2}^{q_2} \dots x_{i_v}^{q_v} \quad \text{also denoted by} \quad \sum^{(n)} x_1^{q_1} x_2^{q_2} \dots x_v^{q_v},$$

where the  $q_i$  are given integers such that  $q_1 \geq q_2 \geq \dots \geq q_v \geq 1$ , and where the above summation takes place over all  $v$ -arrangements  $(i_1, i_2, \dots, i_v)$  of  $[n]$  such that the corresponding monomials (in the summation) are *all distinct*. Thus  $\sum^{(3)} x_1^5 x_2 x_3 = x_1^5 x_2 x_3 + x_2^5 x_1 x_3 + x_3^5 x_1 x_2$ . The MSF  $\sigma_i$  and  $s_r$ ,  $\sigma_i = \sum^{(n)} x_1 x_2 \dots x_i$ ,  $s_r = \sum^{(n)} x'_1$ , are called ‘elementary SF’ and the ‘sum of  $r$ -th powers SF’, respectively. (1) Every SF is a linear combination of MSF (detailed tables in [\*David, Kendall, Barton, 1966]). Particularly  $(x_1 + x_2 + \dots + x_n)^w$  is a linear combination of MSF; in this summation occur  $p(w)$  such MSF, which is the number of partitions of  $w$  (pp. 94 and 126). (2) The  $\sigma_i$  have for GF:  $P(t) := \sum_{i=0}^n \sigma_i t^i = \prod_{j=1}^n (1 + x_j t)$ . (3)  $s_r = (-1)^{r-1} / (r-1)! L_r(\sigma_1, 2! \sigma_2, 3! \sigma_3, \dots)$ . [Hint: Use  $\log P(t) = \sum_{j=1}^n \log(1 + x_j t) = \sum_{r \geq 1} (-1)^{r-1} (t^r / r) s_r$ .] (4)  $\sigma_i = Y_i(s_1, -1! s_2, 2! s_3, -3! s_4, \dots) / i!$ .

**10. Bell polynomials and partitions.** From identity [5b] (p. 103) follows after replacing  $tu$  by  $u$ :

$$\begin{aligned} & \{(1-u)(1-tu)(1-t^2u)\dots\}^{-1} = \\ & = 1 + \sum_{k \geq 1} u^k \{(1-t)(1-t^2)\dots(1-t^k)\}^{-1}. \end{aligned}$$

If we put  $x_k := (1-t^k)^{-1}$ , and use  $1 + \sum_{k \geq 1} u^k x_1 x_2 \dots x_k = \exp\{-\sum_{m \geq 0} \log(1-t^m u)\}$ , show that  $k! x_1 x_2 \dots x_k = Y_k(x_1, 1! x_2, 2! x_3, \dots)$ . For example:  $2x_1 x_2 = x_2 + x_1^2$ ,  $4x_1^2 x_2 = x_2 + x_1^2 + 2x_1^3$ ,  $8x_1 x_2^2 = 4x_2^2 + x_2 + x_1^2 + 2x_1^3$ ,  $12x_1 x_2 x_3 = 4x_3 + 3x_2 + 3x_1^2 + 2x_1^3$ . Obtain from this the (Herschel) expansions of  $\{(1-t)(1-t^2)\}^{-1}$ ,  $\{(1-t)^2(1-t^2)\}^{-1}$ ,  $\{(1-t)(1-t^2)^2\}^{-1}$ ,  $\{(1-t)(1-t^2)(1-t^3)\}^{-1}$ . To which generalization of the notion of denumerant do the second and third example correspond?

Finally, give formulas and recurrences for the D’Arcalis numbers  $A(n, k)$  defined by  $\{(1-t)(1-t^2)(1-t^3)\dots\}^{-u} = \sum_{k \leq n} A(n, k) u^k t^n / n!$  ([D’Arcalis, 1913]), of which the first values are:

$n \setminus k$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
1	1							
2	3	1						
3	8	9	1					
4	42	59	18	1				
5	144	450	215	30	1			
6	1440	3394	2475	565	45	1		
7	5760	30912	28294	9345	1225	63	1	
8	75600	293292	340116	147889	27720	2338	84	1

**11. Characteristic numbers for a random variable.** Let be given a probability space  $(\Omega, \mathcal{A}, \mathbf{P})$  and a real random variable  $X: \Omega \mapsto \mathbf{R}$  (abbreviated RV) with distribution function  $F(x) := \mathbf{P}(X < x)$ . Let  $\mu_n$  (or  $\mu'_n$ ) be the *central* (or *noncentral*) *moments* of  $X$ :  $\mu'_n := \mathbf{E}(X^n) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^n dF(x)$ ,  $\mu_n = \mathbf{E}(X - \mu)^n$ , where  $\mu = \mu'_1 = \mathbf{E}(X)$  is the *expectation* of  $X$  (then  $\mu_1 = 0$ ). We define furthermore for  $X$  the *variance*  $\mu_2 = \mathbf{E}(X - \mu)^2$  (also denoted by  $\text{var } X$ ) and the *standard deviation*  $\mathbf{D}(X) := \sqrt{\text{var } X}$ ; the *GF of the moments*:

$$\Psi(t) := 1 + \sum_{n \geq 1} \mu'_n t^n / n! = \mathbf{E}(e^{tX});$$

the *generating function of the central moments*:

$$\Psi^*(t) := 1 + \sum_{n \geq 2} \mu_n t^n / n! = \mathbf{E}(e^{t(X - \mu)}) = e^{-t\mu} \Psi(t);$$

and the *GF of the cumulants*  $\kappa_n$ :

$$\gamma(t) := \log \Psi(t) = \sum_{n \geq 1} \kappa_n t^n / n!.$$

If the RV is *discrete* ( $\Leftrightarrow X(\Omega) \subset \mathbf{N}$ ),  $p_k = \mathbf{P}(X=k)$ , then we have the *GF of the probabilities*:  $g(u) := \sum_{k \geq 0} p_k u^k$ ; hence  $g(e^t) = \Psi(t)$ ,  $\log g(e^t) = \gamma(t)$ .

(1)  $\mu_n = \sum \binom{n}{k} (-1)^k \mu^k \mu'_{n-k}$ ,  $\mu'_n = \sum \binom{n}{k} \mu^k \mu_{n-k}$ , where  $0 \leq k \leq n$ ,  $\mu'_0 = \mu_0 := 1$ . (2)  $\mu'_n = \mathbf{Y}(\kappa_1, \kappa_2, \dots)$ ,  $\mu_n = \mathbf{Y}_n(0, \kappa_2, \kappa_3, \dots)$ ,  $\kappa_n = \mathbf{L}_n(\mu'_1, \mu'_2, \dots) = \mathbf{L}_n(0, \mu_2, \mu_3, \dots)$ . (3) Let  $X_1, X_2, X_3, \dots$  be *independent* Bernoulli RV's with the same distribution law,  $\mathbf{P}(X_i=0) := q$ ,  $\mathbf{P}(X_i=1) := p$ ,  $p, q \geq 0$ ,  $p+q=1$ . Then  $\mathbf{E}(X_1 + X_2 + \dots + X_n)^l = \sum_k (n)_k p^k S(l, k)$ . (4) Let  $X$  be a *Poisson* RV,  $p_k := \mathbf{P}(X=k) := e^{-\lambda} \lambda^k / k!$  ( $\lambda > 0$  is called the *parameter* of  $X$ ). Then  $\mu'_n = \sum_k S(n, k) \lambda^k$ ;  $\mu'_1 = \mu_2 = \mu_3 = \lambda$ ,  $\mu_4 = \lambda + 3\lambda^2$ ,  $\mu_5 = \lambda + 10\lambda^2$ ,  $\mu_6 = \lambda + 25\lambda^2 + 15\lambda^3, \dots$ .

**12. Factorial moments of a RV.** With the notations of Exercise 11, we define for each *discrete* RV,  $p_k := \mathbf{P}(X=k)$ , the factorial moments:  $\mu_{(m)} = \mu_{(m)}(X) := \sum_k p_k (k)_m$ ,  $(k)_m = k(k-1)\dots(k-m+1)$ , p. 6,  $m=1, 2, 3, \dots$ . Show that  $\mu_{(m)} = \sum_k s(m, k) \mu'_k$ ,  $\mu'_m = \sum_k S(m, k) \mu_{(k)}$ , and that  $g(1+t) = \sum_{m \geq 0} \mu_{(m)} t^m / m!$ .

**13. Random formal series.** Let  $X_1, X_2, \dots$  be Bernoulli random variables

with the same distribution function,  $\mathbf{P}(X_i=1)=p$ ,  $\mathbf{P}(X_i=0)=1-p$ ,  $0 < p < 1$ . Let  $V_1, V_2, \dots, W_1, W_2, \dots$  be the RV defined by  $\exp(X_1 t + X_2 t^2 + \dots) := 1 + V_1 t + V_2 t^2 + \dots$  and  $(1 - X_1 t - X_2 t^2 - \dots)^{-r} := 1 + W_1 t + W_2 t^2 + \dots$ , where  $r > 0$  is given. Show that the expectations  $E(V_n)$  and  $E(W_n)$  tend to infinity with  $n$ .

**\*14.** *Distribution of a sum of uniformly distributed RV.* Let  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$  be independent symmetrical RV with uniform distribution function. In other words, there exist  $\alpha_v > 0$ ,  $v = 1, 2, \dots, n$  such that  $|X_v| \leq \alpha_v$ , and, for  $x \in [-\alpha_v, \alpha_v]$ ,  $\mathbf{P}(X_v < x) = (\alpha_v + x)/(2\alpha_v)$ . Determine the distribution function of  $S := X_1 + X_2 + \dots + X_n$ , in other words  $\mathbf{P}(S < x)$  ([Ostrowski, 1952]).

**15.** *A formula of Halphen* ([Halphen, 1879]). Use [8b] (p. 148) or some other way, to show that:

$$\frac{d^n}{dx^n} \left\{ x^{n-1} F\left(\frac{1}{x}\right) \right\} = \frac{(-1)^n}{x^{n+1}} F^{(n)}\left(\frac{1}{x}\right),$$

where  $F^{(n)}(1/x)$  stands for the  $n$ -th derivative of  $F$  taken in the point  $1/x$ . Thus  $(d^n/dx^n)(x^{n-1} \log x) = (n-1)!/x$ ,  $(d^n/dx^n)(x^n \log x) = n! (\log x + 1 + \frac{1}{2} + \dots + 1/n)$ ,  $(d^n/dx^n)(x^{n-1} e^{1/x}) = (-1)^n e^{1/x} x^{-n-1}$ . More generally:

$$\left\{ F\left(\frac{1}{x}\right) G(x) \right\}^{(n)} = \sum_{k=0}^n (-1)^k \binom{n}{k} \frac{1}{x^k} F^{(k)}\left(\frac{1}{x}\right) \cdot \left\{ \frac{G(x)}{x^k} \right\}^{(n-k)}.$$

**\*16.** *Lambert series and the Möbius function.* Let  $f(t) := \sum_{n \geq 1} a_n t^n$ , and  $g(t) = \sum_{n \geq 1} a_n t^n (1-t^n)^{-1}$ , which is called the *Lambert GF* of the sequence  $a_n$ . (1) We have  $g(t) = \sum_{m \geq 1} f(t^m)$ . (2) Defining the *Möbius function* (=sequence)  $\mu(n)$  by  $t = \sum_{n \geq 1} \mu(n) t^n (1-t^n)^{-1}$ , show that  $b_n = \sum_{d \mid n} a_d$ , and that  $a_n = \sum_{d \mid n} \mu(d) b_{n/d}$  (the notation  $a \mid n$  means  $d$  divides  $n$ ). (3)  $\mu(1) = 1$ ; furthermore, for  $n = p_1^{\alpha_1} p_2^{\alpha_2} \dots p_k^{\alpha_k}$ , where the  $p_i$  are distinct prime factors of  $n$ , we have  $\mu(n) = (-1)^k$  if all  $\alpha_i$  equal 1 (such numbers  $n$  are called squarefree), and  $\mu(n) = 0$  in the other cases. It follows that  $\mu(n)$  is multiplicative, in the sense that when  $a$  and  $b$  are relatively prime, then  $\mu(ab) = \mu(a) \mu(b)$ .

$n$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
$\mu(n)$	1	-1	-1	0	-1	1	-1	0	0	1	-1	0	-1	1	1	0	-1	0	-1	0

Show that  $t+t^2+t^4+t^8+\cdots=\sum_{m \geq 0} \mu(2m+1) t^{2m+1} (1-t^{2m+1})^{-1}$ . (4)  
 Let  $d(n)$  be the number of divisors of  $n$ , in other words the number of solutions with integers  $x$  and  $y \geq 1$  of the equation  $xy=n$ . Then  $\sum_{n \geq 1} d(n) t^n = \sum_{n \geq 1} t^n (1-t^n)^{-1} = \sum_{n \geq 1} t^{n^2} (1+t^n) (1-t^n)^{-1}$ . (5) If  $\varphi(n)$  is the indicator function of Euler, [6e] p. 193, then we have  $t(1-t)^{-2} = \sum_{n \geq 1} \varphi(n) t^n (1-t^n)^{-1}$ . Moreover,  $\sum_{n \geq 1} \varphi(n) t^n (1+t^n)^{-1} = t(1+t^2)(1-t^2)^{-2} = \sum_{m \geq 0} \varphi(2m+1) t^{2m+1} (1-t^{4m+2})^{-1}$ . (6) Also prove:

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n \geq 1} (-1)^{n-1} t^n (1-t^n)^{-1} &= \sum_{n \geq 1} t^n (1+t^n)^{-1} \\ \sum_{n \geq 1} nt^n (1-t^n)^{-1} &= \sum_{n \geq 1} t^n (1-t^n)^{-2} \\ \sum_{n \geq 1} (-1)^{n-1} nt^n (1-t^n)^{-1} &= \sum_{n \geq 1} t^n (1+t^n)^{-2} \\ \sum_{n \geq 1} (1/n) t^n (1-t^n)^{-1} &= \sum_{n \geq 1} \log \{(1-t^n)^{-1}\}. \end{aligned}$$

(A generalization of Lambert series is found in [Touchard, 1960].) (7)  
 Let  $r(n)$  be the number of solutions of  $n=x^2+y^2$  with integers  $x, y \geq 0$  (representation of  $n$  as sum of two squares). Thus,  $r(0)=1, r(1)=4$ , because  $1=(\pm 1)^2+0^2=0^2+(\pm 1)^2$ ,  $r(5)=8$ , because  $5=(\pm 2)^2+(\pm 1)^2=(\pm 1)^2+(\pm 2)^2$ . Then:

$$\sum_{n \geq 1} r(n) t^n = 4 \sum_{n \geq 1} (-1)^{n-1} t^{2n-1} (1-t^{2n-1})^{-1}.$$

(8) With the notations of (3) and  $\omega_n := \alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + \cdots + \alpha_k$ ,

$$\sum_{n \geq 1} (-1)^{\omega_n} \frac{t^n}{1-t^n} = \sum_{n \geq 1} t^{n^2}.$$

(See also Exercise 12, p. 119). (9) Finally prove

$$\left( \sum_{n \geq 0} t^{\binom{n}{2}} \right)^4 = \sum_{n \geq 0} \frac{(2n+1) t^n}{1-t^{2n+1}}.$$

**17. Ordinary Bell polynomials with rational variables.** Let all  $a_m$  be rational,  $a_m \in \mathbb{Q}$ , and let the numbers  $c_n$  be defined formally by  $g(x) := \exp(\sum_{m \geq 1} a_m x^m) = \sum_{n \geq 0} c_n x^n$ . A necessary and sufficient condition that all numbers  $c_n$  are rational integers,  $c_n \in \mathbb{Z}$ , is that for all  $k \geq 1$ , we have  $\sum_{rs=k} r a_r \mu(s) \equiv 0 \pmod{k}$ . (See [Carlitz, 1958b, 1968b], [Dieudonné,

1957].) [Hint: The  $c_n$  are integers if and only if the  $b_m$ , defined inductively by  $g(x) := \prod_{m \geq 1} (1 - x^m)^{b_m}$ , are all integers. Consider then  $\log g(x)$ , and expand  $ka_k = -\sum_{m|k} mb_m$ . Then apply the Möbius inversion formula (2) of Exercise 16].

**18. With the Lagrange formula.** (1) Deduce from  $x = y \exp(-y)$  that  $\exp(\alpha y) = 1 + \sum_{n \geq 1} \alpha(\alpha+n)^{n-1} x^n / n!$  and  $(1-y)^{-1} \exp(\alpha y) = \sum_{n \geq 0} (\alpha+n)^n x^n / n!$ . (2) Supposing  $f(t) = t + a_2 t^2 + a_3 t^3 + \dots$  ( $a_1 = 1$ ), prove that, for every complex number  $\alpha$ , with  $k \leq n$ :

$$\mathbb{C}_{t^{n+\alpha}}(f^{<-1>}(t))^{k+\alpha} = \frac{k+\alpha}{n+\alpha} \mathbb{C}_{t^{n-k}}\left(\frac{f(t)}{t}\right)^{-n-\alpha}.$$

**19. Middle trinomial coefficients.** These are  $a_n = \mathbb{C}_{t^n}(1+t+t^2)^n$  (p. 77):

$n$	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
$a_n$	1	1	3	7	19	51	141	393	1107	3139	8953	25653

(1) The integer  $a_n$  is the number of distributions of indistinguishable balls into  $n$  different boxes, each box containing at most 2 balls. (2)  $(n+1) a_{n+1} = (2n+1) a_n + 3na_{n-1}$ . (3)  $\sum_{n \geq 0} a_n t^n = (1 - 2t - 3t^2)^{-1/2}$ . (4) Using the notation [6f] (p. 110)  $\sum_{i=0}^n a_i a_{n-i} = \|3^{n+1}/4\|$ . (5) For  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , we have the asymptotic equivalent  $a_n \sim 3^n \sqrt{3/(4\pi n)}$ . (6) For each prime number  $p$ , then  $a_p \equiv 1 \pmod{p}$  holds.

**20. Hurwitz identity** ([Hurwitz, 1902]). Considering the set  $E$  of acyclic functions of  $[n+2]$  whose set of roots is  $\{n+1, n+2\}$ , prove, by an argument similar to that of p. 129:

$$(x+y)(x+y+z_1+z_2+\dots+z_n)^{n-1} = \\ = \sum x(x+\varepsilon_1 z_1 + \dots + \varepsilon_n z_n)^{\varepsilon_1+\dots+\varepsilon_n-1} \cdot y(y+\bar{\varepsilon}_1 z_1 + \dots + \bar{\varepsilon}_n z_n)^{\bar{\varepsilon}_1+\dots+\bar{\varepsilon}_n-1},$$

where the summation is over all  $2^n$  choices of  $\varepsilon_1, \dots, \varepsilon_n$  independently taking the values 0 and 1, and  $\bar{\varepsilon}_i := 1 - \varepsilon_i$ . Generalize for more than 2 roots.

**21. Expansions related to  $1 - (1-at)^\alpha$ .** (1) When  $k$  and  $l$  are given

integers  $\geq 1$ , express the Taylor coefficients of  $f:=((1+x)^{1/l}-1)^k$  in the point  $x=0$  by an exact formula of rank  $(l-2)$ . (as defined on p. 216). Such a formula is apparently only useful if  $k \geq l$ .) [Hint: Putting  $y:=(1+x)^{1/l}-1$ , we have  $x=(y+1)^l-1$  and  $f=y^k$ ; hence [8d] (p. 150) can be applied.] (2) For any real number  $u$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \left(\frac{1+\sqrt{1-4t}}{2}\right)^{-u} &= \left(\frac{1-\sqrt{1-4t}}{2t}\right)^u = \\ &= 1 + u \sum_{n \geq 1} \binom{u+2n-1}{n-1} \frac{t^n}{n}. \end{aligned}$$

(3) Using Hermite's formula ([8d] p. 150), prove that for any  $\alpha$ :

$$\mathbb{C}_n \left( \frac{1-(1-t)^\alpha}{\alpha t} \right)^{-n-1} = \binom{1-1/\alpha}{n} \alpha^n.$$

**22. Three special triangular matrices.** (Obviously, the three following computations of infinite lower triangular matrices give the same result if the matrices are truncated at the  $n$ -th row and column, so that they become square  $n \times n$  matrices.) We let  $\mu(n, k)$  denote the coefficient on the  $n$ -th row and the  $k$ -th column of the matrix  $M$ , and we let  $\mu^{(\alpha)}(n, k)$  denote the corresponding coefficient in the matrix  $M^\alpha$  (in the sense of [7g] p. 146). (1) Let  $\mu(n, k):=\binom{n+z}{n-k}$  for  $0 \leq k \leq n$  and  $:=0$  otherwise. (That is the coefficient of  $(-1)^k x^k / k!$  in the Laguerre polynomial  $L_n^{(z)}(x)$  of p. 50.) Then  $\mu^{(-1)}(n, k)=(-1)^{n-k} \binom{z+n}{n-k}$ . [Hint: Straightforward verification, or the method of GF, p. 144.] (2) Let  $\mu(n, k):=\binom{n}{k} k^{n-k}$  for  $1 \leq k \leq n$  and  $:=0$  otherwise. Then  $\mu^{(-1)}(n, k)=(-1)^{n-k} \binom{n-1}{k-1} n^{n-k}$ .

[Hint: [8b], p. 148. See also Exercise 43, p. 91] (3) Let  $f(t)=\sum_{m \geq 0} a_m t^m$ . We put  $\mu(n, k):=a_{n-k}$  for  $0 \leq k \leq n$  and  $:=0$  otherwise. Then  $\mu^{(\alpha)}(n, k)=b_{n-k}$  for  $0 \leq k \leq n$  and  $:=0$  otherwise, where the  $b_m$  are defined by  $f^\alpha(t)=\sum_{m \geq 0} b_m t^m$ .

**23. 'Inversion' of some polynomials.**  $B_n(x)$ ,  $P_n(x)$  and  $H_n(x)$  denote the Bernoulli ([14a] p. 48), the Legendre ([141] p. 50), and the Hermite

([14n] p. 50) polynomials, respectively. Show that:

$$\begin{aligned}x^n &= \sum_k \binom{n}{k} (n-k+1)^{-1} B_k(x) \\x^n &= n! 2^{-n} \sum_{0 \leq k \leq n/2} (2n-4k+1) \{k! \langle \frac{3}{2} \rangle_{n-k}\}^{-1} P_{n-2k}(x) \\x^n &= n! 2^{-n} \sum_{0 \leq k \leq n/2} \{k! (n-2k)!\}^{-1} H_{n-2k}(x).\end{aligned}$$

It is somewhat more difficult to invert the Gegenbauer and Laguerre polynomials of p. 50. [Hint: Lagrange formula.]

**24.** *Coverings of a finite set.* A covering  $\mathcal{R}$  of  $N$ ,  $|N|=n$ , is an unordered system of blocks of  $N$ ,  $\mathcal{R} \subset \mathfrak{P}'(\mathfrak{P}'(N))$ , whose union equals  $N$ :  $\bigcup_{B \in \mathcal{R}} B = N$ . The number  $r_n$  of coverings of  $N$  equals  $\sum_k (-1)^k \times \binom{n}{k} 2^{2^{n-k}-1}$ ,  $r_1=1$ ,  $r_2=5$ ,  $r_3=109$ ,  $r_4=32297$ ,  $r_5=2147321017$ . [Hint:  $|\mathfrak{P}'(\mathfrak{P}'(N))|=2^{2^n-1}-1=\sum_k \binom{n}{k} r_k$ , and [6a, e], p. 143.] Also compute the number  $r_{n,m}$  of coverings with  $m$  blocks,  $|\mathcal{R}|=m$ , and the number  $r_n^{(b)}$  of coverings with  $b$ -blocks ( $B \in \mathcal{R} \Rightarrow |B|=b$ ). ([Comtet, 1966]. See also Exercise 40, p. 303.)

**25.** *Regular chains* ([Schröder, 1870]). Let  $a$  be an integer  $\geq 2$ , and  $N$  a finite set,  $|N|=n$ . We ‘chain’ now  $a$  elements of  $N$  together in a  $a$ -block  $A_1$  ( $\subset N$ ). Let  $N_1$  be the set, whose  $(n-a+1)$  elements are the  $(n-a)$  elements of  $N \setminus A_1$  and the block  $A_1$ . Then we chain again  $a$  elements of  $N_1$  together into a block  $A_2$ , from which we obtain a new set  $N_2$ , etc. We want now to compute the total number of such chains, called regular chains, *not taking the order of the chaining into account*. Show first that:

$$c_n = \frac{1}{a!} \sum_{\substack{k_1+k_2+\dots+k_a=n \\ k_1, k_2, \dots, k_a \geq 1}} \frac{n!}{k_1! k_2! \dots k_a!} c_1 c_2 \dots c_a,$$

where  $c_0:=0$ ,  $c_1=1$ ,  $c_2=c_3=\dots=c_{a-1}=0$ ,  $c_a=1$ . [Hint: Consider the  $a$ -blocks in existence just before the last chaining operation, in the case they are of size  $k_1, k_2, \dots, k_a$ .] Obtain from this  $\mathbb{C}=\mathbb{C}(t):=$

$:= \sum_{n \geq 0} c_n t^n / n! = t + \mathfrak{C}^a / a!$ , and also obtain the value of  $c_n$  by applying the inversion formula of Lagrange.

**26. The number of connected graphs** ([Ridell, Uhlenbeck, 1953], [Gilbert, 1956b]). A *connected* graph over  $N$ ,  $|N|=n$ , is a graph such that any two of its points are connected by at least one path (Definition B, p. 62). Let  $\tau(n, k)$  be the total number of graphs with  $n$  nodes and  $k$  edges, and  $\gamma(n, k)$  the number of those among them that are connected. Clearly,

$$\tau(n, k) = \binom{\binom{n}{2}}{k}. \text{ The } \textit{connected component } C(y) \text{ of a vertex } y \in N \text{ is}$$

the set of all  $z \in N$  ‘connected’ to  $y$  by at least one path. Now we choose  $x \in N$ , and let  $M := N \setminus \{x\}$ . Giving a graph on  $N$  is equivalent to giving the trace  $V$  of  $C(x)$  on  $M$  ( $C(x) = \{x\} + V$ ), and to giving, moreover, a graph on  $M \setminus V$ ; show that:

$$\tau(n, k) = \sum_{v, w \geq 0} \binom{n-1}{v} \gamma(v+1, w) \tau(n-1-v, k-w).$$

Deduce from this:

$$\sum_{n, k \geq 0} \gamma(n, k) \frac{t^n}{n!} u^k = \log \left\{ 1 + \sum_{m \geq 1} (1+u)^{\binom{m}{2}} \frac{t^m}{m!} \right\}.$$

More generally, let  $\tau_{\mathcal{P}}(n, k)$  be the number of graphs with  $n$  vertices and  $k$  edges such that each connected component has the property  $\mathcal{P}$ , and let  $\gamma_{\mathcal{P}}(n, k)$  be the number of those among them that, moreover, are connected. Then:

$$\sum_{n, k \geq 0} \gamma_{\mathcal{P}}(n, k) \frac{t^n}{n!} u^k = \log \left\{ 1 + \sum_{l, m} \tau_{\mathcal{P}}(m, l) u^l \frac{t^m}{m!} \right\}.$$

**27. Generating functions and computation of integrals** ([Comtet, 1967]).

(1) Let  $J_m := \int_0^{\pi/2} (A^2 \cos^2 \varphi + B^2 \sin^2 \varphi)^{-m} d\varphi$ . Then  $\sum_{m \geq 1} J_m t^m = t \int_0^{\pi/2} (A^2 \cos^2 \varphi + B^2 \sin^2 \varphi - t)^{-1} d\varphi = (\pi t/2) \{(A^2 - t)(B^2 - t)\}^{-1/2}$ .

By expanding this last function into a power series, deduce that  $J_{m+1} = \pi \{2^{m+1} AB \cdot m!\}^{-1} \sum_{s=0}^m a_{m,s} A^{-2s} B^{-2m+2s}$ , where the coefficients  $a_{m,s} = \sum_{k=0}^s \binom{s}{k} \binom{2m-2k}{s} \binom{2m-2k-s}{m-k}$  satisfy the recurrence relation  $a_{m+2,s} = (2m+3)(a_{m+1,s-1} + a_{m+1,s}) - 4(m+1)^2 a_{m,s-1}$ . The first few values of the  $a_{m,s}$  are:

$s \setminus m$	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0	1	1	3	15	105	945	10395	135135	2027025	34459425
1		1	2	9	60	525	5670	72765	1081080	18243225
2			3	9	54	450	4725	59535	873180	14594580
3				15	60	450	4500	55125	793800	13097700
4					105	525	4725	55125	771750	12502350

(2) Compute

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \{(x^2 + a^2)(x^2 + b^2)\}^{-m} dx \quad \text{and} \quad \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left\{ \prod_{i=1}^r (x^2 + a_i^2) \right\}^{-m} dx$$

(3) Compute  $A_n := \int_0^{\pi/2} (\log \sin^\alpha \varphi \cos^\beta \varphi)^n d\varphi$ , where  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are  $\geq 0$  ([Chaudhuri, 1967]). [Hint:

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n \geq 0} A_n \frac{t^n}{n!} &= \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{\alpha t} \varphi \cdot \cos^{\beta t} \varphi \cdot d\varphi = \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \frac{\Gamma((1+\alpha t)/2) \Gamma((1+\beta t)/2)}{\Gamma(1+(\alpha+\beta)t/2)}. \end{aligned}$$

(4) Compute  $I(p, q) = \int_0^{\infty} (\log x)^p (1+x^2)^{-q} dx$ , where  $p$  and  $q$  are positive integers. [Hint:  $\sum_{p \geq 0, q \geq 1} I(p, q) u^q t^p / p! = t \int_0^{\infty} x^t (1+x^2-u)^{-1} dx$ , to be associated with the well-known result  $\int_0^{\infty} x^{\alpha-1} (x+1)^{-1} dx = \pi(\sin \pi \alpha)^{-1}$ .]

28. *A multiple series.* Let  $S$  be the convergent series of order  $k$  defined by  $\sum \{c_1 c_2 \dots c_k (c_1 + c_2 + \dots + c_k)\}^{-1}$ , where the summation is taken over all systems of integers  $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_k$  which are all  $\geq 1$  and relatively prime. Then  $S = k!$  (AMM 73 (1966) 1025).

29. *Expansion of  $(\arcsin t)^r$ .* Use the Cauchy formulas:

$$\begin{aligned} \sin ux &= u \sum_{n \geq 0} (-1)^n (u^2 - 1^2)(u^2 - 3^2) \dots \\ &\quad \dots (u^2 - (2n-1)^2) \frac{\sin^{2n+1} x}{(2n+1)!} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \cos ux &= \sum_{n \geq 0} (-1)^n u^2 (u^2 - 2^2)(u^2 - 4^2) \dots \\ &\quad \dots (u^2 - (2n-2)^2) \frac{\sin^{2n} x}{(2n)!}. \end{aligned}$$

where  $x = \arcsin t$  has to be substituted ([Teixeira, 1896]). Use the same formulas to prove:

$$\frac{\sin ux}{\cos x} = u \sum_{n \geq 0} (-1)^n (u^2 - 2^2) \dots (u^2 - (2n)^2) \frac{\sin^{2n+1} x}{(2n+1)!}.$$

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\cos ux}{\cos x} &= \sum_{n \geq 0} (-1)^n (u^2 - 1^2) (u^2 - 3^2) \dots \\ &\quad \dots (u^2 - (2n-1)^2) \frac{\sin^{2n} x}{(2n)!}. \end{aligned}$$

### 30. Some summation formulas and interesting combinatorial identities.

$$\sum_{k=0}^n \frac{k}{(k+1)!} = 1 - \frac{1}{(n+1)!};$$

$$\sum_{0 \leq k \leq n/2} (-1)^k \binom{n-k}{k} 2^{n-2k} = n+1;$$

$$\sum_{k=0}^n k \binom{n}{k}^2 = (2n-1) \binom{2n-2}{n-1} \quad (\text{see Exercise 12, p. 225});$$

$$\sum_{k=0}^n (-1)^k \binom{n}{k}^2 \binom{2n}{k}^{-1} = \binom{2n}{n}^{-1};$$

$$\sum_{k=1}^n (-1)^{k+1} k^{-1} \binom{n}{k} = \sum_{l=1}^n l^{-1};$$

$$\sum_{i=0}^k (-1)^i \binom{k}{i} \binom{n+i}{k} = (-1)^k;$$

$$\sum_{1 \leq m \leq M, 1 \leq n \leq N} \min(m, n) = \frac{1}{6}N(N+1)(3M-N+1);$$

$$\sum_{1 \leq m \leq M, 1 \leq n \leq N} \max(m, n) = \frac{1}{6}N(N^2-1) + \frac{1}{2}MN(M+1);$$

$$\sum_{k=1}^n k \cdot k! = (n+1)! - 1, \text{ and its generalization (of Gould):}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{x}{k}^p \left( \frac{k!}{x^{k+1}} \right)^p \{(x-k)^p - x^p\} &= \\ &= \binom{x}{n+1}^p \left( \frac{(n+1)!}{x^{n+1}} \right)^p - 1; \end{aligned}$$

$$\sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k}^2 x^k = \sum_{l=0}^n \binom{n}{l} \binom{2n-l}{n} (x-1)^l;$$

$$\sum_{i=0}^k \binom{x}{i} \binom{-x}{n-i} = \frac{n-k}{n} \binom{x-1}{k} \binom{-x}{n-k},$$

$$\sum_{i=0}^k \binom{x}{i} \binom{1-x}{n-i} = \frac{(n-1)(1-x)-k}{n(n-1)} \binom{x-1}{k} \binom{-x}{n-k-1},$$

([Andersen, 1953]). Finally, all the  $\xi_1, \xi_2, \xi_3, \dots$  being  $\neq 0$ , let us write

$$\binom{x}{j}_\xi := \frac{x(x-\xi_1)(x-\xi_2)\cdots(x-\xi_{j-1})}{\xi_1\xi_2\cdots\xi_j}, \quad \binom{x}{0}_\xi := 1.$$

Then, we have (see [5h], p. 10):

$$\sum_{j=0}^k (-1)^j \binom{x}{j}_\xi = (-1)^k \frac{\xi_{k+1}}{x} \binom{x}{k+1}_\xi.$$

The reader will find in [\*Gould, 1972] plenty of very fine results and sources concerning binomial identities.

**31. Sum of the  $r$ -th powers of the terms of an arithmetic progression.**  
 Let  $S_r := \sum_{k=1}^n \{a + (k-1)b\}^r$ . By a method analogous to that used on p. 154, find the value of  $S_r$  as a function of the Bernoulli numbers. One can also establish the recurrence relation  $(a+nb)^{r+1} = a^{r+1} + \sum_{l=1}^{r+1} \binom{r+1}{l} b^l S_{r+1-l}$ , where  $S_0 := n$ . [Hint: Consider  $\sum_{k=1}^n (a+kb)^{r+1}$  and expand then  $(a+kb)^{r+1} = \{b + (a + (k-1)b)\}^{r+1}$  using the binomial identity.] As examples, for  $t_k := 1^k + 3^k + 5^k + \cdots + (2n-1)^k$ , we find:  $t_1 = n^2$ ,  $t_2 = \binom{2n+1}{3}$ ,  $t_3 = n^2(2n^2 - 1)$ .

**32. Four trigonometric summation formulas** ([Hofmann, 1959]). For  $r$  integer  $\geq 1$ , we have:

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{k=1}^n \sin^{2r} kx &= 2^{-2r-1} \left\{ (2n+1) \binom{2r}{r} + \right. \\ &\quad \left. + 2 \sum_{k=1}^r (-1)^k \binom{2r}{r-k} \frac{\sin[k(2n+1)x]}{\sin kx} \right\}; \\ \sum_{k=1}^n \sin^{2r+1} kx &= 2^{-2r} \sum_{k=0}^r (-1)^k \left\{ \binom{2r+1}{r-k} \times \right. \\ &\quad \left. \times \frac{\sin(2k+1)(n+1)x/2 \cdot \sin(2k+1)nx/2}{\sin(2k+1)x/2} \right\}; \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{k=1}^n \cos^{2r} kx &= -\frac{1}{2} + 2^{-2r-1} \left\{ (2n+1) \binom{2r}{r} + \right. \\ &\quad \left. + 2 \sum_{k=1}^r \binom{2r}{r-k} \frac{\sin[k(2n+1)x]}{\sin kx} \right\}; \\ \sum_{k=1}^n \cos^{2r+1} kx &= -\frac{1}{2} + 2^{-2r-1} \sum_{k=0}^r \left\{ \binom{2r+1}{r-k} \times \right. \\ &\quad \left. \times \frac{\sin(2k+1)(2n+1)x/2}{\sin(2k+1)x/2} \right\}.\end{aligned}$$

**33.** *On the roots of  $ax = \operatorname{tg} x$ .* For computing the root  $x$  which lies between  $n\pi$  and  $(n+1)\pi$ , insert  $x = n\pi + \pi/2 - u$ ,  $|u| < \pi/2$ , in  $ax = \operatorname{tg} x$ . Then,  $t := (\pi(n+\frac{1}{2}))^{-1} = (\operatorname{tg} u)(1+au \operatorname{tg} u)^{-1} := f(u)$ , which can be (formally) inverted by the Lagrange formula:  $u = f'^{-1}(t)$ . Returning to  $x$ , the following purely asymptotic expansion holds:

$$x \approx (n + \frac{1}{2})\pi - \sum_{m \geq 0} \frac{t^{2m+1}}{(2m+1)!!} \left\{ \sum_{k=0}^m (-1)^{m-k} C(m, k) a^k \right\},$$

where the  $C(m, k)$ , closely related to arctangent numbers (p. 260), satisfy:

$$C(m, k) = \frac{(2m-1) 2m (2m+1)}{(2m-k) (2m-k+1)} \cdot \{C(m-1, k-1) + C(m-1, k)\}.$$

Here is a table of the  $C(m, k)$ :

$m \setminus k$	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
0	1							
1		1	3					
2			3	20	30			
3				15	161	525	525	
4					105	1584	8232	17640
5						945	18579	134970
6							10395	253812
7								2395364

Of course, when  $a=1$ ,  $x=\operatorname{tg} x$ , the alternating horizontal sums extend Euler's result:  $x = (n + \frac{1}{2})\pi - \sum_{m \geq 0} c_m t^{2m+1}/(2m+1)!!$ , where  $t = (\pi(n+\frac{1}{2}))^{-1}$  and

$m$	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
$c_m$	1	2	13	146	2343	48984	1263202 $\frac{1}{2}$	38881018

( $C_m$ ,  $m \leq 4$ , due to [\*Euler, 1746 II, p. 322]).

34. About the (purely) formal series  $\varphi(t) = \sum_{n \geq 1} n! t^n$ . Let us define the integers  $A(n, k)$  by  $(\varphi(t))^k = \sum_{n \geq k} A(n, k) t^n$ . (1) These numbers satisfy the following recurrence:  $A(n, k) = A(n-1, k-1) + ((n+k-1)/k) \times A(n-1, k)$ . [Hint: Use  $t^2 \varphi' = (1-t) \varphi - t$ .] (2) \*Also find a triangular recurrence for the  $a(n, k)$  defined by  $(\varphi^{(-1)}(t))^k = \sum_{n \geq k} a(n, k) t^n$ , and verify the following tables (of course,  $a = A^{-1}$ ):

		$A(n, k)$							
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
$n \backslash k$	1								
1	1								
2	2	1							
3	6	4	1						
4	24	16	6	1					
5	120	72	30	8	1				
6	720	372	152	48	10	1			
7	5040	2208	828	272	70	12	1		
8	40320	14976	4968	1576	440	96	14	1	

		$a(n, k)$							
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
$n \backslash k$	1								
1	1								
2	-2	1							
3	2	-4	1						
4	-4	8	-6	1					
5	-4	-16	18	-8	1				
6	-48	12	-44	32	-10	1			
7	-336	-96	72	-96	50	-12	1		
8	-2928	-480	-216	216	-180	72	-14	1	

(3) Prove that  $\Delta^j A(k, k+j) = \Delta^j |a(k, k+j)| = 2^j$  (see also Exercises 14 p. 261, 15 and 16 p. 294).

35. Fermat matrices. Let  $\mathbf{F}_n$  be the  $n$ -th section of the Fermat matrix  $\mathbf{F}$  composed of the binomial coefficients  $(a, b) = \binom{a+b}{a}$ , in the symmetric

notation of p. 8,  $0 \leq a, b \leq n$ . So:

$$\mathbf{F}_0 = (1), \quad \mathbf{F}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{F}_3 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 3 & 6 \end{pmatrix},$$

$$\mathbf{F}_4 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 1 & 3 & 6 & 10 \\ 1 & 4 & 10 & 20 \end{pmatrix}, \dots$$

Prove that  $\mathbf{F} = \mathbf{P} \cdot \mathbf{P}$ , where  $\mathbf{P}$  is the Pascal matrix (p. 143) and  $\mathbf{P}'$  its transpose. (2) So,  $\det(\mathbf{F}_n) = 1$  (cf. Exercise 46, p. 92) and all coefficients of  $\mathbf{F}_n^{-1}$  are integers:  $f_n(i, j) = (-1)^{i+j} \sum_{l \leq n} \binom{l}{i} \binom{l}{j}$ . (3) The unsigned coefficients  $C_n(i, j) := |f_n(i, j)|$  satisfy:  $C_n(i, j) = C_{n-1}(i-1, j-1) + C_{n-1}(i-1, j) + C_{n-1}(i, j-1) + C_{n-1}(i, j)$ , with  $C_n(i, j) := 0$  if  $i < 0$  or  $j < 0$ , except  $C_n(-1, -1) := 1$ .

$$\mathbf{C}_0 = (1), \quad \mathbf{C}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{C}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 3 & 1 \\ 3 & 5 & 2 \\ 1 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix},$$

$$\mathbf{C}_3 = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 6 & 4 & 1 \\ 6 & 14 & 11 & 3 \\ 4 & 11 & 10 & 3 \\ 1 & 3 & 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{C}_4 = \begin{pmatrix} 5 & 10 & 10 & 5 & 1 \\ 10 & 30 & 35 & 19 & 4 \\ 10 & 35 & 46 & 27 & 6 \\ 5 & 19 & 27 & 17 & 4 \\ 1 & 4 & 6 & 4 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \dots$$

(4)  $C_n(k, 0) = C_n(0, k) = \binom{n+1}{k+1}$ ,  $C_n(k, 1) = \binom{n+1}{k+1} ((k+1)(n+1)-1)/(k+2)$ , ..., and  $\sum_{i,j} C_n(i, j) = (4^{n+1}-1)/3$ .

**\*36.** *Simple and double summations.* Prove the equality ([Carlitz, 1968a]):

$$\sum_{i+j+k=n} \binom{i+j}{i} \binom{j+k}{j} \binom{k+i}{k} = \sum_{0 \leq l \leq n} \binom{2l}{l}.$$

**37.** *Two multiple summations.* (1) The summation  $\sum (x_1 x_2 \dots x_l)^{-1}$ , taken over all systems of integers  $x_i \geq 1$ ,  $i \in [l]$  such that  $x_1 + x_2 + \dots + x_l = n$ , equals  $(l!/n!) s(n, l)$ , where  $s(n, l)$  is the Stirling number of the first kind, [5d] (p. 213). (2) The summation  $\sum (x_1^n + x_2^n + \dots + x_l^n) := a_{l,n}(p)$ ,

taken over all systems of integers  $x_i \geq 0$ , such that  $x_1 + x_2 + \dots + x_l = p$ , equals  $\sum_{k=1}^n k! S(n, k) \binom{l+p-1}{p-k}$ , where  $S(n, k)$  is the Stirling number of the second kind, [14s] (p. 51). [Hint: Consider  $\sum_{p \geq 0} a_{l,n}(p) t^p$ .]

**38.** *The formula of Li Jen-Shu* (see, for instance, [Kaucky, 1964]).

$$\sum_{0 \leq j \leq k} \binom{k}{j}^2 \binom{n+2k-j}{2k} = \binom{n+k}{k}^2.$$

**39.** *A formula of Riordan* ([Riordan, 1962a], [Gould, 1963a]).

$$\sum_{0 \leq k \leq n-1} \binom{n-1}{k} n^{n-1-k} (k+1)! = n^n.$$

**40.** *A formula of Gould.* If we put  $A_k(a, b) := a(a+bk)^{-1} \binom{a+bk}{k}$ , then we have:

$$\sum_{0 \leq k \leq n} A_k(a, b) A_{n-k}(a', b) = A_n(a+a', b).$$

([Gould, Kaucky, 1966], and for a ‘combinatorial’ proof, [Blackwell, Dubins, 1966]. We already met similar numbers in [9b], p. 24.)

**\*41.** *The ‘Master Theorem’ of MacMahon.* The  $a_{r,s}$ ,  $r, s \in [n]$  being constants (complex, for instance), let us consider the  $n$  linear forms:

$$X_r := \sum_{s=1}^n a_{r,s} x_s, \quad r \in [n]$$

The ‘Master Theorem’ asserts that the coefficient of the monomial  $x_1^{m_1} x_2^{m_2} \dots x_n^{m_n}$  (where  $m_1, m_2, \dots, m_n$  are integers  $\geq 0$ ) in the polynomial  $X_1^{m_1} X_2^{m_2} \dots X_n^{m_n}$  is equal to the coefficient of the same monomial in  $D^{-1}$ , where  $D$  is the determinant:

$$D := \begin{vmatrix} 1 - a_{11}x_1 & -a_{12}x_1 & \dots & -a_{1n}x_1 \\ -a_{21}x_2 & 1 - a_{22}x_2 & \dots & -a_{2n}x_2 \\ \vdots & & & \\ -a_{n1}x_n & -a_{n2}x_n & \dots & 1 - a_{nn}x_n \end{vmatrix}.$$

In other words, if the identity matrix is denoted  $I$ , if  $A$  is  $[[a_{r,s}]]_{r,s \in [n]}$ , if the *column* matrix of the  $x_i$ ,  $i \in [n]$ , is  $X$ , if the *diagonal* matrix

of the  $x_i$  is  $\hat{X}$ , then we have (with the notation [8a], p. 148):

$$\mathcal{C}_{x_1^{m_1} x_2^{m_2} \dots x_n^{m_n}} \prod_{i=1}^n (AX)_i^{m_i} = \mathcal{C}_{x_1^{m_1} x_2^{m_2} \dots x_n^{m_n}} \{\det(I - \hat{X}A)\}^{-1}.$$

([\*MacMahon, I, 1915], p. 93. See [Foata, 1964, 1965], [\*Cartier, Foata, 1969], pp. 54–60, for a noncommutative generalization, [Good, 1962], from whom we borrow the proof, and [Wilf, 1968b].) [Hint: Put  $Y_r = 1 + X_r$ , then the required coefficient is equal to the coefficient of  $x_1^{m_1} \dots x_n^{m_n}$  in  $Y_1^{m_1} \dots Y_n^{m_n}$ , hence, by the Cauchy theorem:

$$(2\pi i)^{-n} \int \int \dots \int \frac{Y_1^{m_1} \dots Y_n^{m_n}}{x_1^{m_1+1} \dots x_n^{m_n+1}} dx_1 \dots dx_n,$$

where the integration contours are circles around the origin. Then perform the change of variable  $w_r := x_r / Y_r$ ,  $r \in [n]$ , whose Jacobian causes  $D$  to appear.]

**42. Dixon formula.** This famous identity can be stated as follows:

$$\sum_{s=0}^{2m} (-1)^s \binom{2m}{s}^3 = (-1)^m \frac{(3m)!}{(m!)^3}.$$

This is a special case ( $a=b=c=m$ ) of:

$$S := \sum_s (-1)^s \binom{b+c}{b+s} \binom{c+a}{c+s} \binom{a+b}{a+s} = \frac{(a+b+c)!}{a! b! c!}.$$

[Hint: Observe that  $S = (-1)^{a+b+c} \mathcal{C}_{x^{a+b+c} y^{c+a} z^{a+b}} (y-z)^{b+c} (z-x)^{c+a} \times (x-y)^{a+b}$ , and apply then the ‘Master Theorem’ of Exercise 41.] ([Dixon, 1891]. See also [\*De Bruijn, 1961], p. 72, [\*Cartier, Foata, 1969], [Good, 1962], [Gould, 1959], [Kolberg 1957], [Nanjundiah, 1958], [Toscano, 1963].)

**43. A beautiful identity concerning the exponential.** Show that:

$$\exp \left\{ \sum_{m \geq 1} m^{m-1} \frac{t^m}{m!} \right\} = 1 + \sum_{n \geq 1} (n+1)^{n-1} \frac{t^n}{n!}.$$

**44. The number of terms in the derivatives of implicit functions** ([Comtet,

1974]). The number  $a(n)$  of different monomials  $Af_{i_1, j_1}^{a_1} f_{i_2, j_2}^{a_2} \dots$  in the expression of  $y_n = \varphi^{(n)}(x)$ , where  $f(x, y) = 0$  (see p. 153) is such that

$$a(n) = \sum_{t^n u^{n-1}} \prod_{(i, j) \in E} \frac{1}{1 - t^i u^j},$$

with  $E := \mathbb{N}^2 \setminus \{(0, 0), (0, 1)\}$ . The first values of  $a(n)$  are:

$n$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
$a(n)$	1	3	9	24	61	145	333	732	1565	3247	6583	13047	25379	48477	91159

**45.** Some expansions related to the derivatives of the gamma function. In the sequel, we write  $\gamma = 0.577\dots$  for the Euler constant,  $\zeta(s) = \sum_{n \geq 1} n^{-s}$  (see Exercise 36, p. 88),  $\zeta(s, a) = \sum_{m \geq 0} (a+m)^{-s}$ ,  $x_k = (-1)^k (k-1)! \zeta(k)$ , and  $y_n$  for the Bell polynomial, [3c] p. 134. (1) We have:

$$t\Gamma(t) = \Gamma(1+t) = \exp \{-\gamma t + \zeta(2)t^2/2 - \zeta(3)t^3/3 + \dots\}.$$

Consequently,

$$\Gamma^{(n)}(1) = y_n(-\gamma, x_2, x_3, \dots) = \int_0^\infty e^{-x} \cdot \log^n x \cdot dx$$

(2) Hence,

$$\frac{1}{\Gamma(t)} = \sum_{n \geq 0} \frac{t^{n+1}}{n!} y_n(\gamma, -x_2, -x_3, \dots)$$

(3) Find similar expansions for  $\Gamma(a+t)$  using  $\zeta(s, a)$ .

## CHAPTER IV

### SIEVE FORMULAS

This chapter solves the following problem: let be given a system  $(A_1, A_2, \dots, A_p)$  of  $p$  subsets of a set  $N$ , whose mutual relations are somehow known, compute the cardinal of each subset of  $N$  that can be formed by taking intersections and unions of the given subsets or their complements.

In the sequel, we will denote the intersection of  $A$  and  $B$  by  $AB$  as well as by  $A \cap B$ , similarly the complement of  $A$  by  $\bar{A}$  of  $\complement A$ . Each subset of  $[p] := \{1, 2, \dots, p\}$  will be denoted by a lower case Greek letter.

#### 4.1. NUMBER OF ELEMENTS OF A UNION OR INTERSECTION

We want to generalize the following formula:

$$[1a] \quad |A \cup B| = |A| + |B| - |AB|, \quad AB := A \cap B,$$

where  $A, B$  are subsets of  $N$ , and that follows (notations [10a], p. 25, and [10d], p. 28) from:

$$\begin{aligned} A \cup B &= A + (B - AB) \Rightarrow |A \cup B| = |A| + |B - AB| = \\ &= |A| + |B| - |AB|. \end{aligned}$$

The interpretation of [1a] in Figure 33 is intuitively clear.

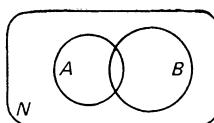


Fig. 33.

**THEOREM A** (*Sieve formula, or inclusion-exclusion principle*). *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be a  $p$ -system of  $N$ , in other words a sequence of  $p$  subsets  $A_1, A_2, \dots, A_p$  of*

$N$ , among which some may be empty or coinciding with each other. Then:

$$[1b] \quad |A_1 \cup A_2 \cup \dots \cup A_p| = \sum_{1 \leq i \leq p} |A_i| - \sum_{1 \leq i_1 < i_2 \leq p} |A_{i_1} A_{i_2}| + \sum_{1 \leq i_1 < i_2 < i_3 \leq p} |A_{i_1} A_{i_2} A_{i_3}| - \dots + (-1)^{p-1} |A_1 A_2 \dots A_p|.$$

(Formula [1b] is also known as formula of [Da Silva, 1854], [Sylvester, 1883]; it holds whether  $N$  is finite or not.)

First, we indicate two other ways, [1d, f], to write [1b]:

(1) Using Exercise 9 (p. 158) for (\*) and introducing

$$[1c] \quad S_k := \sum_{1 \leq i_1 < i_2 < \dots < i_k \leq p} |A_{i_1} A_{i_2} \dots A_{i_k}| := \sum^{(p)} |A_1 A_2 \dots A_k|,$$

formula [1b] becomes:

$$[1d] \quad |A_1 \cup A_2 \cup \dots \cup A_p| = \sum_{1 \leq k \leq p} (-1)^{k-1} S_k = S_1 - S_2 + S_3 - \dots + (-1)^{p-1} S_p.$$

(2) Let  $\varkappa$  be a subset of  $[p] := \{1, 2, \dots, p\}$ ,  $\varkappa \subset [p]$ . We introduce the following notations:

$$[1e] \quad A_\varkappa := \bigcap_{i \in \varkappa} A_i, \quad A_\emptyset = \bigcap_{i \in \emptyset} A_i = N, \quad \bigcup_{i \in \emptyset} A_i = \emptyset.$$

Formula [1b] becomes (with  $\mathfrak{P}'[p] := \mathfrak{P}'([p])$  = the set of blocks = the set of nonempty subsets of  $[p]$ ):

$$[1f] \quad |A_1 \cup A_2 \cup \dots \cup A_p| = \sum_{\varkappa \in \mathfrak{P}'[p]} (-1)^{|\varkappa|-1} |A_\varkappa|.$$

■ We argue by induction on  $p$ . Because of [1a] for equality (\*), we get:

$$[1g] \quad \begin{aligned} |\bigcup_{1 \leq i \leq p+1} A_i| &= |A_{p+1} \cup (\bigcup_{1 \leq i \leq p} A_i)| \\ &\stackrel{(*)}{=} |A_{p+1}| + |\bigcup_{1 \leq i \leq p} A_i| - |\bigcup_{1 \leq i \leq p} (A_{p+1} A_i)|, \end{aligned}$$

where, if [1f] is supposed to hold, we have (using the notation  $\mathfrak{P}_{\geq 2}[p] := \{\varkappa \mid \varkappa \subset [p], |\varkappa| \geq 2\}$ ):

$$[1h] \quad |\bigcup_{1 \leq i \leq p} A_i| = \sum_{1 \leq i \leq p} |A_i| + \sum_{\varkappa \in \mathfrak{P}_{\geq 2}[p]} (-1)^{|\varkappa|-1} |A_\varkappa|$$

$$[1i] \quad |\bigcup_{1 \leq i \leq p} (A_{p+1} A_i)| = \sum_{\{p+1\} \in \mathfrak{P}_{\geq 2[p]}} (-1)^{|\mathfrak{P}| - 1} |A_{\mathfrak{P}}|.$$

Substituting [1h, i] into [1g] gives then:

$$\begin{aligned} |\bigcup_{i=1}^{p+1} A_i| &= \sum_{i=1}^{p+1} |A_i| + \sum_{\mathfrak{P} \in \mathfrak{P}_{\geq 2[p+1]}} (-1)^{|\mathfrak{P}| - 1} |A_{\mathfrak{P}}| = \\ &= \sum_{\mathfrak{P} \in \mathfrak{P}_{\geq 2[p+1]}} (-1)^{|\mathfrak{P}| - 1} |A_{\mathfrak{P}}|. \quad \blacksquare \end{aligned}$$

**THEOREM B.** *Conditions and notations as in Theorem A; for  $S_0 := |N|$ ,  $N$  being finite, we have:*

$$\begin{aligned} [1j] \quad |\bar{A}_1 \bar{A}_2 \dots \bar{A}_p| &= \sum_{\mathfrak{P} \in \mathfrak{P}_{\geq 2[p]}} (-1)^{|\mathfrak{P}|} |A_{\mathfrak{P}}| = \\ &= \sum_{0 \leq k \leq p} (-1)^k S_k = S_0 - S_1 + \dots + (-1)^p S_p. \end{aligned}$$

■ Follows from  $|\bar{A}_1 \bar{A}_2 \dots| = |\mathcal{C}(A_1 \cup A_2 \cup \dots)| = |N| - |A_1 \cup A_2 \cup \dots|$  and from [1d, f]. ■

### ■ Two examples

(1) *The ‘sieve of Eratosthenes’.* Let  $p_1 (= 2)$ ,  $p_2 (= 3)$ ,  $p_3 (= 5), \dots$ , be the increasing sequence of prime numbers, and let  $\pi(x)$  stand for the number of prime numbers that are  $\leq x$ , for  $x$  real  $> 0$ . Let  $A_i$  be the set of the multiples of  $p_i$  that belong to  $N := \{2, 3, \dots, n\}$ . If  $q \in \bar{A}_1 \bar{A}_2 \dots \bar{A}_k$ , where  $k := \pi(\sqrt{n})$ , then this means that each prime factor of  $q$  is larger than  $p_k$ ; hence  $q$  is a prime number such that  $\sqrt{n} < q \leq n$ . Thus  $|\bar{A}_1 \bar{A}_2 \dots \bar{A}_k| = \pi(n) - \pi(\sqrt{n})$ . On the other hand, for  $1 \leq i_1 < i_2 < \dots < i_l \leq k$ , the fact that  $r$  belongs to  $A_{i_1} A_{i_2} \dots A_{i_l}$  means that  $r (\leq n)$  is a multiple of  $p_{i_1} p_{i_2} \dots p_{i_l}$ ; hence  $|A_{i_1} A_{i_2} \dots A_{i_l}| = E(n/(p_{i_1} p_{i_2} \dots p_{i_l}))$ , where  $E(x)$  means the largest integer  $\leq x$ , called the *integral part* of  $x$ , and also denoted by  $[x]$ . So we obtain as result, by [1j] (and with  $|N| = n - 1$ ):

$$\begin{aligned} [1k] \quad \pi(n) - \pi(\sqrt{n}) &= (n - 1) - \sum_{1 \leq i \leq k} E\left(\frac{n}{p_i}\right) + \\ &\quad + \sum_{1 \leq i_1 < i_2 \leq k} E\left(\frac{n}{p_{i_1} p_{i_2}}\right) - \dots + (-1)^k E\left(\frac{n}{p_1 p_2 \dots p_k}\right). \end{aligned}$$

This formula allows us to compute theoretically  $\pi(n)$  if we know all prime numbers  $\leq \sqrt{n}$ .

(2) *Chromatic Polynomials.* Let  $\mathcal{G} \subset \mathfrak{P}_2[n]$  be a graph on the set (of nodes)  $[n] = \{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ , and let  $\lambda$  be an integer  $\geq 0$ . The *chromatic polynomial* of  $\mathcal{G}$  is the number  $P_{\mathcal{G}}(\lambda)$  of ways to colour the nodes in  $\lambda$  (or fewer) colors such that two adjacent nodes have different colours. Indeed, any colouring is a map of  $[n]$  into  $[\lambda]$ , say  $f \in [\lambda]^{[n]}$ , such that  $\{i, j\} \in \mathcal{G} \Rightarrow f(i) \neq f(j)$ . For instance, if  $\mathcal{G} = \{\{1, 2\}, \{2, 3\}, \{3, 4\}, \dots, \{n-1, n\}\}$ , we find  $P_{\mathcal{G}}(\lambda) = \lambda(\lambda-1)^{n-1}$  by successively choosing the colours of the nodes  $\{1\}, \{2\}, \{3\}, \dots$ . In the same manner, if  $\mathcal{G} = \mathfrak{P}_2[n]$ , we find  $P_{\mathcal{G}}(\lambda) = (\lambda)_n = \lambda(\lambda-1)\dots(\lambda-n+1)$ . Evidently,  $P_{\mathcal{G}}(0) = P_{\mathcal{G}}(1) = 0$ . Let us prove that  $P_{\mathcal{G}}(\lambda)$  is always a *polynomial* in  $\lambda$ . For each edge  $E_i \in \mathcal{G}$ ,  $1 \leq i \leq g := |\mathcal{G}| \leq \binom{n}{2}$ , let  $A_i \subset [\lambda]^{[n]}$  be the set of colourings which give the same colour to the two nodes of  $E_i$ . Then, with  $[1j]$ ,  $P_{\mathcal{G}}(\lambda) = |\bar{A}_1 \bar{A}_2 \dots \bar{A}_g| = \lambda^n - (|A_1| + |A_2| + |A_3| + \dots) + (|A_1 A_2| + |A_1 A_3| + |A_2 A_3| + \dots) - \dots$ . Now,  $|A_1| = |A_2| = \dots = \lambda^{n-1}$ ,  $|A_1 A_2| = |A_1 A_3| = \dots = \lambda^{n-2}$ , and any other  $|A_{i_1} A_{i_2} \dots A_{i_k}|$ ,  $k \geq 3$ , is a polynomial in  $\lambda$  with degree  $\leq n-2$ , as can be seen easily. Consequently,  $P_{\mathcal{G}}(\lambda) = \lambda^n - g\lambda^{n-1} + a_2\lambda^{n-2} - a_3\lambda^{n-3} + \dots + (-1)^{n-1}a_{n-1}\lambda$ , where the  $a_i$  are integers, which all can be proven to be  $> 0$ .

The following pretty results are worth-while: (I) if the graph  $\mathcal{G}$  has connected components  $\mathcal{G}_1, \mathcal{G}_2, \dots$ , then  $P_{\mathcal{G}} = P_{\mathcal{G}_1} \dots$ . (II)  $\mathcal{G}$  is a tree if and only if  $P_{\mathcal{G}}(\lambda) = \lambda(\lambda-1)^{n-1}$ . (III) If  $\mathcal{G}$  is a polygon (i.e. circuit), then  $P_{\mathcal{G}}(\lambda) = (\lambda-1)^n + (-1)^n(\lambda-1)$ . (IV) If  $\mathcal{G}$  is the complete bipartite graph with parts  $M$  and  $N$  (i.e.  $\{x, y\} \in \mathcal{G} \Leftrightarrow x \in M, y \in N$ ), then  $P_{\mathcal{G}}(\lambda) = \sum_{k,l} S(m, k) S(n, l) (\lambda)_{k+l}$  (see p. 204). (V) If  $\mathcal{G}$  is connected, then  $P_{\mathcal{G}}(\lambda) \leq \lambda(\lambda-1)^{n-1}$  for every integer  $\lambda \geq 0$ . (VI) The smallest number  $r$  such that  $\lambda^r$  has a nonzero coefficient in  $P_{\mathcal{G}}(\lambda)$  is the number of components of  $\mathcal{G}$ . (See, for instance, the introductory survey of [Read, 1968].) Finally, let us mention as still unsolved problems : (I) the characterization of chromatic polynomials; (II) the unimodality (p. 269) of the coefficients  $1, g, a_2, a_3, a_4, \dots$ ; (III) the condition for two graphs to have the same chromatic polynomial.

**DEFINITION.** A system  $(A_1, A_2, \dots, A_p)$  of subsets of  $N$  is called *interchangeable* if and only if the cardinality of any intersection of  $k$

arbitrary subsets among them depends only on  $k$ , for all  $k \in [p]$ .

**THEOREM C.** Let be given an interchangeable system of subsets of  $N$ , say  $(A_1, A_2, \dots, A_p)$ ; then we have:

$$\begin{aligned} [1l] \quad |A_1 \cup A_2 \cup \dots \cup A_p| &= p|A_1| - \binom{p}{2}|A_1A_2| + \\ &\quad + \binom{p}{3}|A_1A_2A_3| - \dots \\ &= \sum_{1 \leq k \leq p} (-1)^{k-1} \binom{p}{k} |A_{[k]}| \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} [1m] \quad |\bar{A}_1\bar{A}_2\dots\bar{A}_p| &= |N| - \binom{p}{1}|A_1| + \binom{p}{2}|A_1A_2| - \dots \\ &= \sum_{0 \leq k \leq p} (-1)^k \binom{p}{k} |A_{[k]}|. \end{aligned}$$

This is an immediate consequence of the definition of interchangeable systems and of [1b, j].

#### 4.2. THE ‘PROBLÈME DES RENCONTRES’

**DEFINITION.** A permutation (Definition B, p. 7)  $\sigma$  of  $N$ ,  $|N|=n$ , is called a derangement, if it does not have a fixed point, or rencontre, or coincidence, in the sense that for all  $x \in N$ ,  $\sigma(x) \neq x$ .

For example, the permutation  $\sigma_1 := \begin{pmatrix} abcde \\ cedab \end{pmatrix}$  does not have a coincidence, while  $\sigma_2 := \begin{pmatrix} abcde \\ dbace \end{pmatrix}$  has 2. The famous ‘problème des rencontres’ ([\*Montmort, 1708]) consists of computing the number  $d(n)$  of derangements of  $N$ ,  $n=|N|$ .

**THEOREM A.** The number  $d(n)$  of derangements of  $N$ ,  $n=|N|$ , equals:

$$\begin{aligned} [2a] \quad d(n) &= \sum_{0 \leq k \leq n} (-1)^k \frac{n!}{k!} \\ &= n! \left( 1 - \frac{1}{1!} + \frac{1}{2!} - \dots + \frac{(-1)^n}{n!} \right) \end{aligned}$$

or also, for  $n \geq 1$ , the integer closest to  $n!e^{-1}$ :

$$[2a'] \quad d(n) = \|n! e^{-1}\|$$

(Because of [2a], Chrystal has suggested the name  $n$  antifactorial for  $d(n)$ , and the notation  $n!$ ).

■ If we identify  $N$  with  $[n] := \{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ , we denote the set of permutations of  $[n]$  by  $\mathfrak{S}[n]$ , and the subset of  $\mathfrak{S}[n]$  consisting of permutations  $\sigma$  such that  $\sigma(i) = i$ ,  $i \in [n]$ , by  $\mathfrak{S}_i = \mathfrak{S}_i[n]$ , and the set of derangements of  $[n]$  by  $\mathfrak{D}[n]$ . Clearly  $\mathfrak{S}[n] = \mathfrak{D}[n] + \bigcup_{i=1}^n \mathfrak{S}_i$ . Hence, by Theorem B (p. 7), for (\*):

$$[2b] \quad n! \stackrel{(*)}{=} |\mathfrak{S}[n]| = d(n) + \left| \bigcup_{1 \leq i \leq n} \mathfrak{S}_i \right|.$$

Now the  $\mathfrak{S}_1, \mathfrak{S}_2, \dots, \mathfrak{S}_n$  are interchangeable (Definition p. 179), since giving a  $\sigma \in \mathfrak{S}_{i_1} \mathfrak{S}_{i_2} \dots \mathfrak{S}_{i_k}$  is equivalent to giving one of the permutations of  $[n] - \{i_1, i_2, \dots, i_k\}$ , whose total number is  $(n-k)!$  ( $i_1 < i_2 < \dots < i_k$ ). Thus, [2a] follows from [11] applied to  $|\bigcup_{k=0}^n \mathfrak{S}_i|$  in [2b]. Finally, for [2a'], use in (\*) the well-known inequality that relates the rest of an alternating series to the first neglected term:

$$\begin{aligned} \|n! e^{-1} - d(n)\| &= n! \left| \sum_{q=n+1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^q}{q!} \right| \stackrel{(*)}{<} \\ &< n! \frac{1}{(n+1)!} = \frac{1}{n+1} \leq \frac{1}{2}. \quad \blacksquare \end{aligned}$$

In particular, [2a] shows that  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \{d(n)/n!\} = 1/e$ . The way the number  $e$  intrudes here into a combinatorial problem has strongly appealed to the imagination of the geometers of the 18-th century. In more colourful terms, if the guests to a party leave their hats on hooks in the cloakroom, and grab at good luck a hat when leaving, then the probability that nobody gets back his own hat is (approximately)  $1/e$ .

Another method of computing  $d(n)$  consists of observing that the set  $\mathfrak{S}_K[n]$  of permutations of  $[n]$  for which  $K (\subset [n])$  is the set of fixed points, has for cardinality  $d(n - |K|)$ . So:

$$\mathfrak{S}[n] = \sum_{K \subset [n]} \mathfrak{S}_K[n] = \sum_{k=0}^n \left( \sum_{|K|=k} \mathfrak{S}_K[n] \right).$$

Hence  $n! = |\mathfrak{S}[n]| = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} d(n-k) = \sum_{h=0}^n \binom{n}{h} d(h)$ , from which [2a] follows by the inversion formula [6a, e] (p. 143).

**THEOREM B.** *The number  $d(n)$  of derangements of  $[n]$  has for generating function:*

$$[2c] \quad \mathcal{D}(t) := \sum_{n \geq 0} d(n) \frac{t^n}{n!} = e^{-t} (1-t)^{-1}.$$

■ In fact, using [2a] for (\*) and  $h=n-k$  for (\*\*):

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n \geq 0} d(n) \frac{t^n}{n!} &\stackrel{(*)}{=} \sum_{n \geq 0} t^n \left( \sum_{0 \leq k \leq n} \frac{(-1)^k}{k!} \right) \\ &\stackrel{(**)}{=} \sum_{h, k \geq 0} (-1)^k \frac{t^{h+k}}{k!} = \left( \sum_{h \geq 0} t^h \right) \left( \sum_{k \geq 0} \frac{(-t)^k}{k!} \right). \quad \blacksquare \end{aligned}$$

**THEOREM C.** *The number  $d(n)$  of derangements of  $[n]$  satisfies the following recurrence relations:*

$$[2d] \quad d(n+1) = (n+1) d(n) + (-1)^{n+1};$$

$$[2d'] \quad d(n+1) = n \{d(n) + d(n-1)\}.$$

■ Taking the derivative of  $e^{-t} = (1-t)\mathcal{D}$ , we get  $-e^{-t} \stackrel{(*)}{=} -\mathcal{D} + (1-t)\mathcal{D}' \stackrel{(**)}{=} -(1-t)\mathcal{D}$ , and then we equate coefficients in (\*) to obtain [2d], and in (\*\*) to obtain [2d'] (combinatorial proofs are also easy to find!).

$n$	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
$d(n)$	1	0	1	2	9	44	265	1854	14833	133496	1334961	14684570	176214841

We discuss now a natural generalization of the ‘problème des rencontres’. A  $(k \times n)$ -latin rectangle will be any rectangular matrix with  $k$  rows and  $n$  columns consisting of integers  $\in [n]$ , and such that all integers occurring in any one given row or column are all different ( $k \leq n$ ). We suppose that the first row is  $\{1, 2, 3, \dots, n\}$  in this order (and we say that the rectangle is *reduced* then). We give an example of a  $(3 \times 5)$  latin rectangle:

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 3 & 1 & 4 & 5 & 2 \\ 5 & 3 & 1 & 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix}.$$

The number  $K_n$  of (reduced latin)  $(3 \times n)$ -rectangles satisfies several recurrence relations (see, for instance, [Jacob, 1930], [Kerawala, 1941], [\*Riordan, 1958], p. 204) and today there are asymptotic expansions known for it ([\*Riordan, 1958], p. 209). The first values are (taken from tables of Kerawala,  $n \leq 15$ ):

$n$	3	4	5	6	7	8
$K_n$	2	24	552	21280	1073760	70299264

No known recurrence relations exist for the number  $L(n, k)$  of  $(k \times n)$ -rectangles,  $k \geq 4$ , but a nice asymptotic formula is known ([Erdős, Kaplansky, 1946], [Kerawala, 1947a], [Yamamoto, 1951]):  $L(n, k) \sim (n!)^k \exp\left(-\binom{k}{2}\right)$ , for  $k < n^{1/3-\varepsilon}$  and  $\varepsilon > 0$  arbitrary. As far as the number of latin  $n$ -squares ( $n \times n$ -rectangles) is concerned, only the first 8 values are known precisely; if  $I_n$  stands for the number of *normalized* latin squares (first row and column consist of  $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ , in this order) then we have:

$n$	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
$I_n$	1	1	4	56	9408	16942080	535281401856

( $I_7$  being due to [Norton, 1939], [Sade, 1948b, 1951] and  $I_8$  to [Wells, 1967], [J. W. Brown, 1968]). Estimates for  $I_n$  when  $n \rightarrow \infty$  seems to be an extremely difficult combinatorial problem.

#### 4.3. THE ‘PROBLÈME DES MÉNAGES’

This is the following problem: *What is the number of possible ways one can arrange  $n$  married couples (=ménages) around a table such that men and women alternate, but no woman sits next to her husband.* (Posed, solved and popularized by [\*Lucas, 1891]. See also [Cayley, 1878a, b]; [Moser, 1967] gives an interesting generalization.)

We suppose the wives already placed around the table ( $2 \cdot n!$  pos-

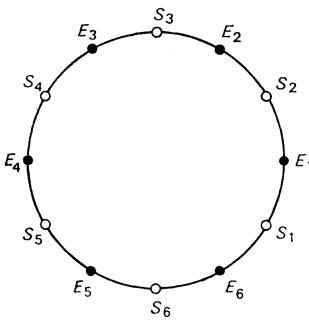


Fig. 34.

sibilities). We number them  $1, 2, \dots, n$  in the ordinary (counterclockwise) direction, starting from one of them:  $E_1, E_2, \dots, E_n$  (Figure 34,  $n=6$ ). We assign to every husband the number of his wife:  $M_1, M_2, \dots, M_n$ , and to every empty seat the number of the wife to the right:  $S_1, S_2, \dots, S_n$ . The problem consists of counting the number of possible admissible assignments of seats to husbands. Such an assignment is tantamount to giving a permutation  $\sigma$  of  $[n] = \{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ , where  $\sigma(i)$  stands for the seat number assigned to husband  $M_i$ ,  $i \in [n]$ . This number should satisfy:

$$[3a] \quad \begin{aligned} \sigma(i) &\neq i, & \sigma(i) &\neq i+1 \quad \text{for } i \in [n-1], \\ && \sigma(n) &\neq n, & \sigma(n) &\neq 1. \end{aligned}$$

Let  $\mu(n)$  be the number of permutations such that [3a] holds; this is usually called the '*reduced number of ménages*'. The *total* number  $\mu^*(n)$  of placements of *ménages* is hence equal to  $2 \cdot n! \mu(n)$ , if we take into account the  $2 \cdot n!$  possibilities of arranging the wives. We concentrate now on computing  $\mu(n)$ . The main idea consists of connecting this problem with the theorem on p. 24. To carry this out, we put:

$$[3b] \quad \begin{aligned} A_{2i-1} &:= \{\sigma \mid \sigma(i) = i\}, & i \in [n]; \\ A_{2i} &:= \{\sigma \mid \sigma(i) = i+1\}, & i \in [n-1]; \\ A_{2n} &:= \{\sigma \mid \sigma(n) = 1\}. \end{aligned}$$

Clearly, by [3a, b] for (\*), and [1j] (p. 178), for (\*\*):

$$[3c] \quad \mu(n) \stackrel{(*)}{=} |\bigcap_{1 \leq i \leq 2n} A_i| \stackrel{(**)}{=} \sum_{\beta \subset [2n]} (-1)^{|\beta|} |A_\beta|.$$

Now,  $|A_\beta| := |\bigcap_{i \in \beta} A_i|$  is evidently equal to 0 if  $\beta$  contains two con-

secutive elements of the ‘circle’  $(1, 2, 3, \dots, 2n, 1)$ . In the opposite case,  $|A_\beta|$  equals  $(n - |\beta|)!$  and, according to the Theorem on p. 24, such  $\beta$  happen  $g_1(2n, k)$  times; hence:

$$\mu(n) = \sum_{k=0}^n (-1)^k (n-k)! g_1(2n, k).$$

Finally, we obtain:

**THEOREM.** *The number  $\mu(n)$  of reduced solutions to the ‘ménages’ problem, defined above, equals:*

$$[3d] \quad \mu(n) = \sum_{0 \leq k \leq n} (-1)^k \frac{2n}{2n-k} \binom{2n-k}{k} (n-k)!.$$

This beautiful formula (due to [Touchard, 1953]) is perhaps not the best for the actual computation of the  $\mu(n)$ : several recurrence relations for more efficient computations are known. (See [\*Riordan, 1958], pp. 195–201, [Carlitz, 1952a, 1954a], [Gilbert, 1956a], [Kaplansky, Riordan, 1946], [Kerawala, 1947b], [Riordan, 1952a], [Schöbe, 1943, 1961], [Touchard, 1943].) The first values of  $\mu(n)$  (taken from the tables of [Moser, Wyman, 1958a],  $n \leq 65$ ), are:

$n$	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
$\mu(n)$	0	1	2	13	80	579	4738	43387

$n$	10	11	12	13	14
$\mu(n)$	439792	4890741	59216642	775596313	10927434464

#### 4.4. BOOLEAN ALGEBRA GENERATED BY A SYSTEM OF SUBSETS

Let  $\mathcal{A} := (A_1, A_2, \dots, A_p)$  be a system of subsets of a set  $N$ ,  $A_i \subset N$ ,  $i \in [p]$ , among which there may be identical or empty subsets.

**DEFINITION A.** *The Boolean algebra (of subsets) generated by  $\mathcal{A}$ , denoted by  $b(\mathcal{A})$ , is the set of subsets of  $\mathcal{A}$  that can be obtained by means of a finite number of the set operations: union, intersection and complementation. Each of the elements of  $b(\mathcal{A})$  will be called Boolean function generated by  $\mathcal{A}$ .*

It can be immediately verified that, for the operations  $\cap$ ,  $\cup$  and

$W \rightarrow \mathcal{C} W$ ,  $\mathbf{b}(\mathcal{A})$  is actually a Boolean algebra in the sense of p. 2. The following are two examples of Boolean functions generated by  $(A_1, A_2, A_3)$  (we recall that the notation  $ST$  means  $S \cap T$ ):

$$[4a] \quad f_1 = (A_1 A_2) \cup \bar{A}_3, \quad f_2 = A_1 \cup \overline{(A_1 \cup A_2) A_3}.$$

As for polynomials, it is sometimes very interesting to interpret any Boolean function  $f \in \mathbf{b}(\mathcal{A})$  as a *purely formal expression* of the ‘variables’  $(A_1, A_2, \dots, A_p)$  and to introduce an equivalence relation on the set of these expressions by putting  $f \sim g$  when  $g$  can be obtained from  $f$  by the rules of computation in any Boolean algebra (see p. 2). For example,  $f := \bigcup A_i \cup \bigcup A_i \sim g := \bigcup (A_1 \cap A_2)$  is true, but  $f := A_1 A_2 \sim g := A_1 \cup A_2$  is not true.

**DEFINITION B.** *The complete products of  $\mathcal{A}$  are the  $2^p$  Boolean functions of the form (see notation [1e], p. 177):*

$$[4b] \quad A_{\kappa} \bar{A}_{\bar{\kappa}} = (\bigcap_{i \in \kappa} A_i) \cap (\bigcap_{j \in \bar{\kappa}} \bar{A}_j), \quad \text{where } \kappa \subset [p].$$

*The set of complete products is called  $\mathbf{d}(\mathcal{A})$ .*

For instance, the 8 complete products of  $\mathcal{A} = (A_1, A_2, A_3)$  are:

$$[4c] \quad \begin{aligned} & A_1 A_2 A_3, \quad A_1 A_2 \bar{A}_3, \quad A_1 \bar{A}_2 A_3, \quad \bar{A}_1 A_2 A_3, \\ & A_1 \bar{A}_2 \bar{A}_3, \quad \bar{A}_1 A_2 \bar{A}_3, \quad \bar{A}_1 \bar{A}_2 A_3, \quad \bar{A}_1 \bar{A}_2 \bar{A}_3. \end{aligned}$$

**DEFINITION C.** *The conjunctions of  $\mathcal{A}$  are the  $2^p$  Boolean functions of the form:*

$$[4d] \quad A_{\lambda} := \bigcap_{i \in \lambda} A_i, \quad \text{where } \lambda \subset [p].$$

*The set of conjunctions can be denoted by  $\mathbf{c}(\mathcal{A})$ .*

For instance, the 8 conjunctions of  $\mathcal{A} = (A_1, A_2, A_3)$  are  $N, A_1, A_2, A_3, A_1 A_2, A_2 A_3, A_3 A_1, A_1 A_2 A_3$ .

**THEOREM A.** *Each Boolean function has a unique representation as a union of complete products (up to order). Hence (with the notation  $\sum$  of [10a] of p. 25 for the disjoint union):*

$$[4e] \quad \forall f \in \mathbf{b}(\mathcal{A}), \quad \exists ! \mathcal{M} \subset \mathbf{d}(\mathcal{A}) \text{ such that } f = \sum_{M \in \mathcal{M}} M.$$

We say in this case that  $f$  is put in the canonical disjunctive form.

From this theorem it follows that there are  $2^{2^p}$  different (non equivalent) Boolean functions in  $b(\mathcal{A})$ . We give a sketch of proof of the theorem.

■ (1) The proposition is evidently true for all  $A_i \in \mathcal{A}$ , because  $A_i = \sum_{i \in \mathbb{Z} \subset [p]} A_x \bar{A}_{\bar{x}}$ .

(2) If  $f, g \in b(\mathcal{A})$  are brought into the canonical disjunctive form, then  $f \cup g$  can be brought into canonical form too, because for  $f = \bigcup_{B \in \mathcal{M}} B$ ,  $g = \bigcup_{C \in \mathcal{N}} C$ , where  $\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{N} \subset d(\mathcal{A})$ , we have  $f \cup g = \bigcup_{D \in \mathcal{M} \cup \mathcal{N}} D$ .

(3) Similarly, for

$$f \cap g = \left( \bigcup_{B \in \mathcal{M}} B \right) \cap \left( \bigcup_{C \in \mathcal{N}} C \right) \stackrel{(*)}{=} \bigcup_{B \in \mathcal{M}, C \in \mathcal{N}} (BC) = \bigcup_{D \in \mathcal{M} \cap \mathcal{N}} D,$$

by means of [1g] (p. 3), for (\*).

(4) Finally, for the passage to the complement, we have:

$$f' = \complement \left( \bigcup_{B \in \mathcal{M}} B \right) \stackrel{(**)}{=} \bigcap_{B \in \mathcal{M}} \bar{B} = \bigcup_{C \in b(\mathcal{A}) - \mathcal{M}} C,$$

with [1e] (p. 3), for (\*\*).

(1), (2), (3), (4) make it hence possible to reduce any  $f \in b(\mathcal{A})$  step by step. ■

By way of example, we show the reduction of the functions [4a]:

$$\begin{aligned} f_1 &= A_1 A_2 \cup \bar{A}_3 = (A_1 A_2 A_3 \cup A_1 A_2 \bar{A}_3) \cup \\ &\quad \cup (A_1 A_2 \bar{A}_3 \cup \bar{A}_1 A_2 \bar{A}_3 \cup A_1 \bar{A}_2 \bar{A}_3 \cup \bar{A}_1 \bar{A}_2 \bar{A}_3) \\ &= A_1 A_2 A_3 \cup A_1 A_2 \bar{A}_3 \cup \bar{A}_1 A_2 \bar{A}_3 \cup A_1 \bar{A}_2 \bar{A}_3 \cup \bar{A}_1 \bar{A}_2 \bar{A}_3 \\ &= A_1 A_2 A_3 + A_1 A_2 \bar{A}_3 + \bar{A}_1 \bar{A}_2 \bar{A}_3 \\ f_2 &= A_1 \cup \overline{(A_1 \cup A_2) A_3} = A_1 \cup \{(A_1 \cup A_2) \cup \bar{A}_3\} \\ &= A_1 \cup A_2 \cup \bar{A}_3 = \complement(\bar{A}_1 \bar{A}_2 A_3) = A_1 A_2 A_3 + \bar{A}_1 A_2 A_3 + \\ &\quad + A_1 \bar{A}_2 A_3 + A_1 A_2 \bar{A}_3 + \bar{A}_1 A_2 \bar{A}_3 + A_1 \bar{A}_2 \bar{A}_3 + \bar{A}_1 \bar{A}_2 \bar{A}_3. \end{aligned}$$

We have already met, on pp. 25 and 28, in the set  $\mathfrak{P}(N)$  of subsets of  $N$ , the operations  $+$  and  $-$ , whose definition we recall now. For  $A, B, C, D \subset N$ , we put:

$$[4f] \quad C = A + B \Leftrightarrow C = A \cup B, \quad A \cap B = \emptyset$$

$$[4g] \quad D = A - B \Leftrightarrow A = B + D \Leftrightarrow D = A \setminus B, B \subset A.$$

It follows then for the cardinalities:

$$[4h] \quad |A + B| = |A| + |B|, \quad |A - B| = |A| - |B|$$

and for the rules of computation:

- [4i] (I)  $(A + B) + C = A + (B + C)$ .
- (II)  $A + B = B + A$ .
- (III)  $A + \emptyset = \emptyset + A = A$ .
- (IV)  $A + \bar{A} = N$ .
- (V)  $A(B + C) = AB + AC$ .
- (VI)  $A - \emptyset = A$ .
- (VII)  $A(B - C) = AB - AC$ .
- (VIII)  $A - (B - C) = (A - B) + C$  (provided the two pairs of brackets make sense according to [4g]).

**THEOREM B.** *The cardinal number  $|f|$  of every Boolean function  $f \in b(\mathcal{A})$  can be expressed as a linear combination with integer coefficients  $\leq 0$ , of the cardinals of the conjunctions of  $\mathcal{A}$ :*

$$[4j] \quad \forall f \in b(\mathcal{A}), \quad \exists \{l_1, l_2, \dots, l_r\} \subset \mathbb{Z}, \\ \exists \{C_1, C_2, \dots, C_r\} \subset c(\mathcal{A}), \quad |f| = \sum_{1 \leq i \leq r} l_i |C_i|.$$

■ According to [4e], it suffices to prove [4j] for each complete product  $M$ , because  $|f| = \sum_{M \in \mathcal{A}} |M|$ ; this fact is proved in the following theorem. ■

**THEOREM C.** *Let  $B \in b(\mathcal{A})$  be a subset of  $N$  which is the intersection of some  $A_i$  and  $\bar{A}_j$ :*

$$[4k] \quad B = (\bigcap_{i \in \lambda} A_i) \cdot (\bigcap_{j \in \mu} \bar{A}_j), \quad \text{where } \lambda + \mu \subset [p].$$

*Then, the cardinal  $|B|$  can be computed by performing successively the following operations:*

- (1) Replace in [4k] the  $\bar{A}_j$  by  $1 - A_j$ .
- (2) Expand the new form, thus obtained, of [4k] into a polynomial in the variables  $A_i, A_j, i \in \lambda, j \in \mu$ , the  $\cap$  being considered as product operation.

(3) Replace every monomial by its cardinal number and replace the monomial 1 (if it occurs) by  $n (=|N|)$ .

We illustrate this rule by computing the cardinal of  $P\bar{Q}\bar{R}$ :

$$\begin{aligned} P\bar{Q}\bar{R} &\xrightarrow{(1)} P(1-Q)(1-R) \xrightarrow{(2)} P - PQ - PR + PQR \rightarrow \\ &\xrightarrow{(3)} |P| - |PQ| - |PR| + |PQR| = |P\bar{Q}\bar{R}|. \end{aligned}$$

■ We use  $|VW| = |V| - |V\bar{W}|$ ; this formula is evident. Then we put  $V := \bigcap_{i \in \lambda} A_i$  and  $W := \bigcap_{j \in \mu} \bar{A}_j$ . Then  $|B| = |VW| = |V| - |V(\bigcup_{j \in \mu} A_j)| = |V| - |\bigcup_{j \in \mu} VA_j|$ . In other words, by [1b]:

$$|B| = |V| - \sum_{j \in \mu} |VA_j| + \sum_{\{j_1, j_2\} \in \mathfrak{P}_2(\mu)} |VA_{j_1}A_{j_2}| - \text{etc. } ■$$

So, in example [4a],  $f_1 = (A_1A_2A_3 \cup A_1A_2\bar{A}_3) \cup \bar{A}_3 = A_1A_2A_3 + \bar{A}_3$ , hence  $|f_1| = n - |A_3| + |A_1A_2A_3|$ . Similarly,  $\bar{f}_2 = \bar{A}_1 \{ (\overline{A_1 \cup A_2}) A_3 \} = \bar{A}_1 \{ (\bar{A}_1\bar{A}_2) A_3 \} = \bar{A}_1\bar{A}_2A_3$ ; hence, with the example  $P\bar{Q}\bar{R}$  above,  $|\bar{f}_2| = |A_3| - |A_1A_3| - |A_2A_3| + |A_1A_2A_3|$ , or  $|f_2| = n - |A_3| + |A_1A_3| + |A_2A_3| - |A_1A_2A_3|$ . (On this section see also [\*Loève, 1963], p. 44.)

#### 4.5. THE METHOD OF RÉNYI FOR LINEAR INEQUALITIES

**DEFINITION A.** Let  $f$  be a (set) function mapping a certain Boolean algebra of subsets of  $N$ , say  $\mathcal{B}$ , onto a set of real numbers  $\geq 0$ ,  $f \in [0, \infty)^{\mathcal{B}}$ . We say that  $f$  is a measure on  $(N, \mathcal{B})$ , and we denote  $f \in \mathcal{M} = \mathcal{M}(N, \mathcal{B})$  if and only if  $f$  is additive, in the sense that for each pair  $(B_1, B_2)$  of disjoint subsets of  $N$  ( $\Leftrightarrow B_1 + B_2 \subset N$ ), belonging to  $\mathcal{B}$ , we have:

$$[5a] \quad f(B_1 + B_2) = f(B_1) + f(B_2).$$

The triple  $(N, \mathcal{B}, f)$  is then called a measure space.

(So  $\mathcal{B}$  is a system of subsets of  $N$ , containing  $\emptyset$  and  $N$ , and closed under the operations of complementation, finite union and finite intersection, [1d], p. 2.)

Hence, for each measure  $f$ , we have  $f(\emptyset) = 0$ , and for all pairwise disjoint  $B_1, B_2, \dots, B_l \in \mathcal{B}$ :

$$[5b] \quad f\left(\sum_{i=1}^l B_i\right) = \sum_{i=1}^l f(B_i).$$

**DEFINITION B.** *The measure space  $(N, \mathcal{B}, f)$  is said to be a probability space, if  $f(N)=1$ . In this case  $f$  is called a probability measure, or probability, and will often be denoted by  $P$ . Each set  $B \in \mathcal{B}$  is called an event.  $N$  is the certain event, mostly denoted  $\Omega$ . Each point  $\omega \in \Omega$  is called a sample.*

**DEFINITION C.** *An atom of the Boolean algebra  $b(\mathcal{A})$  generated by  $\mathcal{A} = (A_1, A_2, \dots, A_p)$  (Definition A, p. 185) is a nonempty complete product (Definition B, p. 186). We denote the set of atoms of  $b(\mathcal{A})$  by  $a(\mathcal{A})$ .*

**THEOREM A.** *A probability measure  $f$  on  $a(\mathcal{A})$  is completely determined by the values ( $\geq 0$ ) of  $f$  on each atom  $C \in a(\mathcal{A})$  (the set of values of  $f$  on the atoms is only subject to the restriction  $\sum_{C \in a(\mathcal{A})} f(C) = 1$ ).*

■ This follows from the fact that  $a(\mathcal{A})$  is a partition of  $N$ , and that every subset  $B \in b(\mathcal{A})$  is a union of disjoint atoms (Theorem A, p. 186). ■

**THEOREM B.** *Let  $\mathcal{A} = (A_1, A_2, \dots, A_p)$  be a system of subsets of  $N$ ,  $A_i \subset N$ ,  $i \in [p]$ , and let  $\mathfrak{M}$  be the set of measures on the Boolean algebra  $b(\mathcal{A})$  generated by  $\mathcal{A}$ . Let  $\mathfrak{M}^*$  be the subset of  $\mathfrak{M}$  consisting of the measures  $g$  which are zero on all atoms  $C$  of  $a(\mathcal{A})$  except one,  $C_0$ , called supporting atom, for which  $g(C_0) = 1$ . Here,  $C_0$  runs through  $a(\mathcal{A})$ . Then for every sequence of  $l$  real numbers say  $(b_1, b_2, \dots, b_l)$ , and every sequence of  $l$  subsets taken from  $b(\mathcal{A})$ , say  $(B_1, B_2, \dots, B_l)$ , the following conditions [5c] and [5d] are equivalent:*

$$[5c] \quad \text{For all } f \in \mathfrak{M}, \quad \sum_{1 \leq k \leq l} b_k f(B_k) \geq 0.$$

$$[5d] \quad \text{For all } g \in \mathfrak{M}^*, \quad \sum_{1 \leq k \leq l} b_k g(B_k) \geq 0.$$

([Rényi, 1958] and [\*], 1966], pp. 30–33. See also [Galambos, 1966]. For a generalization to certain quadratic and cubic, etc., inequalities, see [Galambos, Rényi, 1968].)

■ The fact that [5c] implies [5d] follows from the fact that  $\mathfrak{M}^* \subset \mathfrak{M}$ . Conversely, let  $g \in \mathfrak{M}^*$ , so there exists a  $C_0 \in a(\mathcal{A})$  such that:

$$[5e] \quad g(C_0) = 1, \quad \text{and} \quad g(C) = 0 \quad \text{if} \quad C \in a(\mathcal{A}), \quad C \neq C_0.$$

Now, according to [5d], with  $\alpha := \alpha(\mathcal{A})$  for short, [5b] for (\*), a permutation of the summation order for (\*\*) and [5e] for (\*\*\*):

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &\leq \sum_{1 \leq k \leq l} b_k g(B_k) = \sum_{1 \leq k \leq l} b_k g\left(\sum_{\substack{C \subset B_k \\ (C \in \alpha)}} C\right) \\ &\stackrel{(*)}{=} \sum_{1 \leq k \leq l} b_k \left\{ \sum_{C \subset B_k} g(C) \right\} \\ &\stackrel{(**)}{=} \sum_{C \in \alpha} g(C) \left\{ \sum_{\substack{C \subset B_k \\ 1 \leq k \leq l}} b_k \right\} \stackrel{(***)}{=} \sum_{C_0 \subset B_k} b_k. \end{aligned}$$

Because the measure  $g \in \mathfrak{M}^*$  is arbitrary, it follows that for each atom  $C (= C_0$  from above), we have:

$$[5f] \quad \sum_{C \subset B_k} b_k \geq 0.$$

Let us now consider [5c]. We can compute by the same way, now using [5f] for (\*):

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{1 \leq k \leq l} b_k f(B_k) &= \sum_{1 \leq k \leq l} b_k \left\{ \sum_{\substack{C \subset B_k \\ (C \in \alpha)}} f(C) \right\} \\ &= \sum_{C \in \alpha} f(C) \left\{ \sum_{C \subset B_k} b_k \right\} \stackrel{(*)}{\geq} 0. \quad \blacksquare \end{aligned}$$

**THEOREM C.** *Notations as in Theorem B. The conditions [5c] and [5d] remain equivalent if all ' $\geq 0$ ' signs are simultaneous replaced by ' $\leq 0$ ' or by ' $= 0$ '.*

■ In the first case, replace the sequence  $(b_1, b_2, \dots, b_l)$  of Theorem B by  $(-b_1, -b_2, \dots, -b_l)$ . In the second case, observe that  $x=0 \Leftrightarrow x \geq 0$  and  $x \leq 0$ . ■

Examples of applications of Rényi's method follow now.

#### 4.6. POINCARÉ FORMULA

The method of the preceding section will enable us to show very quickly various equalities and inequalities concerning measures  $f$  associated with a finite system  $(A_1, A_2, \dots, A_l)$  of subsets of  $N$ .

With every measure  $f$  on  $(N, \mathfrak{b}(\mathcal{A}))$  (Definition A, pp. 185 and

189) and every integer  $k \in [p]$  we associate, as in [1c], p. 177 (using the notation [1e], p. 177, for (\*)):

$$\begin{aligned} [6a] \quad S_k &= S_k(\mathcal{A}) = S_k(f, \mathcal{A}) = \sum^{(p)} f(A_1 A_2 \dots A_k) := \\ &:= \sum_{1 \leq i_1 < i_2 < \dots < i_k \leq p} f(A_{i_1} A_{i_2} \dots A_{i_k}) \stackrel{(*)}{=} \sum_{\alpha \in \mathfrak{P}_k[p]} f(A_\alpha) \\ S_0 &:= f(N). \end{aligned}$$

**THEOREM.** *For every measure  $f \in \mathfrak{M}(N, b(\mathcal{A}))$ , where  $\mathcal{A} = (A_1, A_2, \dots, A_p)$ ,  $A_i \subset N$ ,  $i \in [p]$ , the  $S_k$  being defined by [6a], we have:*

$$\begin{aligned} [6b] \quad f(A_1 \cup A_2 \cup \dots \cup A_p) &\stackrel{(o)}{=} \sum_{\alpha \in \mathfrak{P}[p]} (-1)^{|\alpha|-1} f(A_\alpha) = \\ &\stackrel{(oo)}{=} \sum_{1 \leq k \leq p} (-1)^{k-1} S_k \end{aligned}$$

$$[6c] \quad f(\bar{A}_1 \bar{A}_2 \dots \bar{A}_p) = \sum_{\alpha \in \mathfrak{P}[p]} (-1)^{|\alpha|} f(A_\alpha) = \sum_{0 \leq k \leq p} (-1)^k S_k.$$

In the case that  $f$  is a probability, [6b] is often called the ‘Poincaré formula’. If  $f$  stands for the *cardinal*,  $f(B) = |B|$ , we obtain [1b, c, d], p. 177.

■ [6c] follows from the application of [6b] to  $f(\bar{A}_1 \bar{A}_2 \dots) = f(C(A_1 \cup A_2 \cup \dots)) = f(N) - f(A_1 \cup A_2 \cup \dots)$ . Equality [6b(oo)] follows from collecting in the above summation all terms with  $\alpha$ ,  $|\alpha|=k$ . Proving [6b(o)] is equivalent to proving it for all  $g \in \mathfrak{M}^* = \mathfrak{M}^*(N, b(\mathcal{A}))$ , according to Theorem B (p. 190). When  $C_0$  denotes the supporting atom of  $g$ , we let  $\lambda (\subset [p])$  be the set of indices  $i$  such that  $C_0 \subset A_i$  and  $l := |\lambda|$ . If  $\lambda = \emptyset$ , all terms of [6b] are zero. If  $l \geq 1$ , the first member  $g(A_1 \cup A_2 \cup \dots)$  of [6b] equals 1. On the other hand:

$$[6d] \quad g(A_\alpha) = g(\bigcap_{i \in \alpha} A_i) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } \alpha \subset \lambda \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

The second member of [6b] is hence equal to 1, too, since with [6d] for (\*):

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{\alpha \in \mathfrak{P}[p]} (-1)^{|\alpha|-1} g(A_\alpha) &\stackrel{(*)}{=} \sum_{\alpha \in \mathfrak{P}(\lambda)} (-1)^{|\alpha|-1} = \\ &= \sum_{1 \leq k \leq l} (-1)^{k-1} \binom{l}{k} = 1 - (1-1)^l = 1. \quad \blacksquare \end{aligned}$$

*Example: Euler function.* For any integer  $n \geq 1$ , let  $\Phi = \Phi(n)$  be the set of positive integers  $x$  which do not exceed  $n$ , and relatively prime with respect to  $n$ ,  $1 \leq x \leq n$ ,  $\text{GCD}(x, n) = 1$ . The number  $\varphi(n) = |\Phi|$  is called the *Euler function* of  $n$  and we are going to compute it now. Let the decomposition of  $n$  into prime factors be  $n = p_1^{d_1} p_2^{d_2} \dots p_r^{d_r}$  and let  $M_i$  be the set of multiples of  $p_i$  which are smaller than or equal to  $n$ . Clearly,  $\Phi = \bar{M}_1 \bar{M}_2 \dots \bar{M}_r$ . Hence, for each measure  $f$  on  $[n]$ , we get by [6c]:  $f(\Phi) = f([n]) - \sum^{(r)} f(M_1) + \sum^{(r)} f(M_1 M_2) - \dots$ . First we take for  $f$  the cardinal number function. Then  $f([n]) = n$ ,  $f(M) = n/p_i$ ,  $f(M_i M_j) = n/p_i p_j, \dots$ , from which we obtain, after an evident factorization:

$$[6e] \quad \varphi(n) = n \left(1 - \frac{1}{p_1}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{p_2}\right) \dots \left(1 - \frac{1}{p_r}\right).$$

If we had defined  $f$  by  $f(X) = \sum_{x \in X} x$ , where  $X \subset [n]$ , then we would have found  $f(M_i) = p_i + 2p_i + \dots + (n/p_i)p_i = n^2/2p_i + n/2$ ,  $f(M_i M_j) = p_i p_j + 2p_i p_j + \dots + (n/p_i p_j)p_i p_j = n^2/2p_i p_j + n/2, \dots$ ; hence, after simplifications:  $f(\Phi) = \sum_{x \in \Phi} x = (n/2) \varphi(n)$ . Here is a table for  $\varphi(n)$ :

$n$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
$\varphi(n)$	1	1	2	2	4	2	6	4	6	4	10	4	12	6	8

$n$	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28
$\varphi(n)$	8	16	6	18	8	12	10	22	8	20	12	18	12

#### 4.7. BONFERRONI INEQUALITIES

**DEFINITION.** Let  $R$  be an alternating sum of  $a_k \geq 0$ ,  $k \in [r]$ :

$$[7a] \quad R = \sum_{1 \leq p \leq r} (-1)^{p-1} a_p = a_1 - a_2 + \dots + (-1)^{r-1} a_r.$$

We say that [7a] satisfies the alternating inequalities, if and only if  $(-1)^k \{R + \sum_{h=1}^k (-1)^h a_h\} \geq 0$  for all  $k \in [r]$ . In other words:

$$[7b] \quad R \leq a_1, \quad R \geq a_1 - a_2, \quad R \leq a_1 - a_2 + a_3, \dots$$

**THEOREM ([Bonferroni, 1936]).** Let the  $S_k$  be defined by [6a] (p. 192), then for all measures  $f \in \mathfrak{M}(N, b(\mathcal{A}))$ , the sum  $\sum_{k=1}^p (-1)^{k-1} S_k$ , introduced in [6b] (p. 192), satisfies the alternating inequalities. Hence, for each

$k \in [p]$ , we have:

$$[7c] \quad (-1)^k \{f(A_1 \cup A_2 \cup \dots \cup A_p) + \sum_{1 \leq h \leq k} (-1)^h S_h\} \geq 0.$$

Quite similarly, with [6c], we have

$$[7c'] \quad (-1)^{k+1} \{f(\bar{A}_1 \bar{A}_2 \dots \bar{A}_p) + \sum_{0 \leq h \leq k} (-1)^{h+1} S_h\} \geq 0.$$

Particularly, for  $f(W) = |W|$  = the cardinal of  $W$ , we obtain (cf. [1c], p. 177):

$$[7d] \quad |A_1 \cup \dots \cup A_p| \leq \sum_{1 \leq i \leq p} |A_i| \quad (\text{Boole inequality})$$

$$|A_1 \cup \dots \cup A_p| \geq \sum_{1 \leq i \leq p} |A_i| - \sum_{1 \leq i \leq j \leq p} |A_i A_j|, \quad \text{etc.,}$$

and the analogous inequalities in the case that  $f = P$  is a probability.

■ According to Theorem B (p. 190) it suffices to prove [7c] for an arbitrary measure  $g \in \mathfrak{M}^*$ . Let  $\lambda$  have the sense given in the proof of the Theorem, on p. 192, then the first member of [7c] is evidently equal to 0 if  $\lambda = \emptyset$ . Otherwise, we get, with  $l := |\lambda| \geq 1$ , and [6d] (p. 192, where  $\varkappa$  is replaced by  $\eta$ ) for (\*):

$$\begin{aligned} g(A_1 \cup A_2 \cup \dots \cup A_p) + \sum_{1 \leq h \leq k} (-1)^h S_h(g) \\ &= g(A_1 \cup \dots \cup A_p) + \sum_{\eta \in \mathfrak{P}' \leq k^{[p]}} (-1)^{|\eta|} g(A_\eta) \\ &\stackrel{(*)}{=} 1 + \sum_{\eta \in \mathfrak{P}' \leq k^{[\lambda]}} (-1)^{|\eta|} g(A_\eta) \\ &= 1 - \binom{l}{1} + \binom{l}{2} - \dots + (-1)^k \binom{l}{k} := W_k. \end{aligned}$$

Now, by applying the Taylor formula of order  $k$  in  $x=0$  to the function  $(1-x)^l$ ,  $k \leq l-1$ , we get for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $0 < \theta(x) < 1$ :

$$\begin{aligned} [7e] \quad (1-x)^l &= 1 - \binom{l}{1} x + \dots + (-1)^k \binom{l}{k} x^k + \\ &\quad + (-1)^{k+1} \binom{l}{k+1} (1-x\theta(x))^{l-k-1}. \end{aligned}$$

If we put  $x=1$  in [7e], we find  $(-1)^k W_k = \binom{l}{k+1} (1-\theta(1))^{l-k-1} \geq 0$ , in other words, [7c] for all  $g \in \mathfrak{M}^*$ . ■

#### 4.8. FORMULAS OF CH. JORDAN

**THEOREM A** ([Charles Jordan, 1926, 1927, 1934, 1939]). *Let  $N_r(\mathcal{A})$  stand for the set of points of  $N$  that are covered by exactly  $r$  subsets of the system  $\mathcal{A} = (A_1, A_2, \dots, A_p)$ , then we have for every measure  $f \in \mathfrak{M}(N, \mathfrak{b}(\mathcal{A}))$ :*

$$\begin{aligned} [8a] \quad f(N_r(\mathcal{A})) &= \sum_{x \in \mathfrak{P}_{\geq r}[p]} (-1)^{|x|-r} \binom{|x|}{r} f(A_x) \\ &= \sum_{r \leq k \leq p} (-1)^{k-r} \binom{k}{r} S_k, \end{aligned}$$

where the  $S_k$  are defined by [6a]. Moreover, [8a] satisfies the alternating inequalities.

For  $r=0$  we have a formula analogous to [6c] (p. 192).

■ We use Theorem B (p. 190) once more. For all  $g \in \mathfrak{M}^*$ , with supporting atom  $C_0$  contained in the  $A_i$  such that  $i \in \lambda (\subset (p))$ ,  $l := |\lambda|$ , we have evidently:

$$[8b] \quad g(N_r(\mathcal{A})) = 0 \quad \text{if } r \neq l, \quad \text{and} \quad = 1 \quad \text{if } r = l.$$

Now the second member of [8a], with  $f$  replaced by  $g$ , and [6d] (p. 192) for (\*), can be written:

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{x \in \mathfrak{P}_{\geq r}[p]} (-1)^{|x|-r} \binom{|x|}{r} g(A_x) &= \\ \stackrel{(*)}{=} \sum_{x \in \mathfrak{P}_{\geq r}(\lambda)} (-1)^{|x|-r} \binom{|x|}{r} g(A_x) &= \\ = \sum_{r \leq k \leq l} (-1)^{k-r} \binom{k}{r} \binom{l}{k} &= \\ = \binom{l}{r} \sum_k (-1)^{k-r} \binom{l-r}{k-r} &= \binom{l}{r} 0^{l-r}, \end{aligned}$$

which is indeed equal to [8b]. The alternating inequalities for [8a] follow from the fact that they hold for  $\sum_k (-1)^{k-r} \binom{l-r}{k-r}$ , according to [7e] (p. 194). ■ (The interested reader is referred to [\*Fréchet, 1940, 1943], as well as to [Takács, 1967], which has a very extensive bibliography.)

We can prove by a similar method:

**THEOREM B.** *Let  $N_{\geq r}(\mathcal{A})$  stand for the set of points of  $N$  that are covered by at least  $r$  subsets of  $\mathcal{A}$ , then we have:*

$$\begin{aligned} [8c] \quad f(N_{\geq r}(\mathcal{A})) &= \sum_{x \in \mathfrak{P}_{\geq r}[P]} (-1)^{|x|-r} \binom{|x|-1}{r-1} f(A_x) \\ &= \sum_{r \leq k \leq p} (-1)^{k-r} \binom{k-1}{r-1} S_k, \end{aligned}$$

with the alternating inequalities.

#### 4.9. PERMANENTS

**DEFINITION.** *Let  $B := [[b_{i,j}]]_{i \in [m], j \in [n]}$  be a rectangular matrix with  $m$  rows and  $n$  columns,  $m \leq n$ , with coefficients  $b_{ij}$  in a commutative ring  $\Omega$ . The permanent of  $B$ , denoted by  $\text{per } B$ , equals, by definition:*

$$[9a] \quad \text{per } B = \sum_{\alpha \in \mathfrak{A}_m[n]} b_{1,\alpha(1)} b_{2,\alpha(2)} \dots b_{m,\alpha(m)},$$

where the summation is taken over all  $m$ -arrangements of  $[n]$  (p. 6). (For the main properties and an extensive bibliography see [Marcus, Minc, 1965].)

For example,  $\text{per} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 3 & 1 \\ 5 & 0 & 4 \end{pmatrix} = 2.0 + 5.3 + 2.4 + 5.1 + 3.4 + 0.1 = 40$ .

Hence there are  $(n)_m$  terms in the summation [9a]. If  $m=n$ , the terms of  $\text{per}(B)$  are, up to sign, those of  $\det(B)$ , and for the permanent there are properties similar to those of the determinants; however,  $\text{per}(AB) \neq \text{per}(A) \cdot \text{per}(B)$ , in general.

For each matrix  $A := [[a_{i,j}]]_{i \in [p], j \in [q]}, a_{i,j} \in \Omega$ , let  $w(A)$  be the product

of the  $p$  sums of elements of each row of  $A$ :

$$[9b] \quad w(A) = \prod_{i=1}^p \sum_{j=1}^q a_{i,j};$$

and for every subset  $\lambda \subset [q]$  let  $A(\lambda)$  be the matrix obtained by keeping in  $A$  precisely those *columns* whose index *belongs* to  $\lambda$ . For example, if  $A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & 2 & 3 \\ -2 & 4 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$ , then  $w(A) = 9 \times 3 = 27$  and  $A(\{1, 3\}) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ -2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ .

**THEOREM (Ryser formula, [\*Ryser, p. 26]).** *With the above notations, and  $w(B(\emptyset)) = 0$ ,  $\text{per}(B)$  is also equal to:*

$$[9c] \quad \sum_{\lambda \in \mathfrak{P}_m[n]} (-1)^{m-|\lambda|} \binom{n-|\lambda|}{n-m} w(B(\lambda)),$$

that is to say

$$[9d] \quad \sum_{\lambda \in \mathfrak{P}_m[n]} w(B(\lambda)) - \binom{n-m+1}{n-m} \sum_{\lambda \in \mathfrak{P}_{m-1}[n]} w(B(\lambda)) + \dots + (-1)^{m-1} \binom{n-1}{n-m} \sum_{\lambda \in \mathfrak{P}_1[n]} w(B(\lambda)).$$

Particularly, for a square matrix,  $m = n$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} [9e] \quad \text{per } B &= \sum_{\lambda \subset [n]} (-1)^{n-|\lambda|} w(B(\lambda)) = \\ &= \sum_{l \in [n]} (-1)^{n-l} \sum_{\lambda \in \mathfrak{P}_l[n]} w(B(\lambda)). \end{aligned}$$

■ We use [8a], p. 195. The role of  $N$  is played here by the set of maps of  $[m]$  into  $[n]$ , so  $N = [n]^{[m]}$  (caution!  $|N| = n^m$ ), with as system  $\mathcal{A} = (A_1, A_2, \dots)$

$$[9f] \quad A_i := \{\varphi \mid \varphi \in [n]^{[m]}; \exists j \in [m], \varphi(j) = i\}, \quad i \in [n].$$

Now we suppose first that all  $b_{i,j}$  are real nonnegative. We define the measure  $f$  for each subset  $X \subset [n]^{[m]}$  by:

$$[9g] \quad f(X) := \sum_{\varphi \in X} f(\varphi), \quad \text{where} \quad f(\varphi) := \prod_{i=1}^m b_{i,\varphi(i)}.$$

Now  $\varphi$  is injective ( $\in \mathfrak{A}_m[n]$ ) if and only if the image of  $[m]$  under  $\varphi$  has cardinality  $m$ , in other words,  $\varphi \in N_m(\mathcal{A})$  in the notation of Theorem A

(p. 195). Hence, by [9g]:

$$[9h] \quad \text{per } B = f(N_m(\mathcal{A})).$$

To this expression we will apply now [8a] (p. 195). Let  $\varkappa := \{i_1, i_2, \dots, i_k\} \subset [n]$ . Then we have:

$$f(A_\varkappa) := \sum_{\varphi \in A_{i_1} A_{i_2} \dots} b_{1, \varphi(1)} b_{2, \varphi(2)} \dots = \sum_{\varphi \in \S} b_{1, \varphi(1)} b_{2, \varphi(2)} \dots,$$

where  $\S$  stands for the set of maps of  $[m]$  into  $[n] - \varkappa$ . Hence, by Theorem A (p. 127), and the notation of [9b]:

$$[9i] \quad f(A_\varkappa) = w(B([n] - \varkappa)).$$

Then [9c] follows by putting  $\lambda := [n] - \varkappa$  in [9i] and [8a] (p. 195). Since [9c] is true for all  $b_{i,j} \geq 0$ , it is also true in a commutative ring, since the term-by-term expansion [9a] is the same in both cases. ■ (For other expressions of  $\text{per } B$ , see [\*Cartier, Foata, 1969], p. 76, [Crapo, 1968], [Wilf, 1968a, b].)

If  $\text{per } B$  can be directly computed, then [9a] gives, together with [9c, d, e], a ‘remarkable’ identity. For example, when  $B$  is the square matrix of order  $n$  consisting entirely of 1,  $b_{i,j} = 1$ , then clearly  $\text{per } B = n!$ ; hence by [9e]:  $n! = \sum_{l=1}^n (-1)^{n-l} \binom{n}{l} l^n$ . Thus we find back the evident property  $S(n, n) = 1$  for the Stirling numbers ([1b] p. 204). If we take next  $b_{i,j} = 2^{j-1}$ , we find  $2^{\binom{n}{2}} n! = \sum (-1)^{n-D(j)} j^n$ , where  $1 \leq j \leq 2^n - 1$ , and where  $D(j)$  stands for the number of digits 1 in the binary form (=base 2) of  $j$ . Finally, if all  $b_j$  equal 0, except  $b_{1,1} = b_{2,2} = \dots = b_{n,n} = x$  and  $b_{1,2} = b_{2,3} = \dots = b_{n-1,n} = b_{n,1} = y$ , we find, using [9b] (p. 24):

$$x^n + y^n = \sum_{k \leq n/2} (-1)^k \frac{n}{n-k} \binom{n-k}{k} (xy)^k (x+y)^{n-2k},$$

to be compared with Exercise 1, p. 155.

## SUPPLEMENT AND EXERCISES

**1. Variegated words.** Using 2 letters  $a_1$ , 2 letters  $a_2, \dots$ , 2 letters  $a_n$ , how many words of length  $2n$  can be formed in which no two identical letters

are adjacent? (For instance, for  $n=3$ , the word  $a_3a_2a_1a_2a_3a_1$ .) [Hint: When  $A_i$  stands for the set of words in which the two letters  $a_i$  are adjacent, then the required number is equal to  $|A_1A_2\dots A_n|$ .] Now generalize. (Cf. Exercise 1, p. 219, and Exercise 21 (3), p. 265.)

**2.** *Sums of the type of the Euler function.* If in the following the summation is taken over all integers  $x \leq n$  which are prime relatively to  $n$ ,  $n=p_1^{d_1}p_2^{d_2}\dots p_r^{d_r}$ , then show that  $\sum x^2 = (n^2/3) \varphi(n) + (-1)^r (\frac{1}{6}) p_1 \dots p_r \varphi(n)$ . Generalize to  $\sum x^a$ .

**3.** *Jordan function.* This is the following double sequence:

$$J_k(n) := n^k \prod_{\substack{p \mid n \\ p \neq 1}} (1 - p^{-k}),$$

$p$  is a prime number, and where  $p \mid n$  means ' $p$  divides  $n$ '. It is a generalization of the Euler function ([6e] p. 193)  $J_1(n) = \varphi(n)$ . For any integer  $k \geq 1$ , show that  $J_k(n)$  is equal to the number of  $(k+1)$ -tuples  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_k, n)$  of integers  $x_i \in [n]$ ,  $i \in [k]$ , whose GCD equals 1. Show that  $\sum_{d \mid n} J_k(d) = n^k$  and deduce from this the *Lambert GF* (Exercise 16, p. 161)  $\sum_{n \geq 1} J_k(n) t^n (1-t^n)^{-1} = A_k(t) (1-t)^{-k-1}$ , where the  $A_k(t)$  are the Eulerian polynomials of p. 244.

**4.** *Other properties of the number  $d(n)$  of derangements.* (1) We have  $d(n) = \Delta^n 0!$ ,  $\Delta$  being the difference operator (p. 13). (2)  $f := \sum d(n) t^n$  satisfies the differential equation  $(t^3 + t^2) f' + (t^2 - 1) f + 1 = 0$ . Use this to prove:  $f = -t^{-1} \exp(-t^{-1}) \int \exp(t^{-1}) (t + t^2)^{-1} dt, \dots$  formally. (3) The number  $d_k(n)$  of permutations of  $[n]$  with  $k$  fixed points (GF, p. 231) has as:  $\sum_{n,k \geq 0} d_k(n) u^k t^n / n! = (1-t)^{-1} \exp(-t(1-u))$ .

**\*5.** *Other properties of the reduced ménages numbers  $\mu(n)$ .* (1) The following recurrence relation holds:  $(n-2) \mu(n) = n(n-2) \mu(n-1) + n \mu(n-2) + 4(-1)^{n+1}$  ([\*Lucas, 1891], p. 495). (2) When  $n$  tends to infinity,  $\mu(n) \sim n! e^{-2}$ . (3)  $n! = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{2n}{k} \mu(n-k)$ ,  $\mu(0) := 1$ ,  $\mu(1) = -1$  (Riordan). (4)  $\mu(n) = \|ne^{-2} \sum_{k=0}^n (-1)^k (n-k-1)!/k!\|$ , where  $0 \leq k \leq (n-1)/2$ , with the notation [6f] (p. 110) (Schöbe). (5)  $\sum_{n \geq 3} \mu(n) t^n =$

$= (t^2 - 1) t^{-4} \exp(-t - t^{-1}) \int t^2 (t+1)^{-2} \exp(t + t^{-1}) dt, \dots$  formally ([Cayley, 1878b]).

**6. Random integers.** Repetitions being allowed,  $n$  integers  $\geq 1$  are independently drawn at random, say  $\omega_1, \omega_2, \dots, \omega_n$ . What is the probability that the product  $\pi_n := \omega_1 \omega_2 \dots \omega_n$  has last digit (the number of units, hence) equal to 5? More generally, compute the probability that a given integer  $k \geq 1$  divides  $\pi_n$ .

**7. Knock-out tournaments.** A set of  $2^t$  players of equal strength is at random arranged into  $2^{t-1}$  disjoint pairs. They play one round, and  $2^{t-1}$  are eliminated. The same operation is repeated with the remaining  $2^{t-1}$  players, until a champion remains after the  $t$ -th round. Show that the probability that a player takes part in exactly  $i$  rounds equals  $2^{-i}$  for  $1 \leq i \leq t-1$  and  $2^{-t+1}$  if  $i=t$ . ([Narayana, 1968], and [Narayana, Zidek, 1968] for other results and generalizations. See also [\*André, 1900].)

**8. A determinant.** Let  $A$  be a square matrix of order  $n$ ,  $A := [[a_{i,j}]]_{i,j \in [n]}$ , where the  $a_{i,j}$  belong to a commutative ring  $\Omega$ . For each subset  $x \subset [n]$ , let  $D(x)$  be the determinant of the matrix that is obtained by deleting from  $A$  all rows and columns whose index does not belong to  $x$ ,  $D(\emptyset) := 1$ . Then, for  $x_1, x_2, \dots \in \Omega$ :

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_{1,1} + x_1 & a_{1,2} & \dots & a_{1,n} \\ a_{2,1} & a_{2,2} + x_2 & \dots & a_{2,n} \\ \vdots & & & \\ a_{n,1} & a_{n,2} & \dots & a_{n,n} + x_n \end{vmatrix} = \sum_{x \subset [n]} \{D(x) \prod_{i \notin x} x_i\}.$$

**9. Inversion of the Jordan formula.** In [8a] (p. 195) we put  $T_r := f(N_r(\mathcal{A}))$ ,  $T_r = \sum_k (-1)^{k-r} \binom{k}{r} S_k$ . Now show that  $S_r = \sum_k \binom{k}{r} T_k$ .

**10. Inequalities satisfied by the  $S_k$ .** Show that the  $S_k$ , as defined by [6a] (p. 192), satisfy the Fréchet inequalities ([\*Fréchet, 1940]):

$$S_k / \binom{p}{k} \leq S_{k-1} / \binom{p}{k-1}, \quad k \in [p],$$

and the *Gumbel* inequalities,  $k \in [p-1]$ :

$$\left\{ \binom{p}{k+1} - S_{k+1} \right\} / \binom{p-1}{k} \leq \left\{ \binom{p}{k} - S_k \right\} / \binom{p-1}{k-1}.$$

**11. The number of systems of distinct representatives.** Let  $\mathcal{B} := (B_1, B_2, \dots, B_m)$  be a system of not necessarily distinct blocks of  $[n]$ ,  $B_i \subset [n] := \{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ ,  $1 \leq m \leq n$ , and let  $B = [[b_{i,j}]]$  be the incidence matrix of  $\mathcal{B}$  defined by  $b_{i,j} = 1$  if  $j \in B_i$  and  $= 0$  otherwise,  $i \in [m], j \in [n]$ . Show that the number of systems of distinct representatives (Exercise 32, p. 300) of  $\mathcal{B}$  equals  $\text{per}(B)$ .

**12. Permanent of a stochastic matrix.** Let  $A := [[a_{i,j}]]$  be a  $n \times n$  square double stochastic matrix. This means:

$$a_{i,j} \geq 0, \quad \sum_{j=1}^n a_{i,j} = 1, \quad \sum_{i=1}^n a_{i,j} = 1, \quad i, j \in [n].$$

Let  $n$  boxes contain each a ball. At a certain moment, each ball jumps out of its box, and falls back into a random box (perhaps the same) such that the ball from box  $i$  goes to box  $j$  with a probability of  $a_{i,j}$ ,  $i, j \in [n]$ . Then,  $\text{per } A$  represents the probability that after the transfer there still is one ball in each box.

**13. The number of permutations with forbidden positions.** Let  $I$  stand for the  $n \times n$  unit matrix, and let  $J$  be the  $n \times n$  matrix, all whose entries equal 1. Then show that  $\text{per}(J-I) = d(n)$ , the number of derangements of  $[n]$  (p. 180). Use this to obtain (by [9e] p. 197):

$$d(n) = \sum_{r=0}^{n-1} (-1)^r \binom{n}{r} (n-r)^r (n-r-1)^{n-r}.$$

More generally, let  $\mathfrak{B}$  be a relation in  $[n]$ ,  $\mathfrak{B} \subset [n] \times [n]$ , and let  $\mathfrak{S}_{\mathfrak{B}}(n)$  be the set of permutations  $\sigma$  of  $[n]$  such that  $(i, \sigma(i)) \in \mathfrak{B}$ . Let also  $B = [[b_{i,j}]]$  be the  $n \times n$  square matrix such that  $b_{i,j} = 1$  for  $(i, j) \in \mathfrak{B}$ , and  $= 0$  otherwise. Then  $|\mathfrak{S}_{\mathfrak{B}}(n)| = \text{per}(B)$ . (There is in [\*Riordan, 1958], pp. 163–237, a very complete treatise on this subject. See also [Foata, Schützenberger, 1970].)

**14. Vector spaces.** Let  $A_1, A_2, \dots$  be finite dimensional vector subspaces

with dimensions  $\delta(A_1), \delta(A_2), \dots$ . We denote  $A_1A_2$  for  $A_1 \cap A_2$ . Then (1)  $\delta(A_1 + A_2) = \delta(A_1) + \delta(A_2) - \delta(A_1A_2)$ , where  $A_1 + A_2$  stands for the subspace spanned by  $A_1 \cup A_2$ . (2)  $\delta(A_1 + A_2 + A_3) \leq \delta(A_1) + \delta(A_2) + \delta(A_3) - \delta(A_2A_3) - \delta(A_3A_1) - \delta(A_1A_2) + \delta(A_1A_2A_3)$ . (3) This inequality cannot be generalized to more than three subspaces; but we always have:  $\delta(A_1A_2 \dots A_n) \leq \delta(\sum_{i=1}^n A_i) \leq \sum_{i=1}^n \delta(A_i)$ .

**\*15. Möbius function.** Let  $P$  be a partially ordered set, in other words, there is an order relation  $\leq$  given on  $P$  (Definition D, p. 59). Moreover,  $P$  is supposed to be *locally finite*, in the sense that each *segment*  $[x,y] := := \{u \mid x \leq u \leq y\}$  is finite.  $A$  stands for the set of functions  $f(x, y)$ ,  $x, y \in P$ , real-valued, which are zero if  $x \not\leq y$  ( $\Leftrightarrow$  not  $x \leq y$ ). (1) We define the (convolution) product  $h$  of  $f$  by  $g$ , denoted by  $h = f * g$ , by:

$$h(x, y) := \sum_{x \leq u \leq y} f(x, u) g(u, y).$$

Show that with this multiplication,  $A$  becomes a group, with unit element  $\delta$  defined by  $\delta(x, y) := 1$  for  $x = y$ , and  $:= 0$  otherwise. (2) The *zeta function*  $\zeta$  of  $P$  is such that  $\zeta(x, y) := 1$  if  $x \leq y$  and  $:= 0$  otherwise. The inverse  $\mu$  of  $\zeta$ , which satisfies  $\mu * \zeta = \zeta * \mu = \delta$ , is called the *Möbius function* of  $P$ . If we suppose that  $P$  has a universal lower bound denoted by 0, verify the following ‘Möbius inversion formula’ for  $f, g \in A$ :

$$[\#] \quad g(x) = \sum_{y \leq x} f(y) \Leftrightarrow f(x) = \sum_{y \leq x} g(y) \mu(y, x).$$

(3) Let  $P := \{1, 2, 3, \dots\}$  be ordered by divisibility:  $x \leq y \Leftrightarrow x \mid y \Leftrightarrow x$  divides  $y$ . Show that  $\mu(x) = 1$ ;  $\mu(x, y) = (-1)^k$  if  $x$  divides  $y$  and the quotient equals  $p_1 p_2 \dots p_k$ , where the prime numbers  $p_i$  are all *different*;  $\mu(x, y) = 0$  in the other case. Hence  $\mu(x, y) = \bar{\mu}(y \mid x)$ , where  $\bar{\mu}(n)$  is the ordinary arithmetical Möbius function (Exercise 16, p. 161). What does the inversion formula  $(\#)$  give us in this case? (4) We order the set  $P := \mathfrak{P}(N)$  of *subsets* of a finite set  $N$  by inclusion. Then  $\mu(x, y) = (-1)^{|y| - |x|}$  if  $x \leq y \Leftrightarrow (x \subset y)$ . What does  $(\#)$  give in this case? (5) Let  $P$  now stand for the set of *partitions* of a finite set  $N$  ordered as in Exercise 3 (p. 220). Then, for  $x \leq y$  with  $y = \{B_1, B_2, \dots, B_k\}$ ,  $B_1 + B_2 + \dots + B_k = N$ , we have  $\mu(x, y) = (-1)^{|x| + |y|} (n_1 - 1)! (n_2 - 1)! \dots (n_k - 1)!$ , where  $n_i$  is the number of blocks of  $x$  contained in  $B_i$ ,  $i \in [k]$ . (This formula is due to [Schützenberger, 1954]. For a recent study of all

these questions see [Rota, 1964b] and [\*Cartier, Foata, 1969], pp. 18–23. See also [Weisner, 1935], [Frucht, Rota, 1963], [Crapo, 1966, 1968], [Smith, 1967, 1969].)

**\*16.** *Jordan and Bonferroni formulas in more variables.* Let  $A_1, A_2, \dots, A_p$  and  $B_1, B_2, \dots, B_q$  be subsets of  $N$ , and let  $N_{r,s}$  be the set of points of  $N$  belonging to  $r$  sets  $A_i$  and to  $s$  sets  $B_j$ . For each measure  $f$  on  $N$ , we put  $S_{k,t} = \sum f(A_\alpha B_\lambda)$  where  $\alpha \in \mathfrak{P}_k[p]$  and  $\lambda \in \mathfrak{P}_t[q]$ , with notation [1e] of p. 177.

$$(1) \quad f(N_{r,s}) = \sum_{t=r+s}^{p+q} \sum_{i+j=t} (-1)^{t-(r+s)} \binom{i}{r} \binom{j}{s} S_{i,j}.$$

(2) With a notation analogous to that of Theorem B (p. 196):

$$f(N_{\geq r, \geq s}) = \sum_{t=r+s}^{p+q} \sum_{i+j=t} (-1)^{t-(r+s)} \binom{i-1}{r-1} \binom{j-1}{s-1} S_{i,j}.$$

(3) With respect to the first summations in (1) and (2) the alternating inequalities hold ([Meyer, 1969]).

(4) Generalize to more than two systems of subsets of  $N$ .

**\*17.** *A beautiful determinant.* Let  $(i, j)$  be the GCD of the integers  $i$  and  $j$ , and let  $\varphi(k)$  be the Euler function (p. 193). Show that:

$$\begin{vmatrix} (1, 1) & (1, 2) & \dots & (1, n) \\ (2, 1) & (2, 2) & \dots & (2, n) \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ (n, 1) & (n, 2) & \dots & (n, n) \end{vmatrix} = \varphi(1) \varphi(2) \dots \varphi(n)$$

([Smith, 1875], [Catalan, 1878]).

More generally, if we replace in the preceding every  $(i, j)$  by  $(i, j)^r$ , then the determinant equals  $\prod_{k=1}^n J_r(k)$ , where  $J_r(k)$  is the Jordan function of Exercise 3 (p. 199).

## CHAPTER V

### STIRLING NUMBERS

Let us give a survey of the three most frequently occurring notations: numbers of the first kind =  $s(n, k)$  (Riordan, and also this book, ...) =  $S_n^k$  (Jordan, Mitrinović, ...) =  $(-1)^{n-k} S_1(n-1, n-k)$  (Gould, Hagen, ...); numbers of the second kind =  $S(n, k) = \mathfrak{S}_n^k = S_2(k, n-k)$ .

#### 5.1. STIRLING NUMBERS OF THE SECOND KIND $S(n, k)$ AND PARTITIONS OF SETS

**DEFINITION A.** *The number  $S(n, k)$  of  $k$ -partitions (partitions in  $k$  blocks, Definition C, p. 30) is called Stirling number of the second kind. Hence  $S(n, k) > 0$  for  $1 \leq k \leq n$  and*

$$[1a] \quad S(n, k) = 0 \quad \text{if } 1 \leq n < k.$$

We put  $S(0, 0) = 1$  and  $S(0, k) = 0$  for  $k \geq 1$ .

In other words,  $S(n, k)$  is the number of *equivalence relations with  $k$  classes on  $N$* . It is also the number of distributions of  $n$  distinct balls into  $k$  indistinguishable boxes (the order of the boxes does not count) *such that no box is empty*.

On p. 206 we will prove that the  $S(n, k)$  are indeed the number previously introduced on p. 50.

**THEOREM A.** *The Stirling number of the second kind  $S(n, k)$  equals:*

$$\begin{aligned} [1b] \quad S(n, k) &\stackrel{(*)}{=} \frac{1}{k!} \sum_{0 \leq j \leq k} (-1)^j \binom{k}{j} (k-j)^n = \\ &= \frac{1}{k!} \sum_{1 \leq i \leq k} (-1)^{k-i} \binom{k}{i} i^n \stackrel{(**)}{=} \frac{1}{k!} \Delta^k 0^n \quad (1 \leq k \leq n), \end{aligned}$$

[1c] and the formula is still true for  $k > n (\Rightarrow S(n, k) = 0, [1a])$ .

■ For the proof of [1b, (\*)] we apply the *sieve method* of p. 177. Let

$E$  be the set of maps of  $N$  into  $[k]:=\{1, 2, \dots, k\}$  and let  $F$  be the subset of  $E$  consisting of the *surjective* maps:

$$[1d] \quad |E| \stackrel{(o)}{=} k^n, \quad |F| \stackrel{(oo)}{=} k! S(n, k),$$

(o) follows from [3a] (p. 4) and (oo) from the fact that any  $f \in F$  corresponds to precisely one *partition* of  $N$ , namely the partition consisting of the  $k$  pre-images  $f^{-1}(i)$ ,  $i \in [k]$  (p. 30), together with a numbering of this partition. Let now  $B_i$  be the set of  $f \in E$  that do not have  $i$  in their image:  $\forall x \in N, f(x) \neq i$ . Evidently  $F = \bar{B}_1 \bar{B}_2 \dots \bar{B}_k$  and for the *interchangeable* system of the  $B_i$  (p. 179), we have  $|B_{i_1} \bar{B}_{i_2} \dots B_{i_j}| = |B_1 B_2 \dots B_j| = |[j+1, j+2, k]^N|$ . Hence, by [1m] (p. 180), for (§):

$$[1e] \quad k! S(n, k) = |F| = |\bar{B}_1 \bar{B}_2 \dots| = \\ \stackrel{(§)}{=} |E| - \binom{k}{1} |B_1| + \binom{k}{2} |B_1 B_2| - \dots = \text{CQFD}.$$

As far as [1b(\*\*)] is concerned, this is formula [6f] (p. 14). Finally, if  $n < k$ , then  $|F|$  is clearly equal to 0 and the sieve formula can still be applied, hence [1c]. ■

Thus we find  $S(n, 1)=1$ ,  $S(n, 2)=2^{n-1}-1$ ,  $S(n, 3)=(3^{n-1}+1)/2-2^{n-1}, \dots$ . Another way to prove [1b] would be to observe that any map  $f \in E$  is *surjective* from  $N$  onto  $I:=f(N)$ . So, putting  $u_k:=k! S(n, k)$ ,

$$v_k := |E| = k^n = \sum_{I \subseteq [k]} u_{|I|} = \sum_{0 \leq i \leq k} \binom{k}{i} u_i,$$

[1e] which gives  $u_k$  (consequently  $S(n, k)$ ) by the inversion formula [6e] p. 144.

**DEFINITION B.** A partition  $\mathcal{S}$  of a set  $N$  is said to be of type  $\llbracket c \rrbracket = \llbracket c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n \rrbracket$ , where the integers  $c_i \geq 0$  satisfy  $c_1 + 2c_2 + \dots + nc_n = n (= |N|)$ , if and only if  $\mathcal{S}$  has  $c_i$   $i$ -blocks,  $i \in [n]$  (So we have  $c_1 + c_2 + \dots + c_n = |\mathcal{S}|$ ).

**THEOREM B.** The number of partitions of type  $\llbracket c \rrbracket$  is equal to  $n! / \{c_1! c_2! \dots (1!)^{c_1} (2!)^{c_2} \dots\}$ .

■ Giving such a partition is equivalent to first giving a division of  $N$  into  $c_1$  1-blocks,  $c_2$  2-blocks,  $\dots$ ; of these there are  $z = n! / \{1!)^{c_1} (2!)^{c_2} \dots\}$ , [10c] (p. 27); and to consequently erasing the numbering of blocks with equal size; so we must divide the number  $z$  by  $c_1! c_2! \dots$  ■

### 5.2. GENERATING FUNCTIONS FOR $S(n, k)$

The following theorem shows that the Stirling numbers defined in [1b] are indeed the numbers which were introduced for the first time in [14s] (p. 51).

**THEOREM A.** *The Stirling numbers of the second kind  $S(n, k)$ , have as ‘vertical’ GF:*

$$[2a] \quad \Phi_k(t) := \sum_{n \geq k} S(n, k) \frac{t^n}{n!} = \frac{1}{k!} (e^t - 1)^k, \quad k \geq 0$$

where  $n \geq k$  can be replaced by  $n \geq 0$ ), and for ‘double’ GF:

$$\begin{aligned} [2b] \quad \Phi(t, u) &:= \sum_{n, k \geq 0} S(n, k) \frac{t^n}{n!} u^k \\ &= 1 + \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{t^n}{n!} \left\{ \sum_{1 \leq k \leq n} S(n, k) u^k \right\} \\ &= \exp \{u(e^t - 1)\}. \end{aligned}$$

■ Using [1a] (p. 204) for (\*), and [1b] for (\*\*):

$$\begin{aligned} \Phi_k(t) &\stackrel{(*)}{=} \sum_{n \geq 0} S(n, k) \frac{t^n}{n!} \\ &\stackrel{(**)}{=} \frac{1}{k!} \sum_{\substack{n \geq 0 \\ 0 \leq j \leq k}} (-1)^j \binom{k}{j} (k-j)^n \frac{t^n}{n!} \\ &= \frac{1}{k!} \sum_{0 \leq j \leq k} \left\{ (-1)^j \binom{k}{j} \sum_{n \geq 0} \frac{(k-j)^n t^n}{n!} \right\} \\ &= \frac{1}{k!} \sum_{0 \leq j \leq k} \binom{k}{j} (-1)^j (e^t)^{k-j} = \frac{1}{k!} (e^t - 1)^k. \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, with [2a] for (\*\*\*):

$$\begin{aligned} \Phi(t, u) &= \sum_{k \geq 0} \left\{ u^k \sum_{n \geq k} S(n, k) \frac{t^n}{n!} \right\} \\ &\stackrel{(***)}{=} \sum_{k \geq 0} \frac{1}{k!} u^k (e^t - 1)^k = \exp \{u(e^t - 1)\}. \quad ■ \end{aligned}$$

**THEOREM B.** *The  $S(n, k)$  have for ‘horizontal’ GF (which is often taken as definition of the  $S(n, k)$ ):*

$$[2c] \quad x^n = \sum_{0 \leq k \leq n} S(n, k) (x)_k,$$

where  $(x)_k := x(x-1) \cdots (x-k+1)$ ,  $(x)_0 := 1$ .

■ Identify the coefficients of  $t^n/n!$  in the first and last member of:

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n \geq 0} x^n \frac{t^n}{n!} &= e^{tx} = \{1 + (e^t - 1)\}^x = \\ &\stackrel{(*)}{=} \sum_{k \geq 0} (x)_k \frac{(e^t - 1)^k}{k!} \stackrel{(**)}{=} \sum_{0 \leq k \leq n} (x)_k S(n, k) \frac{t^n}{n!}, \end{aligned}$$

where (\*) follows from [12e] (p. 37), and (\*\*) from [2a]. ■

**THEOREM C.** *The  $S(n, k)$  have the following rational GF:*

$$\begin{aligned} [2d] \quad \varphi_k &:= \sum_{n \geq k} S(n, k) u^n = \\ &= \frac{u^k}{(1-u)(1-2u) \cdots (1-ku)}, \quad k \geq 1. \end{aligned}$$

(According to [1a],  $n \geq k$  can be replaced by  $n \geq 0$ .)

■ If we decompose the rational fraction  $\varphi_k$  into partial fractions, we obtain equality (\*), and for (\*\*) we use [1b]. Then we get:

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi_k &= \frac{u^k}{(1-u) \cdots (1-ku)} \stackrel{(*)}{=} \sum_{0 \leq j \leq k} \frac{(-1)^j}{k!} \binom{k}{j} \frac{1}{1-(k-j)u} \\ &= \sum_{0 \leq j \leq k} \left\{ \frac{(-1)^j}{k!} \binom{k}{j} \sum_{n \geq 0} (k-j)^n u^n \right\} \\ &= \sum_{n \geq 0} \left\{ u^n \frac{1}{k!} \sum_{0 \leq j \leq k} (-1)^j \binom{k}{j} (k-j)^n \right\} \\ &\stackrel{(**)}{=} \sum_{n \geq k} S(n, k) u^n. \quad ■ \end{aligned}$$

**THEOREM D.** *The following explicit formula holds:*

$$[2e] \quad S(n, k) = \sum_{c_1 + c_2 + \cdots + c_k = n-k} 1^{c_1} 2^{c_2} \cdots k^{c_k}.$$

In other words, the Stirling number of the second kind  $S(n, k)$  is the sum of all products of  $n-k$  not necessarily distinct integers from  $[k] = \{1, 2, \dots, k\}$  (there are  $\binom{n-1}{k-1}$  such products).

For instance,  $S(5, 2) = 1^3 + 1^2 \cdot 2 + 1 \cdot 2^2 + 2^3 = 15$ . Thus the numbers  $S(n, k)$  are the symmetric monomial functions of degree  $(n-k)$  of the first  $k$  integers (Exercise 9, p. 158). This is the same thing as expanding  $(1+2+\dots+k)^{n-k}$  by the multinomial theorem and afterwards suppressing every multinomial coefficient. (This procedure applied to  $(a_1+a_2+\dots+a_k)^m$  gives the so-called Wronski alephs.)

■ After expanding  $\varphi_k$ , [2d], identify the coefficients of  $u^{n-k}$  of the first and last member of:

$$\begin{aligned}\varphi_k/u^k &= \prod_{1 \leq j \leq k} (1 - ju)^{-1} = \prod_{1 \leq j \leq k} \sum_{c_j \geq 0} j^{c_j} u^{c_j} = \\ &= \sum_{c_1, c_2, \dots, c_k \geq 0} (1^{c_1} 2^{c_2} \dots k^{c_k}) u^{c_1+c_2+\dots+c_k}. \quad \blacksquare\end{aligned}$$

### 5.3. RECURRENCE RELATIONS BETWEEN THE $S(n, k)$

**THEOREM A.** *The Stirling numbers of the second kind  $S(n, k)$  satisfy the ‘triangular’ recurrence relation:*

$$\begin{aligned}[3a] \quad S(n, k) &= S(n-1, k-1) + kS(n-1, k), \quad n, k \geq 1; \\ S(n, 0) &= S(0, k) = 0, \quad \text{except } S(0, 0) = 1.\end{aligned}$$

This is a quick tool for computing the first values of  $S(n, k)$  (see table on p. 310).

■ We give two proofs of [3a].

(1) *Analytical.* Equate the coefficients of  $(x)_k$  in the first and last members of [3b]:

$$\begin{aligned}[3b] \quad \sum_k S(n, k) (x)_k &= x^n = x \cdot x^{n-1} = x \sum_h S(n-1, h) (x)_h \\ &= \sum_h S(n-1, h) \{(x)_{h+1} + h(x)_h\},\end{aligned}$$

since the  $(x)_h$  form an independent system of vectors in the linear space of polynomial functions.

(2) *Combinatorial.* We return to Definition A (p. 204) of the  $S(n, k)$ . Let  $x \in N$  be a fixed point, and let  $M := N - \{x\}$ ,  $|N| = n \geq 2$ . We partition the set  $\mathbf{s} = \mathbf{s}(N, k)$  of the  $k$ -partitions of  $N$  into  $\mathbf{s}'$  and  $\mathbf{s}''$ ,  $\mathbf{s}'$ , is the set of partitions in which the block  $\{x\}$  occurs, and  $\mathbf{s}'' = \mathbf{s} - \mathbf{s}'$ . For all  $\mathcal{S} \in \mathbf{s}$ , let  $\tau(\mathcal{S}) := \{B \cap M \mid B \in \mathcal{S}, B \cap M \neq \emptyset\}$  be the trace of  $\mathcal{S}$  on  $M$ . If  $\mathcal{S} \in \mathbf{s}'$ ,  $\tau(\mathcal{S}) \in \mathbf{s}(M, k-1)$ , and we see clearly that  $\tau$  is bijective; hence  $|\mathbf{s}'| = |\mathbf{s}(M, k-1)| = S(n-1, k-1)$ . If  $\mathcal{S} \in \mathbf{s}''$ ,  $\tau(\mathcal{S}) \in \mathbf{s}(M, k)$ , and for each partition  $\mathcal{T} \in \mathbf{s}(M, k)$ ,  $|\tau^{-1}(\mathcal{T})|$  equals the number of possible choices of joining  $x$  to one of the blocks of  $\mathcal{T}$ , which is  $k$ ; hence  $|\mathbf{s}''| = k|\mathbf{s}(M, k)| = kS(n-1, k)$ . Finally, [3a] follows from  $|\mathbf{s}| = |\mathbf{s}'| + |\mathbf{s}''|$ . ■

**THEOREM B.** *The  $S(n, k)$  satisfy the ‘vertical’ recurrence relations:*

$$[3c] \quad S(n, k) = \sum_{k-1 \leq l \leq n-1} \binom{n-1}{l} S(l, k-1).$$

$$[3d] \quad S(n, k) = \sum_{k \leq l \leq n} S(l-1, k-1) k^{n-l}.$$

■ For [3c], we differentiate [2a] (p. 206) with respect to  $t$ , and we identify the coefficients of  $t^{n-1}/(n-1)!$  in the first and last member of:

$$\sum_{n \geq 0} S(n, k) \frac{t^{n-1}}{(n-1)!} = \frac{d\Phi_k}{dt} = e^t \Phi_{k-1} = \sum_{l, m \geq 0} S(l, k-1) \frac{t^{l+m}}{l! m!}.$$

For [3d], use [2d] (p. 207):

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n \geq k} S(n, k) u^n &= \varphi_k = u(1 - ku)^{-1} \varphi_{k-1} = \\ &= \sum_{l, m \geq 0} S(l-1, k-1) k^m u^{l+m}. \quad ■ \end{aligned}$$

**THEOREM C.** *The  $S(n, k)$  satisfy the ‘horizontal’ recurrence relations:*

$$[3e] \quad S(n, k) = \sum_{0 \leq j \leq n-k} (-1)^j \langle k+1 \rangle_j S(n+1, k+j+1)$$

where  $\langle x \rangle_j := x(x+1)\cdots(x+j-1)$ ,  $\langle x \rangle_0 := 1$ .

$$[3f] \quad k! S(n, k) = k^n - \sum_{j=1}^{k-1} (k)_j S(n, j).$$

■ It suffices, by [3a], to replace  $S(n+1, k+j+1)$  of [3e] by  $S(n, k+j) +$

$+(k+j+1) S(n, k+j+1)$ , and then to expand: after simplification only  $S(n, k)$  is left. For [3f], this is formula [1e], p. 205.

#### 5.4. THE NUMBER $w(n)$ OF PARTITIONS OR EQUIVALENCE RELATIONS OF A SET WITH $n$ ELEMENTS

The number  $w(n)$  of all partitions of a set  $N$ , often called *exponential number* or *Bell number* ([Becker, Riordan, 1948], [Touchard, 1956]) apparently equals, by Definition A (p. 204):

$$[4a] \quad w(n) = \sum_{1 \leq k \leq n} S(n, k), \quad n \geq 1.$$

So it is also equal to the number of *equivalence relations* on  $N$ .

**THEOREM A.** *The numbers  $w(n)$  have the following GF:*

$$[4b] \quad \sum_{n \geq 0} w(n) \frac{t^n}{n!} = \exp(e^t - 1), \quad w(0) := 1.$$

*They satisfy the recurrence relations* ([Aitken, 1933]):

$$[4c] \quad w(n+1) = \sum_{0 \leq h \leq n} \binom{n}{h} w(h), \quad n \geq 0,$$

*and they can be given in the form of a convergent series* ([Dobinski, 1877]).

$$[4d] \quad w(n) = \frac{1}{e} \sum_{h \geq 0} \frac{h^n}{h!} \stackrel{*}{=} \left\| \frac{1}{e} \sum_{h=0}^{2n} \frac{h^n}{h!} \right\| \quad (n \geq 1, [6f] p. 110)$$

■ Taking into account [4a], the first member of [4b] equals  $\Phi(t, 1)$ , then, by [2b] (p. 206) the result follows.

For [4c], as for [3a], there are two ways again. *Analytically*, identify the coefficients of  $t^n/n!$  in  $d\Phi(t, 1)/dt = e^t \Phi(t, 1)$ . *Combinatorially*, let  $s(P)$  be the set of all partitions of  $P$ ,  $|P|=n+1$  and let  $x \in P$  be a fixed point,  $N:=P-\{x\}$ ,  $|N|=n$ . For  $K \subset N$ , let  $s_K(P)$  be the set of partitions of  $P$  such that the block containing  $x$  is  $\{x\} \cup K$ . Then we have evidently a bijection between  $s(N-K)$  and  $s_K(P)$ . Hence, by virtue of the division  $s(P)=\sum_{K \subset N} s_K(P)$  and by passage to the cardinals, we have:

$$\begin{aligned}\varpi(n+1) &= |\mathbf{s}(P)| = \sum_{K \subset N} |\mathbf{s}_K(P)| = \sum_{K \subset N} |\mathbf{s}(N-K)| = \\ &= \sum_{0 \leq k \leq n} \left\{ \sum_{|K|=k} |\mathbf{s}(N-K)| \right\} = \sum_{0 \leq k \leq n} \binom{n}{k} \varpi(n-k).\end{aligned}$$

Finally, for [4d], we identify the coefficients of  $t^n/n!$  in the first and last member of [4e] in which the series are power series converging for each complex number  $t$ :

$$[4e] \quad \sum_{n \geq 0} \varpi(n) \frac{t^n}{n!} = \frac{1}{e} \exp(e^t) = \frac{1}{e} \sum_{k \geq 0} \frac{e^{kt}}{k!} = \frac{1}{e} \sum_{k \geq 0} \left( \frac{1}{k!} \sum_{n \geq 0} \frac{k^n t^n}{n!} \right).$$

We are leaving [4d] (\*) to the reader as a gift. ■

See [Rota, 1964a] and its bibliography. (For the asymptotic study of  $\varpi(n)$  see [Moser, Wyman, 1955b], [Binet, Szekeres, 1957], and [\*De Bruijn, 1961], pp. 102–8. See also Exercise 23, p. 296.) A table of  $\varpi(n)$  is found on p. 310.

We show now a method of computation of the  $\varpi(n)$  without using the  $S(n, k)$ .

**THEOREM B.** ([Aitken, 1933]). *In the sense of p. 14 we have:*

$$\varpi(n) = \Delta^n \varpi(1).$$

■ In fact, by [6c] (p. 13) (here,  $x=1$ ) for (\*), and by [4c] (p. 210) for (\*\*) we have:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta^n \varpi(1) &\stackrel{(*)}{=} \sum_{k=0}^n (-1)^{n-k} \binom{n}{k} \varpi(k+1) = \\ &\stackrel{(**)}{=} \sum_{k,j} (-1)^{n-k} \binom{n}{k} \binom{k}{j} \varpi(j) = \sum_{j=0}^n \varpi(j) A(n, j),\end{aligned}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}A(n, j) &= \sum_k (-1)^{n-k} \binom{n}{n-k} \binom{k}{j} = \\ &= C_{tn} (1-t)^n t^j (1-t)^{-j-1} = C_{t^{n-j}} (1-t)^{n-j-1} = \\ &= 0, \text{ except } A(n, n) = 1, \quad \text{QED.} \quad ■\end{aligned}$$

More generally, the same method enables to prove that the polynomials  $S_n(x) := \sum_{k=1}^n S(n, k) x^k$  satisfy  $xS_n(x) = \Delta^n S_1(x)$  ( $\varpi(n) = S_n(1)$ ). In practice, the computation of the  $\varpi(n)$  by way of this property proceeds as in the table shown. One goes from left to right, upward under an

angle of  $45^\circ$ , starting from the table obtained for  $w(n-1)$ . Then, after having arrived at the value of  $w(n)$ , it is brought down to the bottom of the first column, and one starts again. In the table is shown the computation of  $w(6)$ , starting from the table obtained by computing  $w(5)$ :  $52 + 15 = 67$ ,  $67 + 20 = 87$ , etc....

$n$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
$w(n)$	1	2	5	15	52	203	877
$\Delta w(n)$	1	3	10	37	151	674	
$\Delta^2 w(n)$	2	7	27	114	523		
$\Delta^3 w(n)$	5	20	87	409			
$\Delta^4 w(n)$	15	67	322				
$\Delta^5 w(n)$	52	255					
$\Delta^6 w(n)$	203						

### 5.5. STIRLING NUMBERS OF THE FIRST KIND $s(n, k)$ AND THEIR GENERATING FUNCTIONS

We have already met two definitions of the *Stirling numbers of the first kind*  $s(n, k)$ :

(1) The  $s(n, k)$  have for ‘double’ GF ([14p], p. 50):

$$\begin{aligned}
 [5a] \quad \Psi(t, u) &= \sum_{n, k \geq 0} s(n, k) \frac{t^n}{n!} u^k \\
 &= 1 + \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{t^n}{n!} \left\{ \sum_{1 \leq k \leq n} s(n, k) u^k \right\} = (1+t)^u,
 \end{aligned}$$

or for ‘vertical’ GF ([14r], p. 51):

$$[5b] \quad \Psi_k(t) = \sum_{n \geq k} s(n, k) \frac{t^n}{n!} = \frac{1}{k!} \log^k (1+t);$$

hence  $s(n, k) = 0$  if not  $1 \leq k \leq n$  except  $s(0, 0) = 1$ .

(2) The infinite (lower) triangular matrix of the  $s(n, k)$  is the inverse

of the matrix of the  $S(n, k)$ , [6f] (p. 144):

$$[5c] \quad [s(n, k)] = [S(n, k)]^{-1}.$$

The  $s(n, k)$  are not all positive, their sign is given by:  $|s(n, k)| = (-1)^{k+n} s(n, k)$ , which follows from [5a], if one replaces  $t, u$  by  $-t, -u$ . On p. 235 we will give the combinatorial interpretation of  $|s(n, k)|$ , the *unsigned* or *absolute* Stirling number of the first kind, which may be denoted by  $\mathfrak{s}(n, k)$ :

$$[5d] \quad \mathfrak{s}(n, k) := |s(n, k)| = (-1)^{k+n} s(n, k).$$

**THEOREM A.** *The  $s(n, k)$  have for ‘horizontal’ GF (this is often taken as definition of the  $s(n, k)$ ):*

$$[5e] \quad (x)_n = \sum_{0 \leq k \leq n} s(n, k) x^k,$$

$$[5f] \quad \langle x \rangle_n = \sum_{0 \leq k \leq n} \mathfrak{s}(n, k) x^k,$$

where  $(x)_n = x(x-1)\cdots(x-n+1)$ ,  $\langle x \rangle_n = x(x+1)\cdots(x+n-1)$ ,  $(x)_0 = \langle x \rangle_0 = 1$ .

■ It suffices, by [12e, e'] (p. 37) to identify the coefficients of  $t^n/n!$  in:

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n, k \geq 0} s(n, k) \frac{t^n}{n!} x^k &= (1+t)^x = \sum_{n \geq 0} (x)_n \frac{t^n}{n!}, \\ \sum_{n, k \geq 0} \mathfrak{s}(n, k) \frac{t^n}{n!} x^k &= (1-t)^{-x} = \sum_{n \geq 0} \langle x \rangle_n \frac{t^n}{n!}. \quad \blacksquare \end{aligned}$$

**THEOREM B.** *The  $s(n, k)$  have for ‘horizontal’ GF:*

$$\begin{aligned} [5g] \quad \Psi_n(u) &= \sum_{1 \leq k \leq n} s(n, k) u^{n-k} = \\ &= (1-u)(1-2u)\cdots(1-(n-1)u) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} [5h] \quad \Psi_n(-u) &= \sum_{1 \leq k \leq n} \mathfrak{s}(n, k) u^{n-k} = \\ &= (1+u)(1+2u)\cdots(1+(n-1)u). \end{aligned}$$

■ Replace  $x$  by  $u^{-1}$  in [5e, f], and simplify. ■

**THEOREM C.** *The  $\mathfrak{s}(n+1, k+1)$ , for  $n$  fixed and variable  $k$ , are the elemen-*

tary symmetric functions of the first  $n$  integers. In other words, for  $l=1, 2, \dots, n$ :

$$[5i] \quad s(n+1, n+1-l) = \sum_{1 \leq i_1 < i_2 < \dots < i_l \leq n} i_1 i_2 \dots i_l.$$

Differently formulated, the unsigned Stirling number of the first kind  $s(n, k)$  appears here as the sum of all products of  $n-k$  different integers taken from  $[n-1] = \{1, 2, \dots, n-1\}$ . (There are  $\binom{n-1}{k-1}$  such products.)

For instance,  $s(6, 2) = s(6, 2) = 1 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 4 + 1 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 + 1 \cdot 2 \cdot 4 \cdot 5 + 1 \cdot 3 \cdot 4 \cdot 5 + 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 4 \cdot 5 = 274$ .

■ This is clear from [5h], or if one prefers:

$$[5j] \quad (x+1)(x+2)\cdots(x+n) = \sum_{0 \leq k \leq n} s(n+1, k+1) x^k$$

$$[5k] \quad (1+u)(1+2u)\cdots(1+nu) = \sum_{0 \leq l \leq n} s(n+1, n+1-l) u^l. \quad ■$$

(For generalizations, see [Toscano, 1939], [Storchi, 1948].)

## 5.6. RECURRENCE RELATIONS BETWEEN THE $s(n, k)$

**THEOREM A.** The Stirling numbers of the first kind  $s(n, k)$  satisfy the 'triangular' recurrence relation:

$$[6a] \quad s(n, k) = s(n-1, k-1) - (n-1)s(n-1, k), \quad n, k \geq 1; \\ s(n, 0) = s(0, k) = 0, \quad \text{except } s(0, 0) = 1.$$

For the unsigned numbers, this can be written

$$[6a'] \quad s(n, k) = s(n-1, k-1) + (n-1)s(n-1, k).$$

This is a means for a quick computation of the first values of the  $s(n, k)$  (see table on p. 310 and Exercise 16, p. 226); particularly:

$$[6b] \quad s(n, 1) = (-1)^{n-1} (n-1)!, \\ s(n, n-1) = -\binom{n}{2}, \quad s(n, n) = 1.$$

■ Equate the coefficients of  $x^k$  in the first and last member of [6c]:

$$[6c] \quad \sum_k s(n, k) x^k = (x)_n = \{x - (n - 1)\} (x)_{n-1} = \\ = \{x - (n - 1)\} \sum_h s(n - 1, h) x^h. \quad \blacksquare$$

**THEOREM B.** *The  $s(n, k)$  satisfy the ‘vertical’ recurrence relations:*

$$[6d] \quad ks(n, k) = \sum_{k-1 \leq l \leq n-1} (-1)^{n-l-1} \binom{n}{l} s(l, k-1),$$

$$[6e] \quad s(n+1, k+1) = \sum_{k \leq l \leq n} (-1)^{n-1} (l+1)(l+2)\cdots(n) s(l, k).$$

■ For [6d], equate the coefficients of  $u^{k-1} t^n / n!$  in  $\partial\Psi/\partial u = \Psi \log(1+t)$ , [5a] (p. 212). For [6e], use in an analogous way  $\partial\Psi/\partial t = u(1+t)^{-1}\Psi$ . ■

**THEOREM C.** *The  $s(n, k)$  satisfy the ‘horizontal’ recurrence relations ([Lagrange, 1771]):*

$$[6f] \quad (n-k) s(n, k) = \sum_{k+1 \leq l \leq n} (-1)^{l-k} \binom{l}{k-1} s(n, l)$$

$$[6g] \quad s(n, k) = \sum_{k \leq l \leq n} s(n+1, l+1) n^{l-k}.$$

■ For [6f], equate the coefficients of  $x^k$  in the expressions to the right of (\*) and (\*\*):

$$\begin{aligned} x(x-1)_n &= x \sum_l s(n, l) (x-1)^l \\ &\stackrel{(*)}{=} \sum_{h, l} (-1)^{l-h} s(n, l) \binom{l}{h} x^{h+1} = (x-n) (x)_n \\ &\stackrel{(**)}{=} \sum_j s(n, j) x^{j+1} - n \sum_j s(n, j) x^j. \end{aligned}$$

For [6g], equate the coefficients of  $u^{n-k}$  in  $\Psi_{n-1}(= \{1 - (n-1)u\}^{-1}\Psi_n$ , [5g] (p. 213). ■

Figure 35 shows the *diagrams* of the recurrence relations established

in the preceding section. (See p. 12. Analogous diagrams hold evidently as well for the recurrence relations of pp. 208 and 209.)

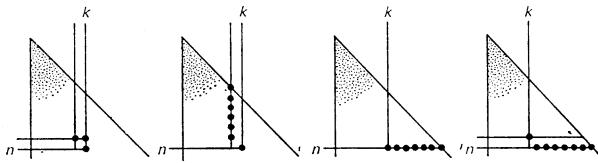


Fig. 35.

### 5.7. THE VALUES OF $s(n, k)$

According to [1b] (p. 204) the Stirling number of the second kind  $S(n, k)$  can be expressed as a single summation of *elementary* terms, that is, which are themselves *products* and *quotients* of *factorials* and *powers*. There does not exist an analogous formula for the numbers of the first kind, the ‘shortest formula’ [7a, a’] below being a *double* summation of *elementary* terms. Shortwise, we will say that  $S(n, k)$  is of *rank one* and that  $s(n, k)$  is of *rank two*.

**THEOREM A.** ([Schlömilch 1852]). *The ‘exact’ value of  $s(n, k)$  is:*

$$[7a] \quad s(n, k) = \sum_{0 \leq h \leq n-k} (-1)^h \binom{n-1+h}{n-k+h} \binom{2n-k}{n-k-h} S(n-k+h, h)$$

$$[7a'] \quad = \sum_{0 \leq j \leq h \leq n-k} (-1)^{j+h} \binom{h}{j} \binom{n-1+h}{n-k+h} \binom{2n-k}{n-k-h} \frac{(h-j)^{n-k+h}}{h!}.$$

■ We use the Lagrange formula (p. 148). Let  $f(t) := e^t - 1$  and its inverse function  $f^{(-1)}(t) = \log(1+t)$ . We get, by [5b] (p. 212), for (I), [8b] (p. 148), for (II), [5h] (p. 142), for (III) and [2a] (p. 206), for (IV):

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{k!}{n!} s(n, k) &\stackrel{(I)}{=} C_{tn} \log^k(1+t) \stackrel{(II)}{=} \frac{k}{n} C_{tn-k} \left(\frac{e^t - 1}{t}\right)^{-n} \\ &\stackrel{(III)}{=} \frac{k}{n} \cdot n \binom{2n-k}{n} \sum_{h=0}^{n-k} (-1)^h \frac{1}{n+h} \binom{n-k}{h} C_{tn-k} \left(\frac{e^t - 1}{t}\right)^h \\ &\stackrel{(IV)}{=} k \binom{2n-k}{n} \sum_{h=0}^{n-k} (-1)^h \frac{1}{n+h} \binom{n-k}{h} \frac{h! S(n-k+h, h)}{(n-k+h)!}; \end{aligned}$$

hence [7a] follows after simplifications. If we substitute the exact value [1b] (p. 204) into [7a], we obtain [7a'].

For small values of  $k$ , [7a, a'] is perhaps less convenient than expression [7b] below.

**THEOREM B.** *We have:*

$$[7b] \quad s(n+1, k+1) = \frac{n!}{k!} Y_k(\zeta_n(1), -1! \zeta_n(2), 2! \zeta_n(3), \dots),$$

where  $Y_k$  stands for the Bell polynomial (complete exponential, [3b, c] (p. 134), tabulated on p. 307) and  $\zeta_n(s) := \sum_{j=1}^n j^{-s}$ .

■ In fact, by [5j] (p. 214) for (\*):

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_k s(n+1, k+1) x^k &\stackrel{(*)}{=} n! (1+x) \left(1 + \frac{x}{2}\right) \cdots \left(1 + \frac{x}{n}\right) \\ &= n! \exp \left\{ \sum_{j=1}^n \log \left(1 + xj^{-1}\right) \right\} \\ &= n! \exp \left\{ \sum_{j=1}^n \sum_{s \geq 1} (-1)^{s-1} x^s s^{-1} j^{-s} \right\} \\ &= n! \exp \left\{ \sum_{s \geq 1} (-1)^{s-1} x^s s^{-1} \zeta_n(s) \right\}, \end{aligned}$$

and then we apply definition [3c] (p. 307) of the  $Y_k$ . ■  
(There is an analogous formula for each elementary symmetric function Exercise 9, (4) p. 158. See also Exercises 16, p. 226, and 9, p. 293.)

Thus:

$$s(n+1, 2) = n! \left(1 + \frac{1}{2} + \cdots + \frac{1}{n}\right) = n! H_n,$$

where  $H_n$  denotes the harmonic number.

$$\begin{aligned} s(n+1, 3) &= \frac{n!}{2} \left\{ H_n^2 - \left(1 + \frac{1}{2^2} + \cdots + \frac{1}{n^2}\right)\right\} \\ s(n+1, 4) &= \frac{n!}{6} \left\{ H_n^3 - 3H_n \left(1 + \frac{1}{2^2} + \cdots + \frac{1}{n^2}\right) + \right. \\ &\quad \left. + 2 \left(1 + \frac{1}{2^3} + \cdots + \frac{1}{n^3}\right)\right\}. \end{aligned}$$

### 5.8. CONGRUENCE PROBLEMS

It is interesting to know in advance or to discover some congruences in any table of a sequence of combinatorial integers. This is a rapid way of checking computations, and an attractive connection between Combinatorial Analysis and Number Theory. We show two typical examples in this matter.

Let two *polynomials* be given:

$$f(x) = \sum_k a_k x^k, \quad g(x) = \sum_k b_k x^k$$

with *integer* coefficients,  $a_k, b_k \in \mathbb{Z}$ . We often write, when  $a_k \equiv b_k \pmod{m}$  for all  $k$ :

$$[8a] \quad f(x) \equiv g(x) \pmod{m}$$

and we say '*f congruent g modulo m*'.

**THEOREM A. (Lagrange).** *For each prime p, we have in the sense of [8a]:*

$$[8b] \quad (x)_p := x(x-1)\cdots(x-p+1) \equiv x^p - x \pmod{p}.$$

*In other words, the Stirling numbers of the first kind satisfy:*

$$[8c] \quad s(p, k) \equiv 0 \pmod{p},$$

*except*  $s(p, p) = 1$ , *and (Wilson theorem)*

$$[8d] \quad s(p, 1) = (p-1)! \equiv -1 \pmod{p}.$$

■ For  $p$  fixed, we argue by induction, on  $k$  *decreasing* from  $p-1$ . By [6b] (p. 214), for  $(*)$ , and Theorem C (p. 15) for  $(**)$ , [8c] is true when  $k=p-1$ :

$$s(p, p-1) \stackrel{*}{=} -\binom{p}{2} \stackrel{(**)}{\equiv} 0 \pmod{p}.$$

Now, by [6f] (p. 215):

$$[8e] \quad (p-k)s(p, k) = \sum_{k+1 \leq l \leq p} (-1)^{l-k} \binom{l}{k-1} s(p, l).$$

Assume that [8c] is true, thus,  $s(p, l) \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$  for  $(3 \leq l \leq p-1)$ . Then, [8e] implies, by Theorem C (p. 14) for  $(*)$ :

$$-ks(p, k) \equiv (-1)^{p-k} \binom{p}{k-1} s(p, p) \stackrel{(*)}{\equiv} 0 \pmod{p},$$

from which [8c] follows, since  $2 \leq k \leq p-2$ .

For [8d], [6f] (p. 215) gives in the case that  $k=1$ , by [8c]:  $(p-1) \times s(p, 1) \equiv 1 \pmod{p}$ ; hence, since  $s(p, 1) = (-1)^{p-1} (p-1)!$ , [6b]:

$$1 \equiv (p-1)(p-1)! = p! - (p-1)! \equiv -(p-1)! \pmod{p} \quad \blacksquare$$

(For generalizations see [Bell, 1937], [Touchard, 1956], [Carlitz, 1965a, b].)

**CONSEQUENCE (Fermat theorem).** *For all integers  $a \geq 0$ , and each prime number  $p$ ,*

$$[8f] \quad a^p \equiv a \pmod{p}.$$

Put  $x=a$  in [8b], then  $(a)_p \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$ , because, among  $p$  consecutive integers, at least one is a multiple of  $p$ .

**THEOREM B.** *For each prime number  $p$ , the Stirling numbers of the second kind satisfy:*

$$[8g] \quad S(p, k) \equiv 0 \pmod{p}, \text{ except } S(p, 1) = S(p, p) = 1.$$

■ In fact, by [1b] (p. 205), for (\*), [8f] for (\*\*), and Example 2 (p. 153), for (\*\*\*)<sup>1</sup>, we have for  $k \geq 2$ :

$$k! S(p, k) \stackrel{(*)}{=} \sum_i (-1)^{k-i} \binom{k}{i} i^p \stackrel{(**)}{\equiv} \sum_i (-1)^{k-i} \binom{k}{i} i^{***} 0.$$

Thus  $p$  divides  $k! S(p, k)$ , hence  $S(p, k)$ , when  $k \leq p-1$ , because then  $p$  is relatively prime with respect to  $k!$  ■

*Note.* One can prove this also by induction, using [3f], p. 209, as in the proof of Theorem A.

## SUPPLEMENT AND EXERCISES

1. *Banners and chromatic polynomials.* (1) Show that the number  $d(n, k)$  of banners with  $n$  vertical bands and  $k$  colours, two adjacent bands of different colour, equals  $k! S(n-1, k-1)$ . (2) Moreover, for every tree  $\mathcal{T}$  over  $N$ ,  $|N|=n$ ,  $d(n, k)$  is also the number of colourings of the  $n$  nodes with  $k$  colours such that two adjacent nodes have a different colour. (Compare with Exercise 1, p. 198.) (3) More generally, considering a

graph  $\mathcal{G}$  with  $n$  nodes and introducing the number  $d(\mathcal{G}, k)$  of colourings of these nodes with  $k$  colours, having the preceding property, show that the chromatic polynomial (of p. 179) satisfies:  $P_{\mathcal{G}}(\lambda) = \sum_{k=1}^n d(\mathcal{G}, k) \times \lambda^k$ . \*(4) What is the number of checkerboards of dimensions  $(m \times n)$  with  $k$  colours? (Two squares with a side in common must be coloured differently.)

**2. Lie derivative and operational calculus.** Let  $\lambda(t)$  be a formal series. We define the operator  $\lambda D$  (Lie derivative) by  $(\lambda D)f := \lambda Df = \lambda f'$ , where  $D$  is the usual derivation (p. 41). Similarly,  $(D\lambda)f := D(\lambda f) = \lambda f' + \lambda f'$ .  
(1)  $(tD)^n = \sum_{l=1}^n S(n, l) t^l D^l$  and  $(Dt)^n = \sum_{l=0}^n S(n+1, l+1) t^l D^l$ . (2)  
 $(e^{bt}D)^n = e^{nb} t^n \sum_{l=1}^n S(n, l) b^{n-l} D^l$ . (3)  $(t^{a+1}D)^n = t^{na} \sum_{l=1}^n P_{n,l}(a) t^l D^l$ , where  $\sum_{n \geq l} P_{n,l} t^n / n! = (1/l!) \{(1-at)^{-1/a} - 1\}$ . (4) Find an explicit formula for  $(\lambda D)^n$  and  $(D\lambda)^n$  ([Comtet, 1973]). (5) The following result of Pourchet shows that this problem is closely connected with the Faà di Bruno formula:

$$\left( \lambda(x) \frac{dx}{dx} \right)^n f(x) = \frac{d^n}{dw^n} f(x(w)), \quad \text{where } \frac{dx}{dw} = \lambda(x), \quad x = x(w).$$

Apply this method to prove:  $(x \log x \cdot D)^n = \sum_{k \leq l \leq n} S(n, l) S(l, k) (\log x)^l x^k D^k$ .

**3. The lattice of the partitions of a set.** Let be given two partitions  $\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{T}$  of a set  $N$ . Then we say that  $\mathcal{S}$  is *finer* than  $\mathcal{T}$  or that  $\mathcal{S}$  is a *subpartition* of  $\mathcal{T}$ , denoted by  $\mathcal{S} \leq \mathcal{T}$ , if and only if each block of  $\mathcal{S}$  is contained in a block of  $\mathcal{T}$ . Show that this order relation on the set of partitions of  $N$  makes it into a *lattice* (Definition D, p. 59).

**4. Bernoulli and Stirling numbers and sums of powers.** We write the GF of the Bernoulli numbers  $B_n$ , [14a] (p. 48), in the form:

$$[\#] \quad \sum_{n \geq 0} B_n \frac{t^n}{n!} = \frac{t}{e^t - 1} = \frac{\log \{1 + (e^t - 1)\}}{e^t - 1}.$$

Show that  $B_n = \sum_{k=0}^n (-1)^k k! S(n, k) / (k+1)$ . Use this to obtain the value of  $B_n$ , expressed as a double sum. Show also, by substituting

$u := e^t - 1$  into [‡], that  $\sum_k s(n, k) B_k = (-1)^n n!/(n+1)$ . Verify the formula  $B_n = \sum_j (-1)^j \binom{n+1}{j+1} Z(j, n)/(j+1)$ , where  $Z(j, n) = 1^n + 2^n + \dots + j^n$  ([Bergmann, 1967] and p. 155. See also [Gould, 1972] which gives other explicit formulas for the Bernoulli numbers). Show that  $Z(n, r) = \sum_{j=1}^{r+1} (j-1)! S(r+1, j) \binom{n}{j}$ .

**5. A transformation of formal series.** For each integer  $k \geq 1$ , let  $T_k$  be the transformation of formal series defined by:  $f = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n t^n \mapsto T_k f = \sum_{n \geq 0} n^k a_n t^n$ . (1) Show that  $T_k f = \sum_{h=1}^k S(k, h) t^h D^h f$  ( $D$  is the differentiation operator, p. 41). (2) Deduce from this the value of  $\sum_{n \geq 0} n^k t^n$  in the form of a rational fraction, and also that of  $\sum_{n=0}^q n^k t^n$ . (3) Furthermore, with the Eulerian numbers  $A(k, h)$  (pp. 51 and 242) we have  $\Phi_k(t) := (1-t)^{k+1} \sum_{n \geq 0} n^k t^n = \sum_{h=1}^k A(k, h) t^h$ . [Hint: Apply [14v] (p. 51) to  $\sum_{k \geq 0} \Phi_k(t) u^k / k!$ .] (4) Express  $\sum_{n \geq 0} n^k t^n / n!$  in the form of a product of  $e^t$  with a polynomial. (5) Solve analogous problems for  $\sum_{n \geq 0} n^k \langle \alpha \rangle_n t^n / n!$  (and  $\sum_{n=0}^q$ ), where  $\alpha$  is a complex number. (6) Study the transformation  $T_{k, c}$ , with  $c$  a given integer  $\geq 0$ , such that  $T_{k, c} f := \sum_{n \geq 0} (n+c)^k a_n t^n$ .

**6. The Taylor-Newton formula.** For each polynomial  $P(x)$  we have ( $\Delta$  is the difference operator defined on p. 13):

$$P(x) = \sum_{k \geq 0} \frac{(x-a)_k}{k!} \Delta^k P(a) = (I + \Delta)^x P(0).$$

More generally, let be given a sequence  $\alpha_0, \alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots$  of different complex numbers,  $f$  a formal series (with complex coefficients) and  $t, x$  two indeterminates. We put  $(x)_n = (x-\alpha_0)(x-\alpha_1)\dots(x-\alpha_{n-1})$  and  $(\alpha_k)_l = \prod_{j=0, j \neq k}^l (\alpha_k - \alpha_j)$  for  $k \leq l$ . Prove then the multiplication formula:

$$f(tx) = \sum_{n \geq 0} (x)_n \sum_{j=0}^n \frac{f(t\alpha_j)}{(\alpha_j)_n}.$$

Use this to recover the formulas of Exercise 29 (p. 167).

**7. Associated Stirling numbers of the second kind.** For  $r$  integer  $\geq 1$ , let  $S_r(n, k)$  be the number of partitions of the set  $N$ ,  $|N|=n$ , into  $k$  blocks, all of cardinality  $\geq r$ . We call this number the  $r$ -associated Stirling number

of the second kind. In particular,  $S_1(n, k) = S(n, k)$ . Then we have the GF:

$$\sum_{n, k \geq 0} S_r(n, k) u^k \frac{t^n}{n!} = \exp \left\{ u \left( \frac{t^r}{r!} + \frac{t^{r+1}}{(r+1)!} + \dots \right) \right\},$$

and the ‘triangular’ recurrence relations:

$$S_r(n+1, k) = k S_r(n, k) + \binom{n}{r-1} S_r(n-r+1, k-1).$$

Moreover,  $S_2(n, k) \equiv 0 \pmod{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \dots (2k-1)}$  and, for  $l \geq 1$ ,  $(-1)^l l! = \sum_{m=1}^l (-1)^m S_2(l+m, m)$ . The first values of  $S_2(n, k)$  are:

$k \setminus n$	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
2		3	10	25	56	119	246	501	1012	2035	
3			15	105	490	1918	6825	22935	74316		
4				105	1260	9450	56980	302995			
5					945	17325	190575				
6							10395				

$n \setminus k$	13	14	15	16	17	18
1	1	1	1	1	1	1
2	4082	8177	16368	32751	65518	131053
3	235092	731731	2252341	6879678	20900922	63259533
4	1487200	6914908	30950920	134779645	575156036	2417578670
5	1636635	12122110	81431350	510880370	3049616570	17539336815
6	270270	4099095	47507460	466876410	4104160060	33309926650
7		135135	4729725	94594500	1422280860	17892864990
8				2027025	91891800	2343240900
9					34459425	

Let  $P_r(t) = \sum_{k=0}^{r-1} t^k / k!$ . Use the  $S_r(n, k)$  to expand  $(P_r(t))^u, P_r(t), P_r(u)$  and  $\log(P_r(t))$ .

**8. Distributions of balls in boxes.** The number of distributions of  $n$  balls into  $k$  boxes equals: (1)  $k^n$  if all balls and all boxes are different;  $k! S(n, k)$  if no box is allowed to be empty. (2)  $\binom{n+k-1}{n}$  if the balls are

indistinguishable, and all the boxes different;  $\binom{n-1}{k-1}$  if, moreover, no box is allowed to be empty (Theorem C., p. 15). (3) Suppose the boxes are all different, and the balls of equal size, but painted in different colours. Balls of the same colour are supposed to be not distinguishable. In this way we define a partition of the set  $N$  of balls. If there are in this partition  $c_i$   $i$ -blocks,  $i=1, 2, 3, \dots$ , then the number of distributions is equal to  $\binom{k}{1}^{c_1} \binom{k+1}{2}^{c_2} \binom{k+2}{3}^{c_3} \dots, c_1 + 2c_2 + \dots = n$  [use (2)]. (4) What do we get for all the preceding answers when the boxes and balls are put in rows? (For all these problems, see especially [\*MacMahon, 1915–16]. Good information is also found in [\*Riordan, 1958], pp. 90–106.)

**9. Return to the Bell polynomials. Application to rational fractions.** The exponential partial Bell polynomials  $B_{n,k}$  are a generalization of the Stirling numbers, because  $B_{n,k}(1, 1, \dots) = S(n, k)$ , [3g] (p. 135). (1) Let  $a_1, a_2, \dots$  be integers  $\geq 0$ . Show that  $B_{n,k}(a_1, a_2, \dots)$  equals the number of partitions of  $N$ ,  $|N|=n$ , into  $k$  blocks, the  $i$ -blocks being painted with colours taken from a stock  $A_i$ , given in advance, and with  $a_i$  colours in the stock  $A_i$ ,  $i=1, 2, 3, \dots$ . (It is not compulsory to use all colours of each stock!) (2) We denote the value of the  $n$ -th derivative in the point  $x=a$  of  $F(x)$  [or  $G(x)$ ] by  $f_n$  [or  $g_n$ ];  $f_0, g_0 = F(a), G(a)$ . Suppose that  $x=a$  is a multiple root of order  $k$  of  $G(x)=0$ , and that  $F(x)/G(x)$  has the singular part  $\sum_{p=1}^k \gamma_p (x-a)^{-p}$ . Show that the coefficients  $\gamma_p$  equal:

$$\sum_{0 \leq j \leq l \leq k-p} \frac{(-1)^j j! k! f_{k-p-l}}{l! (k-p-l)! g_k^{j+1}} B_{l,j} \left( \frac{g_{k+1}}{\binom{k+1}{1}}, \frac{g_{k+2}}{\binom{k+2}{2}}, \dots \right).$$

(For  $k=1$  we recover  $\gamma = f_0/g_1 = F(a)/G'(a)$ , that is the residue of  $F/G$  when  $x=a$  is a simple pole.) (3) Now take  $F$  and  $G$  to be *polynomials*,  $G = \prod_{i=1}^n (x-a_i)^{a_i}$ , with all different  $a_i$ . Express the  $\gamma_{p,i}$  by an ‘exact’ formula of rank  $\leq n-2$ .

**10. The Schröder problem.** ([Schröder, 1870]. See also [Carlitz, Riordan, 1955], [Comtet, 1970], [Knödel, 1951]). Let  $N$  be a finite set,  $|N|=n$ , and let us use the name ‘Schröder system’ for any system (of blocks of  $N$ )

$\mathcal{S} \subset \mathfrak{P}'(N)$  such that: (a) Every 1-block of  $N$  belongs to it:  $\mathfrak{P}_1(N) \subset \mathcal{S}$   
 (b)  $N$  does not belong to it:  $N \notin \mathcal{S}$ . (c)  $B, B' \in \mathcal{S} \Rightarrow B \subset B'$  or  $B' \subset B$  or  
 $B \cap B' = \emptyset$ . We denote the family of all Schröder systems of  $N$  by  
 $s(N)$ , and the problem is now to compute its cardinal  $s_n := |s(N)|$ . (1)  
 Let the number  $k_i$  of maximal  $i$ -blocks be fixed,  $i \in [n-1]$ . (Maximal  
 block is a block contained in no other.) Then we have:

$$[a] \quad k_1 + 2k_2 + \cdots + (n-1)k_{n-1} = n,$$

and the number of the corresponding  $\mathcal{S} \in s(N)$  equals:  $n!s_1^{k_1}s_2^{k_2} \cdots (1!)^{-k_1}(2!)^{-k_2} \cdots (k_1!)^{-1}(k_2!)^{-1} \cdots ; s_1 := 1$  (2) Observe that the condition  
 [a] is equivalent to the two conditions  $k_1 + 2k_2 + \cdots + nk_n = n$ ,  $k_1 + k_2 + \cdots + k_n \geq 2$ . Show that the GF  $y := \sum_{n \geq 0} s_n t^n / n!$  satisfies:

$$[aa] \quad e^y - 2y - 1 + t = 0,$$

(3) We have  $s_n = \sum_{k=0}^{n-2} S_2(n+k, k+1)$ , codiagonal sums of the associated  
 Stirling numbers of Exercise 7 (p. 221). So,  $s_4 = 1 + 10 + 15 = 26$ . Hence  
 the table of values:

$n$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
$s_n$	1	1	4	26	236	2752	39208	660032	12818912	282137824

(4)  $s_p \equiv 1 \pmod{p}$ , for  $p$  prime. (5)  $s_n = \sum_{k \geq 1} 2^{-n-k} S(n+k-1, k)$  (style Dobinski). (6) Explicitly,

$$s_n = \sum_{\substack{1 \leq j+1 \leq k \leq l \leq n-1}} \frac{(-1)^{j+k+l}}{k!} \binom{k}{j} \binom{n+l-1}{n+k-1} (k-j)^{n+k-1}.$$

(7) Asymptotically,

$$s_n \approx \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\frac{A}{\pi n}} \frac{(n-1)!}{A^n} \left\{ 1 + \sum_{l \geq 1} \frac{d_l}{n^l} \right\}, \quad n \rightarrow \infty,$$

where  $A = 2 \log 2 - 1 = 0.386294 \dots$  and  $d_l$  are polynomials in  $A$ :  $d_1 = (9-A)/24$ ,  $d_2 = (225-90A+A^2)/192, \dots$

**11.** *Congruences of the (Bell) number of partition  $\varpi(n)$ .* Let  $p$  be a prime number. Modulo  $p$ , we have  $\varpi(p) \equiv 2$ ,  $\varpi(p+1) \equiv 3$  and, more generally,  $\varpi(p^v + h) \equiv v\varpi(h) + \varpi(h+1)$ . Modulo  $p^2$ , we have  $\varpi(2p) - 2\varpi(p+1) - 2\varpi(p) + p + 5 \equiv 0$  ([Touchard, 1956]).

**12.** *Generalization of  $\sum \binom{n}{k}^2 = \binom{2n}{n}$ .* Let  $P_{n,r}(z) = \sum_{k=0}^n k^r \binom{n}{k}^2 z^{n-k}$ , where  $r$  is integer  $\geq 0$ . Use Exercise 5 (1) (p. 221) to show that

$$P_{n,r}(z) = \sum_q S(r, q) (n)_q C_{t^{n-q}} (1+zt)^n (1+t)^{n-q}.$$

Thus,

$$A(n, r) := P_{n,r}(1) = \sum_{k=0}^n k^r \binom{n}{k}^2 = \sum_q S(r, q) (n)_q \binom{2n-q}{n}.$$

Particularly,  $A(n, 0) = \binom{2n}{n}$ ,  $A(n, 1) = (2n-1) \binom{2n-2}{n-1}$ ,  $A(n, 2) = n^2 \binom{2n-2}{n-1}$ ,  $A(n, 3) = n \binom{n+1}{2} \binom{2n-2}{n-1}$ . Similarly,

$$\sum_{k=0}^n (-1)^k k^r \binom{n}{k}^2 = \sum_{\substack{2i+j+q=n \\ i+j+q=n}} (-1)^i S(q, r) (n)_q \binom{n-q}{i} \binom{q}{j}.$$

**13.** *A ‘universal’ generating function.* The following solves, for partitions of a set, a problem analogous to the problem for partitions of integers, which is solved by Theorem B (p. 98). Let  $\mathfrak{A}$  be an infinite matrix consisting of 0 and 1,  $\mathfrak{A} = [[\alpha_{i,j}]]$ ,  $i \geq 1, j \geq 0$ ,  $\alpha_{i,j} = 0$  or 1. Let  $s(n|k, \mathfrak{A})$  be the number of partitions of a set  $N$  into  $k$  blocks such that the number of blocks of size (=cardinal number)  $i$  equals to one of the integers  $j \geq 0$  for which  $\alpha_{i,j} = 1$ . Then we have the ‘universal’ GF:

$$\sum_{n,k \geq 0} s(n|k, \mathfrak{A}) u^k \frac{t^n}{n!} = \prod_{i \geq 1} \left\{ \sum_{j \geq 0} \frac{\alpha_{i,j}}{j!} \left( u \frac{t^i}{i!} \right)^j \right\}.$$

In particular we obtain the following table of GF, where \* means no condition’ ( $u=1$  provides the ‘total’ GF):

Number of blocks	Size of each block	GF by 'number of blocks'	'Total' GF
*	*	$\exp(u(e^t - 1))$	$\exp(e^t - 1)$
*	odd	$\exp(u \operatorname{sh} t)$	$\exp(\operatorname{sh} t)$
*	even	$\exp(u(\operatorname{ch} t - 1))$	$\exp(\operatorname{ch} t - 1)$
odd	*	$\operatorname{sh}(u(e^t - 1))$	$\operatorname{sh}(e^t - 1)$
even	*	$\operatorname{ch}(u(e^t - 1))$	$\operatorname{ch}(e^t - 1)$
odd	odd	$\operatorname{sh}(u \operatorname{sh} t)$	$\operatorname{sh}(\operatorname{sh} t)$
odd	even	$\operatorname{sh}(u(\operatorname{ch} t - 1))$	$\operatorname{sh}(\operatorname{ch} t - 1)$
even	odd	$\operatorname{ch}(u \operatorname{sh} t)$	$\operatorname{ch}(\operatorname{sh} t)$
even	even	$\operatorname{ch}(u(\operatorname{ch} t - 1))$	$\operatorname{ch}(\operatorname{ch} t - 1)$

14. '*Stackings*' of  $x$ . Let  $f_l(x)$  be the sequence of functions defined by  $f_1 = x, f_2 = x^x, \dots, f_l = x^{f_{l-1}}, l \geq 2$ . Determine and study the coefficients of the expansion  $f_l(x) = \sum_{p,q \geq 0} a_l(p, q) x^p \log^q x$ . (See also p. 139.)

\*15. *The number of 'connected'  $n$ -relations.* Let  $p$  and  $q$  be two integers  $\geq 1$ . A relation  $\mathcal{A} \subset [p] \times [q]$  is called '*connected*' if  $\operatorname{pr}_1 \mathcal{A} = [p]$ ,  $\mathcal{A} = [q]$  (p. 59), and if any two points of  $\mathcal{A}$  can be connected by a polygonal path with unit sides in horizontal or vertical direction, all whose vertices are in  $\mathcal{A}$ . We say also that  $\mathcal{A}$  is  $(p \times q)$ -animal. Thus, in Figure 36, (I) is an animal, but (II) is not. Compute or estimate the

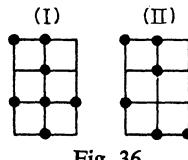


Fig. 36.

number  $A(n; p, q)$  of the  $A$  such that  $|A|=n$ , also called '*n-ominoes*' (This term is taken from [\*Golomb, 1966]. For an approach to this problem, see [Kreweras, 1969] and [Read, 1962a]). Analogous question for dimension  $d \geq 3$ ,  $A \subset [p_1] \times [p_2] \times \dots \times [p_d]$ .

16. *Values of  $S(n, n-a)$  and  $s(n, n-a)$ .* (1) We have

$$S(n, n-a) = \sum_{j=a+1}^{2a} \binom{n}{j} S_2(j, j-a),$$

$S_2$  as defined in Exercise 7 (p. 221). Thus,  $S(n, n)=1$ ,

$S(n, n-1) = \binom{n}{2}$ ,  $S(n, n-2) = \binom{n}{3} + 3\binom{n}{4} = \frac{1}{4}\binom{n}{3}(3n-5)$ ,  
 $S(n, n-3) = \binom{n}{4} + 10\binom{n}{5} + 15\binom{n}{6} = \frac{1}{2}\binom{n}{4}(n^2 - 5n + 6)$ . (2) Similarly, we have  $s(n, n-a) = \sum_{j=a+1}^{2a} \binom{n}{j} s_2(j, j-a)$ , where the  $s_2$  are defined by  $\sum_{n,k} s_2(n, k) t^n u^k / n! = e^{-tu} (1+t)^u$  (Exercise 7, p. 256; Exercise 20, p. 295). Thus,  $s(n, n) = 1$ ,  $s(n, n-1) = -\binom{n}{2}$ ,  $s(n, n-2) = 2\binom{n}{3} + 3\binom{n}{4} = \frac{1}{4} \times \binom{n}{3}(3n-1)$ ,  $s(n, n-3) = -6\binom{n}{4} - 20\binom{n}{5} - 15\binom{n}{6} = -\frac{1}{2}\binom{n}{4} \times (n-1)n$ ,  $s(n, n-4) = \frac{1}{48}\binom{n}{5}(15n^3 - 30n^2 + 5n + 2)$ . (Other ‘exact’ formulas in [Mitrinović, 1960, 1961, 1962], See also Exercise 9, p. 293.)

**17. Stirling numbers and Vandermonde determinants.** The value of the unsigned number of the first kind  $s(n+1, k)$  is the quotient of the  $n$ -th order determinant obtained by omitting the  $k$ -th column of the matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & \dots & 1 \\ 1 & 2 & 2^2 & \dots & 2^n \\ 1 & 3 & 3^3 & \dots & 3^n \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ 1 & n & n^2 & \dots & n^n \end{pmatrix},$$

by  $1!2!\dots(n-1)!$ . The number of the second kind  $S(n, k)$  can be expressed using a determinant of order  $k$ :

$$k! S(n, k) = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & \dots & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 & 2^2 & \dots & 2^{k-3} & 2^{k-2} & 2^n \\ 1 & 3 & 3^2 & \dots & 3^{k-3} & 3^{k-2} & 3^n \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ 1 & k & k^2 & \dots & k^{k-3} & k^{k-2} & k^n \end{vmatrix}.$$

**18. Generalized Bernoulli numbers.** These are the numbers  $B_n^{(r)}$  defined for every complex number  $r$ :

$$\left(\frac{t}{e^t - 1}\right)^r = \sum_{n \geq 0} B_n^{(r)} \frac{t^n}{n!}.$$

Evidently  $B_n^{(1)} = B_n$ , [14a] (p. 48). Show (with [5h] p. 142) that  $B_n^{(r)} = \sum_{j=0}^n (-1)^j \binom{n+1}{j+1} B_n^{(-jr)}$ . Moreover, for all pairs of integers  $(n, p)$  such that  $0 \leq n \leq p-1$  we have  $B_n^{(p)} = \binom{p-1}{n}^{-1} s(p, p-n)$ . Besides,  $B_n^{(r)} = P_n^{(r)}(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{3}, \dots)$ , by [5d] (p. 141);  $B_0^{(r)} = 1$ ,  $B_1^{(r)} = -r/2$ ,  $B_2^{(r)} = \frac{1}{12} r(3r-1)$ ,  $B_3^{(r)} = -\frac{1}{8} r^2(r-1), \dots$ . Finally, determine an ‘exact’ formula of minimal rank for  $B_n^{(r)}$  (p. 216).

**19. Diagonal differences.** Show that  $\Delta^{2j} S(k, k+j) = \Delta^{2j} \mathfrak{s}(k, k+j) = 1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \dots (2j-1)$ .

**20. The number of ‘Fubini formulas’.** Let  $a_m$  be the number of possible ways to write the Fubini formula ([11l] p. 34) for a summation of integration of order  $m$ . Evidently,  $a_1 = 1$ ,  $a_2 = 3$ ,  $a_3 = 13$ , because  $\sum_{c_1, c_2, c_3} = \sum_{c_1} (\sum_{c_2, c_3}) = \sum_{c_2} (\sum_{c_1, c_3}) = \sum_{c_3} (\sum_{c_1, c_2}) = \sum_{c_2, c_3} (\sum_{c_1}) = \sum_{c_1, c_3} (\sum_{c_2}) = \sum_{c_1, c_2} (\sum_{c_3}) = \sum_{c_1} (\sum_{c_2} (\sum_{c_3})) = \sum_{c_1} (\sum_{c_3} (\sum_{c_2})) = \sum_{c_2} (\sum_{c_1} (\sum_{c_3})) = \sum_{c_2} (\sum_{c_3} (\sum_{c_1})) = \sum_{c_3} (\sum_{c_1} (\sum_{c_2})) = \sum_{c_3} (\sum_{c_2} (\sum_{c_1}))$ . Show that  $a_m = \sum_{k=1}^m k! S(m, k)$  and that  $\sum_{m \geq 0} a_m t^m / m! = (2 - e^t)^{-1}$ .

$m$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
$a_m$	1	3	13	75	541	4683	47293	545835	7087261	102247563

Moreover,  $a_n = \sum_k A(n, k) 2^{k-1}$ , as a function of the Eulerian numbers of p. 51 or 242, and  $a_m = \|m! (\ln 2)^{-m-1} 2^{-1}\|$  (notation [6f], p. 110).

**21. A beautiful determinant.** Let  $\mathfrak{s}$  be the unsigned Stirling numbers of the first kind (p. 213). Then,

$$\begin{vmatrix} \mathfrak{s}(n+1, 1) & \mathfrak{s}(n+1, 2) & \dots & \mathfrak{s}(n+1, k) \\ \mathfrak{s}(n+2, 1) & \mathfrak{s}(n+2, 2) & \dots & \mathfrak{s}(n+2, k) \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \mathfrak{s}(n+k, 1) & \mathfrak{s}(n+k, 2) & \dots & \mathfrak{s}(n+k, k) \end{vmatrix} = (n!)^k.$$

**\*22. Inversion of  $y^\alpha e^y$  and  $y \log^\beta y$  in a neighbourhood of infinity** ([Comtet, 1970]). The equations  $y^\alpha e^y = x$  and  $y \log^\beta y = x$ , where  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are constants  $\geq 0$ , have solutions  $y = \Phi_\alpha(x)$  and  $y = \Psi_\beta(x)$  that tend to infinity for  $x$  tending to infinity. Then, with  $L_1 := \log x$  and  $L_2 := \log \log x$ ,

we have:

$$\Phi_\alpha(x) = L_1 - \alpha L_2 + \sum_{n \geq 1} \left\{ \frac{(-\alpha)^{n+1}}{L_1^n} \sum_{m=1}^n s(n, n-m+1) \frac{L_2^m}{m!} \right\},$$

$$\Psi_\beta(x) = \frac{x}{L_1^\beta} \left\{ 1 + \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{(-\beta)^n}{L_1^n} \sum_{m=1}^n \frac{(-L_2)^m}{m!} Q_{n,m}(\beta) \right\},$$

the polynomial  $Q_{n,m}(\beta)$  being  $\sum_{k=1}^m \binom{n-m+k-1}{n-m} s(n, n-m+k) \beta^k$ .

**\*23. Congruences of the Stirling numbers.** Let  $p$  be prime. We denote ‘ $a$  divides  $b$ ’ by  $a \mid b$ . (1)  $p^2 \mid s(p, 2h)$  for  $2 \leq h \leq p-3$  and  $p \geq 5$  (Nielsen). Particularly, the numerator of the harmonic number  $H_{p-1} = 1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} + \dots + (1/(p-1))$  is divisible by  $p^2$ . (2)  $p \mid S(p+1, k)$  for  $3 \leq k \leq p$  and  $p \mid (S(p+1, 2) - 1)$ .

**24. An asymptotic expansion for the sum of factorials.** If  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , we have:

$$\frac{1}{n!} \sum_{k=0}^n k! \approx 1 + \sum_{k \geq 0} \frac{\varpi(k)}{n^{k+1}} = 1 + \frac{1}{n} + \frac{1}{n^2} + \frac{2}{n^3} + \frac{5}{n^4} + \dots$$

**25. The number of topologies on a set of  $n$  elements.** This number  $t_n$  equals  $\sum_k S(n, k) d_k$ , the  $d_k$  being the number of order relations defined on p. 60 ([Comtet, 1966]).

$n$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
$t_n$	1	4	29	355	6942	209527	9535341	642779354	63260289423

## CHAPTER VI

### PERMUTATIONS

#### 6.1. THE SYMMETRIC GROUP

We recall that a permutation  $\sigma$  of a finite set  $N$ ,  $|N|=n$ , is a bijection of  $N$  onto itself.

Actually, as  $N$  is finite, we could as well have said ‘surjection’ or ‘injection’ instead of ‘bijection’.

A permutation  $\sigma$  can be represented by writing the elements of the set  $N$  on a top row, and then underneath each element its image under the mapping  $\sigma$ . Thus  $\begin{pmatrix} abcdefg \\ caedb g f \end{pmatrix}$  represents a  $\sigma \in \mathfrak{S}(N)$ , where  $N := \{a, b, c, d, e, f, g\}$ ,  $\sigma(a) = c$ ,  $\sigma(b) = a$ ,  $\sigma(c) = e$ ,  $\sigma(d) = d$ ,  $\sigma(e) = b$ ,  $\sigma(f) = g$ ,  $\sigma(g) = f$ .

Another way of representing  $\sigma$  consists of associating with it a *digraph*  $\mathcal{D}$  (p. 67), where it is understood that an arc  $\vec{xy}$  is drawn if and only if  $y = \sigma(x)$ ,  $y \neq x$ . Figure 37 corresponds in this way with the above permutation.

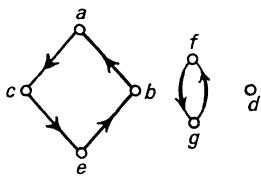


Fig. 37.

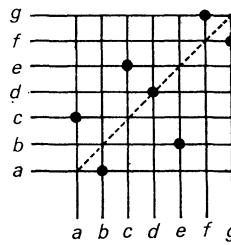


Fig. 38.

One can also represent  $\sigma$  by a *relational lattice*, as on p. 58. Then Figure 38 corresponds with the permutation of Figure 37. Clearly a binary relation on  $N$  is associated with a permutation in this way if and only if all its horizontal and vertical *sections* have one element.

Finally,  $\sigma$  can be represented by a square matrix, say  $B = [b_{i,j}]$ , defined

by  $b_{i,j}=1$  if  $j=\sigma(i)$ , and  $b_{i,j}=0$  otherwise. Such a matrix is called a *permutation matrix*.

We denote the group of permutations of  $N$  (with composition of maps as operation) by  $\mathfrak{S}(N)$ . This group is also called the symmetric group of  $N$ . The unit element of this group is the identity permutation, denoted by  $\varepsilon: \forall x \in N, \varepsilon(x)=x$ . Evidently,  $|\mathfrak{S}(N)|=n!$  (p. 7).

We recall some notions about permutations  $\sigma \in \mathfrak{S}(N)$ .

The *orbit* of  $x (\in N)$  for a permutation  $\sigma$  is the subset of  $N$  consisting of the points  $x, \sigma(x), \sigma^2(x), \dots, \sigma^{k-1}(x)$ , where  $k$ , the *length* of the orbit, is the smallest integer  $\geq 1$  such that  $\sigma^k(x)=x$ . If  $k=1$ ,  $\sigma(x)=x$ , then  $x$  is a *fixed point* of  $\sigma$  (See p. 180).

Let  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_k$  be  $k$  different points of  $N$ ,  $1 \leq k \leq n$ . The *cycle*  $\gamma = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_k)$  is the following permutation:  $\gamma(x_1)=x_2, \gamma(x_2)=x_3, \dots, \gamma(x_{k-1})=x_k, \gamma(x_k)=x_1$  and  $\gamma(x)=x$  if  $x \neq x_i$ . We say that  $\gamma$  has *length*  $k$  (also denoted by  $|\gamma|$ ) and has the set  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_k)$  for *domain* (or orbit). Evidently, there are  $(n)_k/k$  cycles of length  $k$  because each cycle  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_k)$  is given by any one of the following  $k$ -arrangements:  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_k), (x_2, x_3, \dots, x_k, x_1), (x_k, x_1, \dots, x_{k-1})$ , and only by these.

A *circular permutation* is a cycle of length  $n (=|N|)$ . So there are  $(n)_n/n=(n-1)!$  such permutations. A *transposition*  $\tau$  is a cycle of length 2: in other words, there exist two points  $a$  and  $b$ ,  $a \neq b$ , such that  $\tau(a)=b, \tau(b)=a$ . There are exactly  $\binom{n}{2}$  transpositions of  $N$ .

We recall that each permutation can be written as a *product* of cycles, with disjoint domains, this decomposition being unique up to order. For example, the permutation of p. 230 can be written as  $(a, c, e, b) (f, g) (d) = (a, c, e, b) (f, g)$  (the cycles of length 1 are often omitted). Similarly,  $\varepsilon = (x_1) (x_2) \cdots (x_n)$ . Currently, the cycles in the sense of graphs (p. 62) and cycles in the sense of permutations will be identified, as in Figure 37. Each cycle is product of transpositions; in fact,  $(x_1) = (x_1, x_2) (x_2, x_1)$  and  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_k) = (x_1, x_k) (x_1, x_{k-1}) \cdots (x_1, x_2)$  for  $k \geq 2$ . Hence, this holds for each permutation, because they are products of cycles.

It follows that the set  $\mathfrak{T} = \mathfrak{T}(N)$  of transpositions of  $N$ ,  $|\mathfrak{T}| = \binom{n}{2}$ , generates the group  $\mathfrak{S}(N)$ . In fact,  $\mathfrak{S}(N)$  can be generated by a much smaller set of transpositions. To make this more precise, let us associate with every set of transpositions  $\mathfrak{U} \subset \mathfrak{T}$  the *graph*  $g(\mathfrak{U})$  defined as follows:

$\{x, y\}$  is an edge of  $g(\mathfrak{U})$  if and only if the transposition  $(x, y) \in \mathfrak{U}$ .

**THEOREM.** *A set  $\mathfrak{U} (\subset \mathfrak{T})$  of  $(n-1)$  transpositions of  $N$  generates  $\mathfrak{S}(N)$  if and only if  $g(\mathfrak{U})$  is a tree (Definition B, p. 62).*

■ If  $g(\mathfrak{U})$  is a tree over  $N$ , then for all  $a, b \in N$ ,  $a \neq b$  there exists a unique path  $x_1 (=a), x_2, \dots, x_k (=b)$  such that  $\{x_i, x_{i+1}\}$  is an edge of  $g(\mathfrak{U})$ ; hence the transposition  $(x_i, x_{i+1}) \in \mathfrak{U}$ ,  $i \in [k-1]$ . Now it is easily verified that the transposition  $(a, b)$  can be factored as follows in the group  $\mathfrak{S}(N)$ :

$$(a, b) = (x_1, x_k) = (x_{k-1}, x_k)(x_{k-2}, x_{k-1}) \cdots (x_1, x_2) \times \\ \times (x_2, x_3) \cdots (x_{k-2}, x_{k-1})(x_{k-1}, x_k).$$

Thus, as each  $(a, b) \in \mathfrak{T}$  is generated by  $\mathfrak{U}$ ,  $\mathfrak{S}(N)$  is too (cf. p. 231).

Now we suppose conversely that  $\mathfrak{U}$  generates  $\mathfrak{S}(N)$ , but that  $g(\mathfrak{U})$  is not a tree. Because  $g(\mathfrak{U})$  has  $(n-1)$  edges, there exist  $a$  and  $b$  not connected by a path (Theorem C, p. 63); this implies that the transposition  $(a, b)$  is not equal to any product of transpositions belonging to  $\mathfrak{U}$ , etc. ■ (For other properties related to representing a set of permutations by a graph, see [Dénes, 1959], [Eden, Schützenberger, 1962], [Eden, 1967], and [\*Berge, 1968], pp. 117–23.)

For two decompositions into a product of transpositions of a given permutation,  $\sigma = \varphi_1 \varphi_2 \dots \varphi_s = \psi_1 \psi_2 \dots \psi_t$ , the numbers  $s$  and  $t$  have the same parity. This can be quickly seen by observing first that the product  $\tau\sigma$  of the transposition  $\tau = (a, b)$  and a permutation  $\sigma$  with  $k$  cycles is a permutation with  $k+1$  cycles if  $a$  and  $b$  are in the same orbit, and with  $k-1$  cycles if  $a$  and  $b$  are in different orbits of  $\sigma$ . Hence it follows that  $\varphi_1 \varphi_2 \dots \varphi_s$  and  $\psi_1 \psi_2 \dots \psi_t$  have a number of cycles equal to  $1 \pm 1 \pm 1 \pm \dots \pm 1$ ,  $(s-1)$  times  $\pm 1$ , and  $1 \pm 1 \pm 1 \pm \dots \pm 1$ ,  $(t-1)$  times  $\pm 1$ , respectively. The equality of these two numbers implies the above-mentioned property. (This is the proof by [Cauchy, 1815]. See also [\*Serret, 1866], II, p. 248.)

A permutation is called *even* (respectively *odd*) if it can be decomposed into an *even* (respectively *odd*) numbers of transpositions. Suppose  $\sigma = \gamma_1 \gamma_2 \dots \gamma_k$ , a product of  $k$  cycles. The parity of  $\sigma$  is equivalent to the parity of the integer  $n-k$  ( $= \sum(|\gamma_i|-1)$ ) because of the decomposition of each cycle of length  $l$  into  $l-1$  transpositions (see above). Thus, a

permutation is even (respectively odd) if it has an even (respectively odd) number of cycles of even length.

The *sign*  $\chi(\sigma)$  of a permutation  $\sigma$  is defined by  $\chi(\sigma) = +1$  ( $-1$  respectively) if  $\sigma$  is even (respectively odd). From the decomposition into transpositions it follows immediately that for each two permutations  $\sigma$  and  $\sigma'$ :

$$\chi(\sigma\sigma') = \chi(\sigma)\chi(\sigma').$$

The *alternating* subgroup of  $\mathfrak{S}(N)$  consists of the even permutations of  $N$ .

The *order* of a permutation  $\sigma$  is the smallest integer  $k \geq 1$  such that  $\sigma^k = e$ . This is clearly the LCM of the system of integers consisting of lengths of the cycles occurring in the decomposition of  $\sigma$ .

## 6.2. COUNTING PROBLEMS RELATED TO DECOMPOSITION IN CYCLES; RETURN TO STIRLING NUMBERS OF THE FIRST KIND

**DEFINITION.** Let  $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n$  be integers  $\geq 0$  such that:

$$[2a] \quad c_1 + 2c_2 + \cdots + nc_n = n.$$

A permutation  $\sigma \in \mathfrak{S}(N)$ ,  $|N|=n$  is said to be of type  $\llbracket c \rrbracket = \llbracket c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n \rrbracket$  if its decomposition into disjoint cycles contains exactly  $c_i$  cycles of length  $i$ ,  $i=1, 2, 3, \dots, n$ . In other words, the partition of  $N$  given by the orbits of  $\sigma$  is of type  $\llbracket c_1, c_2, \dots \rrbracket$  (Definition B, p. 205).

**THEOREM A.** A permutation  $\sigma \in \mathfrak{S}(N)$  of type  $\llbracket c \rrbracket$  is even (or odd) if and only if  $c_2 + c_4 + c_6 + \cdots$  is even (or odd).

■ We have already seen this on p. 231. ■

**THEOREM B.** The number of permutations of type  $\llbracket c \rrbracket = \llbracket c_1, c_2, \dots \rrbracket$  equals:

$$[2b] \quad p(n; c_1, c_2, \dots) = \frac{n!}{c_1! c_2! \cdots c_n! 1^{c_1} 2^{c_2} \cdots n^{c_n}} \quad (0! = i^0 = 1)$$

■ Giving such a permutation of type  $\llbracket c \rrbracket$  is equivalent to giving first a *division* of  $N$  into the  $c_i$  orbits of length  $i$  of the permutation, with  $i=1, 2, 3, \dots$ ; then to *erasing for all  $i$*  the order on the set of  $c_i$  orbits of length  $i$ , and finally to equipping each orbit with a cyclic permutation of its own.

Thus:

$$\begin{aligned} p(n; c_1, c_2, \dots) &= \frac{n!}{(1!)^{c_1} (2!)^{c_2} \dots} \cdot \frac{1}{c_1! c_2! \dots} \times \\ &\quad \times \{(2-1)!\}^{c_2} \{(3-1)!\}^{c_3} \dots \end{aligned}$$

which gives [2b] after cancellations. ■

**THEOREM C.** Let  $p(n, k; c_1, c_2, \dots)$  be the number of permutations of  $N$ ,  $|N|=n$ , of type  $\llbracket c_1, c_2, \dots \rrbracket$ , whose total number of orbits (=number of cycles in the decomposition) equals  $k$ ,  $c_1 + c_2 + \dots = k$ . Then we have the following GF in an infinite number of variables  $t, u, x_1, x_2, \dots$ :

$$\begin{aligned} [2c] \quad \Phi &= \Phi(t, u; x_1, x_2, \dots) := \\ &:= \sum_{n, k, c_1, c_2, \dots \geq 0} p(n, k; c_1, c_2, \dots) u^k \frac{t^n}{n!} x_1^{c_1} x_2^{c_2} \dots \\ &= \exp \left\{ u \left( x_1 t + x_2 \frac{t^2}{2} + x_3 \frac{t^3}{3} + \dots \right) \right\}. \end{aligned}$$

■ In fact,  $p(n, k; c_1, c_2, \dots) = p(n; c_1, c_2, \dots)$  if  $c_1 + c_2 + \dots = k$  and  $c_1 + 2c_2 + \dots = n$ ; if not,  $p(n, k; c_1, c_2, \dots) = 0$ . Hence, by [2b]:

$$\begin{aligned} \Phi &= \sum_{c_1, c_2, \dots \geq 0} \frac{n!}{c_1! c_2! \dots 1^{c_1} 2^{c_2} \dots} u^{c_1+c_2+\dots} \frac{t^{c_1+2c_2+\dots}}{n!} x_1^{c_1} x_2^{c_2} \dots \\ &= \sum_{c_1, c_2, \dots \geq 0} \frac{1}{c_1!} (tux_1)^{c_1} \cdot \frac{1}{c_2!} \left( \frac{t^2}{2} ux_2 \right)^{c_2} \dots \\ &= \prod_{i \geq 1} \sum_{c_i \geq 0} \frac{((t^i/i) ux_i)^{c_i}}{c_i!} = \prod_{i \geq 1} \exp \left( \frac{t^i}{i} ux_i \right) = \text{QED.} \quad ■ \end{aligned}$$

**THEOREM D.** The number of permutations of  $N$  with  $k$  orbits (whose decomposition has  $k$  cycles) equals the unsigned Stirling number of the first kind  $s(n, k)$ .

■ The required number, say  $a(n, k)$ , equals the sum of the  $p(n, k; c_1, c_2, \dots)$ , taken over all systems of integers  $c_1, c_2, \dots$  such that  $c_1 + c_2 + \dots = k$  and  $c_1 + 2c_2 + \dots = n$ . Hence, by [2c]:

$$\sum_{n, k \geq 0} a(n, k) \frac{t^n}{n!} u^k = \Phi(t, u; 1, 1, 1, \dots)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \exp \left\{ u \left( t + \frac{t^2}{2} + \frac{t^3}{3} + \dots \right) \right\} \\
 &= \exp \{-u \log(1-t)\} = (1-t)^{-u}.
 \end{aligned}$$

Hence  $a(n, k)=s(n, k)$  by [5a, d] (p. 212). ■

### 6.3. MULTIPERMUTATIONS

We show now an immediate generalization of the concept of permutation, suggested by the matrix notation of p. 230. For each integer  $k \geq 0$ , a relation  $\mathfrak{R}$  will be called a  $k$ -permutation (of  $[n]$ ) when all vertical sections and all horizontal sections all have  $k$  elements. Let  $P(n, k)$  be the number of these relations. Evidently,  $P(n, k)=0$  if  $k > n$ , and otherwise  $P(n, k)=P(n, n-k)$ . We have  $P(n, 0)=P(n, n)=1$  and we recover the ordinary permutations for  $k=1$ :  $P(n, 1)=P(n, n-1)=n!$

**THEOREM A.** *Let  $k_1, k_2, \dots, k_n$  and  $l_1, l_2, \dots, l_n$  be  $2n$  integers, all  $\geq 0$ . The number of relations  $\mathfrak{R}$  such that the  $i$ -th vertical section has  $k_i$  elements, and the  $j$ -th horizontal section has  $l_j$  elements, is given by the following coefficient:*

$$[3a] \quad P_{k_1, k_2, \dots, k_n; l_1, l_2, \dots, l_n} = C_{u_1^{k_1} \dots u_n^{k_n} v_1^{l_1} \dots v_n^{l_n}} \prod_{\substack{i \in [n] \\ j \in [n]}} (1 + u_i v_j).$$

■ It suffices to expand the product in [3a], and to observe that the coefficient under consideration is the number of solutions with  $x_{i,j}=0$  or 1 of the system of  $2n$  equations:

$$\sum_{j=1}^n x_{i,j} = k_i, \quad i \in [n], \quad \sum_{i=1}^n x_{i,j} = l_j, \quad j \in [n],$$

in other words, the number of relations we want to find. ■

We now investigate the number  $P(n, 2)$  of *bipermutations*, short notation  $P_n$ .

**THEOREM B.** *We have:*

$$[3b] \quad P_n = \frac{1}{4^n} \sum_{\alpha=0}^n (-1)^\alpha (2n-2\alpha)! \alpha! \binom{n}{\alpha}^2 2^\alpha,$$

$$[3c] \quad f(t) := \sum_{n \geq 0} P_n \frac{t^n}{n!^2} = \frac{e^{-t/2}}{\sqrt{1-t}}$$

$$[3d] \quad P_n = \binom{n}{2} (2P_{n-1} + (n-1)P_{n-2}).$$

■ By [3a],  $P_n = C_{u_1^2 \dots u_n^2 v_1^2 \dots v_n^2} \prod (1+u_i v_j) = C_{u_1^2 \dots u_n^2} (\sum_{i < j} u_i u_j)^n = (\frac{1}{2})^n \times \times C_{u_1^2 \dots u_n^2} \{(u_1 + \dots + u_n)^2 - (u_1^2 + \dots + u_n^2)\}^n = (\frac{1}{2})^n C_{u_1^2 \dots u_n^2} \sum_{\alpha=0}^n (-1)^\alpha \times \times \binom{n}{\alpha} (u_1^2 + \dots + u_n^2)^\alpha (u_1 + \dots + u_n)^{2(n-\alpha)} = (\frac{1}{2})^n \sum_{\alpha=0}^n (-1)^\alpha \binom{n}{\alpha} (n)_\alpha \times (2n-2\alpha)!/2^{n-\alpha} = \text{QED.}$  The GF [3c] follows then from the explicit formula [3b]. As for the recurrence relation [3d], this follows from the differential equation  $2(1-t)f' = tf.$  ■

By Theorem A, one can deduce for  $P(n, k)$  more and more complicated formulas. For instance,

$$P(n, 3) = \frac{1}{36^n} \sum_{\alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + \alpha_3 = n} (-1)^{\alpha_2} (3\alpha_1 + \alpha_2)! \times \times \alpha_2! \alpha_3! (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3)^2 18^{\alpha_2} 12^{\alpha_3},$$

from which one may deduce a linear recurrence relation for  $P(n, 3)$  with coefficients that are polynomials in  $n.$  There is little known about  $P(n, k)$  except the asymptotic result  $P(n, k) \sim (kn)! (k!)^{-2n} e^{-(k-1)^2/2}$  for fixed  $k$  and  $n \rightarrow \infty$  ([Everett, Stein, 1971]). The first values of  $P(n, k)$  are:

$n \setminus k$	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
0	1							
1	1	1						
2	1	2	1					
3	1	6	6	1				
4	1	24	90	24	1			
5	1	120	2040	2040	120	1		
6	1	720	67950	297200	67950	720	1	
7	1	5040	3110940	6893800	68938800	3110940	5040	1

#### 6.4. INVERSIONS OF A PERMUTATION OF $[n]$

In Sections 6.4 and 6.5 we study the permutations of a *totally ordered* set  $N,$  which will be identified with  $[n] := \{1, 2, \dots, n\}.$  We make the following abbreviations:

$$[4a] \quad \mathfrak{S}[n] := \mathfrak{S}([n]), \quad \mathfrak{P}_k[n] := \mathfrak{P}_k([n]).$$

It is often convenient to represent a permutation  $\sigma \in \mathfrak{S}[n]$  by a *polygon* whose sides are segments  $A_i, A_{i+1}$ ,  $i \in [n-1]$  such that  $A_1$  has  $i$  for ‘abscissa’ and  $\sigma(i)$  for ‘ordinate’. The heavy line in Figure 39 represents the polygon of  $\sigma \in \mathfrak{S}[7]$ , defined by the cycle  $(1, 3, 5, 2)$ , in the sense of p. 231; hence, the points 4, 6, 7 are fixed points.

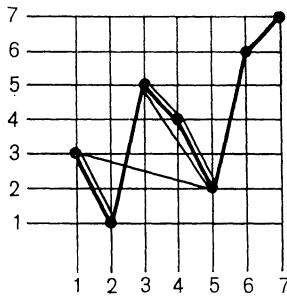


Fig. 39.

**DEFINITION.** An inversion of a permutation  $\sigma \in \mathfrak{S}[n]$  is a pair  $(i, j)$  such that  $1 \leq i < j \leq n$  and  $\sigma(i) > \sigma(j)$ . In this case we say that  $\sigma$  has an inversion in  $(i, j)$ .

Hence, in the associated polygon, an inversion ‘is’ a segment  $A_i A_j$ ,  $1 \leq i < j \leq n$ , with negative slope. The permutation which is represented in Figure 39 induces 5 inversions, whose corresponding segments are indicated by thin lines.

Let  $I_\sigma$  be the number of inversions of  $\sigma \in \mathfrak{S}[n]$ . Clearly,  $0 \leq I_\sigma \leq \binom{n}{2}$ , with  $I_\sigma = 0 \Leftrightarrow \forall i \in [n], \sigma(i) = i$  and  $I_\sigma = \binom{n}{2} \Leftrightarrow \forall i \in [n], \sigma(i) = n - i + 1$ .

**THEOREM A.** The sign  $\chi(\alpha)$  (see p. 233) of a permutation  $\alpha \in \mathfrak{S}[n]$  equals  $(-1)^{I_\alpha}$ .

■ We abbreviate  $q(\alpha) := (-1)^{I_\alpha}$  and  $[n]_2 := \mathfrak{P}_2[n]$ . Then:

$$q(\alpha) = \prod_{(i, j) \in [n]_2} \frac{\alpha(i) - \alpha(j)}{i - j}.$$

Hence, for  $\alpha$  and  $\beta \in \mathfrak{S}[n]$ , we obtain by change of variable  $i' := \beta(i)$ ,

$j' := \beta(j)$  in (\*):

$$\begin{aligned}
 [4b] \quad q(\alpha\beta) &= \prod_{\{i, j\} \in [\mathbf{n}]_2} \frac{(\alpha\beta)(i) - (\alpha\beta)(j)}{i - j} \\
 &= \prod_{\{i, j\} \in [\mathbf{n}]_2} \frac{\alpha(\beta(i)) - \alpha(\beta(j))}{\beta(i) - \beta(j)} \cdot \frac{\beta(i) - \beta(j)}{i - j} \\
 &\stackrel{(*)}{=} \prod_{\{i', j'\} \in [\mathbf{n}]_2} \frac{\alpha(i') - \alpha(j')}{i' - j'} \cdot \prod_{\{i, j\} \in [\mathbf{n}]_2} \frac{\beta(i) - \beta(j)}{i - j} \\
 &= q(\alpha) \cdot q(\beta).
 \end{aligned}$$

Moreover, the number of inversions  $I_\tau$  of a transposition  $\tau := (a, b)$ , which interchanges  $a$  and  $b$ ,  $1 \leq a < b \leq n$ , can be read off from the polygon of  $\tau$ , and it equals  $2(b-a)-1$ , hence  $q(\tau) = -1$ . Thus, if we write an arbitrary  $\sigma \in \mathfrak{S}[\mathbf{n}]$  as a product of transpositions, it follows, with [4b] for (\*) and p. 233 for (\*\*) that:

$$\begin{aligned}
 (-1)^{I_\sigma} &= q(\sigma) = q(\tau_1 \tau_2 \dots \tau_s) \\
 &\stackrel{(**)}{=} q(\tau_1) q(\tau_2) \dots q(\tau_s) = (-1)^s \stackrel{(***)}{=} \chi(\sigma). \quad \blacksquare
 \end{aligned}$$

**THEOREM B.** *The number  $b(n, k)$  of permutations of  $[\mathbf{n}]$  with  $k$  inversions satisfies the recurrence relations ([Bourget, 1871]):*

$$\begin{aligned}
 [4c] \quad b(n, k) &= \sum_{0, k-n+1 \leq j \leq k} b(n-1, j) \quad \text{if } n \geq 1; \\
 b(n, 0) &= 1; \quad b(0, k) = 0 \quad \text{if } k \geq 1.
 \end{aligned}$$

■ Let  $\mathbf{b}(n, k)$  be the set of permutations of  $[\mathbf{n}]$  that induce  $k$  inversions,  $b(n, k) = |\mathbf{b}(n, k)|$ , and let  $\mathbf{b}_i(n, k)$  be the set of the  $\sigma \in \mathbf{b}(n, k)$  such that  $\sigma(1) = i$ ,  $i \in [\mathbf{n}]$ . Then we have the division:

$$[4d] \quad \mathbf{b}(n, k) = \sum_{1 \leq i \leq n} \mathbf{b}_i(n, k).$$

Let  $f$  be the map of  $\mathbf{b}_i(n, k)$  into  $\mathbf{b}(n-1, k-i+1)$  defined by:

$$[4e] \quad f(\sigma)(j) = \begin{cases} \sigma(j+1), & \text{if } \sigma(j+1) < i \\ \sigma(j+1) - 1, & \text{if } \sigma(j+1) > i \end{cases}, \quad i \in [n-1].$$

It is clear that  $f$  is a bijection. Hence, if we use the convention:

$$[4f] \quad b(u, v) = 0, \quad \text{if } v < 0 \quad \text{or if } v > \binom{u}{2},$$

we get, by passing to the cardinalities in [4d]:

$$[4g] \quad b(n, k) = \sum_{1 \leq i \leq n} |\mathbf{b}_i(n, k)| = \sum_{1 \leq i \leq n} b(n-1, k-i+1),$$

in other words, we just obtain [4c], if we do not use the convention [4f] and if we change the summation variable to  $j := k - i + 1$ . ■

**THEOREM C.** ([Muir, 1898]). *The numbers  $b(n, k)$  have as GF:*

$$\begin{aligned} [4h] \quad \Phi_n(u) &:= \sum_{0 \leq k \leq \binom{n}{2}} b(n, k) u^k = \prod_{1 \leq i \leq n} \frac{1-u^i}{1-u} = \\ &= (1+u)(1+u+u^2)\cdots(1+u+u^2+\cdots+u^{n-1}). \end{aligned}$$

■ Using [4c] for (\*) and putting  $i := k - j + 1$  for (\*\*), we get:

$$\begin{aligned} \Phi_n(u) &\stackrel{(*)}{=} \sum_{0 \leq k \leq \binom{n}{2}} \left\{ u^k \sum_{j \leq k} b(n-1, j) \right\} \\ &\stackrel{(**)}{=} \sum_{\substack{1 \leq i \leq n \\ 0 \leq j \leq \binom{n-1}{2}}} u^{i+j-1} b(n-1, j) \\ &= \left( \sum_{1 \leq i \leq n} u^{i-1} \right) \left( \sum_{0 \leq j \leq \binom{n-1}{2}} b(n-1, j) u^j \right) \\ &= (1+u+\cdots+u^{n-1}) \Phi_{n-1}(u), \end{aligned}$$

from which [4h] easily follows. ■

**THEOREM D.** *The numbers  $b(n, k)$  satisfy the following relations:*

$$(I) \quad b(n, k) = b(n, k-1) + b(n-1, k), \quad \text{if } k < n.$$

$$(II) \quad \sum_{k=0}^{\binom{n}{2}} b(n, k) = n!.$$

$$(III) \quad \sum_{k=0}^{\binom{n}{2}} (-1)^k b(n, k) = 0.$$

$$(IV) \quad b(n, k) = b\left(n, \binom{n}{2} - k\right).$$

$$(V) \quad \sum_{k=0}^{\binom{n}{2}} kb(n, k) = \frac{1}{2} \binom{n}{2} n! = \sum_{\sigma} I_{\sigma} \quad ([\text{Henry, 1881}]).$$

■ (I) From [4h] follows  $(1-u) \Phi_n = (1-u^n) \Phi_{n-1}$ , where the coefficients of  $u^k$  must be identified. (II) Put  $u=1$  in [4h]. (III) Put  $u=-1$  in [4h]. (IV) Observe that the polynomial  $\Phi_n(u)$  is reciprocal. (V) Put  $u=1$  in  $d\Phi_n/du$ . ■

N.B. Find also combinatorial proofs of Theorem D!

Table of  $b(n, k) = b\left(n, \binom{n}{2} - k\right)$

$n \setminus k$	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
1	1									
2	1	1								
3	1	2	2	1						
4	1	3	5	6	5	3	1			
5	1	4	9	15	20	22	20	15	9	4
6	1	5	14	29	49	71	90	101	101	90
7	1	6	20	49	98	169	259	359	455	531
8	1	7	27	76	174	343	602	961	1415	1940
9	1	8	35	111	285	628	1230	2191	3606	5545
10	1	9	44	155	440	1068	2298	4489	8095	13640

$n \setminus k$	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
5	1						
6	71	49	29	14	5	1	
7	573	573	531	455	359	259	169
8	2493	3017	3450	3736	3836	3736	3450
9	8031	11021	14395	17957	21450	24584	27073
10	21670	32683	47043	64889	86054	110010	135853

([\*David, Kendall, Barton, 1966], p. 241, for  $n \leq 16$ .)

## 6.5. PERMUTATIONS BY NUMBER OF RISES; EULERIAN NUMBERS

DEFINITION. A permutation  $\sigma \in \mathfrak{S}[n]$  induces a rise [or a fall] in  $i \in [n-1]$  if  $\sigma(i) < \sigma(i+1)$  [or  $\sigma(i) > \sigma(i+1)$ ].

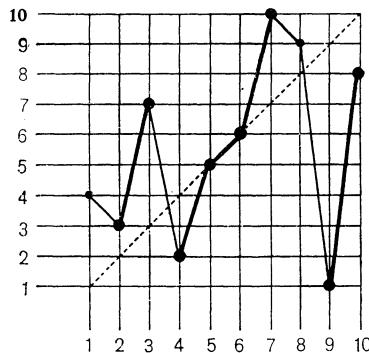


Fig. 40.

Thus, in Figure 40 the 5 rises [4 falls] of a permutation of [10] are indicated by a heavy [thin] line.

Let  $A_\sigma$  be the number of rises of  $\sigma$ , in other words, the number of sides with positive slope of the associated polygon. Clearly,  $0 \leq A_\sigma \leq n-1$ , and  $A_\sigma = 0 \Leftrightarrow \forall i \in [n], \sigma(i) = n-i+1$ , and  $A_\sigma = n-1 \Leftrightarrow \forall i \in [n], \sigma(i) = i$ . Moreover, the number of falls of  $\sigma$  is evidently equal to:

$$[5a] \quad n - 1 - A_\sigma.$$

**THEOREM A.** *The number  $a(n, k)$  of permutations of  $[n]$  with  $k$  rises satisfies the following recurrence relations:*

$$[5b] \quad a(n, k) = (n-k)a(n-1, k-1) + (k+1)a(n-1, k)$$

for  $n, k \geq 1$ , with  $a(n, 0) = 1$  for  $n \geq 0$ , and  $a(0, k) = 0$  for  $k \geq 1$ .

■ Let  $\mathbf{a}(n, k)$  be the set of permutations of  $[n]$  that induce  $k$  rises. The number  $a(n, k) = |\mathbf{a}(n, k)|$  is also the number of permutations of  $[n]$  that induce  $k$  falls, which can be seen by associating with  $\sigma \in \mathfrak{S}[n]$  the permutation  $i \mapsto \sigma(n-i+1)$ . Hence:

$$[5c] \quad a(n, k) = a(n, n-k-1).$$

Now we define the map  $g$  of  $\mathbf{a}(n, k)$  into  $\mathfrak{S}[n-1]$  by:

$$[5d] \quad \sigma' = g(\sigma) \Leftrightarrow \sigma'(i) = \begin{cases} \sigma(i) & \text{if } i < \sigma^{-1}(n) \\ \sigma(i+1) & \text{if } i \geq \sigma^{-1}(n) \end{cases}$$

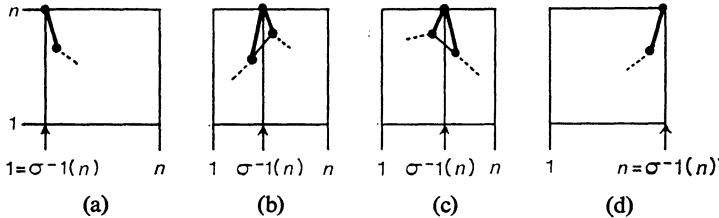


Fig. 41.

It is clear that  $\sigma' \in \mathbf{a}(n-1, k)$  in the case of Figures 41a, b, and that  $\sigma' \in \mathbf{a}(n-1, k-1)$  in the case of Figures 41c, d.

Conversely, if  $\sigma' \in \mathbf{a}(n-1, k)$ , some reflection shows that  $|g^{-1}(\sigma')| =$  the number of rises of  $\sigma'$  (see Figure 41b)+1 (see Figure 41a)= $k+1$ ; if  $\sigma' \in \mathbf{a}(n-1, k-1)$  we have, similarly, with [5a] for (\*):  $|g^{-1}(\sigma')| =$  the number of falls of  $\sigma'$  (see Figure 41c)+1 (see Figure 41d) $\stackrel{(*)}{=} \{(n-1)-1-(k-1)\}+1=n-k$ . Hence:

$$\begin{aligned} |\mathbf{a}(n, k)| &= \sum_{\sigma' \in \mathbf{a}(n-1, k)} |g^{-1}(\sigma')| + \sum_{\sigma' \in \mathbf{a}(n-1, k-1)} |g^{-1}(\sigma')| \\ &= (k+1)|\mathbf{a}(n-1, k)| + (n-k)|\mathbf{a}(n-1, k-1)| \blacksquare \end{aligned}$$

**THEOREM B.** Let  $A(n, k)$  denote the Eulerian number (introduced in [14t], p. 51) then we have:

$$[5e] \quad a(n, k-1) = A(n, k) \stackrel{(*)}{=} A(n, n-k+1).$$

■ In fact, if we put  $\bar{A}(n, k) := a(n, k-1)$ , then the recurrence relation [5b] becomes exactly [14u] (p. 51), where  $A(n, k)$  is replaced by  $\bar{A}(n, k)$ , including the initial conditions. Hence  $\bar{A}(n, k) = A(n, k)$ . Equality [5e] (\*) follows then from [5c]. ■

Evidently,  $\sum_k A(n, k) = n!$  and, by [5b],

$$[5e'] \quad A(n, k) = (n-k+1) A(n-1, k-1) + k A(n-1, k).$$

Table of Eulerian numbers  $A(n, k)$ 

$n \setminus k$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
1	1								
2	1	1							
3	1	4	1						
4	1	11	11	1					
5	1	26	66	26	1				
6	1	57	302	302	57	1			
7	1	120	1191	2416	1191	120	1		
8	1	247	4293	15619	15619	4293	247	1	
9	1	502	14608	88234	156190	88234	14608	502	1
10	1	1013	47840	455192	1310354	1310354	455192	47840	1013
11	1	2036	152637	2203488	9738114	15724248	9738114	2203488	152637
12	1	4083	478271	10187685	66318474	162512286	162512286	66318474	10187685

([\*David, Kendall, Barton, 1966], p. 260,  $n \leq 16$ .)

**THEOREM C.** *The Eulerian numbers  $A(n, k)$  have the value:*

$$[5f] \quad A(n, k) = \sum_{\substack{0 \leq j \leq k \\ j \neq 0}} (-1)^j \binom{n+1}{j} (k-j)^n.$$

■ Use the GF [14v] of p. 51, and equate the coefficients in the first and last member of [5g] of  $u^k t^n / n!$ :

$$\begin{aligned} [5g] \quad 1 + \sum_{1 \leq k \leq n} A(n, k) \frac{t^n}{n!} u^k &= \frac{1-u}{1-u e^{t(1-u)}} = \\ &= (1-u) \sum_{l \geq 0} u^l e^{lt(1-u)} = \sum_{l, n \geq 0} \frac{t^n}{n!} t^n u^l (1-u)^{n+1} = \\ &= \sum_{h, l, n \geq 0} (-1)^h \frac{t^n}{n!} \binom{n+1}{h} u^{h+l} t^n. \quad \blacksquare \end{aligned}$$

If  $k > n$ , then  $A(n, k) = 0$ , and [5f] implies an interesting identity in that case.

**THEOREM D.** *The Eulerian numbers  $A(n, k)$  satisfy:*

$$[5h] \quad x^n = \sum_{1 \leq k \leq n} A(n, k) \binom{x+k-1}{n}.$$

([Worpitzky, 1883]. For other properties and generalizations see [Abram-

son, Moser, 1967], [André, 1906], [Carlitz, 1952b, 1959, 1960a, 1963a], [Carlitz, Riordan, 1953], [Carlitz, Roselle, Scoville, 1966], [Cesàro, 1886], [Dillon, Roselle, 1968], [Foata, 1967], [Frobenius, 1910], [Pousin, 1968], [Roselle, 1968], [Schrutka, 1941], [Shanks, 1951], [Tomić, 1960], [Toscano, 1965]. [\*Foata, Schützenberger, 1970] contains a very exhaustive and completely new treatment of this subject.)

■ As identity [5h] is polynomial in  $x$ , of degree  $n$ , it suffices to verify it for  $x=0, 1, 2, \dots, n$ , which comes down to ‘inverting’ [5f] in the sense of p. 143. By [5f], for (\*), we get (cf. Exercise 5 (3), p. 221):

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_k A(n, k) t^k &\stackrel{(*)}{=} \sum_{0 \leq i \leq k} (-1)^{k-i} \binom{n+1}{k-i} i^n t^k = \\ &= \sum_{i \geq 0} \left\{ i^n t^i \sum_{k \geq i} \binom{n+1}{k-i} (-t)^{k-i} \right\} = \\ &= (1-t)^{n+1} \sum_{i \geq 0} i^n t^i. \end{aligned}$$

Hence  $\sum_{i \geq 0} i^n t^i = (1-t)^{-n-1} \sum_{k=1}^n A(n, k) t^k$ , in other words we have for the coefficient of  $t^i$ :  $i^n = \sum_k A(n, k) \binom{n+i-k}{n}$ , hence [5h] with  $x=i$  and [5e] (\*). ■

We now introduce the Eulerian polynomials  $A_n(u) := \sum_k A(n, k) u^k$ ;  $A_0(u) = 1$ ,  $A_1(u) = u$ ,  $A_2(u) = u + u^2$ ,  $A_3(u) = u + 4u^2 + u^3$ , ... . Taking [14v] p. 51 into account for [5i], and [14t] p. 51 for [5j], we have the following GF:

$$[5i] \quad \sum_{n \geq 0} A_n(u) \frac{t^n}{n!} = \frac{(1-u)}{1 - ue^{t(1-u)}},$$

$$[5j] \quad 1 + \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{A_n(u)}{u} \cdot \frac{t^n}{n!} = \frac{1-u}{e^{t(u-1)} - u},$$

$$[5k] \quad \sum_{n \geq 0} \frac{A_n(u)}{u(u-1)^n} \cdot \frac{t^n}{n!} = \frac{1-u}{e^t - u},$$

the last one, [5k], follows from [5i], where  $t$  is replaced by  $t/(u-1)$ .

**THEOREM E (Frobenius).** *The Eulerian polynomials are equal to:*

$$[5l] \quad A_n(u) = u \sum_{k=1}^n k! S(n, k) (u-1)^{n-k}$$

$$[5m] \quad = \sum_{k=0}^n k! S(n+1, k+1) (u-1)^{n-k}.$$

■ By [5k] for (\*):  $\sum_{n \geq 0} A_n(u) t^n / (n! u(u-1)^n) \stackrel{(*)}{=} (1 - (e^t - 1)/(u-1))^{-1} = \sum_{k \geq 0} (e^t - 1)^k / (u-1)^k$ . Hence  $A_n(u) = u \sum_{k \geq 0} (u-1)^{n-k} C_{t^n/n!} (e^t - 1)^k$ , in other words, [5l]. Then [5m] follows, if we replace  $u(u-1)^{n-k}$  in [5l] by  $(u-1)^{n+1-k} + (u-1)^{n-k}$ , and if we use [3a] of p. 208. ■

The historical origin of the Eulerian polynomials is the following summation formula:

**THEOREM F.** *For each integer  $n \geq 0$ , the power series with coefficients ‘ $n$ -th powers’ equals:*

$$[5n] \quad \sum_{l \geq 0} l^n u^l = \frac{A_n(u)}{(1-u)^{n+1}}.$$

■ See the proof of Theorem D above. (Cf. Exercise 5, p. 221.) ■

*Examples.* For  $n=0, 1, 2, 3$  we get respectively:

$$\begin{aligned} 1 + u + u^2 + u^3 + \cdots &= \frac{1}{1-u} \\ u + 2u^2 + 3u^3 + 4u^4 + \cdots &= \frac{u}{(1-u)^2} \\ u + 2^2 u^2 + 3^3 u^3 + 4^2 u^4 + \cdots &= \frac{u + u^2}{(1-u)^3} \\ u + 2^3 u^2 + 3^3 u^3 + 4^3 u^4 + \cdots &= \frac{u + 4u^2 + u^3}{(1-u)^4}. \end{aligned}$$

The above-mentioned GF of the Eulerian numbers, namely

$$[5o] \quad \mathfrak{A}(t, u) = 1 + \sum_{1 \leq k \leq n} A(n, k) \frac{t^n}{n!} u^{k-1} = \frac{1-u}{e^{t(u-1)} - u}$$

$$[5p] \quad \mathfrak{A}_1(t, u) = \sum_{0 \leq k \leq n} A(n, k) \frac{t^n}{n!} u^k = \frac{1-u}{1-ue^{t(1-u)}},$$

have the disadvantage of being asymmetric. Everything becomes easier if we introduce the *symmetric Eulerian numbers*  $\hat{A}(l, m)$  defined by:

$$[5q] \quad \hat{A}(l, m) = A(l+m+1, m+1).$$

The table of these is obtained from the table on p. 243 by sliding all columns upward:

$l \setminus m$	0	1	2	3
0	1	1	1	1
1	1	4	11	26
2	1	11	66	302
3	1	26	302	2416

**THEOREM G** ([Carlitz, 1969]). *We have the following GF:*

$$[5r] \quad \sum_{l, m \geq 0} \hat{A}(l, m) \frac{x^l y^m}{(l+m+1)!} = \frac{e^x - e^y}{xe^y - ye^x}.$$

■ In fact, by [5p] for (\*), the left-hand member of [5r] equals:  $\sum_{l, m \geq 0} A(l+m+1, m+1) x^l y^m / (l+m+1)! = (1/y) \sum_{m \geq 0, n \geq m+1} A(n, m+1) \times (y/x)^{m+1} x^n / n! \stackrel{(*)}{=} (1/y) (-1 + \mathfrak{A}_1(y, y/x))$ , providing the second member of [5r] after simplifications. ■

The following is a generalization of the problem of the rises, often called the ‘problem of Simon Newcomb’. Instead of permuting the set  $[n]$ , one permutes a set  $P$ ,  $|P|=p$ , consisting of  $c_1$  numbers 1,  $c_2$  numbers 2, ...,  $c_n$  numbers  $n$ ,  $c_1+c_2+c_3+\dots+c_n=p$ , and we want to find the number of permutations with  $k-1$  rises. ([Kreweras, 1965, 1966b, 1967], [\*Riordan, 1958], p. 216; cf. Exercise 21, p. 265.) In more concrete terms, one draws from a set of 52 playing cards all cards, one by one, stacking them on piles in such a way that one starts a new pile each time a card appears that is ‘higher’ than its predecessor. In how many ways can one obtain  $k-1$  piles? (here  $c_1=c_2=\dots=c_{13}=4$ ).

#### 6.6. GROUPS OF PERMUTATIONS; CYCLE INDICATOR POLYNOMIAL; BURNSIDE THEOREM

**DEFINITION A.** *A group  $\mathfrak{G}$  of permutations of a finite set  $N$  is a subgroup of the group  $\mathfrak{S}(N)$  of all permutations of  $N$ . We denote  $\mathfrak{G} \leq \mathfrak{S}(N)$ .  $|\mathfrak{G}|$  is called the order of  $\mathfrak{G}$ , and  $|N|$  its degree.*

Thus, the alternating group is a permutation group of  $N$ , of order  $n!/2$ .

For each permutation  $\sigma \in \mathfrak{G}(N)$ ,  $N=n$ , we denote:

[6a]  $c_i(\sigma) :=$  the number of orbits of length  $i$  of  $\sigma$ ,  $i \in [n]$ ,

and, for each group of permutations  $\mathfrak{S} \leq \mathfrak{S}(N)$  and each sequence  $(c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n)$  of integers  $\geq 0$  such that  $c_1 + 2c_2 + \dots = n$  we denote, with the definition on p. 233:

[6b]  $\mathfrak{G}(c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n) := \{\sigma \mid \sigma \in \mathfrak{G}, \sigma \text{ is of type } [c_1, c_2, \dots]\}$ .

**DEFINITION B.** The cycle indicator polynomial  $Z(x)$  of a group of permutations  $\mathfrak{G}$  of  $N$ ,  $\mathfrak{G} \leq \mathfrak{S}(N)$ , also denoted by  $Z(\mathfrak{G}, x)$  or by  $Z(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$  is by definition (cf. [6a, b]):

$$[6c] \quad Z(x) := \frac{1}{|\mathfrak{G}|} \sum_{\sigma \in \mathfrak{G}} x_1^{c_1(\sigma)} x_2^{c_2(\sigma)} \dots x_n^{c_n(\sigma)}$$

$$[6d] \quad = \frac{1}{|\mathfrak{G}|} \sum |\mathfrak{G}(c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n)| x_1^{c_1} x_2^{c_2} \dots x_n^{c_n},$$

where the last summation takes place over all integers  $c_i \geq 0$  such that  $c_1 + 2c_2 + \dots = n = |N|$ .

The fact that the expressions [6c] and [6d] are equal follows from [6b]. The polynomial  $Z(x)$  has at most  $p(n)$  terms ([1b], p. 95) and the weight is  $n$ :  $Z(\lambda x_1, \lambda^2 x_2, \dots) = \lambda^n Z(x_1, x_2, \dots)$ . The following are a few examples.

- (1) If  $\mathfrak{G}$  consists of the identity permutation  $\varepsilon$  only, then  $Z(x) = x^n$ .
- (2) If  $\mathfrak{G} = \mathfrak{S}(N)$  (the symmetric group of  $N$ ), we get, by [2b] (p. 233), applied to the form [6d] of  $Z(x)$ , and also, by [3b, c] (p. 134) for (\*):

$$[6e] \quad Z(x) = \sum_{c_1+2c_2+\dots=n} \frac{n!}{c_1! c_2! \dots} \left(\frac{x_1}{1}\right)^{c_1} \left(\frac{x_2}{2}\right)^{c_2} \dots \\ \stackrel{(*)}{=} \mathbf{Y}_n(x_1, 1!x_2, 2!x_3, \dots).$$

- (3) Let  $N$  be the set of the 6 faces of a cube,  $N := \{A, B, C, D, E, F\}$  (Figure 42), and let  $\mathfrak{G}$  be the group of permutations of  $N$  induced by the rotations of the cube. For instance, a rotation of  $+\pi/2$  (around the axis, in Figure 42a gives the permutation  $\sigma = \begin{pmatrix} A & B & C & D & E & F \\ B & C & D & A & E & F \end{pmatrix}$ ) for which we have,

by [6a]:  $c_1(\sigma)=2$ ,  $c_2(\sigma)=c_3(\sigma)=0$ ,  $c_4(\sigma)=1$ ,  $c_5(\sigma)=c_6(\sigma)=0$ , hence the monomial  $\frac{1}{2^4} x_1^2 x_4$  in  $Z(x)$ . There are 6 kinds of rotations, which can be described by Figures 42a, b, c, namely, a rotation of  $\pi/2$  or  $\pi$  or  $3\pi/2$  around a line joining the centers of opposite faces (Figure 42a),

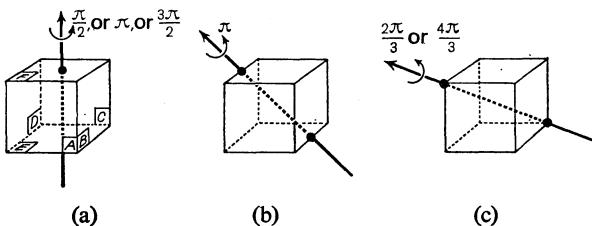


Fig. 42.

a rotation of  $\pi$  around a line joining the centers of opposite edges (Figure 42b) and rotations of  $2\pi/3$  or  $4\pi/3$  around a line joining opposite vertices (Figure 42c). Making up the list of permutations of each kind, we finally find, by [6c]:

$$[6f] \quad Z(x) = \frac{1}{2^4} (x_1^6 + 3x_1^2 x_2^2 + 6x_1^2 x_4 + 6x_2^3 + 8x_3^2).$$

**DEFINITION C.** The stabilizer of  $x (\in N)$  with respect to  $\mathfrak{G} (\leqslant \mathfrak{S}(N))$ , denoted by  $\mathfrak{G}(x)$ , is the set of permutations  $\sigma \in \mathfrak{G}$  for which  $\sigma(x) = x$ .

It is clear that  $\mathfrak{G}(x)$  is a subgroup of  $\mathfrak{G}$ .

**DEFINITION D.** For  $\mathfrak{G} \leqslant \mathfrak{S}(N)$ , the orbit of  $x (\in N)$  under  $\mathfrak{G}$ , denoted by  $x^{\mathfrak{G}}$ , is the set of all  $y \in N$  for which there exists  $\sigma \in \mathfrak{G}$  such that  $y = \sigma(x)$ .

In particular, the orbit of  $x$  under the subgroup  $(\sigma)$  generated by  $\sigma$ ,  $\sigma = \{\epsilon, \sigma, \sigma^2, \dots\}$  is just  $x^{(\sigma)} = \{x, \sigma(x), \sigma^2(x), \dots\}$  (see p. 231). For  $x \neq x'$  either  $x^{\mathfrak{G}} = x'^{\mathfrak{G}}$  or  $x^{\mathfrak{G}} \cap x'^{\mathfrak{G}} = \emptyset$ . The set  $\Omega$  of all (different) orbits is hence a partition of  $N$ ,  $N = \sum_{\omega \in \Omega} \omega$ .

**THEOREM A (on the stabilizer).** For every  $x \in N$  and every group  $\mathfrak{G} \leqslant \mathfrak{S}$ , the order of  $\mathfrak{G}$  equals the product of the order of the stabilizer  $\mathfrak{G}(x)$  by

the size of the orbit  $x^G$ :

$$[6g] \quad |\mathfrak{G}(x)| \cdot |x^G| = |\mathfrak{G}|.$$

In other words, denoting by  $\Omega$  the set of orbits,  $\sum_{\omega \in \Omega} |\omega| = N$ :

$$[6h] \quad x \in \omega \in \Omega \Rightarrow |\mathfrak{G}(x)| \cdot |\omega| = |\mathfrak{G}|.$$

■ It is clear that for each permutation  $\alpha \in \mathfrak{G}$ :

$$[6i] \quad |\alpha \mathfrak{G}(x)| = |\mathfrak{G}(x)|,$$

where  $\alpha \mathfrak{G}(x) := \{\alpha \beta \mid \beta \in \mathfrak{G}(x)\}$  is a left coset of the subgroup  $\mathfrak{G}(x)$  of  $\mathfrak{G}$ .

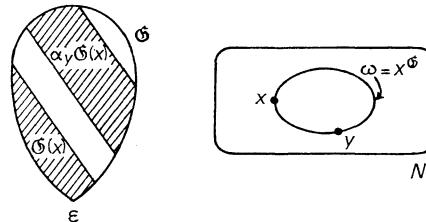


Fig. 43.

For each  $y$  of the orbit of  $x$ ,  $y \in x^G := \omega$  (Figure 43) we choose one single permutation  $\alpha = \alpha_y \in \mathfrak{G}$  such that  $y = \alpha(x)$ , and we consider the map  $f: y \mapsto \alpha_y \mathfrak{G}(x)$ . It is easily verified that  $f$  is a bijection of  $\omega$  into the set of left cosets of  $\mathfrak{G}(x)$ . All these cosets have the same number of elements, [6i], and since they constitute together a partition of  $\mathfrak{G}$ , we get:  $|\mathfrak{G}| =$  the number of elements in every class  $\times$  the number of classes  $= |\mathfrak{G}(x)| \cdot |\omega|$ . ■

**THEOREM B (Burnside-Frobenius).** Let  $\Omega$  stand for the set of orbits of  $\mathfrak{G}$ . Then we have:

$$[6j] \quad |\Omega| = \frac{1}{|\mathfrak{G}|} \sum_{\sigma \in \mathfrak{G}} |N_0(\sigma)|,$$

where  $N_0(\sigma)$  is the set of fixed points of  $\sigma$ .

■ Let  $E$  be the set of pairs  $(x, \sigma)$ ,  $\sigma \in \mathfrak{G}$  such that  $\sigma(x) = x$ . Clearly, we have the following divisions:

$$[6k] \quad E = \sum_{\sigma \in \mathfrak{G}} \{(x, \sigma) \mid \sigma(x) = x\} = \sum_{x \in N} \{(x, \sigma) \mid \sigma(x) = x\}.$$

Now, for *fixed*  $\sigma$ ,  $|\{(x, \sigma) \mid \sigma(x)=x\}| = |\{x \mid x \in N, \sigma(x)=x\}| = |N_0(\sigma)|$  and for *fixed*  $x$ ,  $|\{x, \sigma) \mid \sigma(x)=x\} = |\{\sigma \mid \sigma \in \mathfrak{G}, \sigma(x)=x\}| = |\mathfrak{G}(x)|$ . Hence, by passing to the cardinals in [6k], and with [6h] for (\*):

$$\begin{aligned} |E| &= \sum_{\sigma \in \mathfrak{G}} |N_0(\sigma)| = \sum_{x \in N} |\mathfrak{G}(x)| = \sum_{\varphi \in \Omega} \left( \sum_{x \in \omega} |\mathfrak{G}(x)| \right) \\ &\stackrel{(*)}{=} \sum_{\varphi \in \Omega} \left( \sum_{x \in \omega} \frac{|\mathfrak{G}|}{|\omega|} \right) = \sum_{\varphi \in \Omega} |\mathfrak{G}| = |\Omega| |\mathfrak{G}|. \quad \blacksquare \end{aligned}$$

### 6.7. THEOREM OF PÓLYA

#### (I) An example

In order to clarify the aim of this section consider the following problem. *In how many ways can one paint the six faces on a cube in at most  $c$  colours, it being understood that two colourings will not be distinguished if they can be transformed into each other by a rotation of the cube.* In the last case the colourings are called *equivalent*. The class of colourings that are all equivalent to a given one, is called a *model* or a *configuration*. For example, in the case of two colours, white and blue,  $c=2$ , the colourings {blue:  $E, F$ , white: the rest} and {blue:  $A, C$ } are equivalent (Figure 44), but these two are not equivalent to the colouring {blue:  $A, B$ }. Direct counting shows that there are only 10 models for all possible  $2^6=64$  possible colourings. Figure 45 shows the 6 models corresponding with at most 3 blue faces (blue=hatched), the 4 remaining models can be obtained from the set of models with at most 2 blue faces, by interchanging the colours white and blue.

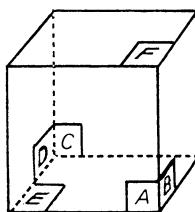


Fig. 44.

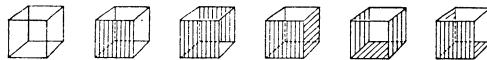


Fig. 45.

## (II) Statement of the problem

Let  $D$  and  $R$  be two finite sets,  $|D|=d$ ,  $|R|=r$ , and let  $\mathfrak{G}$  be a group of permutations of  $D$ .  $\mathbf{F}=R^D$  is the set of maps of  $D$  into  $R$ , and  $\mathfrak{F}$  is the partition of  $\mathbf{F}$  consisting of the  $\sim$  equivalence classes on  $\mathbf{F}$  defined by:

$$[7a] \quad f \sim g \Leftrightarrow \exists \alpha \in \mathfrak{G}, \quad g = f(\alpha),$$

which means:  $\forall x \in D, g(x) = f(\alpha(x))$ .

This is an equivalence indeed, because (I)  $f=f(\varepsilon)$ , (II)  $g=f(\alpha) \Rightarrow f=g(\alpha^{-1})$ , (III)  $g=f(\alpha), h=g(\beta) \Rightarrow h=h(\alpha\beta)$ . Each class  $\mathfrak{f} \in \mathfrak{F}$  is called a *model*.

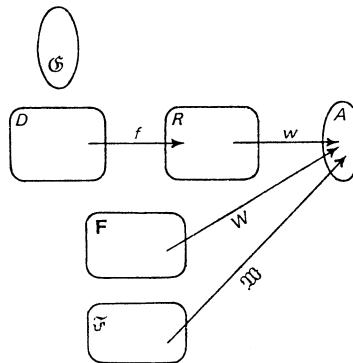


Fig. 46.

Let also  $A$  be a commutative ring, and  $w$  a map from  $R$  into  $A$ , called *weight*. We define the weight of  $f \in \mathbf{F}$  by:

$$[7b] \quad W(f) := \prod_{x \in D} w(f(x)),$$

and the *inventory* of each subset  $\mathbf{F}' \subset \mathbf{F}$ , denoted by  $W(\mathbf{F}')$ , by:

$$[7c] \quad W(\mathbf{F}') := \sum_{f \in \mathbf{F}'} W(f).$$

It is easy to see, by [7a, b], that:

$$[7d] \quad f \sim g \Rightarrow W(f) = W(g);$$

thus we can define the *weight*  $\mathfrak{W}(\mathfrak{f})$  of a *model*  $\mathfrak{f} \in \mathfrak{F}$  by:

$$[7e] \quad \mathfrak{W}(\mathfrak{f}) := W(f), \quad \text{where } f \in \mathfrak{f}$$

( $f$  is an arbitrary representative of the equivalence class  $\mathfrak{f}$ ). Like in [7c], the *inventory*  $\mathfrak{W}(\mathfrak{F})$  of each  $\mathfrak{F}' \subset \mathfrak{F}$  is defined as follows:

$$[7f] \quad \mathfrak{W}(\mathfrak{F}') = \sum_{\mathfrak{f} \in \mathfrak{F}'} \mathfrak{W}(\mathfrak{f}).$$

The problem now is to compute  $\mathfrak{W}(\mathfrak{F})$ .

In the case of example (1),  $D$  is the set of the faces of the cube,  $R$  is the set with two elements, ‘blue’ and ‘white’. The weight function  $w$  is defined by  $w(\text{blue})=t$ ,  $w(\text{white})=u$ ;  $A$  is the ring of polynomials in two variables  $t, u$ .  $\mathfrak{G}$  is the group of permutations of the faces of the cube, which we studied already on p. 248;  $\mathbf{F}$  is the set of colourings of the fixed cube, and  $\mathfrak{F}$  is the set of models of colourings. If  $W(f)=t^p u^q$ , this means, by [7b], that the colouring  $f$  is of type  $(p, q)$  in the sense that  $f$  contains  $p$  blue faces and  $q$  white faces,  $p+q=6$ . Hence, we have:

$$[7g] \quad \mathfrak{W}(\mathfrak{F}) = \sum_{\mathfrak{f} \in \mathfrak{F}} \mathfrak{W}(\mathfrak{f}) = \sum_{p, q} v(p, q) t^p u^q = P(t, u),$$

where  $v(p, q)$  is the number of models of type  $(p, q)$ . The *total* number of models is then equal to:

$$[7h] \quad \sum_{p, q} v(p, q) = P(1, 1).$$

(III) *Theorem of Pólya.* ([Pólya, 1937], and in other form [Redfield, 1927]. We follow the exposition of [De Bruijn, 1964].) Let  $Z(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_d)$  be the cycle indicator polynomial of the group of permutations  $\mathfrak{G}$  of  $D$  ([6c, d], p. 246), then we have for the value of the inventory of  $\mathfrak{F}$ :

$$\begin{aligned} [7i] \quad \mathfrak{W}(\mathfrak{F}) &:= \sum_{\mathfrak{f} \in \mathfrak{F}} \mathfrak{W}(\mathfrak{f}) \\ &= Z\left(\sum_{y \in R} w(y), \sum_{y \in R} w^2(y), \dots, \sum_{y \in R} w^d(y)\right), \end{aligned}$$

where  $\mathfrak{W}, w, \mathfrak{F}, \mathfrak{f}, R$  are defined in the previous section.

■ Let  $\mathbf{F}_\xi$  be the set of the  $f \in \mathbf{F}$  for which  $W(f)=\xi$ . It appears that we can consider  $\mathfrak{G}$  as a group of permutations of  $\mathbf{F}_\xi$  (the verification is easy), when we define  $\sigma(f)$ , for  $\sigma \in \mathfrak{G}, f \in \mathbf{F}_\xi$ , by:

$$[7j] \quad \forall x \in D, \quad \sigma(f)(x) = f(\sigma(x)).$$

It follows that the conditions of Theorem B (p. 249) are satisfied, if we take  $N$  instead of  $\mathbf{F}_\xi$ , and if we change  $N_0(\sigma)$  into:

$$[7k] \quad F_\xi(\sigma) := \{f \mid f \in \mathbf{F}_\xi, \sigma f = f\}$$

(here  $\sigma f = f$  means that  $\forall a \in D, f(\sigma(a)) = f(a)$ ). The number of models (= orbits)  $f$  whose weight is  $\xi$ ,  $f \in \mathbf{F}_\xi$ , is hence equal to (using [6j], p. 249):

$$[7l] \quad \frac{1}{|\mathfrak{G}|} \sum_{\xi \in \mathfrak{G}} |\mathbf{F}_\xi(\sigma)|.$$

Thus, by [7l] for (\*), and by [7k] for (\*\*):

$$\begin{aligned} [7m] \quad \mathfrak{W}(\mathfrak{F}) &= \sum_{f \in \mathfrak{F}} \mathfrak{W}(f) \stackrel{(*)}{=} \sum_{\xi \in A} \left( \xi \cdot \frac{1}{|\mathfrak{G}|} \sum_{\sigma \in \mathfrak{G}} |\mathbf{F}_\xi(\sigma)| \right) = \\ &= \frac{1}{|\mathfrak{G}|} \sum_{\sigma \in \mathfrak{G}} \left( \sum_{\xi \in A} \xi |\mathbf{F}_\xi(\sigma)| \right) \stackrel{(**)}{=} \frac{1}{|\mathfrak{G}|} \sum_{f \in \mathfrak{G}} \left( \sum_{\sigma f = f} W(f) \right). \end{aligned}$$

In other words, if  $\mathcal{B} = (B_1, B_2, \dots, B_k)$  is the partition of  $D$  consisting of the *orbits* of  $\sigma$  (in the sense of Definition D, p. 248), the last summation of [7m] can be taken over all  $f$  that are *constant* on each of these blocks  $B_i \in \mathcal{B}$ . Giving such a function  $f$  is hence equivalent to giving a map  $g$  of  $\mathcal{B}$  into  $R$ ,  $g \in R^{\mathcal{B}}$ . Under these circumstances, choose  $b_i \in B_i$ ,  $i \in [k]$ , and then apply Theorem A (p. 248) in (\*) to obtain the expansion of a product of sums:

$$\begin{aligned} [7n] \quad \sum_{\sigma f = f} W(f) &= \sum_{\sigma f = f} \prod_{x \in D} w(f(x)) \\ &= \sum_{\sigma f = f} \prod_{1 \leq i \leq k} \{w(f(b_i))\}^{|B_i|} \\ &= \sum_{g \in R^{\mathcal{B}}} \prod_{B \in \mathcal{B}} \{w(g(B))\}^{|B|} \\ &\stackrel{(*)}{=} \prod_{B \in \mathcal{B}} \sum_{y \in R} (w(y))^{|B|}. \end{aligned}$$

Thus we recognize the term of  $Z(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_d)$  corresponding with the permutation  $\sigma$ , [6c] (p. 247). In this term,  $x_1$  should be replaced by  $\sum_{y \in R} w(y)$ ,  $x_2$  by  $\sum_{y \in R} w^2(y)$ , etc. Hence [7l] using [7m (\*\*)]. ■

#### (IV) Application to the cube

We return to the cube of (1) with at most 2 colours. With the weight  $w$

as defined on p. 252, we have  $\sum_{y \in R} w^k(y) = t^k + u^k$ ; hence by [6f] (p. 248) and [7g, i]:

$$\begin{aligned}[7o] P(t, u) &= \frac{1}{24} \{(t+u)^6 + 3(t+u)^2(t^2+u^2)^2 + 6(t+u)^2 \times \\ &\quad \times (t^4+u^4) + 6(t^2+u^2)^3 + 8(t^3+u^3)^2\} \\ &= t^6 + t^5u + 2t^4u^2 + 2t^3u^3 + 2t^2u^4 + tu^5 + u^6.\end{aligned}$$

For instance, by [7g], the number of colourings with 4 blue faces and two white faces is equal to the coefficient of  $t^4u^2$  in [7o], hence 2. More generally, if there are  $c$  colours, then we have in [7i]  $\sum_{y \in R} w^k(y) = t_1^k + t_2^k + \dots + t_c^k$ , where  $t_1, t_2, \dots, t_c$  are  $c$  variables. Hence, by notation of Exercise 9 (p. 158), for the monomial symmetric functions:

$$\begin{aligned}[7p] P(t_1, t_2, \dots, t_c) &= \frac{1}{24} \{(t_1 + t_2 + \dots + t_c)^6 + \\ &\quad + 3(t_1 + t_2 + \dots + t_c)^2(t_1^2 + t_2^2 + \dots + t_c^2)^2 + \dots\} = \\ &= \sum \overset{(c)}{t_1^6} + \sum \overset{(c)}{t_1 t_2^5} + 2 \sum \overset{(c)}{t_1^2 t_2^4} + 2 \sum \overset{(c)}{t_1 t_2 t_3^4} + \\ &\quad + 2 \sum \overset{(c)}{t_1^3 t_2^3} + 3 \sum \overset{(c)}{t_1 t_2^2 t_3^3} + 5 \sum \overset{(c)}{t_1 t_2 t_3 t_4^3} + 6 \sum \overset{(c)}{t_1^2 t_2^2 t_3^2} + \\ &\quad + 7 \sum \overset{(c)}{t_1 t_2 t_3^2 t_4^2} + 15 \sum \overset{(c)}{t_1 t_2 t_3 t_4 t_5^2} + 30 \sum \overset{(c)}{t_1 t_2 t_3 t_4 t_5 t_6}.\end{aligned}$$

For instance, there are 15 models of the cube that use 5 given colours for the faces (hence one colour is used twice). The total number  $v_c$  of models of cubes with at most  $c$  colours is obtained by putting  $t_1 = t_2 = \dots = t_c = 1$  in [7p]. Then we obtain, after simplifications:

$$\begin{aligned}v_c &= c + 8 \binom{c}{2} + 30 \binom{c}{3} + 62 \binom{c}{4} + 75 \binom{c}{5} + 30 \binom{c}{6}, \\ v_2 &= 10, \quad v_3 = 57, \quad v_4 = 234, \text{ etc.}\end{aligned}$$

For other applications of the theorem of Pólya, see Exercises 16–20 (pp. 262–265). (Some references to the theorem of Redfield-Pólya: [De Bruijn, 1959, 1963, 1964, 1967], [Foulkes, 1963, 1966], [\*Harary, 1967], [Read, 1968], [Riordan 1957b], [Sheehan, 1967].)

## SUPPLEMENT AND EXERCISES

**1. Cauchy identity.** Show that  $\sum \{c_1!c_2! \dots 1^{c_1}2^{c_2} \dots\}^{-1} = 1$ , where the summation is taken over all sequences of integers  $c_i \geq 0$  such that  $c_1 + 2c_2 + \dots = n$ .

**2.** *Return to the permutations with a given number of inversions.* Determine an explicit formula of minimal rank for the number  $b(n, k)$  of permutations of  $[n]$  with  $k$  inversions (cf. p. 237):  $b(n, 1)=n-1$ ,  $b(n, 2)=\binom{n}{2}-1$ ,  $b(n, 3)=(1/3!)n(n^2-7)$ ,  $b(n, 4)=(1/4!)n(n+1)(n^2+n-14)$ , ... .

[Hint: [4h], p. 239, and the ‘pentagonal’ theorem of Euler, [5g], p. 104.]

**3.**  $\mathfrak{S}[n]$  and  $\mathfrak{S}(N)$  as metric spaces. (1) The expression  $d(\alpha, \beta):=\max_{1 \leq i \leq n} |\alpha(i)-\beta(i)|$ , where  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are permutations of  $[n]:=\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ , defines a distance on the set  $\mathfrak{S}[n]$  of all permutations of  $[n]$ . Let  $\Phi(n, r)$  be the number of elements of an arbitrary ball of radius  $r$ , in other words, the number of permutations  $\sigma$  such that  $d(\varepsilon, \sigma) \leq r$ , where  $\varepsilon$  stands for the identity permutation. Then,  $\Phi(n, 1)=F_n$ , the Fibonacci number (p. 45). Moreover,  $\Phi(n, 2)=2\Phi(n-1, 2)+2\Phi(n-3, 2)-\Phi(n-5, 2)$  ([Lagrange (R.), 1962a], [Mendelsohn, 1961]). More generally, the computation of  $\Phi(n, r)$  is essentially the computation of a permanent (Exercise 13, p. 201.). Between two elements of  $\alpha, \beta$  one can define also another distance function, namely the number of inversions of  $\alpha\beta^{-1}$ . (2). For each permutation  $\alpha \in \mathfrak{S}[N]$ ,  $N$  finite, let  $N(\alpha)$  be the set of the mobile points of  $\alpha$ . Show that  $d(\alpha, \beta):=|N(\alpha\beta^{-1})|$  defines a distance on  $\mathfrak{S}(N)$ . How many points are there in the ball  $\{\alpha \mid d(\varepsilon, \alpha) \leq k\}$ ? Cf. p. 180.

**4.** *Labelling  $\mathfrak{S}[n]$  by inversions.* For every permutation  $\sigma \in \mathfrak{S}[n]$  and every integer  $k \in [n]$ , let  $x_k=x_k(\sigma)$  be the number of integers  $j \leq k$  such that the pair  $(j, k+1)$  is an inversion ( $\sigma(j) \geq \sigma(k+1)$ ). Evidently  $x_k \leq k$ . So we can associate with  $\sigma$  the integer  $x=x(\sigma)=x_1+2!x_2+3!x_3+\cdots+(n-1)!x_{n-1} \leq n!-1$ . Conversely, using the factorial representation of integers (Exercise 9, p. 117), show that each  $x$ ,  $0 \leq x \leq n!-1$  is the label of a single permutation  $\sigma$ ; how to determine this permutation? [Example:  $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 4 & 3 & 6 & 5 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$  has for label  $1.1!+1.3!+4.4!+4.5!=583$ .]

**\*5.**  $\mathfrak{S}(N)$  as a lattice. We associate with every permutation  $\sigma \in \mathfrak{S}(N)$  the subset  $E(\sigma) \subset \mathfrak{P}_2[n]$  consisting of the pairs  $\{i, j\}$  which are not inverted:  $i < j \Rightarrow \sigma(i) < \sigma(j)$ . Show that  $\sigma \leq \sigma'$  if  $E(\sigma) \subset E(\sigma')$  endows  $\mathfrak{S}[n]$  with a lattice structure ([Guilbaud, Rosenstiehl, 1960]).

**6. Conditional permutations.** Let  $a_n$  be a sequence of integers  $1 < a_1 < a_2 < a_3 < \dots$  and let  $\mathfrak{z}(n, k; a_1, a_2, \dots)$  be the number of permutations of  $N$ ,  $n = |N|$ , with  $k$  orbits, such that each has a number of elements equal to one of the  $a_i$ . Then ([Gruder, 1953]):

$$\sum_{n, k} \mathfrak{z}(n, k; a_1, a_2, \dots) \frac{t^n}{n!} u^k = \exp \left\{ u \left( \frac{t^{a_1}}{a_1} + \frac{t^{a_2}}{a_2} + \dots \right) \right\}.$$

More generally, prove a theorem analogous to Theorem B (p. 98) for permutations.

**7. Derangements by number of orbits.** Let  $d(n, k)$  be the number of derangements of  $N$ ,  $|N| = n$ , with  $k$  orbits (p. 231), or permutations with  $k$  cycles of length  $\geq 2$ . (1) We have the following GF:  $e^{-tu}(1-t)^{-u} = 1 + \sum_{1 \leq k \leq n} d(n, k) t^u u^k / n!$ . [Hint: Use [2b], p. 233.] Hence,

$\sum_k (-1)^{k-1} d(n, k) = n - 1$ . (2) The following recurrence relation holds:  $d(n+1, k) = n \{d(n, k) + d(n-1, k-1)\}$ ,  $d(0, 0) = 1$ . ([Appell, 1880], [Carlitz, 1958a], [Tricomi, 1951] and Exercises 11 (p. 293) and 20 (p. 295) about the *associated* Stirling numbers of the first kind,  $s_2(n, k) = (-1)^{n+k} d(n, k)$ ). (3) For  $k \geq 2$ , and  $p$  prime, we have  $d(p, k) \equiv 0 \pmod{p(p-1)}$ . (4) For all integers  $l$ ,  $\sum_m (-1)^m d(l+m, m) = (-1)^l$ . (5) Similarly,  $\sum_m (-1)^m d(l+m, m)/(l+m-1) = 0$ . (6) We have  $d(2k, k) = 1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \dots (2k-1)$ ;  $d(2k+1, k) = \frac{1}{2} \cdot (2k+1)! \{(k-1)!2^k\}^{-1}$ ;  $d(2k+2, k) = \{(4k+5)/18\} (2k+2)! \{(k-1)!2^k\}^{-1}$ . A table of the  $d(n, k)$  is given now:

$k \setminus n$	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
1	1	2	6	24	120	720	5040	40320	362880
2			3	20	130	924	7308	64224	623376
3					15	210	2380	26432	303660
4							105	2520	44100
5									945

$k \setminus n$	11	12	13	14	15
1	3628800	39916800	479001600	6227020800	87178291200
2	6636960	76998240	967524480	13096736640	190060335360
3	3678840	47324376	647536032	9418945536	145410580224
4	705320	11098780	177331440	2920525608	49952862960
5	34650	866250	18858840	389449060	7934927000
6		10395	540540	18288270	520059540
7				135135	9459450

(7) Show that the number  $d_r(n, k)$  of permutations of  $N$  that have  $k$  orbits, all of length  $\geq r$ , satisfies the recurrence relation  $d_r(n+1, k) = nd_r(n, k) + (n)_{r-1}d_r(n-r+1, k-1)$ . N.B.:  $d_1(n, k) = s(n, k)$ ,  $d_2(n, k) = d(n, k)$ . Cf. Exercise 7, p. 221, and Exercise 20, p. 295.)

8. The  $d(n, k)$  above are used in the asymptotic expansion of  $Z_\alpha(n) = 1^{\alpha n} + 2^{\alpha n} + \dots + n^{\alpha n}$ . Let  $[r, q] := e^{-\alpha r}(1 - e^{-\alpha})^{-q-1}$ ,  $\alpha \in \mathbb{C}$ ,  $\operatorname{Re} \alpha > 0$ . Then:

$$Z_\alpha(n) \approx n^{\alpha n} \sum_{k \geq 0} C_k n^{-k},$$

where  $C_k = \sum d(q, q-k) A(q, r) (-\alpha)^{q-k} [r, q]/q!$ , a double finite summation where  $k \leq q \leq 2k$ ,  $r \leq q$ , and where the  $A(q, r)$  are the Eulerian numbers of p. 000. Thus,  $C_0 = [0, 0] = (1 - e^{-\alpha})^{-1}$ ,  $C_1 = -(\alpha/2) ([1, 2] + [2, 2], \dots)$ .

9. The number of solutions of  $\sigma^m = \varepsilon$  in  $\mathfrak{S}(N)$ . Let  $T_n$  be the number of permutations  $\sigma \in \mathfrak{S}(N)$ ,  $|N| = n$ , such that  $\sigma^2 = \varepsilon$  (=the identity permutation). Such a permutation, or *involution* (or *selfconjugate* permutation of Muir) has a cycle decomposition consisting of transpositions only. Deduce the following relations:  $T_n = T_{n-1} + (n-1) T_{n-2}$ ,  $T_0 = T_1 := 1$ , and  $\sqrt{n} \leq T_n/T_{n-1} \leq \sqrt{n} + 1$ . Finally,  $\sum_{n \geq 0} T_n t^n / n! = \exp(t + t^2/2)$ . Show then that  $T_n = n! \sum (i! j! 2^j)^{-1}$  where the summation takes place over the pairs  $(i, j)$  such that  $i + 2j = n$ . More generally, let  $T(n, k)$  be the number of solutions of  $\sigma^k = \varepsilon$ ,  $\sigma \in \mathfrak{S}(N)$  (hence  $T_n = T(n, 2)$ ); show that  $\sum_{n \geq 0} T(n, k) t^n / n! = \exp\{\sum_{d|k} t^d / d\}$ , where the last summation is taken over all divisors  $d$  of  $k$ . (See [Chowla, Herstein, Moore, 1952], [Chowla, Herstein, Scott, 1952], [Jacobstahl, 1949], [Moser, Wyman, 1955a], [Nicolas, 1969].) Use this to obtain the recurrence relation  $T(n+1, k) = \sum_{d|k} (n)_d (n-d)_d \times T(n-d+1, k)$  and the first values of  $T(n, k)$ :

$n \setminus k$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
2	1	2	1	2	1	2	1
3	1	4	3	4	1	6	1
4	1	10	9	16	1	18	1
5	1	26	21	56	25	66	1
6	1	76	81	256	145	396	1
7	1	232	351	1072	505	2052	721

**10. Permutations with ordered orbits; outstanding elements ([Sade, 1955]).** For each subset  $A \subset [n]$ , we denote by  $i(A)$  the smallest integer  $\in A$ , called the *initial integer* of  $A$ . Let  $\sigma$  be a permutation of  $[n]$ ,  $\sigma \in S[n]$ , whose orbits are numbered, say  $\Omega_1(\sigma), \Omega_2(\sigma), \dots, \Omega_l(\sigma)$ ,  $\sum_{j=1}^l |\Omega_j(\sigma)| = [n]$ , such that  $i(\Omega_1(\sigma)) < i(\Omega_2(\sigma)) < \dots < i(\Omega_l(\sigma))$ ,  $1 \leq l \leq n$ . (1) Let  $F(n, k)$  be the number of  $\sigma \in S[n]$  such that  $n \in \Omega_k(\sigma)$ . Show that

$$F(n, k) = (n-2) F(n-1, k) + F(n-1, k-1), \quad F(n, 1) = \frac{1}{2} n!, \quad F(n, n) = 1.$$

Make a complete study of this double sequence  $F(n, k)$ . (Find its GF, establish recurrence relations, etc.)

$n \setminus k$	1	2	3	4	5	6
1	1					
2	1	1				
3	3	2	1			
4	12	7	4	1		
5	60	33	19	7	1	
6	360	192	109	47	11	1

- (2) Let  $g(n, k, c)$  be the number of permutations of  $[n]$  whose  $k$ -th orbit has  $c$  elements. Then  $g(n, k, c) = (n-1) g(n-1, k, c) + g(n-1, k-1, c)$ .  
(3) An *outstanding element*  $j (\in [n])$  (of  $\sigma \in S(n)$ ) is, by definition, an element such that  $\sigma(j) > \sigma(i)$  for all  $i < j$ . We make the convention of calling 1 outstanding too. Show that the number of permutations of  $[n]$  with  $k$  outstanding elements equals  $s(n, k)$  ([Rényi, 1962]).

**11. Alternating permutations of André, Euler numbers and tangent numbers.** (For an exhaustive study of this problem, see [André, 1879a, 1881, 1883a, 1894, 1895], and [Entringer, 1966] for a reformulation. The expressions we find for  $(\cos t)^{-1}$  and  $\operatorname{tg} t$  give a *combinatorial interpretation* of the Euler and Bernoulli numbers, [14a,b], p. 48, and Exercise 36, p. 88.)

We will call a permutation  $\sigma \in S[n]$  *alternating* if and only if the  $(n-1)$  differences  $\sigma(2)-\sigma(1), \sigma(3)-\sigma(2), \dots, \sigma(n)-\sigma(n-1)$  have alternating signs. For example  $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 1 & 3 & 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix}$  and  $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 3 & 2 & 4 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$  are alternating, but  $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 3 & 2 & 1 & 4 \end{pmatrix}$  and  $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 3 & 4 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$  are not. We put  $A_0 = A_1 = A_2 = 1$  and we let  $2A_n$  be the number of alternating permutations of  $[n]$ ,  $n \geq 3$ . Show that  $2A_{n+1} = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} A_k A_{n-k}$  and that  $\sum_{n \geq 0} A_n t^n / n! = \operatorname{tg}(\pi/4 + t/2)$ . Use this to

obtain:  $\sum_{n \geq 0} A_{2n} t^{2n} / (2n)! = (\cos t)^{-1}$   
and  $\sum_{n \geq 0} A_{2n+1} t^{2n+1} / (2n+1)! = \operatorname{tg} t.$

Hence  $A_{2n} = |E_{2n}|$ , where  $E_{2n}$  is the Euler number (p. 48), and the  $A_{2n+1}$ , often called *tangent numbers*, have the following first values ([Knuth, Buckholtz, 1967], for  $m \leq 120$ ; see also [Estanave, 1902], [Schlömilch, 1857], [Schwatt, 1931], [Toscano, 1936].):

$m$	1	3	5	7	9	11	13
$A_m$	1	2	16	272	7936	353792	22368256

$m$	15	17	19	21
$A_m$	1903757312	209865342976	29088885112832	4951498053124096

With Exercise 36, p. 88, and p. 49,  $A_{2n-1} = (-1)^{n-1} B_{2n} 4^n (4^n - 1) / 2n = 4^{n-1} |G_{2n}| / n$ . Also prove the following explicit values:

$$A_{2n} = \sum_{1 \leq j \leq k \leq n} (-1)^{j+n} \binom{2k}{k-j} j^{2n} / 2^{k-1},$$

$$A_{2n+1} = \sum_{1 \leq j \leq k \leq n} (-1)^{j+n} \binom{2k}{k-j} (k+1) j^{2n} / 2^{k-1}.$$

Moreover, as a function of the *Eulerian polynomials*  $A_n(u)$  of p. 244, the tangent number  $A_{2n+1}$  equals  $A_{2n+1}(-1)$ .

Finally, it may be valuable to introduce other *tangent numbers*  $T(n, k)$  such that  $(\operatorname{tg}^k t) / k! = \sum_{n \geq k} T(n, k) t^n / n!$ , in order to compute the  $A_{2n+1} = T(2n+1, 1)$ . In fact, we have  $T(n+1, k) = T(n, k-1) + k(k+1) \times T(n, k+1)$ , hence the first values of  $T(n, k)$ :

$n \setminus k$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
1	1										
2		1									
3	2		1								
4		8		1							
5	16		20		1						
6		136		40		1					
7	272		616		70		1				
8		3968		2016		112		1			
9	7936		28160		5376		168		1		
10		176896		135680		12432		240		1	
11	353792		1805056		508640		25872		330		1

Find a formula of rank 2 for  $T(n, k)$ . Of course, these numbers are *inverses* (p. 143) of the *arctangent numbers*  $t(n, k)$  defined by  $(\operatorname{arctg} t)^k/k! = \sum_{n \geq k} t(n, k) t^n/n!$ , for which holds  $t(n+1, k) = t(n, k-1) - n(n-1) \times t(n-1, k)$ , the first values being:

$n \setminus k$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
1	1									
2		1								
3		-2	1							
4			-8	1						
5			24	-20	1					
6			184	-40		1				
7			-720	784	-70		1			
8			-8448	2464	-112		1			
9			40320	-52352	6384	-168		1		
10			648576	-229760	14448	-240			1	
11			-3628800	5360256	-804320	29568				-330

\*12. *The number of terms of a symmetric determinant.* (1) Let be given two permutations  $\alpha, \beta \in \mathfrak{S}(n)$ ,  $|N|=n$ . Show that the following relation is an equivalence relation: “if  $\gamma$  is a cycle of  $\alpha$  (or  $\beta$ ), then  $\gamma$  or  $\gamma^{-1}$  is a cycle of  $\beta$  (or  $\alpha$ )”. (2) The number of equivalence classes of type  $[\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots]$  equals  $n! \{c_1! c_2! \dots 1^{c_1} 2^{c_2} \dots 2^{c_3+c_4+\dots}\}^{-1}$ . (3) The total number  $a_n$  of classes satisfies  $\sum_{n \geq 0} a_n t^n/n! = (1-t)^{-1/2} \exp(t/2 + t^2/4)$ . (4) The difference between the numbers of ‘even’ classes and ‘odd’ classes, denoted by  $a'_n$ , satisfies  $\sum_{n \geq 0} a'_n t^n/n! = (1+t)^{1/2} \exp(t/2 - t^2/4)$ . (Cf. [3g], p. 277.) (5) It follows that  $a_{n+1} = (n+1) a_n - \binom{n}{2} a_{n-2}$  and  $a'_{n+1} = -(n-1) a'_n - \binom{n}{2} \times a'_{n-2}$ . (6) Show that the numbers  $p_n$  and  $q_n$  of ‘positive’ and ‘negative’ terms of a *symmetric* determinant of order  $n$  satisfy  $p_n + q_n = a_n$ ,  $p_n - q_n = a'_n$ . (7) Treat all the preceding questions for the case of ‘derangements’, in which case the determinant of (6) is supposed to have only 0 on the main diagonal. ([\*Pólya, Szegő, II, 1926], p. 110, Exercises 45–46.)

\*13. *Permutations by number of ‘sequences’.* (For many other properties, see [André, 1898].) Let  $\sigma$  be a permutation of  $[n]$ ,  $\sigma \in \mathfrak{S}[n]$ . A *sequence* of length  $l (\geq 2)$  of  $\sigma$  is a maximal interval of integers  $[i, i+l-1] = \{i, i+1, \dots, i+l-1\}$  on which  $\sigma$  is monotonic. The sequence is called *intermediary* or *left* or *right* according to whether  $1 < i, i+l-1 < n$  or

$i=1$  or  $i+l-1=n$ . A peak of  $\sigma$  is a maximum with respect to  $\sigma$ . The peak (in  $i$ ) is called intermediary or left or right, when  $1 < i < n$  or  $\sigma(i-1) < \sigma(i) > \sigma(i+1)$  or  $i=1$ ,  $\sigma(1) > \sigma(2)$  or  $i=n$ ,  $\sigma(n-1) < \sigma(n)$ , respectively. Let  $\mathbf{P}(n, s)$  be the set of permutations of  $[n]$  with  $s$  sequences, and let  $P_{n,s} := |\mathbf{P}(n, s)|$ . Using the map  $g$ , introduced in [5d] (p. 242) from  $\mathbf{P}(n, s)$  into  $\mathbf{P}(n-1, s) + \mathbf{P}(n-1, s-1) + \mathbf{P}(n-1, s-2)$ , as well as the notations given above, show that  $P_{n,s} = sP_{n-1,s} + 2P_{n-1,s-1} + (n-s)P_{n-1,s-2}$ . For all  $n \geq 2k+4$ ,  $1^k P_{n,1} + 3^k P_{n,3} + 5^k P_{n,5} + \dots = 2^k P_{n,2} + 4^k P_{n,4} + \dots$ . Finally,  $\sum_{n,k} P_{n,k} u^k t^n / n! = (1+u)^{-1} \{(1-u)(1-\sin(v+t\cos v))-1\}$ , where  $u := \sin v$ .

$n \setminus s$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
2	2								
3	2	4							
4	2	12	10						
5	2	28	58	32					
6	2	60	236	300	122				
7	2	124	836	1852	1682	544			
8	2	252	2766	9576	14622	10332	2770		
9	2	508	8814	45096	103326	119964	69298	15872	
10	2	1020	27472	201060	650892	1106820	1034992	505500	101042

Evidently,  $P_{n,n-1} = 2A_n$  (Exercise 11, p. 258.) For each sequence  $Q = (q_1, q_2, \dots, q_{n-1})$  of  $\pm 1$ , let us denote the number of permutations  $\sigma \in \mathfrak{S}[n]$  such that  $q_j = sg(\sigma(j+1) - \sigma(j))$ ,  $j \in [n-1]$ , by  $[Q]$ . Giving  $Q$  is evidently equivalent to giving the indices  $k_1, k_2, \dots, k_r$  of the  $q_i$  that are equal to  $-1$  ( $r \leq n-1$ ). We use the convention  $k_0 := 0$  and  $k_{r+1} := n$ . Show that:

$$[Q] = \det \begin{pmatrix} \binom{k_1}{k_0} & \binom{k_1}{k_1} & \cdots & \binom{k_1}{k_r} \\ \binom{k_2}{k_0} & \binom{k_2}{k_1} & \cdots & \binom{k_2}{k_r} \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ \binom{k_{r+1}}{k_0} & \binom{k_{r+1}}{k_1} & \cdots & \binom{k_{r+1}}{k_r} \end{pmatrix}.$$

([Niven, 1968], [De Bruijn, 1970.])

**14. Permutations of  $[n]$  by number of components.** To every  $\sigma \in \mathfrak{S}[n]$  we

associate the *division*  $[n] = I_1 + I_2 + \cdots + I_k$ , where the *components*  $I_h$  of  $\sigma$  are the *smallest intervals* such that  $\sigma(I_h) = I_h$ ,  $h = 1, 2, \dots, k$ . For example,  $\sigma = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 & 4 & 6 & 5 \end{pmatrix}$  has the three components  $\{1, 2, 3\}$ ,  $\{4\}$ ,  $\{5, 6\}$ , and the identity  $\varepsilon$  has  $n$  components. A permutation is said to be *indecomposable* if it has one component; so is  $\sigma$ , if  $\sigma(k) = n - k + 1$ . We denote by  $C(n, k)$  the number of permutations with  $k$  components. Introducing the Euler formal series  $\varepsilon(t) := \sum_{n \geq 0} n! t^n$  (see also Exercise 34, p. 171), we have the GF:  $\iota(t) := \sum_{n \geq 1} C(n, 1) t^n = 1 - (\varepsilon(t))^{-1}$  and  $\sum_{n \geq k} C(n, k) t^n = (\iota(t))^k$ . Find a simple recurrence for  $C(n, k)$ . [Hint: Use  $t^2 \varepsilon' = (1-t) \varepsilon - 1$  (Exercise 16, p. 294).] Here are the first values of  $C(n, k)$ :

$n \setminus k$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
1	1									
2		1								
3			1							
4				1						
5					1					
6						1				
7							1			
8								1		
9									1	
10										1
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
	1	3	12	4	1					
		32	58	18	5					
		177	327	92	25	6				
		1142	2109	531	135	33	7			
		8411	15366	3440	800	188	42	8		
		69692	125316	24892	5226	1146	252	52	9	
		273343	642581							
		2829325								

**15. Cayley representation of a finite group.** Let  $N$  be a finite multiplicatively written group,  $n = |N|$ . With every  $a \in N$  we associate the permutation  $\sigma_a$  of  $N$  defined by  $\sigma_a x = ax$ ,  $x \in N$ . Let  $\mathfrak{G}$  be the group of these permutations, called the Cayley representation of the group  $N$ . Show that  $\mathfrak{G}$  is isomorphic to  $N$  ( $\Leftrightarrow \sigma_a \sigma_b = \sigma_{ab}$ ) and that  $Z(\mathfrak{G}; x_1, x_2, \dots) = (1/n) \sum v(d) (x_d)^{n/d}$ , where  $d$  runs through the set of divisors  $\geq 1$  of  $n$ , and where  $v(d)$  is the number of elements  $a (\in N)$  with order  $d$ .

**16. Cube and octahedron.** (1) Let  $N$  be the set of the 8 vertices of a cube, and let  $\mathfrak{G}$  be the group of permutations of  $N$  induced by the rotations of this cube. Then the cycle indicator polynomial  $Z(x)$  equals  $\frac{1}{24} (x_1^8 + 9x_2^4 + 6x_4^2 + 8x_1^2 x_3^2)$ . Prove that if  $N$  is the set of the 12 edges, we have  $Z(x) = \frac{1}{24} (x_1^{12} + 3x_2^6 + 6x_4^3 + 6x_1^2 x_5^2 + 8x_3^4)$ . (2) Show that there are only three different ways to distribute three red balls, two black balls and one white ball over the vertices of a regular octahedron in Euclidean three-

dimensional space. The octahedron is supposed to be freely movable. Generalize to  $c$  colours, as on p. 254.

**17. Colourings of a roulette.** (1) Let  $\mathfrak{G}$  be the cyclic group of order  $n$ . Show that  $Z(\mathfrak{G}; x_1, x_2, \dots) = (1/n) \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} x_{n/(k,n)}^{(k,n)}$  where  $(k, n)$  is the GCD of  $k$  and  $n$ . (2) Use this to obtain:

$$Z(\mathfrak{G}; x_1, x_2, \dots) = (1/n) \sum_{d|n} \varphi(d) (x_d)^{n/d},$$

where  $\varphi(d)$  is the Euler function (p. 193), and  $d|n$  means ' $d$  divides  $n$ '. (3) Now consider a roulette. This is a disc freely rotating around its axis, and divided into  $n$  equal sectors. Show that the number of ways to paint the sectors of the roulette into  $\leq p$  colours equals  $(1/n) \sum_{d|n} \varphi(d) p^{n/d}$ . (Two ways which can be transformed into each other by a rotation are considered equal. [Jablonski, 1892].)

**18. Necklaces with two colours.** Let  $N$  be the set of  $n$  vertices of a regular polygon,  $n = |N|$ . Let be given  $\alpha$  blue beads and  $(n - \alpha)$  red beads,  $0 \leq \alpha \leq n$ . On each vertex a bead is placed, thus obtaining a *necklace*. Let  $P_n^\alpha$  be the number of different necklaces. Two necklaces that can be transformed into each other by rotation, or reflection with respect to a diameter, or both, are not distinguished from each other. Then we have  $P_n^1 = 1$ ,  $P_n^2 = [n/2]$ ,  $P_n^3 = n^2/12$  if  $n \equiv 0 \pmod{6}$  or  $(n^2 - 1)/12$  if  $n \equiv \pm 1 \pmod{6}$  or  $(n^2 - 4)/12$  if  $n \equiv \pm 2 \pmod{6}$  or  $(n^2 + 3)/12$  if  $n \equiv 3 \pmod{6}$ . Compute  $P_n^\alpha$  and generalize. ([Durrande, 1816], [Gilbert, Riordan, 1961], [Lagrange, R., 1962b], [Moreau, 1872], \*Riordan, 1958], p. 162, [Titsworth, 1964].)

**\*19. The number of unlabeled graphs.** Two graphs  $\mathcal{G}$  and  $\mathcal{G}'$  over  $N$  are called *equivalent*, or *isomorphic* if there exists a permutation  $\sigma$  of  $N$ , which induces a map from the set of edges of  $\mathcal{G}$  onto the set of edges of  $\mathcal{G}'$ . In other words,  $\exists \sigma \in \mathfrak{S}(N), \{x, y\} \in \mathcal{G} \Leftrightarrow \{\sigma(x), \sigma(y)\} \in \mathcal{G}'$ . Each equivalence class, thus obtained, is called an *unlabeled graph*, abbreviated UG (graphs as we have seen on p. 61 are called *labeled graphs*, to distinguish them from the UG; their vertices are distinguishable). For instance, there are three UG's with 4 nodes and 3 edges:  $\mathcal{G}_1, \mathcal{G}_2, \mathcal{G}_3$  ( $\mathcal{G}_4$  is equivalent to  $\mathcal{G}_1$ ) (see Figure 47).

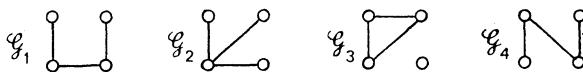


Fig. 47.

From now on,  $N = [n] = \{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ . With each  $\sigma \in \mathfrak{S}(n)$  we associate the permutation  $\hat{\sigma}$  of  $\mathfrak{P}_2[n]$  defined for each pair  $\{x, y\}$  by  $\hat{\sigma}\{x, y\} := \{\sigma(x), \sigma(y)\}$ . The set of the  $\hat{\sigma}$  forms together the ‘group of pairs’, denoted by  $\mathfrak{S}^{(2)}[n]$  ( $\leqslant \mathfrak{S}(\mathfrak{P}_2[n])$ ), which has a cycle indicator polynomial  $Z(\mathfrak{S}^{(2)}[n]; x_1, x_2, \dots)$ , denoted by  $Z_n(x_1, x_2, \dots)$ . (1) Show that the number  $g_{n,k}$  of UG satisfies  $\sum_k g_{n,k} x^k = Z_n(1+x, 1+x^2, 1+x^3, \dots)$ . (2) For  $\sigma \in \mathfrak{S}[n]$  of type  $[[c_1, c_2, \dots]]$ , let  $I_k[[c_1, c_2, \dots]]$  be the number of  $k$ -orbits (in  $\mathfrak{P}_2[n]$ ) of  $\hat{\sigma}$ . Then,  $Z_n(x_1, x_2, \dots)$  equals:

$$\frac{1}{n!} \sum_{c_1+2c_2+\dots=n} \frac{n!}{c_1! c_2! \dots} x_1^{I_1} \mathbb{I}_{c_1, c_2, \dots} x_2^{I_2} \mathbb{I}_{c_1, c_2, \dots} \dots$$

(3) Show that  $I_k[[c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n]] = c_{2k} + (c_k/2)(k-1+\langle k/2 \rangle) + (1/2k) \times \sum i j c_i (c_i - \delta_{ij})$ , where  $[i, j]$  is the LCM of  $i$  and  $j$ ,  $\delta_{i,j}$  the Kronecker symbol, and  $\langle x \rangle = x$ , if  $x$  is an integer, and  $=0$  otherwise, the summation being taken over all  $(i, j)$  such that  $1 \leq i \leq j \leq n$  and  $[i, j] = k$ . (This theorem, in this form, is due to [Oberschelp, 1967]. Counting unlabeled graphs and digraphs is done in the fundamental paper by [Pólya, 1937], and also in [Harary] and [Read], among others.) Thus,  $Z_2 = x_1$ ,  $Z_3 = (1/3!) (x_1^3 + 3x_1 x_2 + 2x_3)$ ,  $Z_4 = (1/4!) (x_1^6 + 9x_1^2 x_2^2 + 8x_3^2 + 6x_2 x_4)$ , ... The first values of  $g_{n,k}$  are:

$n \setminus k$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
2	1									
3	1	1	1							
4	1	2	3	2	1	1				
5	1	2	4	6	6	6	4	2	1	1
6	1	2	5	9	15	21	24	24	21	15
7	1	2	5	10	21	41	65	97	131	148
8	1	2	5	11	24	56	115	221	402	663

\*20. *The number of unlabeled m-graphs.* Let us call any system of  $m$ -blocks (p. 7) of  $N$  an  $m$ -graph of  $N$ . In particular, an ordinary graph is a 2-graph. Let  $g_n^{(m)}$  be the total number of unlabeled  $m$ -graphs (in the sense of the previous exercise). Then, for fixed  $m$ , when  $n \rightarrow \infty$ :

$$g_n^{(m)} = \frac{2^{\binom{n}{m}}}{n!} \left\{ 1 + \frac{\binom{n}{2}}{2^{\binom{n-2}{m-1}}} (1 + o(1)) \right\}.$$

([Oberschelp, 1968]; see also [\*Carnap, 1950], [Davis, 1953], [Mišek, 1963, 1964], Pólya, 1940]).

**\*21. Rearrangements.** This is a generalization of as well a *permutation* and a *minimal path* (p. 20). Let  $\mathfrak{X} := \{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n\}$  be a finite set with  $n$  elements. A *rearrangement* of  $\mathfrak{X}$ , (abbreviated RA) is a word of  $\mathfrak{X}$  (p. 18). More precisely, a  $(c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n)$ -RA of  $\mathfrak{X}$ , say  $f$ , is a word in which the letter  $x_i$  occurs  $c_i$  times,  $c_i \geq 0$ ,  $i \in [n]$ . We say also ‘RA of  $x_1^{c_1} x_2^{c_2} \dots x_n^{c_n}$ , or ‘word of specification  $(c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n)$ ’, and we denote  $f \in \mathfrak{X}(c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n)$ . For instance, for  $\mathfrak{X} := \{a, b, c\}$  the RA  $f_1 := b a a b c b c c c b$  and  $f_2 := c a a a c c a$  are of specification  $(2, 4, 4)$  and  $(4, 0, 3)$ , respectively. For  $c_1 = c_2 = \dots = c_n = 1$ , we get back the *permutations* of  $\mathfrak{X}$ . A RA can be represented as a *minimal path* in the euclidean  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , which describes a process of counting ballots for an election with  $n$  candidates. The word  $f_1$  is shown in Figure 48. (1) The number of  $(c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n)$ -RA equals  $(c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n)$  (p. 27). (2) A *sequence* of  $f \in \mathfrak{X}(c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n)$  is a maximal row of consecutive  $x_i$  in  $f$ ,  $i \in [n]$ . For instance,  $f_1$  has 7 sequences. What is the

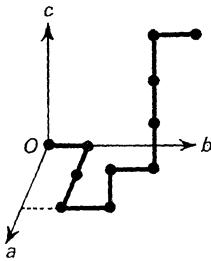


Fig. 48.

number of the  $f \in \mathfrak{X}(c_1, c_2, \dots)$  having  $s$  sequences ([\*David, Barton, 1962], p. 119)? (3) Compute  $f_{l_1, l_2, \dots, l_n}(c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n)$ , which is the number of the  $(c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n)$ -RA such that between two letters  $x_i$  there are at least  $l_i$  other letters. (A generalization of [8d], p. 21, and Exercise 1, p. 198.) (4) If  $\mathfrak{X} = [n]$ , then we can consider  $f$  as a map from  $[p]$ ,  $p := c_1 + c_2 +$

$\dots + c_n$  into  $[n]$  such that for all  $i \in [n]$ ,  $|f^{-1}(i)| = c_i$  (Figure 49 shows  $f_1 = 2\ 1\ 1\ 2\ 3\ 2\ 3\ 3\ 3\ 2$ ). An *inversion* of  $f$  is a pair  $(i, j)$  such that  $1 \leq i < j \leq p$  and  $f(i) > f(j)$  ( $f_1$  has 7 inversions). Show that the number  $b(c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n; k)$  of  $(c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n)$ -RA of  $[n]$  with  $k$  inversions,  $c_1,$

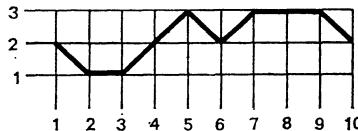


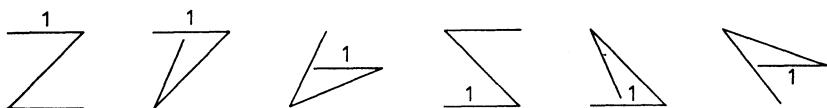
Fig. 49.

$c_2, \dots \geq 1$ , has for GF  $\sum_k b(c_1, c_2, \dots; k) u^k$  the following rational fraction:

$$\frac{(1-u)(1-u^2)\cdots(1-u^p)}{\prod_{i_1=1}^{c_1}(1-u^{i_1}) \cdot \prod_{i_2=1}^{c_2}(1-u^{i_2}) \cdots \prod_{i_n=1}^{c_n}(1-u^{i_n})}.$$

(For  $c_1 = c_2 = \dots = 1$ , we recover [4h], p. 239.) (5) We call the sum  $T(f)$  of the indices  $j \in [p-1]$  such that  $f(j) > f(j+1)$  ( $f$  is a  $(c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n)$ -RA of  $[n]$ ) the *index* of  $f$ . So the index is the sum of the  $j$  where there is a *descent* (or *fall*). Show that the number of RA for which  $T(f) = k$  equals  $b(c_1, c_2, \dots; k)$ . ([MacMahon, 1913, 1916] gives a proof using the GF; [Foata, 1968] and [\*Cartier, Foata, 1969] give a ‘bijective’ proof.) (6) An *ascent* (or *rise*) of a  $(c_1, c_2, \dots)$ -RA of  $[n]$ ,  $f$ , is an index  $i$  such that  $f(i) < f(i+1)$ . Compute the number  $A(c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n; k)$  of the RA with  $(k-1)$  ascents. (These numbers are a generalization of the Eulerian numbers [5e], p. 242. They give the solution to the problem of Simon Newcomb (p. 246).)

\*22. *Folding a strip of stamps.* Given a strip of  $n$  stamps labelled 1, 2, ...,  $n$  from left to right, the problem is to determine the number  $A(n)$  of ways this strip can be folded along the perforations so that the stamps are piled one on top of each other without destroying the continuity of the strip. It is supposed that stamp labelled 1 has its front side facing the top of the pile and its left edge on the left as we look down on the pile. So  $A(1)=1$ ,  $A(2)=2$ , and  $A(3)=6$  as it is shown by the following figures:



If  $n \geq 2$ , prove that  $A(n) = 2na(n)$ , where  $a(n)$  is a positive integer. Here are the known values of  $a(n)$ :

$n$	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
$a(n)$	1	1	2	5	12	33	87	252	703	2105	6099	18689	55639	173423	526937

$n$	17	18	19	20	21	22	23
$a(n)$	1664094	5137233	16393315	51255709	164951529	521138861	1688959630

$n$	24	25	26	27	28
$a(n)$	5382512216	17547919924	56335234064	184596351277	596362337295

(Up to 10: [Touchard, 1950, 1952]; up to 12: [Sade, 1949a]; up to 16: [Koehler, 1968]; up to 28: [Lunnon, 1973].)

\*23. *An explicit and combinatorial Stirling expansion for the gamma function of large argument.* Using the Watson lemma for Laplace transforms, show that

$$\Gamma(x) \approx \left(\frac{x}{e}\right)^x \sqrt{\frac{2\pi}{x}} \left(1 + \sum_{q \geq 1} \frac{c_q}{x^q}\right), \quad x \rightarrow \infty,$$

where the coefficients

$$c_q = \sum_{k=1}^{2q} (-1)^k \frac{d_3(2q+2k, k)}{2^{q+k}(q+k)!}$$

use the number  $d_3(m, k)$  of permutations of  $[m]$  with  $k$  orbits all  $\geq 3$  (See Exercise 7 p. 256). The first values of  $c_q$  are (for  $q \leq 20$ , see [Wrench, 1968]):

$q$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
$c_q$	1	1	-139	-571	163879	5246819	-534703531

12	288	-51840	-2488320	209018880	75246796800	-902961561600
----	-----	--------	----------	-----------	-------------	---------------

## CHAPTER VII

### EXAMPLES OF INEQUALITIES AND ESTIMATES

In the preceding chapters we have established explicit formulas for counting sets. The sets we wanted to count were of the following type: a finite set  $N$  with  $n$  elements is given, and then we studied sets of combinatorial objects bound to  $N$  that satisfied some additional conditions. If these conditions are not simple, then the explicit formula is usually not simple either, difficult to obtain, and little efficient. It can often be replaced advantageously by upper and lower bounds. Evidently, the closer these bounds fit, the better.

In most of the cases we want to determine conditions in the form of inequalities between certain parameters (integers) that guarantee the existence or non-existence of configurations between these parameters. The search for such inequalities has the charm of challenging problems, since there is no general rule for obtaining this kind of results.

In this chapter we give also an example of the use of probabilistic language, and, moreover, an asymptotic expansion of the most easy kind.

#### 7.1. CONVEXITY AND UNIMODALITY OF COMBINATORIAL SEQUENCES

Just as in the case of functions of a real variable, it is interesting to know the global behaviour of combinatorial sequences of integers  $v_k$ : monotony, convexity, extrema; this is a fertile source of inequalities, which are particularly useful in estimates.

In this respect we recall some definitions.

I. A real sequence  $v_k$ ,  $k=0, 1, 2, \dots$ , is called *convex* on an interval  $[a, b]$  (containing at least 3 consecutive integers) when:

$$[1a] \quad v_k \leq \frac{1}{2}(v_{k-1} + v_{k+1}), \quad k \in [a+1, b-1].$$

It is called *concave* on  $[a, b]$  if, in [1a],  $\leq$  is replaced by  $\geq$ . In the case where the inequalities are *strict* for all  $k$ ,  $v_k$  is called *strictly convex* or *strictly concave*. [1a] is equivalent to  $\Delta^2 v_k := v_{k+2} - 2v_{k+1} + v_k \geq 0$  for all

$k \in [a, b-2]$  (p. 13). The polygonal representation of  $v_k$  has hence the form of Figures 50a or b. For instance,  $v_n := \binom{n}{m}$ ,  $m$  fixed  $\geq 2$ , is strictly convex on  $[m, \infty]$ , because  $\Delta^2 v_n = \binom{n+2}{m} - 2\binom{n+1}{m} + \binom{n}{m} = \binom{n}{m-2} > 0$ .

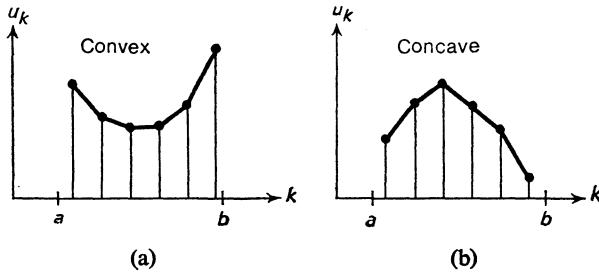


Fig. 50.

II. A real sequence  $v_k$ ,  $k=0, 1, 2, \dots$ , is called *unimodal* if there exist two integers  $a$  and  $b$  such that:

$$[1b] \quad k \leq a-2 \Rightarrow v_k \leq v_{k+1}; \quad v_{a-1} < v_a = v_{a+1} = \dots = v_b > v_{b+1}; \\ k \geq b+1 \Rightarrow v_k \geq v_{k+1}.$$

Figure 51a represents the polygon of a unimodal sequence in the case of a *plateau* ( $\Leftrightarrow a < b$ ) with 4 points, and Figure 51b shows the case of a *peak* ( $\Leftrightarrow a=b$ ).

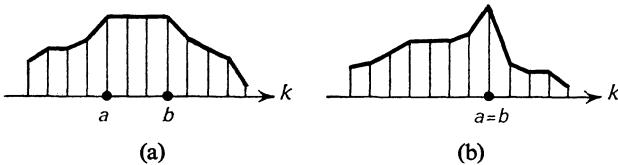


Fig. 51.

For instance,  $v_k := \binom{n}{k}$ ,  $n$  fixed  $\geq 2$ , is unimodal on  $[0, n]$  with a peak in  $k = \frac{1}{2}n$  if  $n$  is even, and with a plateau in  $k = (n \pm 1)/2$  if  $n$  is odd.

III. A real sequence  $v_k \geq 0$ ,  $k=0, 1, 2, \dots$ , is called *logarithmically convex* in  $[a, b]$  if:

$$[1c] \quad v_k^2 \leq v_{k-1} v_{k+1}, \quad k \in [a+1, b-1].$$

It is called *logarithmically concave* if, in [1c],  $\leq$  is everywhere replaced by  $\geq$ . In the case that the inequalities are *strict* for all  $k$ ,  $v_k$  is called *strictly logarithmically convex* (or *concave*).

The terminology adopted here originates from the fact that [1c] is equivalent to saying that  $w_k := \log v_k$  is convex.

**THEOREM A.** *Each sequence  $v_k (\geq 0)$  which is logarithmically concave on its interval of definition, say  $[a, b]$ , is there either nondecreasing or non-increasing or unimodal. Moreover, in the last case, if  $v_k$  is strictly logarithmically concave, then  $v_k$  has either a peak or a plateau with 2 points.*

■  $v_k^2 \geq v_{k-1}v_{k+1}$  can be written as  $v_k/v_{k-1} \geq v_{k+1}/v_k$ , which proves that  $z_k := v_k/v_{k-1}$  is decreasing on  $[a+1, b]$ , where  $a$  and  $b$  are supposed to be integers without loss of generality. If  $z_b \geq 1$  (or  $z_{a+1} \leq 1$ ),  $v_k$  is increasing (or decreasing) on  $[a, b]$ . If  $z_{a+1} > 1$  and  $z_b < 1$ ,  $v_k$  is evidently unimodal. In the last case, if  $z_k$  decreases strictly, then there is at most one value of  $k$  such that  $z_k = 1$ , which gives then a plateau of 2 points. ■

**THEOREM B.** *If the generating polynomial:*

$$[1d] \quad P(x) := \sum_{0 \leq k \leq p} v_k x^k, \quad v_p \neq 0,$$

*of a finite sequence  $v_k (\geq 0)$ ,  $0 \leq k \leq p$ , has only real roots ( $\leq 0$ ), then:*

$$[1e] \quad v_k^2 \geq v_{k-1}v_{k+1} \frac{k}{k-1} \cdot \frac{p-k+1}{p-k}, \quad k \in [2, p-1]$$

*(this is one form of the Newton inequalities, [\*Hardy, Pólya, Littlewood, 1952], p. 104); hence  $v_k$  is unimodal, either with a peak or with a plateau of 2 points.*

■ Let us first suppose that all the  $v_k > 0$ . Applying the theorem of Rolle, the polynomial  $Q(x, y) = \sum_{k=0}^p v_k x^k y^{p-k}$  has only roots with real  $y/x$ , so the polynomials  $\partial Q / \partial x$  and  $\partial Q / \partial y$  also have this property; inductively we find then that this is true for all  $\partial^{a+b} Q / \partial x^a \partial y^b$ ,  $a+b \leq p-1$ . This holds particularly for the second-degree polynomial  $\partial^{p-2} Q / \partial x^{k-1} \partial y^{p-k-1}$ , whose discriminant is consequently  $\geq 0$ , hence [1e]. Now, if there does exist

an  $l$  such that  $v_l=0$ ,  $0 \leq l \leq p-1$ , then all the roots of  $P(x)=0$  are zero, since these are numbers  $\leq 0$  whose  $(p-l)$ -th elementary symmetric function is zero; so finally,  $v_k=0$ ,  $0 \leq k \leq p-1$ , hence [1e] follows again. ■

Now we have a powerful tool for proving unimodality of certain combinatorial sequences.

**THEOREM C.** *The sequence of the absolute values of the Stirling numbers of the first kind,  $s(n, k)$ ,  $n$  fixed ( $\geq 3$ ),  $k$  variable ( $\leq n$ ) is unimodal, with a peak or plateau of 2 points.*

In fact, only the peak exists, [Erdős, 1953]; for estimates of its abscissa, see [Hammersley, 1951], [Moser, Wyman, 1958b].)

■ In fact, the ‘horizontal’ polynomial ([5f], p. 213)  $\sum_k s(n, k) x^k = x(x+1)\cdots(x+n-1)$  has only real roots, and we can apply Theorem B. ■

**THEOREM D.** *The sequence  $S(n, k)$  of the Stirling numbers of the second kind,  $n$  fixed ( $\geq 3$ ),  $k$  variable ( $\leq n$ ), is unimodal with a peak or plateau of 2 points. ([Harper, 1967], [Lieb, 1968]. See also [Bach, 1968], [Dobson, 1968], [Dobson, Rennie, 1969], [Harborth, 1968], [Kanold, 1968a, b], [Wegner, 1970], and Exercise 23, p. 296.)*

■ We know ([2b], p. 206) that the  $P_n=P_n(x):=\sum_{k=0}^n S(n, k)x^k$  satisfy:

$$\Phi = \Phi(t, x) := \sum_{n \geq 0} P_n(x) \frac{t^n}{n!} = \exp\{x(e^t - 1)\}.$$

Now  $x\Phi + x\partial\Phi/\partial x - \partial\Phi/\partial t = 0$ . Hence:

$$[1f] \quad P_n = x \left( P_{n-1} + \frac{dP_{n-1}}{dx} \right), \quad n \geq 1.$$

Put  $H_n:=e^x P_n$ ; [1f] gives then  $H_n=x dH_{n-1}/dx$ . Applying the theorem of Rolle repeatedly shows the roots of  $H_n$  to be all  $\leq 0$ , hence also the roots of  $P_n$  are  $\leq 0$ , as they are the same. Then apply Theorem B again. ■

## 7.2. SPERNER SYSTEMS

**DEFINITION.** *A system  $\mathcal{S}$  of distinct blocks of a finite set  $N$ ,  $\mathcal{S} \subset \mathfrak{P}'(N)$ ,*

is called a Sperner system, if for any two blocks, one is not contained in the other. In other words, if  $\mathcal{S}(N)$  is the family of these systems:

$$(\mathcal{S} \in \mathbf{s}(N)) \Leftrightarrow ((B, B' \in \mathcal{S}) \Rightarrow (B \not\subset B' \text{ and } B' \not\subset B)).$$

**THEOREM** [Sperner, 1928]. *The maximum number of blocks of a Sperner system equals  $\binom{n}{[n/2]}$ , where  $[x]$  is the largest integer  $\leq x$ .*

■ For all  $\mathcal{S} \in \mathbf{s}(N)$ , we will prove with [Lubell, 1966]:

$$[2a] \quad \sum_{B \in \mathcal{S}} \frac{1}{\binom{n}{|B|}} \leq 1.$$

This will imply the theorem, because  $\binom{n}{k} \leq \binom{n}{[n/2]}$  for all  $k \in [0, n]$ , hence:

$$\sum_{B \in \mathcal{S}} \frac{1}{\binom{n}{|B|}} \geq \sum_{B \in \mathcal{S}} \frac{1}{\binom{n}{[n/2]}} = \frac{|\mathcal{S}|}{\binom{n}{[n/2]}}.$$

From this we get, using [2a],  $|\mathcal{S}| \leq \binom{n}{[n/2]}$ . This maximum value is reached by the Sperner system  $\mathfrak{P}_{[n/2]}(N)$ . We now prove [2a]. We introduce the name *chain* for a system  $\mathcal{C} = \{C_1, C_2, \dots, C_i\}$  of  $N$ ,  $\mathcal{C} \subset \mathfrak{P}'(N)$  such that  $C_1 \subset C_2 \subset \dots \subset C_i$ , with *strict* inclusions. A chain is called *maximal* if it has a maximal number of blocks, namely  $n$ . Let  $\mathbf{c}(N)$  be the family of maximal chains of  $N$ . A maximal chain is evidently completely determined by the permutation  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$  of  $N$ , given by:  $x_1 := C_1$ ,  $x_2 := C_2 - C_1, \dots, x_n := C_n - C_{n-1}$ . Hence  $|\mathbf{c}(N)| = n!$ . Now we observe that a given system  $\mathcal{S}$  is a Sperner system if and only if *each* chain  $\mathcal{C} \in \mathbf{c}(N)$  satisfies  $|\mathcal{C} \cap \mathcal{S}| = 0$  or 1. Let  $\mathbf{c}_{\mathcal{S}}$  be the family of chains  $\mathcal{C} \in \mathbf{c}(N)$  such that  $|\mathcal{C} \cap \mathcal{S}| = 1$ . We define the map  $\varphi$  from  $\mathbf{c}_{\mathcal{S}}$  into  $\mathcal{S}$  by  $\varphi(\mathcal{C}) :=$  the unique block  $B \in \mathcal{C} \cap \mathcal{S}$ . Of course  $\varphi$  is surjective, and for all  $B \in \mathcal{S}$ ,  $|\varphi^{-1}(B)| = |B|!(n-|B|)!$ . It follows that:

$$[2b] \quad |\mathbf{c}_{\mathcal{S}}| = \sum_{B \in \mathcal{S}} |\varphi^{-1}(B)| = \sum_{B \in \mathcal{S}} |B|!(n-|B|)!.$$

It now suffices to combine  $|\mathbf{c}_{\mathcal{S}}| \leq |\mathbf{c}(N)| = n!$  with [2b] to obtain [2a]. ■

The number  $s(n) = |\mathbf{s}(N)|$  of Sperner systems (unordered systems without repetition, in the sense of p. 3) is just, up to 2 units, the number of elements of a free distributive lattice with  $n$  generators, or, the number of monotone increasing Boolean functions with  $n$  variables. Since [Dedekind, 1897] numerous efforts have been made to compute or estimate this number [Agnew, 1961], [Gilbert, 1954], [Rivière, 1968], [Yamamoto, 1954]. Actually, the known values are:

$n$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
$s(n)$	1	4	18	166	7579	7828352	2414682040996

( $s(5)$  due to [Church, 1940],  $s(6)$  due to [Ward, 1946],  $s(7)$  due to [Church, 1965]). The following upper and lower bounds hold:

$$2^{\binom{n}{\lfloor n/2 \rfloor}} \leq s(n) \leq 3^{\binom{n}{\lfloor n/2 \rfloor}}$$

([Hansel, 1967]) and also the asymptotic equivalent  $\log_2 s(n) \sim \binom{n}{\lfloor n/2 \rfloor}$  ([Kleitman, 1969], [Shapiro, 1970]). Various extensions of the Sperner theorem have been suggested ([Chao-Ko, Erdős, Rado, 1961], [Hilton, Milner, 1967], [Katona, 1966, 1968], [Kleitman, 1968b], [Meshalkin, 1963], [Milner, 1968]).

### 7.3. ASYMPTOTIC STUDY OF THE NUMBER OF REGULAR GRAPHS OF ORDER TWO ON $N$

#### (I) *Graphical and geometrical formulation of the problem*

A regular graph of order  $r$  (integer  $\geq 0$ ) is a graph on  $N$ ,  $|N|=n$ , such that there are  $r$  edges adjacent to every node  $x \in N$ . Let  $G(n, r)$  be the number of these graphs. Evidently  $G(n, 0)=1$ . For computing  $G(n, 1)$ , observe that giving a regular graph of order 1 is equivalent to giving a partition of  $N$  into disjoint pairs (the edges). Hence  $G(2m+1, 1)=0$  and  $G(2m, 1)=(2m)!/(2^m m!)$ . We investigate now  $G(n, 2)=g_n$ . First, we give a geometric interpretation to these numbers ([\*Whitworth, 1901], p. 269, Exercise 160).

Let be given a set  $\Delta$  of  $n$  straight lines in the plane,  $\delta_1, \delta_2, \dots, \delta_n$ , lying

in *general position* (no two among them are parallel, and no three among them are concurrent). Let  $P$  be the set of their points of intersection,  $|P| = \binom{n}{2}$ . We call any set of  $n$  points from  $P$  such that any three different points are not collinear, a *cloud*. An example is shown in Figure 52, for

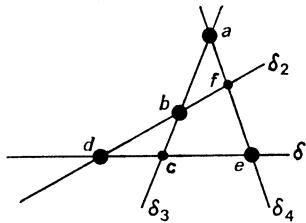


Fig. 52.

the case  $n=4$ ,  $\{a, b, d, e\}$ . Let  $\mathcal{G}(\Delta)$  stand for the set of *clouds* of  $\Delta$ , then we have:

$$[3a] \quad N \in \mathcal{G}(\Delta) \Leftrightarrow N \subset P ; \quad |N| = n ; \quad (\{a, b, c\} \subset P , \\ \delta \in \Delta) \Rightarrow \{a, b, c\} \not\in \delta .$$

Giving a cloud is hence equivalent to giving a regular graph of order 2: it suffices to identify the lines  $\delta_1, \delta_2, \dots, \delta_n$  with the nodes  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$  of  $N$ , and each *point of intersection*  $\delta_i \cap \delta_j$  with the edge  $\{x_i, x_j\}$ .

For example, with 3 points, we can get only 1 cloud; with 4 points, we have 3 clouds, since the clouds in  $\{\delta_1, \delta_2, \delta_3, \delta_4\}$  (Figure 52) are the sets  $\{a, b, d, e\}$ ,  $\{a, c, d, f\}$ ,  $\{b, c, e, f\}$ . The problem is to determine the number  $g_n = |\mathcal{G}(\Delta)|$  of clouds of  $\Delta$ .

(II) *A recurrence relation* ([Robinson, 1951, 1952], [Carlitz, 1954b, 1960b]).

Let now  $M := \{a_1, a_2, \dots, a_{n-1}\}$  be a *cloud* of  $\Gamma := \{\delta_1, \delta_2, \dots, \delta_{n-1}\}$ . It is clear, by [3a], that every straight line  $\delta_i$ ,  $i \in [n-1]$ , contains exactly two points of  $M$ . Now we add an  $n$ -th line  $\delta_n$ , so we obtain  $\Delta := \{\delta_1, \delta_2, \dots, \delta_{n-1}, \delta_n\}$ . We consider then an arbitrary point  $a_i$  of  $M$ , which belongs to 2 lines, say  $\delta_k$  and  $\delta_l$  (or  $\Gamma$ ), that intersect  $\delta_n$  in the points  $u$  and  $v$ . (Figure 53). It is easily seen that  $N := \{a_1, a_2, \dots, a_{i-1}, a_{i+1}, \dots, a_{n-1}, u, v\}$  is a *cloud* of  $\Delta$ . Thus, if we let  $a_i$  run through the set  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_{n-1}$ , we

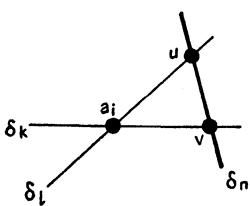


Fig. 53.

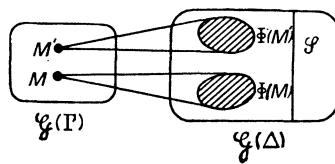


Fig. 54.

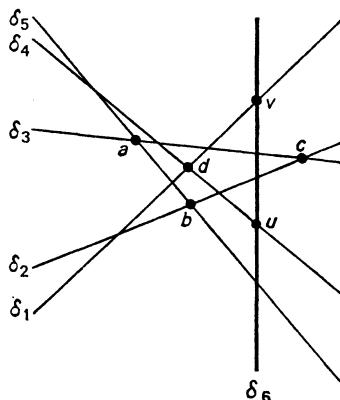


Fig. 55.

associate with every cloud  $M \in \mathcal{G}(\Gamma)$  a set  $\Phi(M)$  of  $(n-1)$  clouds of  $\Delta$ :

$$[3b] \quad \Phi(M) \subset \mathcal{G}(\Delta), \quad |\Phi(M)| = n - 1.$$

On the other hand, each cloud  $N \in \mathcal{G}(\Delta)$  obtained in the preceding way (Figure 54) is obtained in one way only:

$$[3c] \quad M, M' \in \mathcal{G}(\Gamma), \quad M \neq M' \Rightarrow \Phi(M) \cap \Phi(M') \neq \emptyset.$$

But in this way  $\mathcal{G}(\Delta)$  is not completely obtained, because there exist *singular* clouds  $N$  of  $\Delta$  that do not belong to any  $\Phi(M)$ , for instance, the cloud shown in Figure 55. Let  $\mathcal{S}$  be the set of singular clouds of  $\Delta$ . Giving a cloud  $\in \mathcal{S}$  is evidently equivalent to giving a pair  $\{u, v\}$  among the  $(n-1)$  points of  $\delta_n$ , and to giving a cloud on the  $(n-3)$  lines  $\delta_i$  that do not pass through  $\{u, v\}$ . Hence:

$$[3d] \quad |\mathcal{S}| = g_{n-3} \binom{n-1}{2}.$$

Now, according to [3c] we have the division:

$$\mathcal{G}(\Delta) = \left( \sum_{M \in \mathcal{G}(\Gamma)} \Phi(M) \right) + \mathcal{S};$$

this gives, after passing to the cardinalities (using [3b] for (\*)):

$$g_n = |\mathcal{G}(\Delta)| = \sum_{M \in \mathcal{G}(\Gamma)} |\Phi(M)| + |\mathcal{S}| = \\ (*) (n-1) |\mathcal{G}(\Gamma)| + |\mathcal{S}|.$$

Finally, by [3d]:

$$[3e] \quad g_n = (n-1) g_{n-1} + \binom{n-1}{2} g_{n-3}, \\ n \geq 3; \quad g_0 := 1, \quad g_1 = g_2 := 0.$$

$n$	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
$g_n$	1	0	0	1	3	12	70	465	3507	30016	286884	3026655

$n$	12	13	14	15	16
$g_n$	34944085	438263364	5933502822	86248951243	1339751921865

### (III) A generating function

Using [3e] for (\*), we get:

$$[3f] \quad g(t) := \sum_{n \geq 0} g_n \frac{t^n}{n!} = 1 + \sum_{n \geq 3} g_n \frac{t^n}{n!} \\ (*) 1 + \sum_{n \geq 3} (n-1) g_{n-1} \frac{t^n}{n!} + \sum_{n \geq 3} \binom{n-1}{2} g_{n-3} \frac{t^n}{n!}.$$

Taking the derivative of [3f] with respect to  $t$ :

$$g'(t) = t \sum_{n \geq 3} g_{n-1} \frac{t^{n-2}}{(n-2)!} + \frac{t^2}{2} \sum_{n \geq 3} g_{n-3} \frac{t^{n-3}}{(n-3)!} \\ = t g'(t) + \frac{t^2}{2} g(t).$$

Thus, considering  $g(t)$  as a function defined in a certain interval (to be specified later), we obtain the differential equation  $g'(t)/g(t) = t^2/2(1-t)$ , which gives, by integration on  $(-1, +1)$  and exponentiation, and ob-

serving that  $g(0)=g_0=1$ :

$$[3g] \quad g(z) := \sum_{n \geq 0} g_n \frac{z^n}{n!} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-z}} \exp\left(-\frac{z^2 + 2z}{4}\right).$$

#### (IV) The asymptotic expansion

We will use the ‘method of Darboux’ ([Darboux, 1878]) which is stated below. No proof will be given.

**THEOREM.** Let  $g(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} g_n z^n / n!$  be a function of the complex variable  $z$ , regular for  $|z| < 1$ , and with a finite number  $l$  of singularities on the unit circle  $|z|=1$ , say  $e^{i\varphi_2}, e^{i\varphi_1}, \dots, e^{i\varphi_l}$ . We suppose that in a neighbourhood of each of these singularities  $e^{i\varphi_k}$ ,  $g(z)$  has an expansion of the following form:

$$[3h] \quad g(z) = \sum_{p \geq 0} c_p^{(k)} (1 - ze^{-i\varphi_k})^{a_k + pb_k}, \quad k \in [l],$$

where the  $a_k$  are complex numbers, and all  $b_k > 0$ . The branch chosen for each bracketed expression is that which is equal to 1 for  $z=0$ . Under these circumstances,  $g_n$  has the following asymptotic expansion ( $n \rightarrow \infty$ ):

$$[3i] \quad g_n = \sum_{0 \leq p \leq \xi(q)} \left\{ \sum_{1 \leq k \leq l} c_p^{(k)} (a_k + pb_k)_n (-e^{-i\varphi_k})^n \right\} + O(n^{-q} n!).$$

In [3i],  $\xi(q)$  is the smallest integer  $\geq \max_{1 \leq k \leq l} b_k^{-1}(q - \operatorname{Re}(a_k) - 1)$ , and  $O(n^{-q} n!)$  means a sequence  $v_n$  such that  $v_n / (n^{-q} n!)$  is bounded for  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .

It is important to observe that formally the asymptotic expansion [3i] of  $g_n$ , up to the  $O$  term, can be obtained by gathering for each singularity  $e^{i\varphi_k}$  the coefficient of  $z^n / n!$  in [3h].

We apply this theorem to the function  $g(z)$ , defined by [3g]; the only singularity is in  $z=1$ . The expansion [3h] can be obtained using the Hermite polynomials  $H_n(x)$ , [14n] (p. 50). Thus, if we put  $u := 1-z$ :

$$\begin{aligned} g(z) &= e^{-3/4} u^{-1/2} \exp\left(u - \frac{u^2}{4}\right) = e^{-3/4} u^{-1/2} \sum_{p \geq 0} \frac{H_p(1)}{2^p p!} u^p \\ &= e^{-3/4} (u^{-1/2} + u^{1/2} + \frac{1}{2}u^{3/2} - \frac{1}{2}u^{5/2} + \dots). \end{aligned}$$

Hence, by [3i], where  $l=1$ ,  $e^{i\varphi}=1$ ,  $c_p^{(1)}=c_p=H_p(1)/2^p p!$ ,  $a=-\frac{1}{2}$ ,  $b=1$ ,

$\xi(q)=q-1$  for all integers  $q \geq 1$ , we get the asymptotic expansion of  $g_n$ :

$$[3j] \quad g_n = e^{-3/4} \sum_{p=0}^{q-1} \left\{ \frac{H_p(1)}{2^p p!} (-1)^n (p - \frac{1}{2})_n \right\} + O(n! n^{-q}), \quad n \rightarrow \infty.$$

Taking into account the Stirling formula  $n! = n^n e^{-n} \sqrt{2\pi n} (1 + O(n^{-1}))$ , [3j] gives us, if we take only the first term ( $q=1$ ):

$$g_n = e^{-3/4} \sqrt{2} \cdot n^n e^{-n} \{1 + O(n^{-1/2})\} \sim e^{-3/4} \sqrt{2} \cdot n^n e^{-n}.$$

#### (V) A direct computation

We could have determined  $g_n$  directly, by an argument analogous to that on p. 235. It is the number of symmetric and antireflexive relations on  $[n]$  such that each section has 2 elements. Hence:

$$g_n = G(n, 2) = C_{w_1^2 w_2^2 \dots w_n^2} \prod_{1 \leq i < j \leq n} (1 + w_i w_j)$$

from which follows, after some computations:

$$g_n = G(n, 2) = \frac{1}{2^n} \sum_{\alpha_1 + 2\alpha_2 + \beta_1 = n} \frac{(-1)^{\alpha_2 + \beta_1}}{\alpha_1! \alpha_2! \beta_1!} \times \\ \times (2\alpha_1)! (2\alpha_2 + \beta_1)! \frac{1}{2^{\alpha_1}} \binom{n}{\alpha_1}.$$

(which leads to the GF [3g] and conversely).

#### (VI) The general case

The explicit computation of  $G(n, r)$  (p. 273) can also be done by:

$$G(n, r) = C_{w_1^r w_2^r \dots w_n^r} \prod_{1 \leq i < j \leq n} (1 + w_i w_j),$$

but the formulas become very quickly extremely complicated. Thus,  $G(2m+1, 3)=0$  and

$$G(2m, 3) = \sum \frac{(-1)^{\alpha_2 + \beta_1}}{2^{2\alpha_1 + 2\alpha_2 + 2\alpha_3 + \beta_1 - m} 3^{\alpha_1 + 2\alpha_3 - m}} \times \\ \times \frac{(2m)! (2\alpha_1)!}{\alpha_1! \alpha_2! \alpha_3! \beta_1! (\alpha_1 + \alpha_3 - m)!},$$

where  $\alpha_1 + 2\alpha_2 + 3\alpha_3 + \beta_1 = 3m$  and  $\alpha_1 + \alpha_3 \geq m$ . The first values of  $G(n, r)$  are:

$n \setminus r$	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
1	1							
2	1	1						
3	1	0	1					
4	1	3	3	1				
5	1	0	12	0	1			
6	1	15	70	70	15	1		
7	1	0	465	0	465	0	1	
8	1	105	3507	19355	19355	3507	105	1

#### 7.4. RANDOM PERMUTATIONS

We take for probability space  $(\Omega, \mathcal{B}, P)$  the following:  $\Omega = \mathfrak{S}[n]$  (the set of all permutations of  $[n] = \{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ ),  $\mathcal{B} = \mathfrak{P}(\mathfrak{S}[n])$  (the set of all subsets of  $\mathfrak{S}[n]$ ), and for probability measure  $P$  that for which all permutations have equal probability:

$$[4a] \quad \omega \in \mathfrak{S}[n] \Rightarrow P(\omega) = \frac{1}{n!}; \quad A \subset \mathfrak{S}[n] \Rightarrow P(A) = \frac{|A|}{n!}.$$

(Definitions A and B, p. 189; we observe that the probabilistic terminology used in this section is defined in Exercise 11, p. 160).

We are now interested in the sequence of RV (random variables)  $y_n: \Omega \mapsto N$  defined by:

$$[4b] \quad C_n = C_n(\omega) = \text{the number of orbits of } \omega.$$

According to Theorem D (p. 234) and to [4a] above for (\*), we obtain the following distribution for the  $C_n$ :

$$[4c] \quad p_n(k) := P(C_n = k) \stackrel{(*)}{=} \frac{s(n, k)}{n!},$$

where the  $s(n, k)$  are the unsigned Stirling numbers of the first kind. Consequently, the GF of the probabilities of  $C_n$  becomes, using [5f], p. 213, for (\*\*):

$$[4d] \quad g(u) = g_{C_n}(u) = \sum_k p_n(k) u^k = \sum_k \frac{s(n, k)}{n!} u^k = \\ \stackrel{(**)}{=} \frac{1}{n!} u(u+1)\cdots(u+n-1),$$

from which we obtain the GF of the *cumulants* of  $C_n$ :

$$[4e] \quad \gamma(t) = \log \{g(e^t)\} = \sum_{1 \leq i \leq n} \log \left( 1 + \frac{e^t - 1}{i} \right).$$

We expand [4e] using [2a] (p. 206) for  $(\circ)$ ; then we obtain:

$$\begin{aligned} [4f] \quad \sum_{m \geq 0} \kappa_m \frac{t^m}{m!} &= \gamma(t) = \sum_{1 \leq i \leq n} \left\{ \sum_{l \geq 1} \frac{(-1)^{l-1}}{l} \left( \frac{e^t - 1}{i} \right)^l \right\} \\ &\stackrel{(\circ)}{=} \sum_{1 \leq i \leq n} \left\{ \sum_{l \geq 1} \frac{(-1)^{l-1}}{i^l} (l-1)! \sum_{m \geq l} S(m, l) \frac{t^m}{m!} \right\}, \end{aligned}$$

and by identifying the coefficients of  $t^m/m!$  in [4f].

**THEOREM A.** *The cumulants of the RV  $C_n$  defined by [4b] equal:*

$$[4g] \quad \kappa_m = \kappa_m(C_n) = \sum_{1 \leq l \leq m} \{ (-1)^{l-1} (l-1)! S(m, l) \zeta_n(l) \},$$

where  $S(m, l)$  is the Stirling number of the second kind and

$$[4h] \quad \zeta_n(l) := \sum_{1 \leq i \leq n} \frac{1}{i^l} = 1 + \frac{1}{2^l} + \cdots + \frac{1}{n^l}.$$

Thus, by passing to the moments:

$$\begin{aligned} \mu'_1 &= \mathbf{E}(C_n) = \kappa_1 = \zeta_n(1); \\ [4i] \quad \mu_2 &= \text{var } C_n = \mathbf{D}^2(C_n) = \kappa_2 = \zeta_n(1) - \zeta_n(2). \end{aligned}$$

For studying the behaviour of the limit of  $C_n$ , we state the *central limit theorem* (in very general form due to [Lindeberg, 1922]; see, for instance, [\*Renyi, 1966], p. 412–21, for a proof):

**THEOREM B.** *Let  $X_{n,i}$  be a double sequence of RV, defined for  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  and  $(1 \leq i \leq k_n)$ , where  $k_n$  are given integers  $> 0$ . We suppose that the variables  $X_{n,i}$ ,  $n$  fixed,  $i$  variable,  $i \in [k_n]$ , are independent, which is formulated by saying ‘the  $X_{n,i}$  are row-independent’. If we define new RV  $S_n$  and  $Y_{n,i}$  by:*

$$[4j] \quad S_n := \sum_{1 \leq i \leq k_n} X_{n,i}, \quad Y_{n,i} := \frac{X_{n,i} - \mathbf{E}(X_{n,i})}{\mathbf{D}(S_n)},$$

with, for distributions function of  $Y_{n,i}$ :

$$[4k] \quad G_{n,i}(y) := \mathbf{P}(Y_{n,i} < y),$$

then the condition [4l] (of Lindeberg):

$$[4l] \quad \forall \varepsilon > 0, \quad \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{1 \leq i \leq k_n} \int_{|y| > \varepsilon} y^2 dG_{n,i}(y) = 0$$

implies [4m] (central limit theorem):

$$[4m] \quad \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \mathbf{P}\left\{\frac{S_n - \mathbf{E}(S_n)}{\mathbf{D}(S_n)} < x\right\} = \Phi(x) := \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^x e^{-t^2/2} dt.$$

The conclusion [4m] still holds when  $\mathbf{E}(S_n)$  and  $\mathbf{D}(S_n)$  are replaced by equivalent ones, when  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .

The role of the RV  $S_n$  will be played by  $C_n$ , [4b], for our application. Thus, we have to interpret  $C_n$  as a sum [4j]. To do this, we define the sequence  $X_{n,i}$  of row-independent RV,  $1 \leq i \leq n$ , by:

$$[4n] \quad \mathbf{P}(X_{n,i} = 1) = 1/i, \quad \mathbf{P}(X_{n,i} = 0) = 1 - 1/i.$$

The GF of the probabilities of the  $X_{n,i}$  equal  $g_{X_{n,i}}(u) = (i-1+u)/u$ . Thus we get, by [4d] for (\*), and by the row-independence for (\*\*):

$$g_{C_n}(u) \stackrel{(*)}{=} \prod_{1 \leq i \leq n} g_{X_{n,i}}(u) \stackrel{(**)}{=} g_{\sum_i X_{n,i}}(u),$$

from which follows:

$$[4o] \quad C_n = \sum_{1 \leq i \leq n} X_{n,i}.$$

Furthermore, we show that condition [4l] is satisfied by the  $X_{n,i}$ . Because of [4i]:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{D}^2(C_n) &= \sum_{2 \leq i \leq n} \frac{i-1}{i^2} > \sum_{2 \leq i \leq n} \frac{1}{i+2} > \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{5} + \cdots + \frac{1}{n} > \\ &> \log n - 1 - \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{3} > \log n - 2. \end{aligned}$$

Hence:

$$|Y_{n,i}| = \left| \frac{X_{n,i} - \mathbf{E}(X_{n,i})}{\mathbf{D}(C_n)} \right| < \frac{1 - \frac{1}{i}}{\sqrt{\log n - 2}} < \frac{1}{\sqrt{\log n - 2}},$$

which, for  $n$  sufficiently large, implies  $|Y_{n,i}| < \varepsilon$ , in other words,  $\int_{|y|>\varepsilon} y^2 dG_{n,i}(y) = 0$ , for all  $i \in [n]$ ; hence [4l] follows. Finally, we use  $\mathbf{E}(S_n) \sim \log n$  and  $\mathbf{D}(S_n) \sim \sqrt{\log n}$  to obtain by [4m]:

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \mathbf{P} \left\{ \frac{C_n - \log n}{\sqrt{\log n}} < x \right\} = \Phi(x).$$

In other words ([\*Feller, I, 1968], p. 258): "The number of permutations with a number of orbits between  $\log n + \alpha\sqrt{\log n}$  and  $\log n + \beta\sqrt{\log n}$ ,  $\alpha < \beta$ , equals approximately  $n! \{ \Phi(\beta) - \Phi(\alpha) \}$ ."

We give, rapidly, another example of RV associated with random permutations. We will deal with  $I_n = I_n(\omega)$ , the number of *inversions* of the permutation  $\omega$  (p. 237). The GF of the probabilities is ([4h], p. 239):

$$\begin{aligned} [4p] \quad g_{I_n(u)} &= \frac{1}{n!} \prod_{1 \leq j \leq n} \frac{1-u^j}{1-u} \\ &= \frac{1+u}{2} \cdot \frac{1+u+u^2}{3} \cdot \dots \cdot \frac{1+u+u^2+\dots+u^{n-1}}{n}; \end{aligned}$$

hence we get for the GF of the cumulants:

$$\begin{aligned} \gamma(t) &= \sum_{m \geq 0} \kappa_m \frac{t^m}{m!} = \sum_{1 \leq j \leq n} \log \frac{e^{jt} - 1}{j(e^t - 1)} \\ &= \sum_{1 \leq j \leq n} \log \left( 1 + \frac{j}{2} t + \frac{j^2}{3} \cdot \frac{t^2}{2!} + \dots \right) - \\ &\quad - \sum_{1 \leq j \leq n} \log \left( 1 + \frac{1}{2} t + \frac{1}{3} \cdot \frac{t^2}{3!} + \dots \right). \end{aligned}$$

By [5a] (p. 140) follows:  $\kappa_m = \sum_{j=1}^m \mathbf{L}_m(j/2, j^2/3, \dots) - n \mathbf{L}_m(1/2, 1/3, \dots)$ . Hence  $\mu'_1 = \mathbf{E}(I_n) = \kappa_1 = n(n-1)/4$  (cf. p. 160),  $\mu_2 = \mathbf{D}^2(I_n) = \kappa_2 = n(n-1)(2n+5)/72$ ; in other words  $\mathbf{E}(I_n) \sim n^2/4$ ,  $\mathbf{D}(I_n) \sim n^{3/2}/6$ .

The factorization [4p] suggests that we define the *row-independent*

$\text{RV } X_{n,i}$  by  $\mathbf{P}(X_{n,i}=k)=1/i$ , where  $(k+1)\in[i]$ , and then we prove easily that the Lindeberg condition [41] is satisfied. Thus:

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \mathbf{P} \left\{ \frac{I_n - n^2/4}{n^{3/2}/6} < x \right\} = \Phi(x).$$

In other words: “The number of permutations whose number of inversions lies between  $n^2/4 + \alpha n^{3/2}/6$  and  $n^2/4 + \beta n^{3/2}/6$ ,  $\alpha < \beta$ , equals approximately  $n! \{\Phi(\beta) - \Phi(\alpha)\}$ . ([\*Feller, I, 1968], p. 257. For many other problems of random permutations, see [Gontcharoff, 1944] and [Shepp, Lloyd, 1966].

### 7.5. THEOREM OF RAMSEY

The Ramsey theorem generalizes the ‘Dirichlet pigeon-hole principle’: If  $n+1$  objects are distributed over  $n$  pigeon holes, at least one pigeon hole contains at least two objects. It introduces a sequence of numbers whose computation and estimation are still among the most fascinating problems of combinatorial analysis.

(I) *Statement of the ‘bicolour theorem’ and definition of the Ramsey numbers  $\rho(b; p, q)$*

**DEFINITION.** Let three integers be given,  $b, p, q$ ,  $1 \leq b \leq p, q$ . A finite set  $N$  is called Ramsey- $(b, p, q)$  if for all divisions  $(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D})$  of  $\mathfrak{P}_b(N)$  into two subsets,  $\mathcal{C} + \mathcal{D} = \mathfrak{P}_b(N)$ , (p. 25) at least one of the following two statements is true:

- [5a] There exists a  $P$  such that  $P \in \mathfrak{P}_p(N)$ ,  $\mathfrak{P}_b(P) \subset \mathcal{C}$
- [5b] There exists a  $Q$  such that  $Q \in \mathfrak{P}_q(N)$ ,  $\mathfrak{P}_b(Q) \subset \mathcal{D}$ .

Now we can state the ‘bicolour’ theorem of Ramsey. It is called the ‘bicolour’ theorem, because a division into two subsets  $\mathcal{C} + \mathcal{D}$  is equivalent to colouring each block  $B \in \mathfrak{P}_b(N)$  in one of two given colours, say, carmine and dove-gray.

**THEOREM.** There exists a triple sequence  $\rho(b; p, q)$  of integers  $> 0$ , called bicolour  $b$ -ary Ramsey numbers (multicolour numbers will be investigated in Exercise 26, p. 298), which is characterized by the following property

[5c] concerning an arbitrary finite set  $N$ :

$$[5c] \quad N \text{ is Ramsey-}(b; p, q) \Leftrightarrow |N| \geq \rho(b; p, q).$$

Moreover:

$$[5d] \quad \rho(b; p, q) \leq 1 + \rho\{b - 1; \rho(b; p - 1, q), \rho(b; p, q - 1)\}.$$

([Ramsey, 1930]. Our exposition is an adaptation of [\*Ryser, 1963], pp. 38–46.)

### (II) Some special values of $\rho(b; p, q)$

First, it is clear that the roles of  $p$ ,  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $q$ ,  $\mathcal{D}$  are symmetric; so:

$$[5e] \quad \rho(b; p, q) = \rho(b; q, p).$$

We also show:

$$[5f] \quad \rho(1; p, q) = p + q - 1, \quad 1 \leq p, q.$$

■ Let  $N$  be a finite set, such that  $|N|=n \geq p+q-1$ . Suppose a division of  $\mathfrak{P}_1(N)=N$  into two subsets  $\mathcal{C}+\mathcal{D}=N$  is given. Then we have  $|\mathcal{C}|+|\mathcal{D}|=n \geq p+q-1$ , hence  $|\mathcal{C}| \geq p$  or  $|\mathcal{D}| \geq q$ . If  $|\mathcal{C}| \geq p$ , there exists a  $P \in \mathfrak{P}_p(N)$  such that  $\mathfrak{P}_1(P)(=P) \subset \mathcal{C}$ ; if  $|\mathcal{D}| \geq q$ , there exists likewise a  $Q \in \mathfrak{P}_q(N)$  such that  $\mathfrak{P}_1(Q)(=Q) \subset \mathcal{D}$ . Thus,  $N$  is Ramsey- $(1; p, q)$  if  $n \geq p+q-1$ .

Conversely, if  $|N| < p+q-1$ , in other words, if  $|N|=n \leq p+q-2$  we only have to choose a division into two subsets  $\mathcal{C}+\mathcal{D}=N$  such that  $|\mathcal{C}|=p-1$ ,  $|\mathcal{D}|=q-1$  to see that  $N$  cannot be Ramsey- $(1; p, q)$ .

Finally, we prove:

$$[5g] \quad \rho(b; b, q) = q \quad (= \rho(b; q, b)), \quad b \leq q.$$

■ We first prove that each finite set  $N$  such that  $n=|N| \geq q$  is Ramsey- $(b; p, q)$ . For a division into two subsets  $\mathcal{C}+\mathcal{D}=\mathfrak{P}_b(N)$  there are two cases:

(I)  $\mathcal{C} \neq \emptyset$ . Then choose  $P \in \mathcal{C}$ ; hence  $|P|=p=b$  which implies hence evidently  $\mathfrak{P}_b(P)=\{P\} \subset \mathcal{C}$ .

(II)  $\mathcal{C}=\emptyset$ . Then  $\mathcal{D}=\mathfrak{P}_b(N)$ . Now,  $n=|N| \geq q$ . Hence  $\mathfrak{P}_q(N)$  is not empty, and we can choose  $Q$  there. Necessarily  $|Q|=q$  and  $\mathfrak{P}_b(Q) \subset \mathfrak{P}_b(N)=\mathcal{D}$ .

Conversely, if  $|N| < q$ , in other words, if  $|N|=n \leq q-1$ , it suffices to

choose the division into two subsets  $\mathcal{C} + \mathcal{D} = \mathfrak{P}_b(N)$  such that  $\mathcal{C} = \emptyset$  to see (by  $\mathfrak{P}_q(N) = \emptyset$ ) that  $N$  cannot be Ramsey-( $b; b, q$ ). ■

Taking into account [5e, f, g] we suppose from now on that:

$$[5h] \quad 1 < b < p, q.$$

(III) *Choice of the induction for  $\rho(b; p, q)$*

Let  $\mathbf{R}(b)$  be the table of the values of the double sequence  $\rho(b; p, q)$ ,  $p, q \geq 1$ ,  $b$  fixed  $\geq 1$ , extended by  $\rho(b; p, q) = 0$  if not  $1 \leq b \leq p, q$ . We know already  $\mathbf{R}(1)$ , according to [5f]. To prove the existence of  $\rho(b; p, q)$ ,  $1 \leq c \leq b - 1$ , we suppose the existence of all the tables  $\mathbf{R}(c)$  where  $b$  is fixed  $\geq 2$  ( $\Leftrightarrow$  existence of all the  $\rho(c; p, q)$ , with  $c \leq b - 1, p, q$ ), as well as the existence of:

$$[5i] \quad p' := \rho(b; p - 1, q) \quad \text{and} \quad q' := \rho(b; p, q - 1)$$

in the table  $\mathbf{R}(b)$ . From these induction hypotheses we will deduce now the existence of  $\rho(b; p, q)$ , and simultaneously also:

$$[5j] \quad \rho(b; p, q) \leq 1 + \rho(b - 1; p', q'),$$

in other words [5d], because of [5i].

(IV) *Proof of the theorem of Ramsey*

We observe that [5j] is equivalent to proving that every finite set  $N$  that satisfies:

$$[5k] \quad n = |N| \geq 1 + \rho(b - 1; p', q')$$

is Ramsey-( $b; p, q$ ) ( $p', q'$  defined in [5i]).

Let  $N$  be such that [5k] holds, and choose  $x \in N$ , and let  $M := N - \{x\}$ ; then, by [5k]:

$$[5l] \quad |M| = n - 1 \geq \rho(b - 1; p', q').$$

Now we associate with the division  $\mathcal{C} + \mathcal{D} = \mathfrak{P}_b(N)$  the division  $\mathcal{C}' + \mathcal{D}' = \mathbf{P}_{b-1}(M)$ , defined by:

$$[5m] \quad \mathcal{C}' := \{C \setminus \{x\} \mid C \in \mathcal{C}\}, \quad \mathcal{D}' := \{D \setminus \{x\} \mid D \in \mathcal{D}\}.$$

According to [5l],  $M$  is Ramsey-( $b - 1; p', q'$ ), which implies for  $\mathcal{C}'$  and

$\mathcal{D}'$  that at least one of the following two statements is true:

- [5n] There exists an  $X$  such that  $X \in \mathfrak{P}_{p'}(M)$ ,  $\mathfrak{P}_{b-1}(X) \subset \mathcal{C}'$ .
- [5o] There exists an  $Y$  such that  $Y \in \mathfrak{P}_{q'}(M)$ ,  $\mathfrak{P}_{b-1}(Y) \subset \mathcal{D}'$ .

We suppose now that we are in the case [5n]. Because  $|X|=p':=\rho(b; p-1, q)$ , the set  $X$  is Ramsey- $(b; p-1, q)$ ; hence, we have for the division  $\mathcal{C}'' + \mathcal{D}'' = \mathfrak{P}_b(X)$ , defined by

$$[5p] \quad \mathcal{C}'' := \mathcal{C} \cap \mathfrak{P}_b(X), \quad \mathcal{D}'' := \mathcal{D} \cap \mathfrak{P}_b(X),$$

at least one of the following two possibilities:

- [5q] There exists a  $P'$  such that  $P' \in \mathfrak{P}_{p-1}(X)$ ,  $\mathfrak{P}_b(P') \subset \mathcal{C}''$ .
- [5r] There exists a  $Q$  such that  $Q \in \mathfrak{P}_q(X)$ ,  $\mathfrak{P}_b(Q) \subset \mathcal{D}''$ .

In the case [5r], evidently  $Q \in \mathfrak{P}_q(N)$ , because  $X \subset N$ ; hence  $\mathfrak{P}_b(Q) \subset \mathcal{D}$ , since  $\mathcal{D}'' \subset \mathcal{D}$ , [5p]. So we have proved [5b].

In the case [5q], we will show that the set  $P := P' \cup \{x\}$  satisfies [5a] indeed, in other words, that  $\mathfrak{P}_b(P) \subset \mathcal{C}$ . We put:

$$\begin{aligned} [5s] \quad \mathfrak{X}_0 &:= \{B \mid B \in \mathfrak{P}_b(P), x \notin B\}, \\ &\mathfrak{X}_1 := \{B \mid B \in \mathfrak{P}_b(P), x \in B\}. \end{aligned}$$

Hence:

$$[5t] \quad \mathfrak{P}_b(P) = \mathfrak{X}_0 + \mathfrak{X}_1.$$

We have  $\mathfrak{X}_0 \subset \mathcal{C}$ ; this follows from: (1)  $\mathfrak{X}_0 \subset \mathfrak{P}_b(P')$  by definition [5s] of  $\mathfrak{X}_0$ ; (2)  $\mathfrak{P}_b(P') \subset \mathcal{C}''$ , [5q]; (3)  $\mathcal{C}'' \subset \mathcal{C}$ , [5p]. Similarly  $\mathfrak{X}_1 \subset \mathcal{C}$ , because all  $K \subset \mathfrak{X}_1$  are of the form  $K = H + \{x\}$ , where  $H \in \mathfrak{P}_{b-1}(P')$ , [5s]; now, because of [5q],  $\mathfrak{P}_{b-1}(P') \subset \mathfrak{P}_{b-1}(X)$ ; hence, by [5n],  $\mathfrak{P}_{b-1}(P') \subset \mathcal{C}'$ ; consequently, by [5m, s],  $K \subset \mathcal{C}$ . Finally, [5t] implies  $\mathfrak{P}_b(P) \subset \mathcal{C}$ , in other words [5a].

A similar argument, mutatis mutandis, is carried out in the case [5o].

For the computation and the properties of the Ramsey numbers, we refer to several authors who have worked on this problem ([Erdős, 1947, 1957–58, 1964], [Giraud, 1968a, b, 1969a, b], [Graver, Yackel, 1966, 1968], [Greenwood, Gleason, 1955], [Kalbfleisch, 1965, 1966, 1967a, b, 1968], [Krieger, 1968], [Walker, 1968], [Yackel, 1972], [Znám, 1967]).

### 7.6. BINARY (BICOLOUR) RAMSEY NUMBERS

In this section we deal with the numbers  $\rho(2; p, q)$ , [5c] (p. 284), which we will denote in the sequel by  $\rho(p, q)$ ,  $2 \leq p, q$ . We give a new definition of these numbers in terms of graph theory (p. 61).

Giving a division into two sets  $\mathcal{C} + \mathcal{D} = \mathfrak{P}_2(N)$  is equivalent to giving a graph  $\mathcal{G}$  on  $N$ , if we make the convention that  $\mathcal{C} = \mathcal{G}$  and  $\mathcal{D} = \bar{\mathcal{G}} = \mathfrak{P}_2(N) - \mathcal{G}$ . This is also equivalent to painting the edges of the complete graph  $\mathfrak{P}_2(N)$  in blue and white colours, that is, painting blue the edges in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and white the edges in  $\mathcal{D}$ . This explains why the numbers  $\rho(2; p, q) = \rho(p, q)$  are called bicolour numbers.

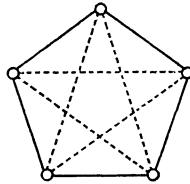


Fig. 56.

With every graph  $\mathcal{G}$  on  $N$ , we associate the following two numbers: (1) The number  $c(\mathcal{G})$ , which is equal to the maximum number of elements of a *complete subgraph* of  $\mathcal{G}$ ; (2) the number  $i(\mathcal{G})$ , equal to the maximum number of elements of *independent sets*  $\mathcal{G}$  (i.e. complete subgraphs of  $\mathcal{G}$ ). Let now be given two integers  $p, q > 0$ . We say that  $\mathcal{G}$  is a  $(p, q)$ -graph if  $c(\mathcal{G}) < p$  and  $i(\mathcal{G}) < q$ . This means that  $\mathcal{G}$  [or  $\bar{\mathcal{G}}$ ] does not contain a complete subgraph of  $p$  elements [or  $q$  elements]. Hence, the negation of [5c] (p. 284) can be written:

$$[6a] \quad \text{there exists a } (p, q)\text{-graph } \mathcal{G} \subset \mathfrak{P}_2(N) \Leftrightarrow |N| + 1 \leq \rho(p, q),$$

and the problem becomes that of constructing  $(p, q)$ -graphs with the largest number of vertices, thus providing a constructive procedure for obtaining lower bounds for the Ramsey numbers  $\rho(p, q)$ .

We will illustrate this with the computation of  $\rho(3, 3)$ . Inequality [5d] (p. 284) combined with [5f] ( $b=2$ ) gives:

$$[6b] \quad \rho(p, q) \leq \rho(p, q-1) + \rho(p-1, q).$$

This gives, together with  $\rho(2, 3)=\rho(3, 2)=3$  and [5g]:

$$[6c] \quad \rho(3, 3) \leq 6.$$

On the other hand, the graph  $\mathcal{G}$  of Figure 56 over  $N$ ,  $|N|=5$ , whose edges are indicated by full lines, does not contain any *triangle* (=complete subgraph of 3 elements); the complementary graph neither does ( $\mathcal{G}$  is indicated by dotted lines). Hence, by [6a]:

$$[6d] \quad \rho(3, 3) \geq 6.$$

Together, [6c, d] imply  $\rho(3, 3)=6$ .

Below the first values of  $\rho(p, q)$  that are either known or for which bounds are known. The table should be completed by symmetry (cf. [5e], p. 284). For  $\rho(3, 8)$ , for instance, 27–30 means  $27 \leq \rho(3, 8) \leq 30$ .

$p \setminus q$	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
2	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
3		6	9	14	18	23	27-30	36-37	39-44
4			18	25-28	34-44	?-66	?-94	?-129	?-170
5				38-55	51-94	?-156	?-242	?-364	?-521
6					102-169	?-322	?-544	?-887	?-1371
7						110-586	?-1131	?-1974	?-3255

## 7.7. SQUARES IN RELATIONS

Let  $M$  be a finite set and  $a$  an integer,  $1 \leq a \leq m = |M|$ . Determine the smallest integer  $\mathfrak{k} = \mathfrak{k}(m, a)$ , such that each  $k$ -relation  $\mathfrak{R}$  on  $M$ ,  $\mathfrak{R} \subset M^2$  ( $= M \times M$ ),  $|\mathfrak{R}| = k \geq \mathfrak{k}$ , contains at least one  $a^2$ -square ([Zarankiewicz, 1951]). This is a product set of the form  $AA' = A \times A'$ , where  $A, A' \subset M$ ,  $|A| = |A'| = a$ . In other words, when  $\mathcal{C} = \mathcal{C}(a)$  is the set of  $a^2$ -squares of  $M^2$ :

$$[7a] \quad k \geq \mathfrak{k}(m, a) \Leftrightarrow \forall \mathfrak{R} \in \mathfrak{P}_k(M^2), \quad \exists (A, A') \in \mathfrak{P}_a(M)^2, \quad AA' \subset \mathfrak{R},$$

where  $\mathfrak{P}_a(M)^2 := \mathfrak{P}_a(M) \times \mathfrak{P}_a(M)$ . Evidently  $a^2 \leq \mathfrak{k} \leq m^2$ .

We transform [7a] by introducing for each  $a^2$ -square  $AA' \in \mathcal{C}$  the set of  $\mathbf{r}(AA')$  of the  $k$ -relations on  $M$  that contain  $AA'$ . Hence [7a] is equivalent with:

$$[7b] \quad k \geq f(m, a) \Leftrightarrow \mathfrak{P}_k(M^2) = \bigcup_{(A, A') \in \mathfrak{P}_a(M)^2} \mathbf{r}(A, A').$$

This will provide us with a lower bound for  $f$ .

**THEOREM A.** *There exists a constant  $c_1 = c_1(a) > 0$  independent of  $m$  such that:*

$$[7c] \quad f(m, a) > c_1 m^2 \cdot m^{-2/a}.$$

■ In fact, [7b] implies, by [7d] (p. 194):

$$[7d] \quad |\mathfrak{P}_k(M^2)| \leq \sum_{(A, A') \in \mathfrak{P}_a(M)^2} |\mathbf{r}(A, A')|.$$

Now:

$$[7e] \quad |\mathfrak{P}_k(M^2)| = \binom{m^2}{k}, \quad |\mathfrak{P}_a(M)^2| = \binom{m}{a}^2, \\ |\mathbf{r}(A, A')| = \binom{m^2 - a^2}{k - a^2}.$$

Hence [7b] becomes, by [7d, e]:

$$[7f] \quad k \geq f(m, a) \Rightarrow \binom{m^2}{k} \stackrel{(*)}{\leq} \binom{m}{a}^2 \binom{m^2 - a^2}{k - a^2}.$$

We weaken  $(*)$  by using: (1)  $(*) \Leftrightarrow (**)$ ; (2)  $(m)_a \leq m^a$ , for  $(***)$ ; (3)  $m^2/k < (m^2 - l)/(k - l)$  for  $(****)$ :

$$[7g] \quad \begin{aligned} \left(\frac{m^2}{k}\right)^{a^2} &\stackrel{(***)}{<} \frac{m^2(m^2 - 1)\cdots(m^2 - a^2 + 1)}{k(k - 1)\cdots(k - a^2 + 1)} \\ &\stackrel{(**)}{\leq} \binom{m}{a}^2 \stackrel{(***)}{<} \frac{m^{2a}}{(a!)^2}. \end{aligned}$$

Hence, by [7f, g]:

$$k \geq f(m, a) \Rightarrow \left(\frac{m^2}{k}\right)^{a^2} < \frac{m^{2a}}{(a!)^2} \Leftrightarrow k > (a!)^{2/a^2} \cdot m^2 \cdot m^{-2/a},$$

which is [7c]. ■

**THEOREM B.** *There exists a constant  $c_2 = c_2(a) > 0$  independent of  $m$  such that:*

$$[7h] \quad f(m, a) < c_2 m^2 \cdot m^{-1/a}.$$

■ Let  $\mathfrak{R} \in \mathfrak{P}_k(M^2)$ . We put  $M = [m] := \{1, 2, \dots, m\}$  and

$$[7i] \quad r_j := |\langle \mathfrak{R} | j \rangle| \quad (\text{hence } \sum_{j=1}^m r_j = k),$$

where  $\langle \mathfrak{R} | j \rangle$  means the second section of  $\mathfrak{R}$  by  $j$  (see Figure 57). Clearly  $\mathfrak{N}$  contains a  $a^2$ -square, if there exists an  $a$ -block  $A(\subset M)$  which is contained in at least  $a$  of the subsets  $\langle \mathfrak{R} | j \rangle$  of  $M$ ,  $j \in [m]$ . Now, according to an argument analogous to the ‘pigeon-hole principle’ (p. 91), this happens as soon as:

$$[7j] \quad \sum_{j=1}^m \binom{r_j}{a} > (a-1) \binom{m}{a} \quad (\Rightarrow k > \mathfrak{k}(m, a)).$$

We now must majorize  $k$  as good as possible, using [7i, j]. (For a more precise statement; see [Znám, 1963, 1965], [Guy, Znám, 1968].) By convexity of the function  $\binom{x}{a}$  for  $x \geq a$  (its second derivative is always positive:  $d^2(x)_a/dx^2 = 2(x)_a \sum_{0 \leq i < j \leq a-1} \{(x-i)(x-j)\}^{-1}$ ) and the related Jensen inequality, we obtain, using [7i] for (\*):

$$\begin{aligned} [7k] \quad \sum_{1 \leq j \leq m} \binom{r_j}{a} &> m \left( \frac{\frac{r_1 + r_2 + \cdots + r_m}{m}}{a} \right) = \\ &\stackrel{(*)}{=} m \binom{k/m}{a} > m \frac{((k/m) - a)^a}{a!}. \end{aligned}$$

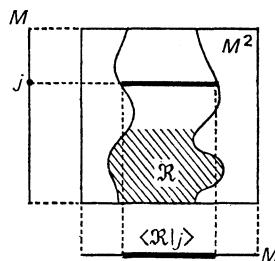


Fig. 57.

Consequently, by  $\binom{m}{a} < m^a/a!$  for (\*\*):

$$\begin{aligned}[71] \quad m \frac{((k/m) - a)^a}{a!} &\stackrel{(**)}{>} (a-1) \frac{m^a}{a!} \Leftrightarrow \\ &\Leftrightarrow k > am + (a-1)^{1/a} \cdot m^2 \cdot m^{-1/a} \Rightarrow k > \mathfrak{f}(m, a). \end{aligned}$$

Hence  $\mathfrak{f}(m, a) < am + (a-1)^{1/a} m^2 \cdot m^{-1/a}$ , which implies [7h]. ■

The following is a table of the known values of  $\mathfrak{f}(m, a)$ . (See all the quoted papers by Guy and Znám, and Exercise 29, p. 300.)

$a \setminus m$	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	$\rightarrow$
2	4	7	10	13	17	22	25	30	35	40	46	53	57	61	
3		9	14	21	27	34	43	50	61	?	?	...			
4			16	23	?	?	?	...							
5				25	34	?	?	...							
:					↓	↓									

It has been proved that  $\mathfrak{f}(m, 2) \sim m^{3/2}$ ,  $m \rightarrow \infty$  ([Čulik, 1956], [Hyltén-Cavallius, 1958], [Kövari, Sós, Turán, 1954], [Reiman, 1958], [W. G. Brown, 1966]), but no asymptotic expression is known for  $\mathfrak{f}(m, a)$ ,  $a \geq 3$ , fixed,  $m \rightarrow \infty$ . A conjecture is that there exist constants  $c(a) \geq 0$  such that

$$\mathfrak{f}(m, a) \sim c(a) m^2 m^{-1/a}.$$

## SUPPLEMENT AND EXERCISES

**1.** *Vertical convexity of Stirling numbers and Bell numbers.* (for a generalization of these properties see [Comtet, 1972]). (1) Show that for fixed  $k$ , the sequence  $S(n, k)$  is convex,  $n \geq k$ . Same question for  $s(n, k)$ . (2) The sequence of numbers  $w(n)$  of partitions of a set with  $n$  elements (p. 210) is convex.

**2.** *Subsequences of the Pascal triangle.* The sequence  $u_n := \binom{2n}{n}$  is convex.

Does  $\Delta^k u_n \geq 0$  for  $k \geq 3$  also hold? Analogous questions for  $\binom{2n+c}{n}$  and  $\binom{bn}{an}$ ,  $a, b, c$  integer,  $1 \leq a \leq b$ . For  $a$  and  $b$  integers  $\geq 1$ , and  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , we

have:

$$\binom{(a+b)n}{an} \sim \frac{(a+b)^{n(a+b)+1/2}}{a^{an+1/2} b^{bn+1/2}} \cdot \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi n}}.$$

[Use the Stirling formula  $n! \sim (n/e)^n \sqrt{2\pi n}$ .]

**3. Unimodality of the Eulerian numbers.** Show that the Eulerian polynomials  $A_n(u)$  (p. 244) form a *Sturm sequence*, that is,  $A_n(u)$  has  $n$  real roots ( $\leq 0$ ), separated by the roots of  $A_{n-1}(u)$ . [Hint: Use the recurrence relation  $A_n(u) = (u - u^2)A'_{n-1}(u) + nuA_{n-1}(u)$ .] Use this to prove that the sequence  $A(n, k)$ , for fixed  $n$ , is unimodal.

**4. Minimum of a partition of integers function.** With every partition  $(y) = (y_1, y_2, \dots, y_m)$  of  $n$  into  $m$  summands  $y_1 + y_2 + \dots + y_m = n$ ,  $y_1 \geq y_2 \geq \dots \geq y_m \geq 1$ , we associate  $W(y) := \sum_{i=1}^m \binom{y_i}{k}$ . Then, for  $m, n, k$  fixed, the minimum of  $W(y)$  occurs for a partition  $(y)$  that satisfies  $y_i - y_j \leq 1$  for all  $(i, j)$  such that  $1 \leq i < j \leq m$ .

**5. The most agglomerated system.** Let  $N$  be a set, and  $\mathcal{S}$  a system of  $N$  consisting of  $k$  (distinct) blocks all with  $b (\geq 1)$  elements,  $\mathcal{S} \in \mathfrak{P}_k(\mathfrak{P}_b(N))$ . Then  $M := \bigcup_{B \in \mathcal{S}} B$  has for minimal number of elements the smallest integer  $m$  such that  $k \leq \binom{m}{b}$ , ( $b, k$  fixed).

**6. Partition into unequal blocks.** The maximum number of blocks of a partition of  $N$ ,  $|N| = n$ , into blocks with *all* different numbers of elements equals the largest integer  $\leq (1/2)(-1 + \sqrt{8n+1})$ .

**7. Bounds for  $S(n, k)$ .** The inequalities  $k^{n-k} \leq S(n, k) \leq \binom{n-1}{k-1} k^{n-k}$  follow from [2e] (p. 207). Improve these bounds for the Stirling numbers of the second kind.

**8. The number of  $k$ -Sperner systems.** The number  $s(n, k)$  of Sperner systems with  $k$  blocks of  $N$ ,  $|N| = n$ , satisfies  $s(n, 2) = (1/2!) (4^n - 2 \cdot 3^n + 2^n)$ ,  $s(n, 3) = (1/3!) (8^n - 6 \cdot 6^n + 6 \cdot 5^n + 3 \cdot 4^n - 6 \cdot 3^n + 2 \cdot 2^n)$ ,  $s(n, 4) = (1/4!) (16^n -$

$-12.12^n + 24.10^n + 4.9^n - 18.8^n + 6.7^n - 36.6^n + 36.5^n + 11.4^n - 22.3^n + 6.2^n$ ) ([Hillman, 1955]). \*Determine for  $s(n, k)$  an explicit formula of minimal rank.

**9. Asymptotic expansion of the Stirling numbers.** (For a detailed study of this matter, see [Moser, Wyman, 1958b, c].) We suppose  $k$  and  $a$  fixed, and  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . (1)  $S(n, k) \sim k^n/k!$ . [Hint: [7d], p. 194, and [1b], p. 204.] (2)  $s(n+1, k+1) \sim (n!/k!) \log^k n$ . Moreover, [7b] (p. 217) gives a complete asymptotic expansion.

**\*10. Alike binomial coefficients (ABC).** These are integers of the form  $n!(a! b!)^{-1}$ , where  $n, a, b$  are integers too, such that  $a+b \geq n$ . Every binomial is evidently ABC. Show the existence of a universal constant  $c > 0$  such that  $a+b < n+c \log n$  for each ABC ([Erdős, 1968]).

**\*11. Around a definition of  $e$ .** It is well known that  $\varphi(t) := (1-t)^{-1/t}$  approaches  $e$  if  $t$  tends to 0. More precisely,  $\varphi(t) = e(1 + \sum_{n \geq 1} A(n)t^n) = \sum_{n \geq 0} a(n)t^n$ , where the rational numbers  $A(1), A(2), \dots$  equal  $1/2, 11/24, 7/16, 2447/5760, 959/2304, 238043/580608, 67223/165888, \dots$ , and where  $a(n) = eA(n)$  has an asymptotic expansion:

$$a_n \approx 1 + \frac{1}{n} + \sum_{v \geq 1} \frac{P_v(\log n)}{n^{v+1}},$$

where  $n \rightarrow \infty$  and  $P_v(x)$  are polynomials of degree  $v$ ,  $P_1(x) = \Gamma'(2) - 1 - x, \dots$

**\*12. Inverting the harmonic numbers.** Let us consider a strictly increasing real sequence  $f(n)$ ,  $n \geq a$ ,  $b = f(a)$ ,  $f(\infty) = \infty$ . For any real number  $x \geq b$ , we write  $f^{(-1)}(x)$  for the largest integer  $n \leq x$ . For example, if  $f(n) = n$ , we find  $f^{(-1)}(x) = [x]$ , the integral part of  $x$ . (1) For the harmonic sequence  $f(n) = 1 + 2^{-1} + 3^{-1} + \dots + n^{-1}$  and for any  $x \geq 2$ , we have  $f^{(-1)}(x) = [e^{x-\gamma} - (1/2) - (3/2)(e^{x-1}-1)^{-1}]$  or the same integer plus one ([Comtet, 1967], [Boas, Wrench, 1971].  $\gamma = 0.5772\dots$  is the Euler constant). (2) More generally, calculate  $f^{(-1)}(x)$ , where  $f(n) = 1 + 2^{-s} + 3^{-s} + \dots + n^{-s}$ ,  $s < 1$ .

**\*13. Cauchy numbers (or integral of the rising and falling factorials).** (See [Liénard, 1946], [Nyström, 1930], [Wachs, 1947]). Let us consider the

Cauchy numbers of the first type  $a_n := \int_0^1 (x)_n dx$  and of the second type  $b_n := \int_0^1 \langle x \rangle_n dx$ . (1)  $\sum a_n t^n / n! = t(\log(1+t))^{-1}$ ,  $\sum b_n t^n / n! = (-t) \times \times ((1-t)\log(1-t))^{-1}$ . (2)  $a_n = \sum_k s(n, k)/(k+1)$ ,  $b_n = \sum_k \tilde{s}(n, k)/(k+1)$ . (3)  $a_n = \sum_{k=1}^n (-1)^{k-1} (n)_k a_{n-k}/(k+1)$ ,  $b_n = \sum_{k=1}^n (n)_k b_{n-k}/(k+1)$ .

$n$	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
$a_n$	1	$\frac{1}{2}$	$-\frac{1}{6}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	$-\frac{19}{30}$	$\frac{9}{4}$	$-\frac{863}{84}$	$\frac{1375}{24}$	$-\frac{33953}{90}$	$\frac{57281}{20}$	$-\frac{3250433}{132}$
$b_n$	1	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{5}{6}$	$\frac{9}{4}$	$\frac{251}{30}$	$\frac{475}{12}$	$\frac{19087}{84}$	$\frac{36799}{24}$	$\frac{1070017}{90}$	$\frac{2082753}{20}$	$\frac{134211265}{132}$

(4) When  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , we have  $a_n/n! \sim (-1)^{n+1} n^{-1} (\log n)^{-2}$  and  $b_n/n! \sim (\log n)^{-1}$ .

**14.** *Representations of zero as a sum of different summands between  $n$  and  $-n$ .* Let  $A(n)$  be the number of solutions of  $\sum_{k=-n}^n kx_k = 0$ , where  $x_k$  equals 0 or 1. Then, when  $n \rightarrow \infty$ ,  $A(n) \sim 3^{1/2} \pi^{-1/2} 2^{2n+1} n^{-3/2}$  ([Van Lint, 1967], [Entringer, 1968]).

**15.** *Sum of the inverses of binomial and multinomial coefficients.* The sequence  $I_n := \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k}^{-1}$  equals  $(n+1)2^{-n-1} \sum_{k=1}^{n+1} 2^k/k$ . (For a probabilistic remark, see [\*Letac, 1970], p. 14). It satisfies the recurrence  $2I_n = ((n+1)/2n)I_{n-1} + 2$  and has the following (divergent) asymptotic expansion:  $I_n/2 \approx 1 + \sum_{p \geq 0} b_p n^{-p-1}$ , where the integers  $b_p$  have as GF:  $\sum_{p \geq 0} b_p z^p/p! = (2 - e^z)^{-2}$ .

$p$	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
$b_p$	1	2	8	44	308	2612	25988	296564	2816548	56667412	862584068

In the same way,  $I_n(x) := \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k}^{-1} x^k = (n+1)(x/(1+x))^n \sum_{k=1}^{n+1} (1+x^k)(1+x)^k (k(1+x))^{-1} x^{-k}$  and  $(1+(1/x))I_n(x) = (1+1/n)I_{n-1}(x) + x^n + x^{-1}$ .

**\*16.** *The coefficients of  $(\sum n! t^n)^{-1}$*  ([Comtet, 1972]). Let  $\epsilon(t)$  be the

purely formal series  $\sum_{n \geq 0} n! t^n$ . We define the coefficients  $f(n)$  by  $(\varepsilon(t))^{-1} = 1 - \sum_{n \geq 1} f(n)t^n$ . (1) The  $f(n)$  are positive integers such that  $f(p+1) \equiv 1 \pmod{p}$  for  $p$  prime. (2) We have the following asymptotic expansion  $f(n)/n! \approx 1 - \sum_{k \geq 1} A_k/(n)_k = 1 - 2/n - 1/(n)_2 - 4/(n)_3 - \dots$ , where  $A_k = f(k) + (k-2)f(k-1)$ ,  $k \geq 2$ . (3) The sequence  $f(n)/n!$  (which tends to 1) is increasing for  $n \geq 2$  and concave for  $n \geq 4$ .

$n$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
$f(n)$	1	1	3	13	71	461	3447	29093	273343	2829325

(Cf. Exercise 14, p. 261 and Exercise 15, p. 294.)

\*17. *Sum of the logarithms of the binomial coefficients.* (1) Show that  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left\{ n^{-2} \sum_{k=0}^n \log \binom{n}{k} \right\} = 1/2$ . (2) More generally, for all integers  $p \geq 1$ , we have  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left\{ n^{-2} \sum_{k=0}^n \log \binom{pn}{pk} \right\} = p/2$ . ([Gould, 1964b], and for a generalization, [Carlitz, 1966c], [Hayes, 1966].)

\*18. *Examples of applications of the method of Darboux* (p. 277). Determine the asymptotic expansions for the Bernoulli and Euler numbers (p. 48), the  $c_n$  (p. 56).

\*19. *r-orbits of a random permutation.* In the probability space defined on p. 279, for each integer  $r \geq 1$ , we introduce the RV  $C_{n,r}$ , equal to the number of  $r$ -orbits of  $\omega$ . Show that the GF for its probabilities equals  $\sum_{0 \leq l \leq n/r} (u-1)^l r^{-l}/l!$ . Deduce that, for  $r$  fixed, and  $n$  tending to  $\infty$ ,  $C_{n,r}$  ‘tends’ to a Poisson RV with parameter  $1/r$ .

\*20. *The number of orbits in a random derangement.* We define the associated Stirling numbers of the first kind  $s_2(n, k)$  by  $\sum_{n,k} s_2(n, k) t^n u^k / n! = e^{-tu} (1+t)^u$ . (1) The number  $d(n, k)$  of derangements of  $N$ ,  $|N|=n$ , with  $k$  orbits (p. 231, and Exercise 7, p. 256) equals  $|s_2(n, k)|$ . (2) The polynomials  $P_n(u) := \sum_k d(n, k) u^k$  have all different and nonpositive roots ([Tricomi, 1951], [Carlitz, 1958a]). (3) We consider the ‘random’ derangements  $\omega$  of  $N$  (for which we must specify the probability space!), and the RV  $A_n = A_n(\omega)$  = the number of orbits of  $\omega$ . Study the asymptotic properties of the  $d(n, k)$ , analogous to those of  $s(n, k)$  (pp. 279–283).

**\*21. Random partitions of integers.** We consider all partitions  $\omega$  of  $n$  equally probable,  $P(\omega) := (p(n))^{-1}$ . We let  $S_n$  be the RV equal to the number of summands of  $\omega$ . Hence  $P(S_n = m) = P(n, m)/p(n)$  (p. 94). Show that  $E(S_n) = (p(n))^{-1} \sum_{r=1}^n d(r)p(n-r)$ , where  $d(r)$  is the number of divisors of  $r$ . [Hint: Take the derivative with respect to  $u$ , [2c] (p. 97), put  $u=1$ , and use Exercise 16 (4), p. 161.] (For estimates of the first three moments, see [Lutra, 1958], and for the abscissa of the ‘peak’, [Szekeres, 1953].)

**\*22. Random tournaments.** We define a random tournament (cf. p. 68)  $\mathcal{T} = \mathcal{T}(\omega)$  over  $N$ ,  $|N|=n$ , by making random choices for each pair  $\{x_i, x_j\} \in \mathfrak{P}_2(N)$ , the arcs  $\overrightarrow{x_i x_j}$  and  $\overrightarrow{x_j x_i}$  being equiprobable, and the  $\binom{n}{2}$  choices independent. (1) Let  $C_n = C_n(\omega)$  be the number of 3-cycles of  $\mathcal{T}(\omega)$  (for example,  $\{x_1, x_2, x_3\}$ , Figure 18, p. 68, is a 3-cycle). Show that  $E(C_n) = (1/4)\binom{n}{3}$ ,  $\text{var } C_n = (3/16)\binom{n}{3}$ . [Hint: Define  $\binom{n}{3}$  random variables  $X_{i,j,k}$ ,  $\{i, j, k\} \in \mathfrak{P}_3[n]$ , by  $X_{i,j,k} := 1$  if  $\{x_i, x_j, x_k\}$  is the support of a 3-cycle, and  $:= 0$  otherwise; observe then that  $E(X_{i,j,k}) = 1/4$ .] (2) More generally, let  $C_n$  be the number of  $k$ -cycles of  $\mathcal{T}$ , then we have  $E(C_n) = \binom{n}{k}(k-1)!2^{-k}$  and  $\text{var } C_n = O(n^{2k-3})$  when  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . (A deep study and a vast bibliography on random tournaments are found in [\*Moon, 1968].)

**\*23. Random partitions of a set, mode of  $S(n, k)$ .** With every finite set  $N$ ,  $|N|=n$ , we associate the probability space  $(\Omega, \mathcal{B}, P)$ , where  $\Omega$  is the set of partitions of  $N$ ,  $\mathcal{B} := \mathfrak{P}(\Omega)$ , and  $P(\omega) = 1/|\Omega| = 1/\varpi(n)$  (p. 210) for each partition  $\omega \in \Omega$ . We are now interested in the study of the RV  $B_n = B_n(\omega)$ , the number of blocks of  $\omega$ . (1)  $P(B_n = k) = S(n, k)/\varpi(n)$ , where  $S(n, k)$  is the Stirling number of the second kind (p. 204). The GF of the probabilities is hence equal to  $P_n(u)/\varpi(n)$ , where  $P_n(u) := \sum_k S(n, k)u^k$ . (2) The moments  $\mu'_m$  (not central) of  $B_n$  equal:

$$\sum_{i=0}^m \left\{ \frac{\varpi(n+i)}{\varpi(n)} \sum_{i \leq j \leq k \leq m} (-1)^{k-j} \binom{k}{j} S(m, k) s(j, i) \right\}.$$

(3) Using Theorem D (p. 271) we have  $P_n(u) = \prod_{i=1}^n (u+a_i)$ , where  $0 < a_1 < a_2 < \dots < a_n$ , and defining the *row-independent* RV  $X_{n,i}$  by  $P(X_{n,i}=0)=a_i(1+a_i)^{-1}$ ,  $P(X_{n,i}=1)=(1+a_i)^{-1}$ , show that  $B_n = \sum_i X_{n,i}$ .

(4) We have the following asymptotic result ([Moser, Wyman, 1955b], [Binet, Szekeres, 1957], [\*De Bruijn, 1961], p. 107 (saddlepoint method applied to [4b], p. 210); cf. Exercise 22, p. 228; see also [Haigh, 1972]) for  $Re^R = n \rightarrow \infty$ :

$$\varpi(n) \sim (R+1)^{-1/2} \exp\{n(R+R^{-1}-1)-1\}.$$

This allows us to verify condition ([4I], p. 281) of Lindeberg and to apply the central limit theorem. Deduce from this an estimate for  $\sup_k S(n, k)$  and for the corresponding ‘abscissa’ (the ‘mode’)  $k = \chi(n) \sim n/\log n$  ([Harper, 1967], [Kanold, 1968a, b], and especially [Wegner, 1970]). (5) Determine a *complete* asymptotic expansion for  $X(n)$ ,  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . [Hint: Start from [1b], p. 204.]

**\*24. Random words.** Let  $\mathfrak{X} := \{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n\}$  be a finite set, or *alphabet*,  $|\mathfrak{X}| = n$ . At every epoch  $t = 1, 2, 3, \dots$ , we choose at random a *letter* from  $\mathfrak{X}$ , each letter having the probability  $1/n$ , and the choices at different moments are independent. In this way we obtain an infinite random word  $f$ , and the section consisting of the first  $t$  letters is called  $f(t)$ . In the sequel of this text,  $T = T(\mathcal{E})$  is the RV which equals the *first epoch* that a certain event  $\mathcal{E}$  concerning  $f$  occurs. (1) **Birthdays.**  $\mathcal{E}$  is the event “one of the letters of  $f(t)$  has appeared  $k$  times”. Put  $\exp_u u = 1 + u + u^2/2! + \dots + u^l/l!$ , and show that:

$$\mathbf{E}(T) = \int_0^\infty \{\exp_{k-1}(t/n)\}^n e^{-t} dt.$$

Use this to obtain, for fixed  $k$ ,  $\mathbf{E}(T) \sim (k!)^{1/k} \Gamma(1+1/k) \cdot n^{1-1/k}$  for  $n \rightarrow \infty$  ([Klamkin, Newman, 1967]). (So, for  $n=365$ ,  $k=2$ , one needs in average 23 guests to a party, to find that two of them have the same birthday, which may be surprising.) (2) **The matchboxes of Banach.** A certain mathematician always carries two matchboxes with him. Both contain initially  $k$  matches. Each time he wants a match, he draws a box at random. Certainly a moment will come that he draws an empty box. Let  $R$  be the RV equal to the number of matches left in the other box. Show

that  $P(R=r) = \binom{2k-r}{k} 2^{-2k+r}$  and that  $E(R) = (2k+1)2^{-2k} \binom{2k}{k} - 1 \simeq 2\sqrt{k/\pi} - 1$  ([\*Feller, 1968], I, p. 238, [Kaucky, 1962]). Also compute the moments  $E(R^m)$ ,  $m=2, 3, \dots$ . (3) **Picture collector.**  $\Xi$  is how the event “each letter has appeared  $k$  times” in  $f(t)$ . Then  $E(T) = n \log n + (k-1)n \log \log n + n(\gamma - \log(k-1)!) + o(n)$  when  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .  $\gamma$  is the Euler constant. ([Newman, Shepp, 1960], [Erdős, Rényi, 1961]). (Thus, when every bar of chocolate goes together with a picture, one must buy in average  $n \log n$  of these bars in order to obtain the complete collection of different pictures used by the manufacturer.) (4) **The monkey typist.** Let  $g$  be a word of length  $l$  and  $\Xi$  the event “the last  $l$  letters of  $f(t)$  form the word  $g$ ”. If the  $l$  letters of  $g$  are different,  $1 \leq l \leq n$ , then  $E(T) = l + n^l$ . In the general case the ‘periods’ of  $g$  play a role ([Solov'ev, 1966]).

**\*25. Similarly loaded dice.** (1) Show that it is not possible to load similarly two dice in such a way that the total score will be an equidistributed RV (on the values 2, 3, ..., 11, 12). [*Hint:* In the contrary case, use the GF of the probabilities to show the existence of  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_5$  such that  $(x_0 t + x_1 t^2 + \dots + x_5 t^6)^2 = K(t^2 + t^3 + \dots + t^{11} + t^{12}) \dots$ ] (2) The following is a more difficult question (see [Clements, 1968]) suggested by the preceding. Let  $x = (x_0, x_1, \dots, x_m) \in R^{m+1}$  and  $r$  an integer  $\geq 1$ . We define the  $c_n(x)$  by:  $(x_0 + x_1 t + \dots + x_m t^m)^r = \sum_{n=0}^m c_n(x) t^n$  and put  $M(x) := \max c_n(x)$  for  $0 \leq n \leq rm$ . Compute  $\min M(x)$  on the set of all  $x$  such that  $x_0, x_1, \dots, x_m \geq 0$  and  $x_0 + x_1 + \dots + x_m = 1$ . (3) Answer these two questions when the two dice may be *independently* loaded.

**\*26. Multicolour Ramsey numbers.** Let be given integers  $b, p_1, p_2, \dots, p_k$  such that  $1 \leq b \leq p_1, p_2, \dots, p_k$ . A finite set  $N$  is called *Ramsey*- $(b; p_1, p_2, \dots, p_k)$  if and only if, for all  $k$ -divisions  $\mathcal{C}_1, \mathcal{C}_2, \dots, \mathcal{C}_k$  of  $\mathfrak{P}_b(N)$ ,  $\mathfrak{P}_b(N) = \mathcal{C}_1 + \mathcal{C}_2 + \dots + \mathcal{C}_k$ , there exists an integer  $i \in [k]$  and a block  $P \in \mathfrak{P}_{p_i}(N)$  such that  $\mathfrak{P}_b(P) \subset \mathcal{C}_i$ . (1) Show by induction on  $k$ , the existence of  $k$ -color  $b$ -ary *Ramsey numbers*, denoted by  $\rho(b; p_1, p_2, \dots, p_k)$  and satisfying:

$$N \text{ is } \text{Ramsey-}(b; p_1, p_2, \dots, p_k) \Leftrightarrow |N| \geq \rho(b; p_1, p_2, \dots, p_k).$$

(2) Moreover, show that  $\rho(1; p_1, p_2, \dots, p_k) = p_1 + p_2 + \dots + p_k - k + 1$  ([\*Ryser, 1963], p. 39, and [\*Dembowski, 1965], p. 29). We note:

$\rho(2; 3, 3, 3)=17$ ,  $\rho(2; 3, 3, 4)\geq 30$ ,  $\rho(2; 4, 4, 4)\geq 80$ ,  $\rho(2; 5, 5, 5)\geq 200$ ,  $\rho(2; 3, 3, 3, 3)\geq 102$ ,  $\rho(2; 3, 3, 3, 3, 3)\geq 278$ . (3) As an application of (1) show that for every integer  $k\geq 1$  there exists an integer  $B(k)$  with the following property: when  $n\geq B(k)$ , each  $k$ -division  $(A_1, A_2, \dots, A_k)$  of  $[n]$ ,  $A_1 + A_2 + \dots + A_k = [n]$ , is such that one of the subsets  $A_i$  contains three numbers of the form  $x, y, x+y$ . [Hint: For  $n\geq \rho(2; 3, 3, \dots, 3)$ , where the number 3 occurs  $k$  times, apply (1) to the division  $\mathcal{C}_1 + \mathcal{C}_2 + \dots + \mathcal{C}_k = \mathfrak{P}_2[n]$  defined by:  $\{a, b\} \in \mathcal{C}_i \Leftrightarrow a - b \in A_i$ .]

\*27. *Convex polygons whose vertices form a subset of a given point set of the plane* ([Erdős, Szekeres, 1935], explained in [\*Ryser, 1963], p. 43, and [\*Dembowski, 1965], p. 30). Let  $N$  be a finite set of points in the plane such that no three among them are collinear,  $N$  is *general*, for short. An  $m$ -gon extracted from  $N$  will be the following: a closed polygonal line  $\mathcal{P}$ , not necessarily convex, whose vertices are different and belong to  $N$ . Such a polygon  $\mathcal{P}$  is considered as a set of pairs of  $N$  (its sides),  $\mathcal{P} \subset \mathfrak{P}_2(N)$ . (1) From every *general* set  $A$ ,  $|A|=5$ , we can extract a convex quadrilateral. (2) Let  $M$  be a *general* set,  $|M|\geq 4$ , such that for each  $Q \subset M$ ,  $|Q|=4$ , one of the three quadrilaterals whose vertex set is  $Q$ , is convex. Then, there exists a convex  $m$ -gon extracted from  $M$ ,  $|M|=m$ . [Hint: If not, the convex hull of  $M$  would be spanned by less than  $m$  points, consequently there would exist a  $Q$  whose three quadrilaterals are not convex.] (3) Deduce from (1, 2) the following theorem: For every integer  $m\geq 0$  there exists an integer  $f(m)$  such that from every finite *general* set containing at least  $f(m)$  points of the plane, a convex  $m$ -gon can be extracted. [Hint: We have  $f(3)=3$ ,  $f(4)=5$ ; for  $m\geq 5$ , apply the theorem on p. 283,  $p \rightarrow m$ ,  $q \rightarrow 5$ ,  $\mathcal{C} + \mathcal{D} = \mathfrak{P}_4(N)$ , where  $\mathcal{C}$  is the set of the  $Q$ ,  $|Q|=4$ , such that one of 3 extracted quadrilaterals is convex.]

28. *Monotonic subsets of a sequence.* Let  $X$  be a set of real numbers  $>0$ ,  $X := \{x_1, x_2, x_3, \dots\}$ ,  $0 < x_1 < x_2 < x_3 < \dots$ . For all integers  $h$ ,  $k \geq 1$ , we put  $r(h, k) := (h-1)(k-1)+1$ . Let  $N$  be a subset with  $n$  elements of  $X$ ,  $N \subset X$ ,  $|N|=n$ , and let  $\varphi$  be a map of  $N$  into  $\mathbf{R}$ . We first suppose that  $n=r(h, k)$ . Show that there exists either a subset  $H \subset N$ ,  $H=|h|$ , on which the restriction of  $\varphi$  is increasing (not necessarily strictly), or a subset  $K \subset N$ ,  $|K|=k$ , on which  $\varphi$  is decreasing (not necessarily strictly). [Hint: Argue by induction on  $k \geq 2$ , and fixed  $h$ . For  $A \subset N$ ,  $|A|=r(h, k)-1$ ,

$|N|=r(h, k+1)$ , apply the induction hypothesis to each of the sets  $M_z:=A \cup \{z\}$ , where  $z$  runs through  $N - A$ .] If  $n < r(h, k)$ , the property does not hold.

**29. Zarankiewicz numbers.** The numbers  $\mathfrak{k}(m, a)$  defined on p. 288 satisfy  $\mathfrak{k}(a, a)=a^2$  and  $\mathfrak{k}(a+1, a)=(a+1)^2-2$ .

**\*30. Complete subgraphs in graphs with sufficiently high degrees.** A necessary and sufficient condition that every graph  $\mathcal{G}$  of  $N$ ,  $|N|=n$ , all of its degrees exceeding or equalling  $k$  ( $\forall x \in N, |\mathcal{G}(x)| \geq k$ , p. 61), contains a complete subgraph with  $p$  nodes is  $k > n(p-2)/(p-1)$  ([Turán, 1941], [Zarankiewicz, 1947]).

**\*31. Maximum of a certain quadratic form** ([Motzkin, Straus, 1965]). Let  $E$  be the set of vectors  $x=(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) \in \mathbb{R}^n$  whose real coordinates  $x_i$  satisfy  $x_i \geq 0$ ,  $i \in [n]$ , and  $x_1+x_2+\dots+x_n=1$ . (1) Let  $F(x)$  denote the quadratic form  $\sum_{\{i, j\} \in \mathfrak{P}[n]} x_i x_j$  (for instance  $F_3=x_1 x_2 + x_2 x_3 + x_3 x_1$ ). Show that  $\max_{x \in E} F(x) = (1-1/n)/2$ . (2) More generally, let  $\mathfrak{G}$  be a graph over  $[n]=\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$  (p. 61) and  $F_{\mathfrak{G}}(x)=\sum_{\{i, j\} \in \mathfrak{G}} x_i x_j$ . Show that  $\max_{x \in E} F_{\mathfrak{G}}(x)$  equals  $(1-1/k)/2$ , where  $k$  is the maximum number of nodes of complete subgraphs contained in  $\mathfrak{G}$  (p. 62), in other words, the maximum value of the number of elements of sets  $H \subset [n]$  such that  $\mathfrak{P}_2(H) \subset \mathfrak{G}$ . [Hint: If  $K:=\{i_1, i_2, \dots, i_k\}$  is the set of nodes of a complete subgraph of  $\mathfrak{G}$ , then a lower bound for  $\max F_{\mathfrak{G}}(x)$  is given by the value of  $F_{\mathfrak{G}}(x)$  for  $x_j=1/k$  if  $j \in K$  and  $=0$  otherwise. For the other inequality, use induction; first observe that the maximum occurs in an interior point of  $E$ .]

**\*32. Systems of distinct representatives.** Let  $\mathcal{S}:=\{B_1, B_2, \dots, B_m\}$  be a system of blocks, not necessarily different from  $N$ ,  $B_i \subset N$ ,  $i \in [m]$ . A block  $M=\{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_m\} \subset N$  is called a *system of distinct representatives*, abbreviated SDR, if and only if  $x_i \in B_i$  for all  $i \in [m]$ . A necessary and sufficient condition that  $\mathcal{S}$  admits a SDR is that for every subsystem  $\mathcal{S}' \subset \mathcal{S}$  we have  $|\bigcup_{B \in \mathcal{S}'} B| \geq |\mathcal{S}'|$ . (The preceding statement, due to [Hall (P.), 1935], answers in particular the ‘marriage problem’:  $m$  boys know a certain number of girls; under what conditions can each boy marry a girl he knows already? (One girl may be acquainted with several boys!....) See also [Halmos, Vaughan, 1950], [Mirsky, Perfect, 1966], [Mirsky,

1967], [Rado, 1967].) [*Hint:* Argue by complete induction on  $m$ , using *critical* subsystems  $\mathcal{T} \subset \mathcal{S}$  in the sense that  $|\bigcup_{B \in \mathcal{T}} B| = |\mathcal{T}|$ . If no subsystem is critical, take one point  $x \in B_1$ , and remove it from each of the blocks  $B_2, B_3, \dots$  (if it occurs there). Thus we obtain a new system  $B'_2, B'_3, \dots, B'_m$ , which can be handled by the induction hypothesis. If there exists a critical system, then there exists a largest integer  $k$  such that (after changing the indices)  $|B_1 \cup B_2 \cup \dots \cup B_k| = k (< m)$  and then we can choose a SDR for  $B_1, B_2, \dots, B_k$ , say  $A_0$ . Then we show next that the system  $C_{k+1}, C_{k+2}, \dots$ , where  $C_i := B_i \setminus A_0$ , also satisfies the induction hypothesis, so has also a SDR, say  $A_1$ . Hence the required SDR is  $A_0 \cup A_1$ .] Deduce from this that every latin  $k \times n$  rectangle (p. 182),  $1 \leq k \leq n-1$ , can be extended into a  $(k+1) \times n$ -rectangle by adding one row.

**33. Agglutinating systems.** A system  $\mathcal{S}$  of blocks of  $N$ ,  $\mathcal{S} \subset \mathfrak{P}'(N)$ ,  $|N|=n$ , is called *agglutinating* if any two of them are not disjoint. Show that the number  $|\mathcal{S}|$  of blocks of such a system is less than or equal to  $2^{n-1}$ , and that this number is a least upper bound. [*Hint:* Let  $\mathcal{S}^*$  be the system of complements of the blocks of  $\mathcal{S}$ , then we have, in the sense of [10e] (p. 28),  $\mathcal{S} + \mathcal{S}^* \subset \mathfrak{P}(N)$ ] \*Let, more generally,  $\mathcal{F}_1, \mathcal{F}_2, \dots, \mathcal{F}_k$  be  $k$  agglutinating systems of  $N$ , then  $|\bigcup_{j=1}^k \mathcal{F}_j| \leq 2^n - 2^{n-k}$  ([Katona, 1964], [Kleitman, 1966, 1968a]).

**34. A weighing problem.** Let be given  $n (\geq 2)$  coins, all of the same weight, except one, which is a little lighter. Show that the minimum number of weighings which must be performed to discover the counterfeit coin equals the smallest integer  $\geq \log_3 n$ , where  $z = \log_3 y \Leftrightarrow y = 3^z$  (the scale used only allows the comparison of weights) (For this subject see [Cairns, 1963], [Erdős, Rényi, 1963].).

**35. The number of groups of order  $n$ .** Let  $g(n)$  be the number of finite not isomorphic groups  $G$  of order  $n$ ,  $|G|=n$ . (1) Use the Cayley table (= the multiplication table) of  $G$  to show that  $g(n) \leq n^{n^2}$ . (2) The Cayley table of  $G$  is completely known if we know it for  $S \times G$  only, where  $S$  is a *system of generators* of  $G$ . (3) Let  $S$  be a *minimal* system of generators ( $\Leftrightarrow$  there does not exist a system of generators with a smaller number of elements). Show that  $2^{|S|} \leq n$ . Deduce that  $g(n) \leq n^{n^{\log_2 n}}$ , where  $\log_2 n$  means the logarithm with base 2 of  $n$ . ([Gallagher, 1967]. The following table of

$g(n)$  is taken from [\*Coxeter, Moser, 1965], p. 134. See also [Newman, 1967], [James, Connor, 1969].)

$n$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17
$g(n)$	1	1	1	2	1	2	1	5	2	2	1	5	1	2	1	14	1
$n$	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32		
$g(n)$	5	1	5	2	2	1	15	2	2	5	4	1	4	1	1	51	

**36. A minimax inequality.** Let  $a_{i,j}$ ,  $i \in [m]$ ,  $j \in [n]$  be  $mn$  real numbers. Then  $\min_i \max_j a_{ij} \geq \max_j \min_i a_{ij}$ . (For extensions, see [Schützenberger, 1957].)

**\*37. Two examples of extremal problems in  $[n]$**  ([Klamkin, Newman, 1969]). (1) Let  $\mathcal{S}$  be a system of  $k$  pairs of  $[n]$ ,  $\mathcal{S} = \{A_1, A_2, \dots, A_k\}$ ,  $A_i \subset [n]$ ,  $|A_i|=2$ , all disjoint, and such that the  $k$  integers  $\sum_{x \in A_i} x$ ,  $i \in [k]$ , are all different and smaller than  $n$ . Then the largest possible value for  $k$ , denoted by  $\varphi(n)$ , satisfies  $(2n/5)-3 \leq \varphi(n) \leq (2n-3)/5$ . (2) Let  $\mathcal{S}$  be a system of  $k$  triples of  $[n]$ ,  $\mathcal{S} = \{A_1, A_2, \dots, A_k\}$ ,  $A_i \subset [n]$ ,  $|A_i|=3$ , all disjoint, and such that for all  $i \in [k]$ ,  $\sum_{x \in A_i} x = n$ . Then the largest possible value for  $k$ , denoted by  $\psi(n)$ , satisfies  $\psi(n) \sim (2/9)n$ , for  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . (The reader will find in [\*Erdős, 1963] a large number of difficult and extremely interesting combinatorial problems concerning arithmetical extremal problems.)

**\*38. Multiple points on a polygonal contour.** Let  $A_1, A_2, \dots, A_n$  be points in the plane,  $n > 2$ , and let  $\Gamma$  be the polygonal contour whose sides are  $A_1A_2, A_2A_3, \dots, A_{n-1}A_n, A_nA_1$ . A *multiple point* of  $\Gamma$  is any point, different from the  $A_i$ , through which pass at least two sides of  $\Gamma$ . Show that the number  $s_n$  of these multiple points satisfies  $s_n \leq (1/2)n(n-4)+1$  for  $n$  even, and  $s_n \leq (1/2)n(n-3)$  for  $n$  odd. These inequalities cannot be improved ([Bergmann, 1969]; see also [Jordan (Camille), 1920]).

**\*39. Separating systems.** A *separating system* (or *Kolmogoroff system* or  $T_0$  system) of  $N$  is any system  $\mathcal{S} \subset \mathfrak{P}'(N)$  such that for all  $x$  and  $y \in N$ ,  $x \neq y$ , there exists either an  $A$  such that  $x \in A \in \mathcal{S}$ ,  $y \notin A$ , or a  $B$  such that  $y \in B \in \mathcal{S}$ ,  $x \notin B$  (not exclusive or). Compute or estimate the number of separating systems of  $N$ ,  $|N|=n$ .

\*40. *Multicoverings.* An  $l$ -multicovering of  $N$  is any system  $\mathcal{S} \subset \mathfrak{P}'(N)$  such that each  $x \in N$  is contained in exactly  $l$  blocks of  $\mathcal{S}$ ; (the blocks are all *different*). Compute and estimate the number of  $l$ -coverings of  $N$ ,  $|N|=n$  ([Comtet, 1968b], [Baroti, 1970], [\*Rényi, 1971, p. 30]). Here are the first values of  $C_2(n, k)$ , the number of *bicoverings* of  $N$  with  $k$  blocks, and  $C_2(n) := \sum_k C_2(n, k)$ , the total number of bicoverings:

$n \setminus k$	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	$C_2(n)$	
2	1								1	
3		4							8	
4	13		39	25		3			80	
5	40		280	472	256		40		1088	
6	121		1815	6185	7255	3306	535	15	19232	
7	364		11284	70700	149660	131876	51640	8456	420	424400

41. *At most 1-overlapping systems.* These are systems  $\mathcal{S}$  of  $N$ , consisting of  $k$  blocks,  $\mathcal{S} \subset \mathfrak{P}_k(N)$ , such that for any  $A$  and  $B$ ,  $A \neq B$ , we have  $|A \cap B| \leq 1$ . If  $\varphi(n, k)$  is the largest possible number of blocks of such a system  $\mathcal{S}$ , show that  $\varphi(n, k) \sim n^2/k(k-1)$ , for  $n \rightarrow \infty$  ([Erdős, Hanani, 1963], [Schönheim, 1966]).

\*42. *Geometries.* A *geometry* (or *linear system*) of  $N$  is a system  $\mathcal{S} \subset \mathfrak{P}'(N)$  whose blocks, called *lines*, satisfy the following two conditions: (1) Each pair  $A \subset N$ ,  $|A|=2$ , is contained in precisely one line; (2) each line contains at least two points. The following are the known values of  $g(n)$ , which is the number of geometries of  $N$ ,  $|N|=n$ , and the numbers  $g^*(n)$ , which are the number of nonisomorphic ones:

$n$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
$g(n)$	1	1	2	6	32	353	8390	436399	50468754
$g^*(n)$	1	1	2	3	5	10	24	69	384

Compute and estimate  $g(n)$  and  $g^*(n)$  (for  $n \geq 10$ , we have  $2^n < g^*(n) < g(n) < 2^{\binom{n}{3}}$ , these inequalities and their numerical values being due to [Doyen, 1967].)

\*43. *Steiner triple systems.* A Steiner triple system over  $N$  or simply a ‘triple system’, is a set  $\mathcal{S}$  of triples of  $N$ ,  $\mathcal{S} \subset \mathfrak{P}_3(N)$ , such that every pair

of elements of  $N$  is contained in exactly one triple. In the sense of the previous exercise, this is a ‘geometry’ in which every line has three points. We suppose  $N$  finite,  $|N|=n$ . (1) A necessary and sufficient condition for the existence of a triple system is that  $n$  is of the form  $6k+1$  or  $6k+3$ . (2) Let  $s(n)$  denote the number of triple systems (of  $N$ ), and  $s^*(n)$  the number of nonisomorphic ones. The known values are:

$n$	1	3	7	9	13	15
$s(n)$	1	1	30	840	1197504000	60281712691200
$s^*(n)$	1	1	1	1	2	80

Compute and estimate  $s(n)$  and  $s^*(n)$ , where  $n \equiv 1$  or  $3 \pmod{6}$ . (See [Doyen, Valette, 1971].)

## FUNDAMENTAL NUMERICAL TABLES

### Factorials with their prime factor decomposition

---

				1 = 1! = 1
				2 = 2! = 2
				6 = 3! = 2.3
				24 = 4! = 2 <sup>3</sup> .3
				120 = 5! = 2 <sup>3</sup> .3.5
				720 = 6! = 2 <sup>4</sup> .3 <sup>2</sup> .5
				5040 = 7! = 2 <sup>4</sup> .3 <sup>2</sup> .5.7
				40320 = 8! = 2 <sup>7</sup> .3 <sup>2</sup> .5.7
3	62880	= 9!	= 2 <sup>7</sup> .3 <sup>4</sup> .5.7	
36	28800	= 10!	= 2 <sup>8</sup> .3 <sup>4</sup> .5 <sup>2</sup> .7	
399	16800	= 11!	= 2 <sup>8</sup> .3 <sup>4</sup> .5 <sup>2</sup> .7.11	
4790	01600	= 12!	= 2 <sup>10</sup> .3 <sup>5</sup> .5 <sup>2</sup> .7.11	
62270	20800	= 13!	= 2 <sup>10</sup> .3 <sup>5</sup> .5 <sup>2</sup> .7.11.13	
8	71782	91200	= 14!	= 2 <sup>11</sup> .3 <sup>5</sup> .5 <sup>2</sup> .7 <sup>2</sup> .11.13
130	76743	68000	= 15!	= 2 <sup>11</sup> .3 <sup>8</sup> .5 <sup>3</sup> .7 <sup>2</sup> .11.13
2092	27898	88000	= 16!	= 2 <sup>13</sup> .3 <sup>8</sup> .5 <sup>3</sup> .7 <sup>2</sup> .11.13
35568	74280	96000	= 17!	= 2 <sup>15</sup> .3 <sup>8</sup> .5 <sup>3</sup> .7 <sup>2</sup> .11.13.17
6	40237	37057	28000	= 18! = 2 <sup>16</sup> .3 <sup>8</sup> .5 <sup>3</sup> .7 <sup>2</sup> .11.13.17
121	64510	04088	32000	= 19! = 2 <sup>16</sup> .3 <sup>8</sup> .5 <sup>3</sup> .7 <sup>2</sup> .11.13.17.19
2432	90200	81766	40000	= 20! = 2 <sup>18</sup> .3 <sup>8</sup> .5 <sup>4</sup> .7 <sup>2</sup> .11.13.17.19
51090	94217	17094	40000	= 21! = 2 <sup>18</sup> .3 <sup>9</sup> .5 <sup>4</sup> .7 <sup>3</sup> .11.13.17.19
11	24000	72777	76076	80000 = 22! = 2 <sup>19</sup> .3 <sup>9</sup> .5 <sup>4</sup> .7 <sup>3</sup> .11 <sup>2</sup> .13.17.19.23
258	52016	73888	49766	40000 = 23! = 2 <sup>19</sup> .3 <sup>9</sup> .5 <sup>4</sup> .7 <sup>3</sup> .11 <sup>2</sup> .13.17.19.23
6204	48401	73323	94393	60000 = 24! = 2 <sup>22</sup> .3 <sup>10</sup> .5 <sup>4</sup> .7 <sup>3</sup> .11 <sup>2</sup> .13.17.19.23
1	55112	10043	33098	59840 00000 = 25! = 2 <sup>22</sup> .3 <sup>10</sup> .5 <sup>6</sup> .7 <sup>3</sup> .11 <sup>2</sup> .13.17.19.23
40	32914	61126	60563	55840 00000 = 26! = 2 <sup>23</sup> .3 <sup>10</sup> .5 <sup>6</sup> .7 <sup>3</sup> .11 <sup>2</sup> .13 <sup>2</sup> .17.19.23
1088	88694	50418	35216	07680 00000 = 27! = 2 <sup>23</sup> .3 <sup>18</sup> .5 <sup>6</sup> .7 <sup>8</sup> .11 <sup>2</sup> .13 <sup>2</sup> .17.19.23
30488	83446	11713	86050	15040 00000 = 28! = 2 <sup>25</sup> .3 <sup>18</sup> .5 <sup>6</sup> .7 <sup>4</sup> .11 <sup>2</sup> .13 <sup>2</sup> .17.19.23.29
8	84176	19937	39701	95454 36160 00000 = 29! = 2 <sup>25</sup> .3 <sup>13</sup> .5 <sup>6</sup> .7 <sup>4</sup> .11 <sup>2</sup> .13 <sup>2</sup> .17.19.23.29
265	25285	98121	91058	63630 84800 00000 = 30! = 2 <sup>26</sup> .3 <sup>14</sup> .5 <sup>7</sup> .7 <sup>4</sup> .11 <sup>2</sup> .13 <sup>2</sup> .17.19.23.29

---

$n \backslash k$	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	
0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	
1	2	1	2	3	3	1	4	6	4	1	6	1	1	1	
2	3	1	3	1	3	1	4	10	5	1	10	5	1	1	
3	4	1	4	6	4	1	5	15	20	15	6	15	6	1	
4	5	1	5	10	10	5	10	20	15	15	6	20	15	1	
5	6	1	6	15	20	15	20	15	15	15	6	20	15	1	
6	7	1	7	21	35	35	21	7	1	1	1	1	1	1	
7	8	1	8	28	56	70	56	28	8	1	1	1	1	1	
8	9	1	9	36	84	126	126	84	36	9	1	1	1	1	
9	10	1	10	45	120	210	252	210	120	45	10	10	1	1	
10	11	1	11	55	165	330	462	462	330	165	55	11	11	1	
11	12	1	12	66	220	495	792	924	792	495	220	66	12	1	
12	13	1	13	78	286	715	1287	1716	1716	1287	715	286	78	13	
13	14	1	14	91	364	1001	2002	3003	3003	2002	1001	364	91	14	
14	15	1	15	105	455	1365	3003	5005	6435	6435	5005	3003	1365	455	105
15	16	1	16	120	560	1820	4368	8008	11440	12870	11440	8008	4368	1820	560
16	17	1	17	136	680	2380	6188	12376	19448	24310	19448	12376	6188	2380	1
17	18	1	18	153	816	3060	8568	18564	31824	43758	48620	43758	31824	18564	8568
18	19	1	19	171	969	3876	11628	27132	50388	75582	92378	92378	75582	50388	27132
19	20	1	20	190	1140	4845	15504	38760	77520	125970	167950	184756	167950	125970	77520
20	21	1	21	210	1330	5985	20349	54264	116280	203490	293330	352716	293330	203490	1
21	22	1	22	231	1540	7315	26334	74613	170544	319770	497420	646646	705432	646646	497420
22	23	1	23	253	1771	8855	33649	100947	245157	490314	81790	1144066	1352078	1144066	1352078
23	24	1	24	276	2024	10626	42504	134596	346104	735471	1307504	1961256	2496144	2704156	2496144
24	25	1	25	300	12650	53130	177100	480700	1081575	2042975	3268760	4457400	5200300	5200300	5200300
25	26	1	26	325	2600	14950	65780	23020	657800	1562275	3124550	5311735	7726160	9657700	10400600

The most extended of existing tables is that of [Miller, 1954],  $k \leq n \leq 200$ .

The number  $P(n, m)$  of partitions of  $n$  into  $m$  summands  
and the number  $p(n) = \sum_m P(n, m)$  of partitions of  $n$

$p(n)$	$n \setminus m$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
1	1	1											
2	2	<b>1</b>	1										
3	3	1	<b>1</b>	1									
5	4	1	<b>2</b>	1	1								
7	5	1	2	<b>2</b>	1	1							
11	6	1	3	3	2	1	1						
15	7	1	3	4	<b>3</b>	2	1	1					
22	8	1	4	5	<b>5</b>	3	2	1	1				
30	9	1	4	7	6	<b>5</b>	3	2	1	1			
42	10	1	5	8	9	<b>7</b>	5	3	2	1	1		
56	11	1	5	10	11	10	<b>7</b>	5	3	2	1	1	
77	12	1	6	12	15	13	<b>11</b>	7	5	3	2	1	1
101	13	1	6	14	18	18	14	<b>11</b>	7	5	3	2	1
135	14	1	7	16	23	23	20	<b>15</b>	11	7	5	3	2
176	15	1	7	19	27	30	26	21	<b>15</b>	11	7	5	3
231	16	1	8	21	34	37	35	28	<b>22</b>	15	11	7	5
297	17	1	8	24	39	47	44	38	29	<b>22</b>	15	11	7
385	18	1	9	27	47	57	58	49	40	<b>30</b>	22	15	11
490	19	1	9	30	54	70	71	65	52	41	<b>30</b>	22	15
627	20	1	10	33	64	84	90	82	70	54	<b>42</b>	30	22
792	21	1	10	37	72	101	110	105	89	73	55	<b>42</b>	30
1002	22	1	11	40	84	119	136	131	116	94	75	<b>56</b>	42
1255	23	1	11	44	94	141	163	164	146	123	97	76	<b>56</b>
1575	24	1	12	48	108	164	199	201	186	157	128	99	<b>77</b>
1958	25	1	12	52	120	192	235	248	230	201	164	131	100

For  $m \geq n/2$  (right of the bold-face figures), the table is completed by  $P(n, m) = p(n - m)$ . A table of  $P(n, m)$ ,  $m \leq n \leq 100$ , is found in [Todd, 1944].

Partial exponential Bell polynomials  $B_{n, k}(x_1, x_2, \dots)$  <sup>a</sup>

$$\begin{aligned}
 \mathbf{B}_{1,1} &= 1^1 \mid \mathbf{B}_{2,1} = 2^1, \quad \mathbf{B}_{2,2} = 1^2 \mid \mathbf{B}_{3,1} = 3^1, \quad \mathbf{B}_{3,2} = 3.1^2 2^1, \quad \mathbf{B}_{3,3} = 1^3 \mid \mathbf{B}_{4,1} = 4^1, \\
 \mathbf{B}_{4,2} &= 4.1^1 3^1 + 3.2^2, \quad \mathbf{B}_{4,3} = 6.1^2 2^1, \quad \mathbf{B}_{4,4} = 1^4 \mid \mathbf{B}_{5,1} = 5^1, \quad \mathbf{B}_{5,2} = 5.1^4 2^1 + 10.2^1 3^1, \\
 \mathbf{B}_{5,3} &= 10.1^2 3^1 + 15.1^1 2^2, \quad \mathbf{B}_{5,4} = 10.1^3 2^1, \quad \mathbf{B}_{5,5} = 1^5 \mid \mathbf{B}_{6,1} = 6^1, \quad \mathbf{B}_{6,2} = 6.1^1 5^1 + 15.2^1 4^1 \\
 &+ 10.3^2, \quad \mathbf{B}_{6,3} = 15.1^2 4^1 + 60.1^1 2^1 3^1 + 15.2^3, \quad \mathbf{B}_{6,4} = 20.1^3 3^1 + 45.1^2 2^2, \quad \mathbf{B}_{6,5} = 15.1^4 2^1, \\
 \mathbf{B}_{6,6} &= 1^6 \mid \mathbf{B}_{7,1} = 7^1, \quad \mathbf{B}_{7,2} = 7.1^6 1^1 + 21.2^1 5^1 + 35.3^1 4^1, \quad \mathbf{B}_{7,3} = 21.1^2 5^1 + 105.1^1 2^1 4^1 \\
 &+ 70.1^1 3^2 + 105.2^2 3^1, \quad \mathbf{B}_{7,4} = 35.1^3 4^1 + 210.1^2 2^1 3^1 + 105.1^1 2^3, \quad \mathbf{B}_{7,5} = 35.1^4 3^1 \\
 &+ 105.1^3 2^2, \quad \mathbf{B}_{7,6} = 21.1^5 2^1, \quad \mathbf{B}_{7,7} = 1^7 \mid \mathbf{B}_{8,1} = 8^1, \quad \mathbf{B}_{8,2} = 8.1^7 1^1 + 28.2^1 6^1 + 56.3^1 5^1 \\
 &+ 35.4^2, \quad \mathbf{B}_{8,3} = 28.1^2 6^1 + 168.1^1 2^1 5^1 + 280.1^3 3^1 4^1 + 210.2^2 4^1 + 280.2^1 3^2, \quad \mathbf{B}_{8,4} = 56.1^8 5^1 \\
 &+ 420.1^2 2^1 4^1 + 280.1^2 3^2 + 840.1^1 2^2 3^1 + 105.2^4, \quad \mathbf{B}_{8,5} = 70.1^4 4^1 + 560.1^3 2^1 3^1 + 420.1^2 2^3, \\
 \mathbf{B}_{8,6} &= 56.1^5 3^1 + 210.1^4 2^2, \quad \mathbf{B}_{8,7} = 28.1^6 2^1, \quad \mathbf{B}_{8,8} = 1^8 \mid \mathbf{B}_{9,1} = 9^1, \quad \mathbf{B}_{9,2} = 9.1^8 1^1 \\
 &+ 36.2^1 7^1 + 84.3^1 6^1 + 126.4^1 5^1, \quad \mathbf{B}_{9,3} = 36.1^2 7^1 + 252.1^1 2^1 6^1 + 504.1^1 3^1 5^1 + 378.2^2 5^1 \\
 &+ 315.1^4 2^2 + 1260.2^1 3^1 4^1 + 280.3^3, \quad \mathbf{B}_{9,4} = 84.1^3 6^1 + 756.1^2 2^1 5^1 + 1260.1^2 3^1 4^1 \\
 &+ 1890.1^1 2^2 4^1 + 2520.1^1 2^1 3^2 + 1260.2^3 3^1, \quad \mathbf{B}_{9,5} = 126.1^4 5^1 + 1260.1^3 2^1 4^1 + 840.1^2 3^2 \\
 &+ 3780.1^2 2^2 3^1 + 945.1^1 2^4, \quad \mathbf{B}_{9,6} = 126.1^5 4^1 + 1260.1^4 2^1 3^1 + 1260.1^3 2^2 3^1, \quad \mathbf{B}_{9,7} = 84.1^6 3^1
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
& + 378.1^5 2^3, \mathbf{B}_{9,8} = 36.1^7 2^1, \mathbf{B}_{9,9} = 1^9 \mid \mathbf{B}_{10,1} = 10^1, \mathbf{B}_{10,2} = 10.1^{191} + 45.2^{181} \\
& + 120.3^{171} + 210.4^{161} + 126.5^2, \mathbf{B}_{10,3} = 45.1^{281} + 360.1^{12171} + 840.1^{13161} + 630.2^{261} \\
& + 1260.1^{14151} + 2520.2^{13151} + 1575.2^{142} + 2100.3^{241}, \mathbf{B}_{10,4} = 120.1^{371} + 1260.1^{22161} \\
& + 2520.1^{23151} + 3780.1^{12251} + 1575.1^{242} + 12600.1^{1213141} + 3150.2^{341} + 2800.1^{133} \\
& + 6300.2^{232}, \mathbf{B}_{10,5} = 210.1^{461} + 2520.1^{122151} + 4200.1^{33141} + 9450.1^{2241} \\
& + 12600.1^{22132} + 12600.1^{12331} + 945.2^5, \mathbf{B}_{10,6} = 252.1^{551} + 3150.1^{4241} + 2100.1^{432} \\
& + 12600.1^{32231} + 4725.1^{224}, \mathbf{B}_{10,7} = 210.1^{641} + 2520.1^{52131} + 3150.1^{423}, \\
& \mathbf{B}_{10,8} = 120.1^{731} + 630.1^{622}, \mathbf{B}_{10,9} = 45.1^{821}, \mathbf{B}_{10,10} = 1^{10} \mid \mathbf{B}_{11,1} = 11^1, \mathbf{B}_{11,2} = 11.1^{1101} \\
& + 55.2^{191} + 165.3^{181} + 330.4^{171} + 462.5^{161}, \mathbf{B}_{11,3} = 55.1^{291} + 495.1^{12181} + 1320.1^{13171} \\
& + 990.2^{271} + 2310.1^{14161} + 4620.2^{13161} + 1386.1^{152} + 6930.2^{14151} + 4620.3^{251} \\
& + 5775.3^{142}, \mathbf{B}_{11,4} = 165.1^{381} + 1980.1^{22171} + 4620.1^{23161} + 6930.1^{12261} + 6930.1^{24151} \\
& + 27720.1^{12213151} + 6930.2^{351} + 17325.1^{2142} + 23100.1^{13241} + 34650.2^{23141} \\
& + 15400.2^{133}, \mathbf{B}_{11,5} = 330.1^{471} + 4620.1^{122161} + 9240.1^{3151} + 20790.1^{22251} + 5775.1^{342} \\
& + 69300.1^{2213141} + 34650.1^{12341} + 15400.1^{233} + 69300.1^{12232} + 17325.2^{431}, \\
& \mathbf{B}_{11,6} = 462.1^{561} + 6930.1^{42151} + 11550.1^{43141} + 34650.1^{32241} + 46200.1^{32132} \\
& + 69300.1^{23331} + 10395.1^{225}, \mathbf{B}_{11,7} = 462.1^{651} + 6930.1^{52141} + 4620.1^{532} \\
& + 34650.1^{42331} + 17325.1^{224}, \mathbf{B}_{11,8} = 330.1^{741} + 4620.1^{62331} + 6930.1^{523}, \\
& \mathbf{B}_{11,9} = 165.1^{831} + 990.1^{722}, \mathbf{B}_{11,10} = 55.1^{921}, \mathbf{B}_{11,11} = 11^1 \mid \mathbf{B}_{12,1} = 12^1, \\
& \mathbf{B}_{12,2} = 12.1^{1111} + 66.2^{101} + 220.3^{191} + 495.4^{181} + 792.5^{171} + 462.6^2, \mathbf{B}_{12,3} = 66.1^{1201} \\
& + 660.1^{12191} + 1980.1^{13181} + 1485.2^{281} + 3960.1^{14171} + 7920.2^{13171} + 5544.1^{15161} \\
& + 13860.2^{14161} + 9240.3^{261} + 8316.2^{152} + 27720.3^{14151} + 5775.4^3, \mathbf{B}_{12,4} = 220.1^{391} \\
& + 2970.1^{22181} + 7920.1^{23171} + 11880.1^{12271} + 13860.1^{24161} + 55440.1^{1213161} \\
& + 13860.2^{361} + 8316.1^{252} + 83160.1^{2214151} + 55440.1^{13251} + 83160.2^{23151} \\
& + 69300.1^{13142} + 51975.2^{242} + 138600.2^{13241} + 15400.3^4, \mathbf{B}_{12,5} = 495.1^{481} \\
& + 7920.1^{32171} + 18480.1^{83161} + 41580.1^{2261} + 27720.1^{34151} + 166320.1^{221351} \\
& + 83160.1^{12251} + 103950.1^{22142} + 138600.1^{23241} + 415800.1^{1223141} + 51975.2^{441} \\
& + 184800.1^{12133} + 138600.2^{332}, \mathbf{B}_{12,6} = 792.1^{571} + 13860.1^{42161} + 27720.1^{43151} \\
& + 83160.1^{3251} + 17325.1^{442} + 277200.1^{213141} + 207900.1^{22841} + 61600.1^{33} \\
& + 415800.1^{22232} + 207900.1^{12431} + 10395.2^6, \mathbf{B}_{12,7} = 924.1^{661} + 16632.1^{5251}, \\
& + 27720.1^{53141} + 103950.1^{42241} + 138600.1^{42132} + 277200.1^{3231} + 62370.1^{225} \\
& \mathbf{B}_{12,8} = 792.1^{751} + 13860.1^{62141} + 9240.1^{632} + 83160.1^{52231} + 51975.1^{424}, \\
& \mathbf{B}_{12,9} = 495.1^{841} + 7920.1^{72131} + 13860.1^{628}, \mathbf{B}_{12,10} = 220.1^{931} + 1485.1^{822}, \\
& \mathbf{B}_{12,11} = 66.1^{1021}, \mathbf{B}_{12,12} = 1^{12} \mid
\end{aligned}$$

<sup>a</sup> The letter  $x$  occurring in [3d] (p. 134) has not been written here to save space. Thus,  $\mathbf{B}_{5,3} = 10.1^{231} + 15.1^{122}$  should read  $\mathbf{B}_{5,3} = 10x_1^2x_3 + 15x_1x_2^2$ .

### Logarithmic polynomials

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{L}_1 &= 1^1 \mid \mathbf{L}_2 = 2^1 - 1^2 \mid \mathbf{L}_3 = 3^1 - 3.2^{11} + 2.1^3 \mid \mathbf{L}_4 = 4^1 - 4.3^{11} + 12.2^{12} - 6.1^4 \\
&- 3.2^2 \mid \mathbf{L}_5 = 5^1 - 5.4^{11} - 10.3^{12} + 20.3^{12} + 30.2^{21} - 60.2^{13} + 24.1^5 \mid \mathbf{L}_6 = 6^1 \\
&- 6.5^{11} - 15.4^{12} + 30.4^{12} - 10.3^2 + 120.3^{1211} - 120.3^{113} + 30.2^3 - 270.2^{12} \\
&+ 360.2^{14} - 120.1^6 \mid \mathbf{L}_7 = 7^1 - 7.6^{11} - 21.5^{12} - 35.4^{13} + 42.5^{12} + 210.4^{2111} \\
&+ 140.3^{211} + 210.3^{122} - 210.4^{113} - 1260.3^{1212} - 630.2^{31} + 840.3^{114} + 2520.2^{213} \\
&- 2520.2^{115} + 720.1^7 \mid \mathbf{L}_8 = 8^1 - 8.7^{11} - 28.6^{12} - 56.5^{13} - 35.4^2 + 56.6^{12} \\
&+ 336.5^{1211} + 560.4^{1311} + 420.4^{122} + 560.3^{221} - 336.5^{13} - 2520.4^{1212} - 1680.3^{212} \\
&- 5040.3^{12211} - 630.2^4 + 1680.4^{114} + 13440.3^{1213} + 10080.2^{312} - 6720.3^{15} \\
&- 25200.2^{214} + 20160.2^{116} - 5040.1^8 \mid
\end{aligned}$$

Partial ordinary Bell polynomials  $\hat{B}_{n,k}(x_1, x_2, \dots)$ 

$\hat{B}_{1,1} = 1^1 \mid \hat{B}_{2,1} = 2^1, \hat{B}_{2,2} = 1^2 \mid \hat{B}_{3,1} = 3^1, \hat{B}_{3,2} = 2.1^2 2^1, \hat{B}_{3,3} = 1^3 \mid \hat{B}_{4,1} = 4^1,$
$\hat{B}_{4,2} = 2.1^1 3^1 + 2^2, \hat{B}_{4,3} = 3.1^2 2^1, \hat{B}_{4,4} = 1^4 \mid \hat{B}_{5,1} = 5^1, \hat{B}_{5,2} = 2.1^1 4^1 + 2.2^1 3^1,$
$\hat{B}_{5,3} = 3.1^2 3^1 + 3.1^1 2^2, \hat{B}_{5,4} = 4.1^3 2^1, \hat{B}_{5,5} = 1^5 \mid \hat{B}_{6,1} = 6^1, \hat{B}_{6,2} = 2.1^1 5^1 + 2.2^1 4^1 + 3^2,$
$\hat{B}_{6,3} = 3.1^2 4^1 + 6.1^1 2^1 3^1 + 2^3, \hat{B}_{6,4} = 4.1^3 3^1 + 6.1^2 2^2, \hat{B}_{6,5} = 5.1^4 2^1, \hat{B}_{6,6} = 1^6 \mid$
$\hat{B}_{7,1} = 7^1, \hat{B}_{7,2} = 2.1^1 6^1 + 2.2^1 5^1 + 2.3^1 4^1, \hat{B}_{7,3} = 3.1^2 5^1 + 6.1^1 2^1 4^1 + 3.1^1 3^2 + 3.2^2 3^1,$
$\hat{B}_{7,4} = 4.1^3 4^1 + 12.1^2 2^1 3^1 + 4.1^1 2^3, \hat{B}_{7,5} = 5.1^4 3^1 + 10.1^3 2^2, \hat{B}_{7,6} = 6.1^5 2^1, \hat{B}_{7,7} = 1^7 \mid$
$\hat{B}_{8,1} = 8^1, \hat{B}_{8,2} = 2.1^1 7^1 + 2.2^1 6^1 + 2.3^1 5^1 + 4^2, \hat{B}_{8,3} = 3.1^2 6^1 + 6.1^1 2^1 5^1 + 6.1^1 3^1 4^1$
$+ 3.2^2 4^1 + 3.2^1 3^2, \hat{B}_{8,4} = 4.1^3 5^1 + 12.1^2 2^1 4^1 + 6.1^2 3^2 + 12.1^1 2^2 3^1 + 2^4, \hat{B}_{8,5} = 5.1^4 4^1$
$+ 20.1^3 2^1 3^1 + 10.1^2 3^3, \hat{B}_{8,6} = 6.1^5 3^1 + 15.1^4 2^2, \hat{B}_{8,7} = 7.1^6 2^1, \hat{B}_{8,8} = 1^8 \mid \hat{B}_{9,1} = 9^1,$
$\hat{B}_{9,2} = 2.1^1 8^1 + 2.2^1 7^1 + 2.3^1 6^1 + 2.4^1 5^1, \hat{B}_{9,3} = 3.1^2 7^1 + 6.1^1 2^1 6^1 + 6.1^1 3^1 5^1 + 3.1^1 4^2$
$+ 3.2^2 5^1 + 6.2^1 3^1 4^1 + 3^3, \hat{B}_{9,4} = 4.1^3 6^1 + 12.1^2 2^1 5^1 + 12.1^2 3^1 4^1 + 12.1^1 2^2 4^1 + 12.1^1 2^1 3^2$
$+ 4.2^3 3^1, \hat{B}_{9,5} = 5.1^4 5^1 + 20.1^3 2^1 4^1 + 10.1^3 3^2 + 30.1^2 2^2 3^1 + 5.1^1 2^4, \hat{B}_{9,6} = 6.1^5 4^1$
$+ 30.1^4 2^1 3^1 + 20.1^3 2^3, \hat{B}_{9,7} = 7.1^6 3^1 + 21.1^5 2^2, \hat{B}_{9,8} = 8.1^7 2^1, \hat{B}_{9,9} = 1^9 \mid \hat{B}_{10,1} = 10^1,$
$\hat{B}_{10,2} = 2.1^1 9^1 + 2.2^1 8^1 + 2.3^1 7^1 + 2.4^1 6^1 + 5^2, \hat{B}_{10,3} = 3.1^2 8^1 + 6.1^1 2^1 7^1 + 6.1^1 3^1 6^1$
$+ 6.1^1 4^1 5^1 + 3.2^2 6^1 + 6.2^1 3^1 5^1 + 3.2^1 4^2 + 3.3^2 4^1, \hat{B}_{10,4} = 4.1^3 7^1 + 12.1^2 2^1 6^1 + 12.1^2 3^1 5^1$
$+ 6.1^2 4^2 + 12.1^1 2^2 5^1 + 24.1^1 2^1 3^1 4^1 + 4.1^1 3^3 + 4.2^3 4^1 + 6.2^2 3^2, \hat{B}_{10,5} = 5.1^4 6^1 + 20.1^3 2^1 5^1$
$+ 20.1^3 3^1 4^1 + 30.1^2 2^2 4^1 + 30.1^2 2^1 3^2 + 20.1^1 2^2 3^1 + 2^5, \hat{B}_{10,6} = 6.1^5 5^1 + 30.1^4 2^1 4^1$
$+ 15.1^4 2^2 + 60.1^3 2^2 3^1 + 15.1^2 2^4, \hat{B}_{10,7} = 7.1^6 4^1 + 42.1^5 2^1 3^1 + 35.1^4 2^3, \hat{B}_{10,8} = 8.1^7 3^1$
$+ 28.1^6 2^2, \hat{B}_{10,9} = 9.1^8 2^1, \hat{B}_{10,10} = 1^{10} \mid$

$$\text{Multinomial coefficients } (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_m) = \frac{(a_1 + a_2 + \dots + a_m)!}{a_1! a_2! \dots a_m!}$$

The bold-face numbers indicate the values of  $n = a_1 + a_2 + \dots + a_m$ . For saving place, we write  $(1^3)$  instead of  $(1, 1, 1)$ ,  $(32^2 1)$  instead of  $(3, 2, 2, 1)$ , etc....

<b>2:</b> (2) = 1; (1 <sup>2</sup> ) = 2 <b>  3:</b> (3) = 1; (21) = 3; (1 <sup>3</sup> ) = 6 <b>  4:</b> (4) = 1; (31) = 4, (2 <sup>2</sup> ) = 6;
(21 <sup>2</sup> ) = 12; (14) = 24 <b>  5:</b> (5) = 1; (41) = 5, (32) = 10; (31 <sup>2</sup> ) = 20, (2 <sup>2</sup> 1) = 30;
(21 <sup>3</sup> ) = 60; (1 <sup>5</sup> ) = 120 <b>  6:</b> (6) = 1; (51) = 6, (42) = 15, (3 <sup>2</sup> ) = 20; (41 <sup>2</sup> ) = 30, (321) = 60,
(2 <sup>3</sup> ) = 90; (31 <sup>3</sup> ) = 120, (2 <sup>2</sup> 1 <sup>2</sup> ) = 180; (21 <sup>4</sup> ) = 360; (1 <sup>6</sup> ) = 720 <b>  7:</b> (7) = 1; (61) = 7,
(52) = 21, (43) = 35; (51 <sup>2</sup> ) = 42, (421) = 105, (3 <sup>2</sup> 1) = 140, (32 <sup>2</sup> ) = 210; (41 <sup>3</sup> ) = 210, (321 <sup>2</sup> ) = 420, (2 <sup>3</sup> 1) = 630; (31 <sup>4</sup> ) = 840, (2 <sup>2</sup> 1 <sup>3</sup> ) = 1260; (21 <sup>5</sup> ) = 2520; (1 <sup>7</sup> ) = 5040 <b> </b>
<b>8:</b> (8) = 1; (71) = 8, (62) = 28, (53) = 56, (4 <sup>2</sup> ) = 70; (61 <sup>2</sup> ) = 56, (521) = 168, (431) = 280, (42 <sup>2</sup> ) = 420, (3 <sup>2</sup> 2) = 560; (51 <sup>3</sup> ) = 336, (421 <sup>2</sup> ) = 840, (3 <sup>2</sup> 1 <sup>2</sup> ) = 1120, (32 <sup>2</sup> 1) = 1680, (2 <sup>4</sup> ) = 2520; (41 <sup>4</sup> ) = 1680, (321 <sup>3</sup> ) = 3360, (2 <sup>3</sup> 1 <sup>2</sup> ) = 5040; (31 <sup>5</sup> ) = 6720, (2 <sup>2</sup> 1 <sup>4</sup> ) = 10080; (21 <sup>6</sup> ) = 20160; (1 <sup>8</sup> ) = 40320 <b>  9:</b> (9) = 1; (81) = 9, (72) = 36, (63) = 84, (54) = 126; (71 <sup>2</sup> ) = 72, (621) = 252, (531) = 504, (42 <sup>1</sup> ) = 630, (52 <sup>2</sup> ) = 756, (432) = 1260, (3 <sup>3</sup> ) = 1680; (61 <sup>3</sup> ) = 504, (521 <sup>2</sup> ) = 1512, (431 <sup>2</sup> ) = 2520, (42 <sup>2</sup> 1) = 3780, (3 <sup>2</sup> 21) = 5040, (32 <sup>3</sup> ) = 7560; (51 <sup>4</sup> ) = 3024, (421 <sup>3</sup> ) = 7560, (3 <sup>2</sup> 1 <sup>3</sup> ) = 10080, (32 <sup>2</sup> 1 <sup>2</sup> ) = 15120, (24 <sup>1</sup> ) = 22680; (41 <sup>5</sup> ) = 15120, (321 <sup>4</sup> ) = 30240, (2 <sup>3</sup> 1 <sup>3</sup> ) = 45360; (31 <sup>6</sup> ) = 60480, (2 <sup>2</sup> 1 <sup>5</sup> ) = 90720; (21 <sup>7</sup> ) = 181440; (1 <sup>9</sup> ) = 362880 <b>  10:</b> (10) = 1; (91) = 10, (82) = 45, (73) = 120, (64) = 210, (5 <sup>2</sup> ) = 252; (81 <sup>2</sup> ) = 90, (721) = 360, (631) = 840, (541) = 1260, (62 <sup>2</sup> ) = 1260, (532) = 2520, (4 <sup>2</sup> 2) = 3150, (43 <sup>2</sup> ) = 4200; (71 <sup>3</sup> ) = 720, (621 <sup>2</sup> ) = 2520, (531 <sup>2</sup> ) = 5040, (42 <sup>1</sup> 2) = 6300, (52 <sup>2</sup> 1) = 7560, (4321) = 12600, (3 <sup>3</sup> 1) = 16800, (42 <sup>3</sup> ) = 18900, (3 <sup>2</sup> 2 <sup>2</sup> ) = 25200; (61 <sup>4</sup> ) = 5040, (521 <sup>3</sup> ) = 15120, (431 <sup>3</sup> ) = 25200, (42 <sup>2</sup> 1 <sup>2</sup> ) = 37800, (3 <sup>2</sup> 21 <sup>2</sup> ) = 50400, (32 <sup>3</sup> 1) = 75600, (2 <sup>5</sup> ) = 113400; (51 <sup>5</sup> ) = 30240, (421 <sup>4</sup> ) = 75600, (3 <sup>2</sup> 1 <sup>4</sup> ) = 100800, (32 <sup>2</sup> 1 <sup>3</sup> ) = 151200, (24 <sup>1</sup> 2) = 226800; (41 <sup>6</sup> ) = 151200, (321 <sup>5</sup> ) = 302400, (2 <sup>3</sup> 1 <sup>4</sup> ) = 453600; (31 <sup>7</sup> ) = 604800, (2 <sup>2</sup> 1 <sup>6</sup> ) = 907200; (21 <sup>8</sup> ) = 1814400; (1 <sup>10</sup> ) = 3628800 <b> </b>

Stirling numbers of the first kind  $s(n, k)$ 

$n \setminus k$	1	2	3	4	5	6
1	1					
2	-1	1				
3	2	-3	1			
4	-6	11	-6	1		
5	24	-50	35	-10	1	
6	-120	274	-225	85	-15	1
7	720	-1764	1624	-735	175	-21
8	-5040	13068	-13132	6769	-1960	322
9	40320	-109584	118124	-67284	22449	-4536
10	-362880	1026576	-1172700	723680	-269325	63273
11	3628800	-10628640	12753576	-8409500	3416930	-902055
12	-39916800	120543840	-150917976	105258076	-45995730	13339535
13	479001600	-1486442880	1931559552	-1414014888	657206836	-206070150
14	-6227020800	19802759040	-26596717056	20313753096	-9957703756	3336118786
15	87178291200	-283465647360	392156797824	-310989260400	159721605680	-56663366760

For a table of the  $s(n, k)$ ,  $k \leq n \leq 60$ , see [Mitrović (D. S. and R. S.), 1960a, b, 1961] and for several extensions

Stirling numbers of the second kind  $S(n, k)$  and exponential numbers  $w(n) = \sum_k S(n, k)$ 

$w(n)$	$n \setminus k$	1	2	3	4	5	6
1	1	1					
2	2	1	1				
5	3	1	3	1			
15	4	1	7	6	1		
52	5	1	15	25	10	1	
203	6	1	31	90	65	15	1
877	7	1	63	301	350	140	21
4140	8	1	127	966	1701	1050	266
21147	9	1	255	3025	7770	6951	2646
115975	10	1	511	9330	34105	42525	22827
678570	11	1	1023	28501	145750	246730	179487
4213597	12	1	2047	86526	611501	1379400	1323652
27644437	13	1	4095	261625	2532530	7508501	9321312
190899322	14	1	8191	788970	10391745	40075035	63436373
1382958545	15	1	16383	2375101	42355950	210766920	420693273

For a table of  $S(n, k)$ ,  $k \leq n \leq 27$ , see [Miksa, 1956], and for  $w(n)$ ,  $n \leq 74$  [Levine, Dalton, 1962].

7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
1								
—28	1							
546	—36	1						
—9450	870	—45	1					
157773	—18150	1320	—55	1				
—2637558	357423	—32670	1925	—66	1			
44990231	—6926634	749463	—55770	2717	—78	1		
—790943153	135036473	—16669653	1474473	—91091	3731	—91	1	
14409322928	—2681453775	368411615	—37312275	2749747	—143325	5005	—105	1

[Mitrinović (D. S. and R. S.), 1962, 1963a, b, 1964, 1965, 1966].

7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
1								
28	1							
462	36	1						
5880	750	45	1					
63987	11880	1155	55	1				
627396	159027	22275	1705	66	1			
5715424	1899612	359502	39325	2431	78	1		
49329280	20912320	5135130	752752	66066	3367	91	1	
408741333	216627840	67128490	12662650	1479478	106470	4550	105	1

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

The bibliographical references in the text only indicate the name of the author and the year of publication; a star indicates a book. Suffixes a, b, c distinguish between different papers by the same author, published in the same year. We use mostly the abbreviations of *Mathematical Reviews*, except the following: *A.* : American ; *A.J.M.* : American Journal of Mathematics ; *A.M.M.* : The American Mathematical Monthly ; *A.M.S.* : American Mathematical Society ; *C.J.M.* : Canadian Journal of Mathematics ; *C.M.B.* : Canadian Mathematical Bulletin ; *C.R.* : Comptes rendus hebdomadaires des séances de l'Académie des Sciences (Paris) ; *Crelle* : Journal für die reine und angewandte Mathematik ; *I.* : Institut ; *J.* : Journal ; *J.C.T.* : Journal of Combinatorial Theory ; *M.* : Mathematic(s, al), Mathématique(s), Mathematik, etc. ; *M.J.* : Mathematical Journal ; *N.* : National ; repr. : reprinted by ; *S.* : Society, Société, etc. ; *U.* : University, etc. ; *Z.* : Zeitschrift.

### BOOKS

- Abramovitz (M.), Stegun (I.), *Handbook of mathematical functions, with formulas, graphs, and mathematical tables*, National Bureau of Standards, 1964.
- Albert (A.), Sandler (S.), *An introduction to finite projective planes*, Holt, 1968.
- André (D.), *Organisation et comptabilité des assauts complets*, Belin, 1900.
- André (D.), *Des notations mathématiques, énumération, choix et usage*, Gauthier-Villars, 1909, 502 p.
- André (D.), *Notice sur les travaux scientifiques*, Gauthier-Villars, 1910.
- Andrews (G.), *Number theory*, Saunders, 1971.
- Arbogast, *Calcul des dérivations*, Strasbourg, 1800.
- Ayoub (R.), *An introduction to the analytic theory of numbers*, A.M.S., 1963.
- Barbut, Monjardet, *Ordre et classification, algèbre et combinatoire*, Hachette, 1970.
- Beckenbach (E. F.) (et al.), *Applied combinatorial mathematics*, Wiley, 1964.
- Belardinelli (G.), *Fonctions hypergéométriques de plusieurs variables et résolution analytique des équations algébriques générales*, Gauthier-Villars, 1960.
- Bellman (R.), *A brief introduction to theta functions*, Holt, 1961.
- Berge (C.), *Théorie des graphes et applications*, Dunod, 1958.
- Berge (C.), *Principes de combinatoire*, Dunod, 1968, and Academic Press, 1970.
- Berman (G.), Fryer, *Introduction to combinatorics*, Academic Press, 1972.
- Bertrand (J.), *Cours de calcul différentiel et intégral*, Gauthier-Villars, 1864.
- Birkhoff (G.), *Lattice theory*, A.M.S., 1967 (3rd ed.).
- Boas (R. P.), Buck, *Polynomial expansions of analytic functions*, Springer, 1964.
- Bose (R. C.), Dowling (et al.), *Combinatorial mathematics and its applications*, University of North Carolina, 1969.
- Bourbaki (N.), *Algèbre*, Hermann, 1959.
- Bourbaki (N.), *Fonctions d'une variable réelle*, Hermann, 1961.

- Brujin (N. de), *Asymptotic methods in analysis*, North-Holland, 1961 (2nd ed.).  
 Busacker (R. G.), Saaty, *Finite graphs and networks*, McGraw-Hill, 1965.
- Campbell (R.), *Les intégrales eulériennes et leurs applications*, Dunod, 1966.  
 Carnap (R.), *Logical foundations of probability*, Routledge Kegan, 1951.  
 Cartan (H.), *Théorie élémentaire des fonctions analytiques d'une ou plusieurs variables complexes*, Hermann, 1961.  
 Cartier (P.), Foata (D.), *Problèmes combinatoires de commutation et réarrangement*, Lectures notes, Springer, 1969.  
 Chartrand (G.), Kapoor (et al.), *The many facets of graph theory*, Lectures notes, Springer, 1969.  
 Coxeter (H. S. M.), Moser, *Generators and relations for discrete groups*, Springer, 1965.
- David (F. N.), Barton (D. E.), *Combinatorial chance*, Griffins, 1962.  
 David (F. N.), Kendall, Barton, *Symmetric functions and allied tables*, Cambridge University Press, 1966.  
 Davis (H. T.), Tables of the mathematical functions, Trinity University, San Antonio.  
 Dembowski (P.), *Kombinatorik*, Bibliogr. Inst., Mannheim, 1970.  
 Dembowski (P.), *Finite geometries*, Springer, 1968.  
 Dickson (L. E.), *History of the theory of numbers* (3 vol.), 1919 (repr. Chelsea, 1966).  
 Dubreil (P.), *Algèbre*, Gauthier-Villars, 1954 (2nd ed.).  
 Dubreil (P.) et (M. L.), *Leçons d'algèbre moderne*, Dunod, 1964 (2nd ed.).  
 Dugué (D.), *Traité de statistique théorique et appliquée*, Masson, 1958.
- Erdős (P.), *Quelques problèmes de la théorie des nombres*, Genève, L'enseignement mathématique, 1963.  
 Erdős (P.), *The art of Counting*, MIT Press, 1973.  
 Erdős (P.), Katona (et al.), *Theory of graphs*, Proceedings of the Colloquium held at Tihany, Hungary, Academic Press, 1968.  
 Erdős (P.), Rényi, Sós (et al.), *Combinatorial theory and its applications* (3 vols.), North Holland, 1970.  
 Ettingshausen (von), *Die kombinatorische Analysis...*, Wien, 1826.  
 Euler (L.), *Introductio in analysin infinitorum*, 1746.  
 Even (S.), *Algorithmic Combinatorics*, MacMillan, 1973.
- Faà di Bruno, *Traité de l'élimination*, Paris, 1859.  
 Feller (W.), *An introduction to probability theory and its applications* (2 vol.), Wiley 1968 (3rd ed.).  
 Fiedler (M.) (et al.), *Theory of graphs and its applications*, Proceedings of the Symposium held in Smolenice, 1963, Prague, Publishing House, 1964.  
 Flachsmeyer (J.), *Kombinatorik*, V.E.B. Deutscher Verlag der Wiss., 1969.  
 Flament (C.), *Graphes et structures sociales*, Gauthier-Villars, 1965.  
 Foata (D.), *La série génératrice exponentielle dans les problèmes d'énumération*, Presses Univ. Montréal, 1974.  
 Foata (D.), Schützenberger (M.P.), *Théorie géométrique des polynômes eulériens*, Lectures notes, Springer, 1970.  
 Ford (L. R.), Fulkerson (D. R.), *Flows in networks*, Princeton University Press, 1962.  
 Fréchet (M.), *Les probabilités associées à un système d'événements compatibles et dépendants* (2 vols. Hermann, 1940, 1943).

- Giannesini (F.), *Roulets, Table des coefficients du binôme et des factorielles*, Dunod, 1963.
- Golomb (S. W.), *Polyominoes*, Allen, 1966.
- Gould (H.), *Combinatorial Identities*, Morgantown Printing Company, 1972.
- Gröbner (W.), *Die Lie-Reihen und ihre Anwendung*, V.E.B. Deutscher Verlag der Wissenschaften, 1960.
- Grünbaum (B.), *Convex polytopes*, Interscience, 1967.
- Grünbaum (B.), *Arrangements and spreads*, A.M.S., 1972.
- Guelfond (A.O.), *Calcul des différences finies*, Fr. tr., Dunod, 1963.
- Gupta (H.), *Tables of partitions*, Cambridge University Press, 1962.
- Hagen (J. G.), *Synopsis der höheren Mathematik*, Berlin, 1891.
- Hall (M.), *Combinatorial Theory*, Blaisdell, 1967.
- Hall (M.), Kaplansky, Hewitt, Fortet, *Some aspects of analysis and probability*, Wiley, 1958.
- Harary (F.) (et al.), *A seminar on graph theory*, Holt, 1967a.
- Harary (F.) (et al.), *Graph theory and theoretical physics*, Academic Press, 1967 b.
- Harary (F.) (et al.), *Proof techniques in graph theory*, Academic Press, 1969 a.
- Harary (F.), *Graph theory*, Addison-Wesley, 1969 b.
- Harary (F.), Norman (R.), Cartwright (D.), *Structural models*, Wiley, 1965 (Fr. tr.: *Introduction à la théorie des graphes orientés*, Dunod, 1968).
- Harary (F.), Palmer (E.), *Graphical Enumeration*, Academic Press, 1973.
- Hardy (G. H.), Littlewood (J.), Pólya (G.), *Inequalities*, Cambridge University Press, 1952.
- Hardy (G. H.), Wright, *An introduction to the theory of numbers*, Clarendon Press, 1965.
- Harris (et al.), *Graph theory and its applications*, Academic Press, 1970.
- Harrison (M. A.), *Introduction to switching and automata theory*, McGraw-Hill, 1965.
- Hermite (C.), *Cours de la Faculté des Sciences de Paris*, 1891.
- Hindenburg (C. F.), *Der Polynomische Lehrsatz...*, Leipzig, 1796.
- Itard (J.), *Arithmétique et théorie des nombres*, Presses Universitaires de France, 1963.
- Jordan (Ch.), *Calculus of finite differences*, 1947 (repr. Chelsea, 1965).
- Kaufmann (A.), *Intrdouction à la combinatoire*, Dunod, 1968.
- Kaufmann (A.), *Des points et des flèches*, Dunod, 1968.
- Kemeny (J. G.), Snel, Thompson, *Introduction to finite mathematics*, Prentice Hall, 1957.
- Klee (V.), *Paths on polytopes: a survey*, Boeing Sci. Res. Lab., 1966.
- Knuth (D.), *The art of computer programming*, Addison-Wesley, 1969.
- König (D.), *Theorie der endlichen und unendlichen Graphen*, Leipzig, 1936 (repr. Chelsea, 1950).
- Krivine (J.-L.), *Théorie axiomatique des ensembles*, Presses Universitaires de France, 1969.
- Lagrange (L. de), *Oeuvres*, Paris, 1869.
- Lang (S.), *Algebra*, Addison-Wesley, 1965.
- Letac (G.), *Problèmes de probabilités*, Presses Universitaires de France, 1970.
- Liu (C. I.), *Introduction to combinatorial mathematics*, McGraw-Hill, 1968.
- Loève (M.), *Probability theory*, Van Nostrand, 1963 (3rd ed.).

- Lucas (E.), *Théorie de nombres*, Paris, 1891 (repr. Blanchard, 1961).
- MacMahon (P. A.), *Combinatory analysis* (2 vols.), Cambridge University Press, 1915, 1916, (repr. Chelsea, 1960).
- Mamuzić (Z. P.), *Kombinatorika*, Belgrado, 1957.
- Meilzak, *Companion to concrete mathematics*, Wiley, 1973.
- Miller (J.), *Binomial coefficients*, Cambridge University Press, 1954.
- Milne-Thomson, *The calculus of finite differences*, Macmillan, 1933.
- Mitrinović (D. S.), *Zbornik matematičkih problema* (3 vols.), Belgrado, 1962.
- Montmort (P. R.), *Essai d'analyse sur les jeux de hazard*, Paris, 1708.
- Moon (J. W.), *Topics on tournaments*, Holt, 1968.
- Moon (J. W.), *Counting labelled trees*, Canadian Mathematical Monographs, 1971.
- Moses (L. E.), Oxford, *Tables of random permutations*, Allen, 1963.
- Nasvytis (A.), *Die Gesetzmäßigkeiten kombinatorischer Technik*, Springer, 1953.
- Netto (E.), *Lehrbuch der Combinatorik*, Teubner, 1927, 2nd ed. (repr. Chelsea, 1958).
- Neveu (J.), *Bases mathématiques du calcul des probabilités*, Masson, 1964.
- Nielsen (N.), *Handbuch der Theorie der Gammafunktion*, 1906 (repr. Chelsea, 1966).
- Niven (I.), *Mathematics of choice*, Random House, 1965.
- Nörlund (N. E.), *Differenzenrechnung*, Berlin, 1924.
- Ore (O.), *Theory of graphs*, A.M.S., 1962.
- Ore (O.), *Graphs and their uses*, Random House, 1963.
- Ore (O.), *The four-color problem*, Academic Press, 1967.
- Ostmann (H. H.), *Additive Zahlentheorie* (2 vols.), Springer, 1956.
- Ostrowski (A. M.), *Solutions of equations and system of equations*, Academic Press, 1966.
- Pascal (E.), *Repertorium der höheren Mathematik* (2 vols.), Teubner, 1910.
- Pellet (R.), *Initiation à la théorie des graphes*, Paris, 1968.
- Percus (J. K.), *Combinatorial Methods*, Springer, 1971.
- Pólya (G.), Szegő (G.), *Aufgaben und Lehrsätze aus der Analysis* (2 vols.), Springer, 1964 (3rd ed.).
- Rainville (D.), *Special functions*, Macmillan, 1960.
- Read (R.) (et al.), *Graph theory and computing*, Academic Press, 1972.
- Rényi (A.), *Wahrscheinlichkeitsrechnung mit einem Anhang über Informationstheorie*, V.E.B. Deutscher Verlag der Wissenschaften, 1962 (Fr. tr.: *Calcul des probabilités*, Dunod, 1966).
- Rényi (A.), *Foundations of probability*, Holden-Day, 1971.
- Richardson (W. H.), *Finite mathematics*, Harper, 1968.
- Ringel (G.), *Färbungsprobleme auf Flächen und Graphen*, V.E.B. Deutscher Verlag der Wissenschaften, Berlin, 1959.
- Riordan (J.), *An introduction to combinatorial analysis*, Wiley, 1958.
- Riordan (J.), *Combinatorial identities*, Wiley, 1968.
- Rosenstiehl (P.) (et al.), *Théorie des graphes, journées internationales d'études*, Rome, 1966; Dunod, 1967.
- Ross (R.), *Iteration by explicit operations*, London, 1930.

- Ryser (H. J.), *Combinatorial Mathematics*, Wiley, 1963 (Fr. tr. : *Mathématiques combinatoires*, Dunod, 1969).
- Sainte-Lagüe (M. A.), *Les réseaux et les graphes*, Gauthier-Villars, 1926.
- Sainte-Lagüe (M. A.), *Géométrie de situation et jeux*, Gauthier-Villars, 1929.
- Sainte-Lagüe (M. A.), *Avec des nombres et des lignes*, Vuibert, 1946 (3rd ed.).
- Serret (A.), *Cours d'algèbre supérieure*, (2 vols.), 3rd ed., Gauthier-Villars, 1866.
- Seshu (S.), Reed, *Graph theory and electrical networks*, Addison-Wesley, 1961.
- Sharp (H.), *Finite functions, an introduction to combinatorial mathematics*, Prentice Hall, 1965.
- Sierpinski (W.), *Problems in the theory of numbers*, Pergamon, 1964.
- Sloane (N.), *Handbook of integer sequences*, Academic Press, 1973.
- Spehr (F. W.), *Vollständiger Lehrbegriff der reinen Combinationslehre*, Braunschweig, 1840.
- Spitzer (F.), *Principles of Random Walks*, Van Nostrand, 1964.
- Srivasta (J. N.) (et al.), *A survey of combinatorial theory*, North Holland, 1973.
- Stanley (R.), *Ordered structures and partitions*, A.M.S., 1972.
- Steinhaus (H.), *Cent problèmes élémentaires de mathématiques*, Gauthier-Villars, 1966.
- Szegő (G.), *Orthogonal polynomials*, A.M.S. 1967 (3rd ed.).
- Takács (L.), *Combinatorial methods in the theory of stochastic processes*, Wiley, 1967.
- Tricomi (F. G.), *Vorlesungen über Orthogonalreihen*, Springer, 1955.
- Tutte (W. T.), *Connectivity in graphs*, University of Toronto Press, 1966.
- Tutte (et al.), *Recent progress in combinatorics*, Academic Press, 1969.
- Vajda (S.), *Patterns and configurations in finite spaces*, Griffins, 1967.
- Vajda (S.), *The mathematics of experimental design*, Griffins, 1967.
- Valiron (G.), *Cours d'analyse mathématique* (2 vols). Masson, 1950.
- Vilenkin, *Kombinatorika*, Moscow, 1969.
- Watson (G. N.), *A treatise on the theory of Bessel functions*, Cambridge University Press, 1966.
- Wellnitz (K.), *Kombinatorik*, Vieweg, 1961.
- Wielandt (H.), *Finite permutation groups*, Academic Press, 1964.
- Whitworth (W. A.), *DCC exercises in choice and chance*, Bell, 1897.
- Whitworth (W. A.), *Choice and chance*, Bell, 1901 (repr. Haffner, 1965.)
- Yaglom (A. M.), Yaglom, *Challenging mathematical problems with elementary solutions*, Holden-Day, 1964.
- Zariski (O.), Samuel (P.), *Commutative algebra* (2 vols.), Van Nostrand, 1960.

## ARTICLES

- Abel, Beweis eines Ausdruckes, von welchem die Binomial-Formel ein einzelner Fall ist, *Crelle*, 1 (1826) 159–60.
- Abramson, Explicit expressions for a class of permutation problems, *C.M.B.*, 7 (1964) 345–50. — Restricted choice, *C.M.B.*, 8 (1965) 585–600.
- Abramson, Moser, Combinations, successions and the  $n$ -kings problem, *M. Mag.*, 39 (1960) 264–73. — Permutations without rising or falling  $w$ -sequences, *Ann. Math. Statist.*, 38 (1967) 1245–54. — Enumeration of combinations with restricted differences..., *J.C.T.*, 7 (1969a) 162–70. — Generalizations of Terquem's problem, *J.C.T.*, 7 (1969b) 171–80.
- Agnew, Minimax functions, configuration functions, and partitions, *J. Indian M.S.*, 24 (1961) 1–21.
- Aitken, A problem on combinations, *Edinburgh M. Notes*, 28 (1933) 18–33.
- Alder, Partitions identities, *A.M.M.*, 76 (1969) 733–46.
- Anand, Dumir, Gupta, A combinatorial distribution problem, *Duke M.J.*, 33 (1966) 757–9.
- Andersen, Two summation formulae for product sum of binomial coefficients, *Math. Scand.*, 1 (1953) 261–2.
- André, Théorème nouveau sur les factorielles, *Bull. S.M.F.*, 1 (1873) 84–6. — Mémoire sur les combinaisons régulières, *Ann. Sci. E.N.S.*, 5 (1876) 155–98. — Sur un problème d'analyse combinatoire, *Bull. S.M.F.*, 5 (1877) 150–8. — Développement de  $\sec x$  et  $\operatorname{tg} x$ , *C. R.*, 88 (1879a) 965–7. — Détermination du nombre des arrangements complets où les éléments consécutifs satisfont..., *Bull. S.M.F.*, 7 (1879 b) 43–63. — (Trois) mémoire(s) sur la sommation des séries, *Ann. Sci. E.N.S.*, 8 (1879) 239–46, 9 (1880) 209–26, 12 (1883) 191–8. — Sur les permutations alternées, *J. M. pures appl.*, 7 (1881) 167–84. — Probabilité pour qu'une permutation donnée de  $n$  lettres soit une permutation alternée, *C.R.*, 97 (1883a) 983–4. — Sur les séries ordonnées, *Ann. Sci. E.N.S.*, 12 (1883b) 287–300. — Etude sur les maxima, minima et séquences des permutations, *Annales Sci. E.N.S.*, 11 (1884) 121–34. — Solution..., *C. R.*, 105 (1887) 436–7. — Sur les permutations quasi alternées, *C. R.*, 119 (1894) 947–9. — Mémoire sur les permutations quasi alternées, *J.M. pures appl.*, 1 (1895a) 315–50. — Mémoire sur les séquences des permutations circulaires, *Bull. S.M.F.*, 23 (1895b) 122–84. — Mémoire sur le triangle des séquences, *Mémoires des savants étrangers*, 32 (1898) 1–92. — De la comptabilité des assauts complets, *Bull. S. Philomathique Paris*, 1 (1898/9) 139–53, 2 (1899/1900) 45–73 77–83. — Mémoire sur les couples actifs de permutations, *Bull. S.M.F.*, 31 (1903) 105–40. — Mémoire sur les inversions élémentaires des permutations, *Mem. della Pontificia Accad. Romana dei Nuovo Lincei*, 24 (1906) 189–223.
- Andrews, A simple proof of Jacobi's triple product identity, *Proc. A.M.S.*, 16 (1965) 333–4. — A polynomial identity which implies the Rogers-Ramanujan identities, *Scripta M.*, 23 (1970) 297–305. — Generalizations of the Durfee square, *J. London M.S.*, 3 (1971) 563–70. — Two theorems of Gauss and allied identities, proved arithmetically, *Pacific J. M.*, 41 (1972a) 563–78. — Partition identities, *Advances M.*, 9 (1972b) 10–51.
- Appell, Développement en série entière de  $(1+ax)^{1/x}$ , *Grunert Archiv*, 65 (1880) 171–5.
- Atkin, Bratley, McDonald, McKay, Some computations for  $m$ -dimensional partitions, *Proc. Cambridge Philos. S.*, 63 (1967) 1097–1100.
- Austin, The enumeration of point labelled chromatic graphs and trees, *C.J.M.*, 12 (1960) 535–45.

- Bach, Über eine Verallgemeinerung der Differenzgleichung der Stirlingschen Zahlen  
2. Art..., *Crelle*, 233 (1968) 213–20.
- Barbenson, Calcul de sommes itérées, *Mathesis*, 70 (1965) 81–6.
- Baroti, Calcul des nombres de birecouvrements et de birevêtements d'un ensemble fini  
employant la méthode fonctionnelle de Rota, in \*Erdös, Rényi, Sós, 1970, pp. 93–103.
- Barrucand, Sur une formule générale..., *C.R.*, 264 (1967) 792–4.
- Becker, Riordan, The arithmetic of Bell and Stirling numbers, *A.J.M.*, 70 (1948) 385–94.
- Békésy, ..., Asymptotic enumeration of regular matrices, *Stud. Sc. M. Hungarica*,  
7 (1972) 343–53.
- Bell, Exponential polynomials, *Ann. of M.*, 35 (1934) 258–77. — Lagrange and Wilson  
theorems for generalized Stirling numbers, *Proc. Edinburgh M.S.*, 5 (1937) 171–3. —  
Interpolated denumerants and Lambert series, *A.M.J.*, 65 (1943) 382–6.
- Bender, A generalized  $q$ -binomial Vandermonde convolution, *Discrete M.*, 1 (1971)  
115–9.
- Bender, Goldman, Enumerative uses of generating functions, *Indiana U.M.J.*, 20 (1971)  
753–65.
- Bender, Knuth, Enumeration of plane partitions, *J.C.T.*, A13 (1972) 40–54.
- Bent, Narayana, Computation of the number of score sequences in round-robin tour-  
naments, *C.M.B.*, 7 (1964) 133–5.
- Benzaghou, ... (Sur l'algèbre de Hadamard), *C.R.*, 266 (1968) 652–4, 267 (1968) 212–4,  
913–5.
- Berge, Sur un nouveau calcul symbolique et ses applications, *J.M. pures appl.*, 29  
(1950) 245–74.
- Bergmann, Eine explizite Darstellung der Bernoullischen Zahlen, *M. Nachr.*, 34 (1967)  
377–8. — Die maximale Anzahl von Überschneidungen bei einem Polygon, *Archiv  
M.*, 20 (1969) 107–12.
- Bertrand, Solution d'un problème, *C.R.*, 105 (1887) 369.
- Binet, Szekeres, On Borel fields over finite sets, *Ann. M. Statist.*, 28 (1957) 494–8.
- Blackwell, Dubins, An elementary proof of an identity of Gould's, *Bol. S.M. Mexicana*,  
11 (1966) 108–10.
- Blakley, Combinatorial remarks on partitions of a multipartite number, *Duke M.J.*,  
31 (1964a) 335–40. — Algebra of formal power series, *Duke M.J.*, 31 (1964b) 341–5.  
— Formal solution of nonlinear simultaneous equations: reversion of series in several  
variables, *Duke M.J.*, 31 (1964) 347–57.
- Boas, Wrench, Partial sums of the harmonic series, *A.M.M.*, 78 (1971) 864–70.
- Bödewadt, Die Kettenregel für höhere Ableitungen, *M.Z.*, 48 (1942) 735–46.
- Bonferroni, Teorie statistica delle classi e calcolo delle probabilità, *Pubblic. Ist. Sup.  
Sc. Ec. Comm. Firenze*, 8 (1936) 1–62.
- Bourget, Des permutations, *Nouv. Annales de M.* 10 (1871) 254–68.
- Brown (J. W.), Enumeration of latin squares with application to order 8, *J.C.T.*, 5  
(1968) 177–84.
- Brown (W. G.), Enumeration of non-separable planar maps, *C.J.M.*, 15 (1963) 526–45.  
— Enumeration of triangulations of the disk, *J. London M.S.*, 14 (1964) 746–68. —  
Enumeration of quadrangular dissections of the disk, *C.J.M.*, 17 (1965) 302–17. —  
On graphs that do not contain a Thomassen graph, *C.M.B.*, (1966) 281–5.
- Bruijn (de), Generalization of Pólya's fundamental theorem in enumerative combina-  
torial analysis, *Indag. M.*, 21 (1959) 59–69. — Enumerative combinatorial problems  
concerning structures, *Nieuw Arch. Wisk.*, 11 (1963) 142–61. — Pólya's theory of  
counting, in [Beckenbach, 1964] p. 144–84. — Color patterns that are invariant

- under a given permutation..., *J.C.T.*, 2 (1967) 418–21. Permutations with given ups and downs, *Nieuw Arch. Wisk.*, 18 (1970) 61–5.
- Bruijn (de), Bouwkamp, On some formal power series expansions, *Indag. M.*, 23 (1969) 384–7.
- Brun, Une formule d'inversion corrigée, *Math. Scand.*, 3 (1955) 224–8.
- Buckholtz, Knuth, Computation of tangent, Euler and Bernoulli numbers, *M. Comput.*, 21 (1967) 663–88.
- Cairns, Balance scale sorting, *A.M.M.*, 70 (1963) 136–48.
- Carlitz, Congruences for the Ménage polynomials, *Duke M.J.*, 19 (1952a) 549–52. — Note on a paper of Shanks, *A.M.M.*, 59 (1952b) 239–41. — Congruence connected with three-line latin rectangles, *Proc. A.M.S.*, 4 (1953) 9–11. — Congruences properties of the Ménage polynomials, *Scripta M.*, 20 (1954a) 51–7. — Congruences for the number of  $n$ -gons formed by  $n$  lines, *A.M.M.*, 61 (1954 b) 407–11. — On some polynomials of Tricomi, *Boll. Un. M. Ital.*, 13 (1958a) 58–64. — Note on a paper of Dieudonné, *Proc. A.M.S.*, 9 (1958b) 32–3. — Eulerian numbers and polynomials, *M. Mag.*, 32 (1959) 247–60. — Eulerian numbers and polynomials of higher order, *Duke M.J.*, 27 (1960a) 401–24. — Congruences for the number of  $n$ -gons formed by  $n$  lines, *A.M.M.*, 67 (1960b) 961–6. — Some congruences for the Bell polynomials, *Pacific J.M.*, 11 (1961) 1215–22. — The generating function for  $\max(n_1, n_2, \dots, n_k)$ , *Portugaliae M.*, 21 (1962a) 201–7. — Single variable Bell polynomials, *Collect. M.*, 14 (1962b) 13–25. — Generating functions for powers of a certain generalized sequence of numbers, *Duke M.J.*, 22 (1962c) 521–37. — A note on the Eulerian numbers, *Arch. M.*, 14 (1963a) 383–90. — The distribution of binomial coefficients (mod.  $p$ ), *Arch. M.*, 14 (1963b) 297–303. — Some arithmetical properties of the Bell polynomials, *Rend. Circ. M. Palermo*, 13 (1964) 345–68. — Extended Stirling and exponential numbers, *Duke M.J.*, 32 (1965a) 205–24. — Some partition problems related to the Stirling numbers of the second kind, *Acta Arith.*, 10 (1965b) 409–22. — The coefficients of  $\text{ch } x/\cos x$ , *Monatsh. M.*, 69 (1965c) 129–35. — Arithmetical properties of the Bell polynomials, *J.M. Anal. Appl.*, 16 (1966a) 33–52. — Enumeration of symmetric arrays, *Duke M.J.*, 33 (1966b) 771–82. — Some limits involving binomial coefficients, *A.M.M.*, 73 (1966c) 168–70. — The number of binomial coefficients divisible by a fixed power of a prime, *Rend. Circ. M. Palermo*, 16 (1967) 299–320. — Summations of products of binomial coefficients, *A.M.M.*, 75 (1968a) 906–8. — A theorem on multiple power series with integral coefficients, *Rev. M. Hisp. Amer.*, 28 (1968b) 184–7. — Generating functions, *Fibonacci Quart.*, 7 (1969) 359–93.
- Carlitz, Riordan, Congruences for Eulerian numbers, *Duke M.J.*, 20 (1953) 339–44. — The number of labelled two-terminal series-parallel networks, *Duke M.J.*, 23 (1956) 435–45. — The divided central differences of zero, *C.J.M.*, 15 (1963) 94–100. — Two elements lattice permutation numbers and their  $q$ -generalization, *Duke M.J.*, 31 (1964) 371–88.
- Carlitz, Roselle, Scoville, Permutations and sequences with repetitions by number of increase, *J.C.T.*, 1 (1966) 350–74. — Some remarks on ballot-type sequences of positive integers, *J.C.T.*, 11 (1971) 258–71.
- Carlitz, Scoville, Tangent numbers and operators, *Duke M.J.*, 39 (1972a) 413–29. — Up-down sequences, *Duke M.J.*, 39 (1972b) 583–98.
- Cartier, Quelques remarques sur la divisibilité des coefficients binomiaux, *Ens. Math.*, 16 (1970) 21–30.
- Catalan, Note sur une équation aux différences finies, *J.M. pures appl.*, 3 (1838) 508–16.

- Théorème de MM. Smith et Mansion, *Nouvelle correspondance mathématique*, 4 (1878) 103–12.
- Cauchy, Mémoire sur les fonctions..., *J. École Polytechnique*, 10 (1815) 29–112.
- Cayley, On a problem of arrangements, *Proc. Roy. S. Edinburgh*, 9 (1878a) 338–42. — Note on Mr Muir's solution of a problem of arrangements, *Proc. Roy. S. Edinburgh*, 9 (1878b) 388–91. — A theorem on trees, *Quart. J.M.*, 23 (1889) 376–8.
- Cesàro, Dérivées des fonctions de fonctions, *Nouvelles Annales*, 4 (1885) 41–5. — Sur les nombres de Bernoulli et d'Euler, *Nouvelles Annales*, 5 (1886) 305–27.
- Chao Ko, Erdős, Rado, Intersection theorems for systems of finite sets, *Quart. J.M. Oxford*, 12 (1961) 313–20.
- Chaudury, Some special integrals, *A.M.M.*, 74 (1967) 545–8.
- Chaundy, Partition generating functions, *Quart. J.M. Oxford*, 2 (1931) 234–40. — The unrestricted plane partitions, *Quart. J.M. Oxford*, 3 (1932) 76–80.
- Chowla, Herstein, Moore, On recursions connected with symmetric groups, *C.J.M.*, 3 (1951) 328–34.
- Chowla, Herstein, Scott, The solutions of  $x^d = 1$  in symmetric groups, *Norske Vid. Selsk. Forh. Trondheim*, 25 (1952) 29–31.
- Chowla, Hartung, An 'exact' formula for the  $n$ th Bernoulli number, *Acta Arithmetica*, 22 (1972) 113–5.
- Chung, Feller, Fluctuations in coin tossing, *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.*, 35 (1949) 605–8.
- Church, Numerical analysis of certain free distributive structures, *Duke M.J.*, 6 (1940) 732–3. — Enumeration by rank of the elements of the free distributive lattice with seven generators, *Notices A.M.S.*, 12 (1965) 724.
- Church, Gould, Lattice point solution of the generalized problem of Terquem and an extension of Fibonacci numbers, *The Fibonacci Quart.*, 5 (1967) 59–68.
- Clarke, On Cayley's formula for counting trees, *J. London M.S.*, 33 (1958) 471–5.
- Clements, On a Min-Max problem of L. Moser, *J.C.T.*, 4 (1968) 36–9. — A generalization of Sperner's theorem..., *J.C.T.*, 1970.
- Comtet, Calcul pratique des coefficients de Taylor d'une fonction algébrique, *Ens. M.*, 10 (1964) 267–70. — Recouvrements, bases de filtre et topologies d'un ensemble fini, *C. R.*, 262 (1966) 1091–4. — Fonctions génératrices et calcul de certaines intégrales, *Publ. Fac. Elect. U. Belgrade*, n° 196 (1967). — About  $\Sigma 1/n$ , *A.M.M.*, 74 (1967) 209. — Polynômes de Bell et formule explicite des dérivées successives d'une fonction implicite, *C.R.*, 267 (1968a) 457–60. — Birecouvrements d'un ensemble fini, *Studia Sci. M. Hungarica*, 3 (1968b) 137–52. — Inversion de  $y^\alpha e^y$  and  $y \log^\alpha y$ ..., *C.R.*, 270 (1970) 1085–8. — Sur le quatrième problème et les nombres de Schröder, *C.R.* 271 (1970) 913–6. — Sur les coefficients de l'inverse de la série formelle  $\Sigma n! t^n$ , *C.R.*, 275 (1972) 569–72. — Nombres de Stirling généraux et fonctions symétriques, *C.R.*, 275 (1972) 747–50. — Une formule explicite pour les puissances successives de l'opérateur de dérivation de Lie, *C.R.*, 276 (1973) 165–8. — Sur les dérivées d'une fonction implicite, *C.R.* (1974) 249–51.
- Connor, James, Computation of isomorphism classes of  $p$ -groups, *M. Comput.*, 23 (1969) 135–40.
- Crapo, The Möbius function of a lattice, *J.C.T.*, 1 (1966) 126–31. — Permanents by Möbius inversion, *J.C.T.*, 4 (1968) 198–200. — Möbius inversion in a lattice, *Arch. der M.*, 19 (1968) 595–607.
- Čulik, Teilweise Lösung eines verallgemeinerten Problems von K. Zarankiewiz, *Ann. S. Polonaise M.*, 3 (1956) 165–8.

- Dalton, Levine, Minimum periods, modulo  $p$ , of first-order Bell exponential integers, *Math. Comp.*, 16 (1962) 416–23.
- Darboux, Mémoire sur l'approximation des fonctions de très grands nombres..., *J.M. pures appl.*, 4 (1878) 5–56 and 377–416.
- D'Arcais, *Intermédiaire des M.*, 20 (1913) 233–4.
- David, Développement des fonctions implicites, *J. École Polytechnique*, 57 (1887) 147–69.
- Davis, The number of structures of finite relations, *Proc. A.M.S.*, 4 (1953) 486–95.
- Dedekind, Über Zerlegungen von Zahlen durch ihre grössten gemeinsamen Teiler, *Gesammelte Werke*, II, 103–48.
- Dederick, Successive derivatives of a function of several functions, *Annals of M.*, 27 (1926) 385–94.
- Dénes, The representation of a permutation as the product of a minimal number of transpositions, *Publ. M.I. Hung. Ac. Sci.*, 4 (1959) 63–70. — Connections between transformation semi-groups and graphs, in [\*Rosenstiehl] p. 93–101. — Algebraic and combinatorial characterizations of Latin squares, *Časopis Pešt M.*, 17 (1967) 249–65. — On transformations, transformation semi-groups and graphs, in [\*Erdős, Katona], p. 65–75.
- Dieudonné, On the Artin-Hasse exponential series, *Proc. A.M.S.*, 8 (1957) 210–4.
- Dillon, Roselle, Eulerian numbers of higher order, *Duke M.J.*, 35 (1968) 247–56.
- Dirac, Extensions..., in [\*Fiedler, 1964], p. 127–32.
- Dixon, On the sum of the cubes of the coefficients..., *Messenger of M.*, 20 (1891) 79–80.
- Djoković, Mitrinović, Sur une relation de récurrence concernant les nombres de Stirling, *C. R.*, 250 (1960) 2110–1.
- Dobbie, A simple proof of the Rogers-Ramanujan identities, *Quart. J.M. Oxford*, 13 (1962) 31–4.
- Dobiński, Summirung der Reihe  $\sum n^m/n!$  für  $m = 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, \dots$ , *Grunert Archiv* (= *Arch. für M. und Physik*), 61 (1877) 333–6.
- Dobson, A note on  $S(n, k)$ , *J.C.T.*, 5 (1968) 212–4.
- Dobson, Rennie, On  $S(n, k)$ , *J.C.T.*, 7 (1969), 116–21.
- Doyen, Sur le nombre d'espaces linéaires non isomorphes de  $n$  points, *Bull. S.M. Belgique*, 19 (1967) 421–37. — Constructions groupales d'espaces linéaires finis, *Acad. Royale Belgeque, Bull. Cl. Sci.*, 54 (1968) 144–56. — Sur la structure de certains systèmes triples de Steiner, *M.Z.*, 111 (1969) 289–300. — Sur la croissance du nombre de systèmes triples de Steiner non isomorphes, *J.C.T.*, 8 (1970) 424–41. — Systèmes triples de Steiner non engendrés par tous leurs triangles, *M.Z.*, 118 (1970) 197–206.
- Doyen, Valette, On the number of nonisomorphic Steiner triple systems, *M.Z.*, 120 (1971) 178–92.
- Dziobek, Eine Formel der Substitutionstheorie, *Sitz. Berliner M. Gesell.* (1917) 64–7.
- Eden, On a relation between labelled graphs and permutations, *J.C.T.*, 2 (1967) 129–34.
- Eden, Schützenberger, Remark on a theorem of Dénes, *Publ. M.I. Hung. Ac. Sci.*, 7 (1962) 353–5.
- Ehrhart, Sur un problème de géométrie diophantienne linéaire, *Crelle*, 226 (1967) 1–29, 227 (1967) 25–49. See also *C.R.*, 265 (1967) 5–7, 91–4, 160–2 and 266 (1968) 696–7. — Une décomposition non classique de certaines fractions rationnelles, *C.R.*, 276 (1973) 9–11. — Sur les carrés magiques, *C.R.*, 277 (1973) 651–4.
- Entringer, A combinatorial interpretation of the Euler and Bernoulli numbers, *Nieuw Arch. Wisk.*, 14 (1966) 241–6. — Representation of  $m$  as  $\sum_{k=-n}^n e_k k$ , *C.M.B.*, 11 (1968) 289–93. — *Duke M.J.*, 36 (1969) 575–9.

- Erdélyi, Etherington, Some problems of non-associative combinations, *Edinburgh M. Notes*, 32 (1940) 7–12.
- Erdős, Some remarks on theory of graphs, *Bull. A.M.S.*, 53 (1947) 292–4. — On a conjecture of Hammersley, *J. London M.S.*, 28 (1953) 232–6. — Remarks on a theorem of Ramsey, *Bull. res. council Israel*, 7F (1957/8) 21–4. — Some remarks on Ramsey's theorem, *C.M.B.*, 7 (1964) 619–30. — *Elem. der M.*, 23 (1968) 111–3.
- Erdős, Hanani, On a limit theorem in combinatorial analysis, *Publ. M. Debrecen*, 10 (1963) 10–13.
- Erdős, Jabotinski, On analytic iteration, *J. d'Analyse M.*, 8 (1960) 361–76.
- Erdős, Kaplansky, The asymptotic number of latin rectangles, *A. J. M.*, 68 (1946) 230–6.
- Erdős, Lehner, The distribution of the number of summands in the partitions of a positive integer, *Duke M.J.*, 8 (1941) 335–45.
- Erdős, Niven, The number of multinomial coefficients, *A.M.M.*, 61 (1954) 37–9.
- Erdős, Rényi, On a classical problem of probability theory, *Publ. M.I. Hung. Acad. Sci.*, 6 (1961) 215–20. — On two problems of information theory, *Magyar Tud. Akad. M. Kutató Int. Közl.*, 8 (1963) 229–43.
- Erdős, Szekeres, A combinatorial problem in geometry, *Compositio M.*, 2 (1935) 463–70.
- Erné, Struktur- und Anzahlformeln für Topologien auf endlichen Mengen, *Manuscripta M.*, 11 (1974) 221–59.
- Estanave, Sur les coefficients des développements en série de  $\operatorname{tg} x$ ,  $\operatorname{séc} x$ ..., *Bull. S.M.F.*, 30 (1902) 220–6.
- Etherington, Non-associate powers and a functional equation, *M. Gaz.*, 21 (1937) 36–9. — Some problems of non-associative combinations, *Edinburgh M. Notes*, 32 (1940) 1–6. — Theory of indices for non-associative algebra, *Proc. Roy. S. Edinburgh*, A64 (1955) 150–60.
- Etherington, Erdélyi, 1940.
- Everett, Stein, The asymptotic number of integer stochastic matrices, *Discrete M.* 1 (1971) 55–72.
- Faa di Bruno, Sullo sviluppo delle funzioni, *Annali di Scienze Matematiche et Fisiche di Tortoloni*, 6 (1855) 479–80. — Note sur un nouvelle formule de calcul différentiel, *Quart. J.M.*, 1 (1857) 359–60.
- Feller, Chung, 1949.
- Fine, Binomial coefficients modulo a prime, *A.M.M.*, 54 (1947) 589–92.
- Foata, Sur un énoncé de Mac Mahon, *C.R.*, 258 (1964a) 1672–5. — Un théorème combinatoire non commutatif, *C.R.*, 258 (1964b) 5128–30. — Etude algébrique de certains problèmes d'analyse combinatoire et du calcul des probabilités, *Publ. I. Statist. U. Paris*, 14 (1965) 81–241. — On the Netto inversion number of a sequence, *Proc. A.M.S.*, 1 (1968) 236–40. — Enumerating  $k$ -trees, *Discrete M.*, 2 (1971) 181–6. — Groupes de réarrangements et nombres d'Euler, *C.R.*, 275 (1972) 1147–50.
- Foata, Fuchs, Réarrangements et dénombrements, *J.C.T.*, 8 (1970) 361–75.
- Foata, Riordan, mappings of acyclic and parking functions, *Aequ. M.*, 1973.
- Foata, Schützenberger, On the rook polynomials of Ferrers relations, in \*Erdős, Rényi, Sós, 1970, pp. 413–36. — On the principle of equivalence of Sparre Andersen, *M. Scand.*, 28 (1971) 308–16.
- Fomenko, Quelques remarques sur la fonction de Jordan, *Mathesis*, 69 (1960) 287–91.
- Forder, Some problems in combinatorics, *M. Gaz.*, 45 (1961) 199–201.

- Foulkes, On Redfield's group reduction functions, *C.J.M.*, 15 (1963) 272–84. — On Redfield's range correspondences, *C.J.M.*, 18 (1966) 1060–71.
- Français, Du calcul des dérivations ramené à ses véritables principes..., *Annales de Gergonne*, 6 (1815) 61–111.
- Franel, *L'Intermédiaire des mathématiciens*, 1 (1894) 45–7, 2 (1895) 33–5.
- Franklin, Sur le développement du produit infini  $(1-x)(1-x^2)(1-x^3)\dots$ , *C.R.*, 92 (1881) 448–50.
- Frasnay, Quelques problèmes combinatoires concernant les ordres totaux et les relations monomorphes, *Ann. I. Fourier Grenoble*, 15 (1965) 415–524.
- Frobenius, Ueber die Bernoulliischen Zahlen und die Eulerschen Polynome, *Sitz. Ber. Preuss. Akad. Wiss.* (1910) 808–47.
- Frucht, Un problema de análisis combinatorio que lleva..., *Scientia* (Chili), 127 (1965a) 41–8. — Polinomios para composiciones..., *Scientia*, 128 (1965b) 49–54. — Polinomios análogos a los de Bell..., *Scientia*, 130 (1966a) 67–74. — Permutations with limited repetitions, *J.C.T.*, 1 (1966b) 195–201.
- Frucht, Rota, La función de Möbius para particiones de un conjunto, *Scientia*, 122 (1963) 111–15. — Polinomios de Bell y particiones de conjuntos finitos, *Scientia*, 126 (1965) 5–10.
- Fuchs, Foata, 1970.
- Galambos, On the sieve methods in probability theory, *Studia Sci. M. Hung.*, 1 (1966) 39–50.
- Galambos, Rényi, On quadratic inequalities in probability theory, *Studia Sci. M. Hung.*, 3 (1968) 351–8.
- Gallagher, Counting finite groups of given order, *M.Z.*, 102 (1967) 236–7.
- Gandhi, Singh, Fourth interval formulae for the coefficients of  $\text{ch } x/\cos x$ , *Monatsh. M.*, 70 (1966) 326–9.
- Gerber, Spheres tangent to all the faces of a simplex, *J.C.T.*, 12 (1972) 453–56.
- Gergonne, Solution d'un problème, *Annales de Gergonne*, 3 (1812) 59–75.
- Gilbert, Lattice theoretic properties of frontal switching functions, *J.M. Phys.*, 33 (1954) 57–97. — Knots and classes of 'ménage' permutations, *Scripta M.*, 22 (1956a) 228–33. — Enumeration of labelled graphs, *C.J.M.*, 8 (1956b) 405–11.
- Gilbert, Riordan, Symmetry types of periodic sequences, *Illinois J.M.*, 5 (1961) 657–65.
- Giraud, Sur une majoration des nombres de Ramsey binaires-bicolores, *C.R.*, 266 (1968a) 394–6. — Une généralisation des nombres et de l'inégalité de Schur, *C.R.*, 266 (1968b) 437–50. — Nouvelles majorations des nombres de Ramsey binaires-bicolores, *C.R.*, 268 (1969a) 5–7. — Sur les nombres de Ramsey ternaires-bicolores de la diagonale, *C.R.*, 268 (1969b) 85–7. — Majoration du nombre de Ramsey ternaire-bicolore en  $(4, 4)$ , *C.R.*, 269 (1969c) 620–2. — Une minoration du nombre de quadrangles unicolores et son application à la majoration des nombres de Ramsey binaires-bicolores, *C.R.*, 276 (1973) 1173–5.
- Glaisher, On the number of partitions of a number into a given number of parts, *Quart. J.M.*, 40 (1909a) 57–143. — Formulae for partitions into given elements..., *Quart. J.M.*, 40 (1909b) 275–348.
- Glaymann, Calcul théorique des nombres de Stirling de première espèce, *Bull. S.M. Phys. Serbie*, 15 (1963) 29–32.
- Gleason, Greenwood, Combinatorial relations and chromatic graphs, *C.J.M.*, 7 (1955) 1–7.

- Glicksman, On the representation and enumeration of trees, *Proc. Cambridge Philos. S.*, 59 (1963) 509–17.
- Гончаров, из области комбинаторики, изв. ак. наук СССР, 8 (1944) 3–48 (English trans. in *A.M.S. translations*, 19 (1962) 1–46).
- Goldman, Bender, 1971.
- Goldman, Rota, The number of subspaces of a vector space, in [\*Tutte, 1969], 75–83.— Finite vector spaces and Eulerian generating functions, *Studies Appl. M.*, 49 (1970) 239–58.
- Good, Generalization to several variables of Lagrange's expansion..., *Proc. Cambridge Philos. S.*, 56 (1960) 367–80. — A short proof of MacMahon's 'Master Theorem', *Proc. Cambridge Philos. S.*, 58 (1962) 160. — Proofs of some 'binomial' identities by means of MacMahon's 'Master Theorem', *Proc. Cambridge Philos. S.*, 58 (1962) 161–2. — The generalization of Lagrange's expansion and the enumeration of trees, *Proc. Cambridge Philos. S.*, 61 (1965) 499–517; 64 (1968) 489.
- Goodman, Narayana, Lattice paths with diagonal steps, *U. Alberta*, n° 39 (1967).
- Gordon, Houten, Plane partitions, I, II, *J.C.T.*, 4 (1968) 72–99.
- Gould, Dixon's series expressed as a convolution, *Nordisk. M. Tidsk.*, 7 (1959) 73–6. — Stirling number representation problems, *Proc. A.M.S.*, 11 (1960) 447–51. — Note on two binomial coefficients sums found by Riordan, *Ann. M. Statist.*, 34 (1963a) 333–5. — Theory of binomial sums, *Proc. West Virginia Acad. Sci.*, 34 (1963b) 158–62. — Binomial coefficients, the bracket function, and compositions with relatively prime summands, *Fibonacci Quart.*, 2 (1964a) 241–60. — Sums of logarithms of binomial coefficients, *A.M.M.*, 71 (1964b) 55–8. — An identity involving Stirling numbers, *Ann. I. Statist. M.*, 17 (1965) 265–9. — Note on recurrence relations for Stirling numbers, *Publ. I.M. (Belgrado)*, 6 (1966) 115–9. Explicit formulas for Bernoulli numbers, *A.M.M.*, 79 (1972) 44–51.
- Gould, Church, 1967.
- Gould, Kaucky, Evaluation of a class of binomial coefficients summations, *J.C.T.*, 1 (1966) 233–47.
- Goursat, Remarque sur le développement en série entière d'une branche de fonction implicite, *Nouvelles Annales*, 4 (1904) 69–76.
- Graver, Yackel, An upper bound for Ramsey numbers, *Bull. A.M.S.*, 72 (1966) 1076–9. — Some graph theoretic results associated with Ramsey's theorem, *J.C.T.*, 4 (1968) 125–75.
- Greenwood, Gleason, 1955.
- Gross, Applications géométriques des langages formels, *I. Blaise Pascal*, 1964.
- Gruder, Zur Theorie der Zerlegung von Permutationen in Zyklen, *Arkiv för M.*, 2 (1953) 385–414.
- Guilbaud, Petite introduction à la combinatoire, *Rev. française rech. opérationnelle*, 6 (1962) 243–60. — Un problème leibnizien: les partages en nombres entiers, *M. Sci. humaines*, 17 (1966) 13–36.
- Guilbaud, Rosenstiehl, Analyse algébrique d'un scrutin, *M. Sci. humaines*, 4 (1960) 9–33.
- Gupta, On an asymptotic formula in partitions, *Proc. Indian Ac. Sci.*, A16 (1942) 101–2. — Partitions: a survey, *J. Research Nat. Bur. Standards*, B74 (1970) 1–29.
- Guy, Dissecting a polygon into triangles, *U. Calgary*, 9 (1967a). — A problem of Zarankiewicz, *U. Calgary*, 12 (1967b). — A problem of Zarankiewicz, in [\*Rosenstiehl, 1967] 139–42. — A problem of Zarankiewicz, in [\*Erdős, Katona, 1968] 119–50.
- Guy, Znám, A problem of Zarankiewicz, *U. Calgary*, 57 (1968).

- Hadamard, Étude sur les propriétés des fonctions entières..., *J.M. pures appl.*, 58 (1893) 171–215.
- Haigh, Random Equivalence relations, *J.C.T.*, 13 (1972) 287–95.
- Hall (P.), On representatives of subsets, *J. London M.S.*, 10 (1935) 26–30.
- Halmos, Vaughan, The marriage problem, *A.J.M.*, 72 (1950) 214–5.
- Halphen, Sur un problème d'analyse, *Bull. S.M.F.*, 8 (1879) 62–4. — Sur une série d'Abel, *C.R.*, 93 (1881) 1003–5, *Bull. S.M. France*, 10 (1882) 67–87.
- Hammersley, The sum of products of the natural numbers, *Proc. London M.S.*, 1 (1951) 435–52.
- Hanani, Erdős, 1963.
- Hansel, Problèmes de dénombrement et d'évaluation de bornes concernant les éléments du treillis distributif libre, *Publ. Inst. Statist. U. Paris*, 16 (1967) 163–294.
- Harary, The number of linear, directed, rooted and connected graphs, *Trans. A.M.S.*, 78 (1955a) 445–63. — Note on the Pólya and Otter formulas for enumerating trees, *Michigan M.J.*, 3 (1955b) 109–12. — Note on an enumeration theorem of Davis and Slepian, *Michigan M.J.*, 3 (1955c) 149–53. — On the number of dissimilar line-subgraphs, *Pacific J.M.*, 6 (1956) 57–64. — The number of dissimilar supergraphs of a linear graph, *Pacific J.M.*, 7 (1957a) 57–64. — The number of oriented graphs, *Michigan M.J.*, 4 (1957b) 221–4. — On the number of dissimilar graphs between..., *C.J.M.*, 10 (1958a) 513–6. — On the number of bicolored graphs, *Pacific J.M.*, 8 (1958b) 743–55. — The exponentiation of permutation groups, *A.M.M.*, 66 (1959a) 572–5. — The number of functional digraphs, *M. Annalen*, 13 (1959b) 203–10. — Unsolved problems in the enumeration of graphs, *Publ. M.I. Hung. Acad. Sci.*, 5 (1960) 63–95. — Combinatorial problems in graphical enumeration, in [\*Beckenbach] p. 185–217. — On the computer enumeration of finite topologies, *Comm. A.C.M.*, 10 (1967) 295–8.
- Harary, Mowshowitz, Riordan, Labelled trees with unlabelled endpoints, *J.C.T.*, 6 (1969) 60–4.
- Harary, Palmer, Enumeration of self-converse digraphs, *Mathematika*, 13 (1966a) 151–7. — The power group enumeration theorem, *J.C.T.*, 1 (1966b) 157–73.
- Harary, Prins, Bicolorable graphs, *C.J.M.*, 15 (1963) 237–48. — The number of homeomorphically irreducible trees, *Acta M.*, 101 (1959) 141–62.
- Harborth, Über das Maximum bei Stirlingschen Zahlen 2. Art, *Crelle*, 230 (1968) 213–4.
- Hardy, Ramanujan, Asymptotic formulae in combinatory analysis, *Proc. London M.S.*, 17 (1918) 75–115.
- Harper, Stirling behavior is asymptotically normal, *Ann. M. Statist.*, 38 (1967) 410–4.
- Harris, Schoenfeld, The number of idempotent elements in symmetric semigroups, *J.C.T.*, 3 (1967) 122–35.
- Hautus, Klarner, The diagonal of a double power series, *Duke M.J.*, 38 (1971) 229–35.
- Hayes, Limits involving binomial coefficients, *A.M.M.*, 73 (1966) 162–5.
- Hedrlin, On the number of commuting transformations, *Comment. M.U. Carolinae*, 4 (1963) 132–6.
- Henrici, An algebraic proof of the Lagrange-Bürmann formula, *J.M. Anal. appl.*, 8 (1964) 218–24.
- Henry, Sur le calcul des dérangements, *Nouvelles Annales de M.*, 20 (1881) 5–9.
- Hering, Eine Beziehung zwischen Binomialkoeffizienten und Primzahlpotenzen, *Arch. M.*, 19 (1968) 411–2.
- Herschel, On circulating functions, and on the integration of a class of equations of

- finite differences into which they enter as coefficients, *Philos. Trans. Roy. S.*, 108 (1818) 144–68.
- Hillman, On the number of realizations of a Hasse diagram by finite sets, *Proc. A.M.S.*, 6 (1955) 542–8.
- Hilton, Milner, Some intersection theorems for systems of finite sets, *Quart. J.M. Oxford*, 18 (1967) 369–84.
- Hofmann, *Z. für ang. M. und Physik*, 10 (1959) 416–20.
- Hoppe, Entwicklung der höhern Differentialquotienten, *Crelle*, 33 (1846) 78–89.
- Horadam, Generating functions for powers of a certain generalized sequence of numbers, *Duke M.J.*, 32 (1965) 437–46.
- Houten, Gordon, 1968.
- Howard, The number of binomial coefficients divisible by a fixed power of 2, *Proc. A.M.S.*, 29 (1971) 236–42. — Formulas for the number of binomial coefficients divisible by a fixed power of a prime, *Proc. A.M.S.*, 37 (1973) 358–62.
- Hurwitz, Über Abel's Verallgemeinerung der binomischen Formel, *Acta M.*, 26 (1902) 199–203.
- Hyltén-Cavallius, On a combinatorical problem, *Colloq. M.*, 6 (1958) 59–65.
- Ivanoff, *A.M.M.*, 65 (1958) 212.
- Jablonski, Théorie des permutations et des arrangements complets, *J. de Liouville*, 8 (1892) 331–49.
- Jabotinski, Sur la représentation de la composition des fonctions par un produit de matrices, *C. R.*, 224 (1947) 323–4. — Sur les fonctions inverses, *C. R.*, 229 (1949) 508–9. — Analytic iterations, *Trans. A.M.S.*, 108 (1963) 457–77.
- Jabotinski, Erdős, 1960.
- Jacob, Latin rectangles of depth three, *Proc. London M.S.*, 31 (1930) 329–54.
- Jacobstahl, Sur le nombre d'éléments de  $S_n$  dont l'ordre est un nombre premier, *Norske Vid. Selsk. Forh. Trondheim*, 21 (1949) 49–51.
- James, Connor, 1969.
- Jensen, Sur une identité d'Abel et sur d'autres formules analogues, *Acta M.*, 26 (1902) 307–18.
- Jordan (Camille), Sur quelques lignes brisées, *J.M. pures Appl.*, 3 (1920) 265–99.
- Jordan (Charles), Sur la probabilité des épreuves répétées, *Bull. S.M.F.*, 54 (1926) 101–37. — Sur un cas généralisé de la probabilité des épreuves répétées, *Acta Sci. M. (Szeged)*, 3 (1927) 193–210. — Le théorème de probabilité de Poincaré généralisé..., *Acta Sci. M. (Szeged)*, 7 (1934) 103–11. — Problèmes de la probabilité des épreuves répétées dans le cas général, *Bull. S.M.F.*, 67 (1939) 223–42.
- Jungen, Sur les séries de Taylor n'ayant que des singularités algébriko-logarithmiques sur le cercle de convergence, *Comment. M. Helv.*, 3 (1931) 266–306.
- Kalbfleisch, Construction of special edge-chromatic graphs, *C.M.B.*, 8 (1965) 575–84. — On an unknown Ramsey number, *Michigan M.J.*, 13 (1966) 385–92. — A uniqueness theorem for edge-chromatic graphs, *Pacific J.M.*, 21 (1967a) 503–9. — Upper bounds for some Ramsey numbers, *J.C.T.*, 2 (1967b) 35–42. — On the Ramsey number  $N(4, 4 ; 3)$ , 3rd Waterloo Conference on Combinatorics, 1968.
- Kalbfleisch, Stanton, On the maximal triangle-free edge chromatic graphs in three colors, *J.C.T.*, 5 (1968) 9–20.
- Kamber, Formules exprimant les valeurs des coefficients des séries de puissances inverses, *Acta M.*, 78 (1946) 193–204.

- Kanold, Über Stirlingsche Zahlen 2. Art, *Crelle*, 229 (1968a) 188–93. — Über eine asymptotische Abschätzung bei Stirlingschen Zahlen 2. Art. *Crelle*, 230 (1968b) 211–2. — Einige neuere Abschätzungen bei Stirlingschen Zahlen 2. Art, *Crelle*, 238 (1969) 148–60.
- Kaplansky, Solution of the ‘problème des ménages’, *Bull. A.M.S.*, 49 (1943) 784–5. — The asymptotic distribution of runs of consecutive elements, *Ann. M. Statist.*, 16 (1945) 200–3.
- Kaplansky, Erdős, 1946.
- Kaplansky, Riordan, The ‘problème des ménages,’ *Scripta M.*, 12 (1946) 113–24.
- Katona, Intersection theorems for systems of finite sets, *Acta M. Acad. Sci. Hung.*, 15 (1964) 329–37. — On a conjecture of Erdős and a stronger form of Sperner’s theorem, *Studia Sci. M. Hung.*, 1 (1966) 59–63. — A theorem of finite sets, in [\*Erdős, Katona] pp. 187–207.
- Katz, Probability of indecomposability of a random mapping function, *Ann. M. Statist.*, 26 (1955) 512–7.
- Kaucky, Note on the Banach’s match-box problem, *M.-Fyzik. Čas.*, 12 (1962) 28–35. — Une nouvelle démonstration élémentaire de la formule combinatoire de Li Jen Shu, *M.-Fyzik. Čas.*, 14 (1964) 50–3. — Note on the cycle indicator of the symmetric group, *M.-Fyzik. Čas.*, 15 (1965) 206–14. — On the Abel-type series, *M.-Čas.*, 18 (1968) 40–56.
- Kaucky, Gould, 1966.
- Kerawala, The enumeration of the Latin rectangles of depth three by means of a difference equation, *Bull. Calcutta M.S.*, 33 (1941) 119–27. — The asymptotic number of three-deep Latin rectangles, *Bull. Calcutta M.S.*, 39 (1947a) 71–2. — Asymptotic solution of the ‘problème des ménages’, *Bull. Calcutta M.S.*, 39 (1947b) 82–4.
- Klamkin, Newman, Extensions of the birthday surprise, *J.C.T.*, 3 (1967) 29–82. — Some combinatorial problems of arithmetic, *M. Mag.*, 42 (1969) 53–6.
- Kleitman, Families of non-disjoint subsets, *J.C.T.*, 1 (1966) 153–5. — Maximal number of subsets of a finite set no  $k$  of which are pairwise disjoint, *J.C.T.*, 5 (1968a) 157–63. — A conjecture of Erdős-Katona on commensurable pairs among subsets of a  $n$ -set, in [\*Erdős, Katona] p. 215–8. On Dedekind’s problem: the number of monotone Boolean functions, *Proc. A.M.S.*, 21 (1969) 677–82.
- Kleitman, Rothschild, The number of finite topologies, *Proc. A.M.S.*, 25 (1970) 276–82.
- Knödel, Ueber Zerfällungen, *Monatsh. M.*, 55 (1951) 20–7.
- Knuth, Another enumeration of trees, *C.J.M.*, 20 (1968) 1077–86.
- Knuth, Bender, 1972.
- Knuth, Buckholtz, 1967.
- Koehler, Folding a strip of stamps, *J.C.T.*, 5 (1968) 135–52.
- Kolberg, Et bevis for Dixons formel, *Nordisk M. Tidskr.*, 5 (1957) 87–90. — A property of the coefficients in a certain product expansion of the exponential function, *Nordisk M. Tidskr.*, 8 (1960) 33–4.
- Kövari, Sós, Turán, On a problem of K. Zarankiewicz, *Colloq. M.*, 3 (1954) 50–7.
- Kreweras, Sur une classe de problèmes de dénombrement liés au treillis des partitions d’entiers, *Cahiers Buro*, 6 (1965) 2–107. — Dénombrements de chemins minimaux à sauts imposés, *C.R.*, 263 (1966a) 1–3. — Sur une extension du problème dit ‘de Simon Newcomb’, *C.R.*, 263 (1966b) 43–5. — Traitement simultané du ‘problème de Young’ et du ‘problème de Simon Newcomb’, *Cahiers Buro*, 10 (1967) 23–31. — Inversion des polynômes de Bell bidimensionnels et application au dénombrement des relations binaires connexes, *C.R.*, 268 (1969) 577–9.

- Krieger, An inequality for the higher Ramsey numbers, *A.M.S. Notices*, 15 (1968) 662–78.
- Lagrange (L. de), Nouvelle méthode pour résoudre les équations littérales par le moyen des séries, *Mém. Acad. Roy. Sci. Belles-Lettres de Berlin*, 24 (1770).
- Lagrange, Legendre, Rapport sur deux mémoires d'analyse du professeur Bürmann, *Mémoires de l'Institut National des Sciences...*, 2 (an VII) 13–17.
- Lagrange (René), Mémoire sur les suites de polynômes, *Acta M.*, 51 (1928) 201–309. — Quelques résultats dans la métrique des permutations, *Ann. Sci. E.N.S.*, 79 (1962a) 199–241. — Sur les permutations avec répétitions, *Ann. Sci. E.N.S.*, 79 (1962b) 23–70. — Sur les combinaisons d'objets numérotés, *Bull. Sci. M.*, 87 (1963) 29–42.
- Laisant, Sur la numération factorielle; application aux permutations, *Bull. S.M.F.*, 16 (1887) 176–83.
- Landau, The condition for a score structure, *Bull. M. Biophys.*, 15 (1953) 143–8.
- Lehner, Erdös, 1941.
- Letac, Sur quelques aspects combinatoires du calcul des probabilités, *Ann. Sci. U. Clermont*, 1972.
- Levine, Dalton, 1962.
- Lévy, Sur l'itération de la fonction exponentielle, *C.R.*, 184 (1927) 500–2. — Fonctions à croissance régulière et itération d'ordre fractionnaire, *Annali M. Pura Appli.*, 4 (1928) 269–98.
- Lieb, Concavity properties and a generating function for Stirling numbers, *J.C.T.*, 5 (1968) 203–6.
- Lindeberg, Eine neue Herleitung des Exponentialgesetzes in der Wahrscheinlichkeitsrechnung, *M.Z.*, 15 (1922) 221–25.
- Lint (van), Representations of 0 as  $\sum_{k=-N}^N \epsilon_k k$  *Proc. A.M.S.*, 18 (1967) 182–4.
- Lloyd, Shepp, Ordered cycle lengths in a random permutation, *Trans. A.M.S.*, 121 (1966) 340–57.
- Lochs, Über die Anzahl der Gitterpunkte in einem Tetraeder, *Monatsh. M.*, 56 (1952) 233–9.
- Lubell, A short proof of Sperner's lemma, *J.C.T.*, 1 (1966) 299.
- Lucas, Sur les congruences des nombres eulériens et des coefficients différentiels..., *Bull. S.M.F.*, 6 (1878) 49–54.
- Lunnon, *Math. Comp.*, (1973).
- Luthra, On the average number of summands in partition of  $n$ , *Proc. Nat. I. Sci. India*, 23 (1958) 483–98.
- MacMahon, The indices of permutations and the derivation therefrom of functions..., *A.J.M.*, 35 (1913) 281–322. — Two applications of general theorems in combinatory analysis, *Proc. London M.S.*, 15 (1916) 314–21.
- Mallows, Riordan, The inversion enumerator for labelled trees, *Bull. A.M.S.*, 74 (1968) 92–4.
- Mano, On the formula of  $_nH_r$ , *Sci. Reports, Hirosaki U.*, 8 (1961) 58–60.
- Marchand, Sur le changement de variables, *Ann. École Normale Sup.*, 3 (1886) 137–88, 343–88.
- Marcus, Minc, Permanents, *A.M.M.*, 72 (1965) 577–91.
- Melzak, A note on homogeneous dendrites, *C.M.B.*, 11 (1968) 85–93.
- Mendelsohn, Permutations with confined displacements, *C.M.B.*, 4 (1961) 29–38.
- Meshalkin, Generalization of Sperner's theorem on the number of subsets of a finite set,

- Theory of Probabilities*, 8 (1963) 203–4.
- Meyer, Note on a ‘multivariate’ form of Bonferroni’s inequalities, *Ann. M. Statist.*, 40 (1969) 692–3.
- Miksa, A table of Stirling numbers of the second kind, and of exponential numbers, *M. Teacher*, 49 (1956) 128–33.
- Miksa, Moser, Wyman, Restricted partitions of finite sets, *C.M.B.*, 1 (1958) 87–96.
- Milner, A combinatorial theorem on systems of sets, *J. London M.S.*, 43 (1968) 204–6.
- Milner, Hilton, 1967.
- Minc, Marcus, 1965.
- Mirsky, Systems of representatives with repetition, *Proc. Cambridge Philos. S.*, 63 (1967) 1135–40.
- Mirsky, Perfect, Systems of representatives, *J.M. Anal. Appl.*, 15 (1966) 520–68.
- Mišek, Pólya’s fundamental formula and incidence matrices, in [\*Fiedler] p. 137–41. — O počtu..., *Čas. Pěst. M.*, 89 (1964) 211–8.
- Mitrinović, Tableaux qui fournissent des polynômes de Stirling, *Publ. Fac. Elect.U. Belgrade*, no 34 (1960). — Sur les nombres de Stirling et les nombres de Bernoulli d’ordre supérieur, *ibid.*, no. 43 (1960). — Sur une classe de nombres se rattachant aux nombres de Stirling, *ibid.*, no. 60 (1961). — Tableaux d’une classe de nombres reliés aux nombres de Stirling, *ibid.*, no 77 (1962). — *Ibid.*, II, no. 107 (1963 a). — *Ibid.*, III, Belgrade (1963b). — Formule exprimant les nombres de Cotes à l’aide des nombres de Stirling, *Bull. S.M. Phys. Serbie*, 15 (1963) 13–6. — Tableaux d’une classe..., IV, Belgrade (1964). — *Ibid.*, V, *Publ. Fac. Elect.*, no. 132 (1964). — *Ibid.*, VI, Belgrade, 1966.
- Montel, Sur les combinaisons avec répétitions limitées, *Bull. Sc. M.*, 66 (1942) 86–103.
- Mood, The distribution theory of runs, *Ann. M. Statist.*, 11 (1940) 367–92.
- Moon, Another proof of Cayley’s formula for counting trees, *A.M.M.*, 70 (1963) 846–7. — Various proofs of Cayley’s formula for counting trees, in [\*Harary, 1967 a] p. 70–8. — Enumerating labelled trees in [\*Harary, 1967 b] p. 261–72.
- Moon, Moser, Triangular dissections of  $n$ -gons, *C.M.B.*, 6 (1963) 175–8.
- Moreau, Sur les permutations circulaires distinctes, *Nouvelles Annales de M.*, 11 (1872) 309–14.
- Moser, The number of very reduced  $4 \times n$  Latin rectangles, *C.J.M.*, 19 (1967) 1011–17.
- Moser, Abramson, 1960, 1967, 1969.
- Moser, Moon, 1963.
- Moser, Wyman, On solutions of  $x^d = 1$  in symmetric groups, *C.J.M.*, 7 (1955 a) 159–68. — An asymptotic formula for the Bell numbers, *Trans. Roy. S. Canada*, 49 (1955b) 49–54. — On the ‘problème des ménages’, *C.J.M.*, 10 (1958a) 468–80. — Asymptotic development of the Stirling numbers of first kind, *J. London M.S.*, 33 (1958b) 133–46. — Stirling numbers of the second kind, *Duke M.J.*, 25 (1958c) 29–43.
- Moser, Zayachkowski, Lattice paths with diagonal steps, *Scripta M.*, 26 (1963) 223–9.
- Motzkin, Relations between hypersurface..., *Bull. A.M.S.*, 54 (1948) 352–60.
- Motzkin, Straus, Maxima for graphs..., *C.J.M.*, 17 (1965) 533–40.
- Muir, On a simple term of a determinant, *Proc. Royal S. Edinburgh*, 21 (1898–9) 441–77. — Note on selected combinations, *Proc. Royal S. Edinburgh*, 24 (1901–2) 102–3.
- Mullin, On counting rooted triangular maps, *C.J.M.*, 6 (1954) 316–23. — On the average number of trees in certain maps, *C.J.M.*, 18 (1966) 33–41. — On the enumeration of tree-rooted maps, *C.J.M.*, 19 (1967) 174–83. — On Rota’s problem concerning partitions, *Aequationes M.*, 2 (1968) 98–104.
- Mullin, Rota, On the foundations of combinatorial theory, in [\*Harris, 1970], 167–213.

- Nanjundiah, On a formula of Dixon, *Proc. A.M.S.*, 9 (1958) 308–11.
- Narayana, Sur les treillis formés par les partitions d'un entier et leurs applications à la théorie des probabilités, *C.R.*, 240 (1955) 1188–9. — A partial order and its applications to probability theory, *Sankhyā*, 21 (1959) 91–8. — A refinement of ballot theorems, *Skand. Aktuarietidskr.* (1965) 222–31. — Cyclic permutation of lattice paths and the Chung-Feller theorem, *Skand. Aktuarietidskr.* (1967) 23–30. — Quelques résultats relatifs aux tournois ‘knock-out’ et leurs applications aux comparaisons de paires, *C.R.*, 267 (1968) 32–3.
- Narayana, Bent, 1964.
- Narayana, Goodman, 1967.
- Narayana, Zidek, The combinatorics of knock-out tournaments, *U. Alberta*, no. 7 (1968).
- Neville, The codifying of tree-structure, *Proc. Cambridge Philos. S.*, 49 (1953) 381–5.
- Newman, Bounds for the number of generators of a finite group, *J. Res. Nat. Bur. Standards*, 71B (1967) 247–8.
- Newman, Klamkin, 1967, 1969.
- Newman, Shepp, The double dixie cup problem, *A.M.M.*, 67 (1960) 58–61.
- Nicolas, Sur l'ordre maximum d'un élément dans le groupe  $S_n$  des permutations, *Acta Arithmetica*, 14 (1967) 315–32. — Etude de l'ordre maximal..., *Bull. S.M.F.*, 97 (1969) 129–91.
- Niven, A combinatorial problem of finite sequences, *Nieuw Arch. Wisk.*, 16 (1968) 116–23.
- Niven, Erdős, 1954.
- Norton, The  $7 \times 7$  Latin squares, *Ann. Eugenics*, 2 (1939) 269–307.
- Oberschelp, Kombinatorische Anzahlbestimmungen in Relationen, *M. Annalen*, 174 (1967) 53–78. — Die Anzahl nicht-isomorphen  $m$ -Graphen, *Monatsh. M.*, 72 (1968) 220–3.
- Orstrand (Van), Reversion of power series, *Phil. Mag.*, 19 (1910) 366–76.
- Ostrowski, Ueber einige Verallgemeinerungen des Eulerschen Produktes  $(1-x)^{-1} = \prod_{n=0}^{\infty} (1+x^{2^n})$ . *Verh. Naturf. Ges. Basel*, 11 (1929) 153–214. — Two explicit formulae for the distribution function of the sums of  $n$  uniformly distributed independent variables, *Arch. der M.*, 3 (1952) 451–9. — Le développement de Taylor de la fonction inverse, *C.R.*, 244 (1957) 429–30.
- Otter, The number of trees, *Annals of M.*, 49 (1948) 583–99.
- Palmer, Harary, 1966a, b.
- Peddicord, The number of full sets with  $n$  elements, *Proc. A.M.S.*, 13 (1962) 825–8.
- Percus, A note on extension of the Lagrange inversion formula, *Comm. Pure Appl. M.*, 17 (1964) 137–46.
- Perfect, Mirsky, 1956.
- Phillips, On the definition of even and odd permutations, *A.M.M.*, 74 (1967) 1249–51.
- Pincherle, Sur une série d'Abel, *Acta M.*, 28 (1904) 225–33.
- Pólya, Kombinatorische Anzahlbestimmungen für Gruppen, Graphen und chemische Verbindungen, *Acta M.*, 68 (1937) 145–254. — Sur les types de propositions composées, *J. Symb. Logic*, 5 (1940) 98–103. — On the number of certain lattice polygons, *J.C.T.*, 6 (1969) 102–5.
- Popoviciu, Asupra unei probleme de partitie a numerelor, *Cluj.*, (1953) 7–58.

- Poupard, Dénombrement de chemins minimaux à sauts imposés et de surdiagonalité donnée, *C.R.*, 264 (1967) 167–9.
- Poussin, Sur une propriété arithmétique de certains polynômes associés aux nombres d'Euler, *C.R.*, 266 (1968) 392–3.
- Prins, Harary, 1963.
- Prouhet, *Nouvelles Annales M.*, 5 (1866) 384.
- Prüfer, Neuer Beweis eines Satzes über Permutationen, *Arch. M. und Phys.*, 27 (1918) 142–4.
- Purdom, Williams, Cycle length in a random function, *Trans A.M.S.*, 133 (1968) 547–51.
- Rademacher, On the partition function, *Proc. London M.S.*, 43 (1937a) 241–54. — A convergent series for the partition function, *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.*, 23 (1937b) 78–84. — The Fourier coefficients..., *A.J.M.*, 60 (1938) 501–12. — Fourier expansions..., *Bull. A.M.S.*, 46 (1940) 59–73. — On the expansion of the partition function in a series, *Ann. M.*, 44 (1943) 416–22.
- Rado (R.), On the number of systems of distinct representatives of sets, *J. London M.S.*, 42 (1967) 107–9.
- Ramanujan, Hardy, 1918.
- Ramsey, On a problem of formal logic, *Proc. London M.S.*, 30 (1930) 264–86.
- Raney, Functional composition patterns and power series reversion, *Trans. A.M.S.*, 94 (1960) 441–51. — A formal solution of  $\sum A_i \exp(B_i X) = X$ , *C.J.M.*, 16 (1964) 755–62.
- Read, The enumeration of locally restricted graphs, *J. London M.S.*, 34 (1959) 417–36, 35 (1960a) 344–51. — The number of  $k$ -coloured graphs on labelled nodes, *C.J.M.*, 12 (1960b) 409–13. — A note on the number of functional digraphs, *M. Annalen*, 143 (1961) 109–10. — Contributions to the cell growth problem, *C.J.M.*, 14 (1962a) 1–20. — Card-guessing with information..., *A.M.M.*, 69 (1962b) 506–11. — On the number of self-complementary graphs, *J. London M.S.*, 38 (1963a) 99–104. — A type of ‘gambler’s ruin’ problem, *A.M.M.*, 73 (1966) 177–9. — The use of  $S$ -functions in combinatorial analysis, *C.J.M.*, 20 (1968) 808–41. — An introduction to chromatic polynomials, *J.C.T.*, 4 (1968) 52–71.
- Redfield, The theory of group-reduced distributions, *A.J.M.*, 49 (1927) 433–55.
- Reiman, Über ein Problem von K. Zarankiewicz, *Acta M. Acad. Sci. Hung.*, 9 (1958) 269–79.
- Rennie, Dobson, 1969.
- Rényi, Quelques remarques sur les probabilités des événements dépendants, *J.M. Pures Appl.*, 37 (1958) 393–8. — Some remarks on the theory of trees, *Publ. M. I. Hung. Acad. Sci.*, 4 (1959) 73–85. — Théorie des éléments saillants d’une suite d’observations, in *\*Colloquium Aarhus*, 1962, 104–17.
- Rényi, Erdős, 1961, 1963.
- Rényi, Galambos, 1968.
- Riddel, Uhlenbeck, On the theory..., *J. Chem. Phys.*, 21 (1953) 2056–64.
- Riguet, Relations binaires, fermetures, correspondance de Galois, *Bull. S.M.F.*, 76 (1948) 114–55.
- Rieger, Über Partitionen, *M. Annalen*, 138 (1959) 356–62.
- Riordan, Three-line Latin rectangles, *A.M.M.*, 51 (1944) 450–2. — *Ibid.*, *A.M.M.*, 53 (1946) 18–20. — The arithmetic of ‘ménage’ numbers, *Duke M.J.*, 19 (1952a) 27–30. — A recurrence relation for three-line Latin rectangles, *A.M.M.*, 59 (1952b) 159–62. — The number of labelled colored and chromatic trees, *Acta M.*, 97 (1957a) 211–25. —

- The combinatorial significance of a theorem of Pólya, *J. Siam*, 5 (1957b) 225–37. — The enumeration of trees by height and diameters, *I.B.M. J. Res. Devel.*, 4 (1960) 473–8. — Enumeration of linear graphs for mappings of finite sets, *Ann. M. Statist.*, 33 (1962a) 178–85. — Generating functions for powers of Fibonacci numbers, *Duke M.J.*, 29 (1962b) 5–12. — The enumeration of election returns by number of lead positions, *Ann. M. Statist.*, 35 (1964) 369–79. — The enumeration of labelled trees by degrees, *Bull. A.M.S.*, 72 (1966) 110–2. — Forests of labelled trees, *J.C.T.*, 5 (1968a) 90–103. — The number of score sequences in tournaments, *J.C.T.*, 5 (1968b) 87–9.
- Riordan, Becker, 1948.  
 Riordan, Carlitz, 1953, 1955, 1963, 1964.  
 Riordan, Gilbert, 1961.  
 Riordan, Kaplansky, 1946.  
 Riordan, Mallows, 1968.  
 Riordan, Sloane, The enumeration of rooted trees by total height, *J. Australian M.S.*, 10 (1969) 278–82.  
 Rivière, Recursive formulas on free distributive lattices, *J.C.T.*, 5 (1968) 229–34.  
 Robertson, A generalization of a result of Abel with an application to tree enumeration, *Proc. Edinburgh M.S.*, 14 (1964) 239–41.  
 Robinson, A new absolute geometric constant?, *A.M.M.*, 58 (1951) 462–9. — (Editorial note on the paper of —), Robinson constant, *A.M.M.*, 59 (1952) 296–7.  
 Rodrigues, Sur le nombre de manières de décomposer un polygone en triangles au moyen de diagonales, *J.M. pures appl.*, 3 (1838) 547–8.  
 Roselle, Permutations by number of rises and successions, *Proc. A.M.S.*, 19 (1968) 8–16.  
 Roselle, Dillon, 1968.  
 Rosenstiehl, Guilbaud, 1960.  
 Rota, The number of partitions of a set, *A.M.M.*, 71 (1964a) 498–504. — Theory of Möbius functions, *Z. Wahrschein.*, 2 (1964b) 340–68. — Baxter algebras..., *Bull. A.M.S.*, 75 (1969) 325–34.  
 Rota, Frucht, 1963, 1965.  
 Rota, Goldman, 1969, 1970.  
 Rota, Mullin, 1970.  
 Ryser, Matrices of zeros and ones..., in *\*Recent advances in matrix theory*, U. Wisconsin Press, Madison, 1964.
- Sack, Interpretation of Lagrange's expansion and its generalization to several variables as integration formulas, *J. Siam*, 13 (1965a) 47–59. — Generalizations of Lagrange's expansion for functions of several implicitly defined variables, *J. Siam*, 13 (1965b) 913–26. — Factorization of Lagrange's expansion by means of exponential generating functions, *J. Siam*, 14 (1966) 1–15.
- Sade, Enumération des carrés latins de côté 6, Marseille (1948a). — Enumération des carrés latins; application au 7e ordre. Conjecture pour les ordres supérieurs, Marseille (1948b). — Sur les chevauchements de permutations, Marseille (1949a). — Sur les suites hautes de permutations, Marseille (1949b). — An omission in Norton's list of  $7 \times 7$  squares, *Ann. M. Statist.*, 22 (1951a) 306–7. — Omission..., *Crelle*, 189 (1951b) 190–1. — Sur les substitutions dont les cycles sont ordonnés et sur les partitions, *Gap* (1955). — Quasigroupes... et géométrie finie, *Crelle*, 199 (1958) 100–20.
- Salié, Über Abels Verallgemeinerung der binomischen Formel, *Ber. Verh. Sächs. Ak. Wiss. Leipzig, M. Nat.*, 98 (1951) 19–22. — Arithmetische Eigenschaften der Koef-

- fizienten einer spezieller Hurwitzschen Potenzreihe, *Wiss. Z. der Karl-Marx U. Leipzig*, 12 (1963) 617–8.
- Schlömilch, Recherches sur les coefficients des facultés analytiques, *Crelle*, 44 (1852) 344–55. — Nouvelles formules pour la détermination indépendante des coefficients dans la série des sécantes et la série des tangentes et nombres bernoulliens, *Nouvelles Annales*, 16 (1857) 27–33.
- Schöbe, Das Lucassche Ehepaarproblem, *M.Z.*, 48 (1943) 781–4. — Zum Lucassche Ehepaarproblem, *Mitt. Ver. Schweiz. Versich.-M.* 61 (1961) 285–92.
- Schoenfeld, Harris, 1967.
- Schönheim, On maximal systems of  $k$ -tuples, *Studia Sci. M. Hungarica*, 1 (1966) 363–8.
- Schröder, Vier combinatorische Probleme, *Z. für M. Phys.*, 15 (1870) 361–76.
- Schrutka, Eine neue Einleitung der Permutationen, *M. Annalen*, 118 (1941) 246–50.
- Schützenberger, Contribution aux applications statistiques de la théorie de l'information, *Publ. I. Statist. U. Paris*, 3 (1954) 5–117. — Sur une généralisation de l'inégalité minmax, *Cahiers Buro*, 2 (1957) 2–9. — On the definition of a family of automata, *Inf. Control.*, 4 (1961) 245–70. — On a theorem of Jungen, *Proc. A.M.S.*, 13 (1962) 885–90. — Quelques remarques sur une construction de Schensted, *M. Scand.* 12 (1963) 117–28. — On an enumerative problem, *J.C.T.*, 4 (1968) 219–21.
- Schützenberger, Eden, 1962.
- Schwartz, The expansion of  $\operatorname{tg}^2 x$  by Mac-Laurin theorem, *Tohoku M.J.*, 33 (1931) 150–2.
- Sccoins, The number of trees with nodes of alternate parity, *Proc. Cambridge Philos. S.*, 58 (1962) 12–6.
- Sen, On some combinatorial relations concerning the symmetric random walk, *Publ. M.I. Hung. Acad. Sci.*, 9 (1964) 335–57.
- Shanks, Iterated sums of powers of the binomial coefficients, *A.M.M.*, 58 (1951) 404–7.
- Shapiro, On the counting problem for monotone Boolean functions, *Communications Pure Appl. M.*, 23 (1970) 299–312.
- Sheehan, On Pólya's theorem, *C.J.M.*, 19 (1967) 792–9.
- Shepp, Lloyd, 1966.
- Shepp, Newman, 1960.
- Sierpinski, Sur un problème concernant un réseau de 36 points, *Ann. S. Polonaise M.*, 24 (1951) 173–4.
- Silva (Da), Proprietades geraes..., repr. in *Ann. Sci. Acad. Polyt. Porto, Coimbra*, 4 (1909) 166–92.
- Singh, Gandhi, 1966.
- Smith, On the value of a certain arithmetical determinant, *Proc. London M.S.*, 7 (1875) 208–12.
- Smith, Incidence functions as generalized arithmetic, *Duke M.J.*, 34 (1967) 617–33. — 36 (1969) 15–30.
- Solov'ev, A combinatorial identity and its application to the problem concerning the first occurrence of a rare event, *Theory of Probabilities*, 11 (1966) 276–82.
- Sös, Kőwari, Turán, 1954.
- Sperner, Note zu der Arbeit..., *Abh. M. Seminar Hamburg*, 5 (1927) 232. — Ein Satz über Untermengen einer endlichen Menge, *M.Z.*, 27 (1928) 544–8. Über einen kombinatorischen Satz von Macaulay und seine Anwendungen auf die Theorie der Polynomideale, *Abh. M. Seminar Hamburg*, 7 (1929) 149–63.
- Stahl, Bemerkung zu einer Arbeit von Hering, *Arch. M.*, 20 (1969) 580.
- Stanley, Theory and application of plane partitions, *Studies Appl. M.*, 50 (1971) 167–88, 259–79. *Duke M.J.*, (1973).

- Stanton, Kalbfleisch, 1968.
- Staver, Binomialcoeffisienten..., *Norsk M. Tidsskr.*, 29 (1947) 97–103.
- Stieltjes, Sur une généralisation de la série de Lagrange, *Annales Sci. École Normale Sup.*, 2 (1885) 93–8.
- Stocks, Lattice paths in  $E^3$  with diagonal steps, *C.M.B.*, 10 (1967) 653–8.
- Stolarsky, A vanishing finite sum associated with Jacobi's triple product identity, *J.C.T.*, 6 (1969) 392–8.
- Storchi, Sulla somma dei prodotti  $k$  a  $k$  dei primi  $n$  numeri, *Rendic. M. Appl.*, 8 (1948) 31–43.
- Straus, Motzkin, 1965.
- Sylvester, Note sur le théorème de Legendre..., *C. R.*, 96 (1883) 463–5. — A constructive theory of partitions, *A.J.M.*, 5 (1882) 251–330, 6 (1884) 334–6.
- Szekeress, Some asymptotic formulae in the theory of partitions, *Quart. J.M. Oxford*, 4 (1953) 96–111.
- Szekeres, Binet, 1957.
- Szekeres, Erdös, 1935.
- Tainiter, Generating functions of idempotent semigroups..., *J.C.T.* 5 (1968a) 273–88. — A characterization of idempotents in semigroups, *J.C.T.*, 5 (1968b) 370–3.
- Takács, A generalization of the ballot problem and its application in the theory of queues, *J. A. Statist. Ass.*, 57 (1962) 327–37. — On the method of inclusion and exclusion, *J. A. Statist. Ass.*, 62 (1967) 102–13.
- Tamari, The algebra of bracketing and their enumeration, *Nieuw Arch. Wisk.*, 10 (1962) 131–46.
- Tambs, Une formule d'itération, *Bull. S.M. France.*, 55 (1927) 102–13.
- Tauber, On multinomial coefficients, *A.M.M.*, 70 (1963) 1058–63.
- Teixeira, Sur les dérivées d'ordre quelconque, *Giornale di Matematica di Battaglini*, 18 (1880) 306–16. — Sur le développement de  $x^k$  en série ordonnée suivant les puissances de sinus, *Nouvelles Annales*, 15 (1896) 270–4. — Sur la série de Lagrange et ses applications, *Mém. Acad. Roy. de Belgique*, 1904.
- Titsworth, Equivalence classes of periodic sequences, *Illinois J.M.*, 8 (1964) 266–70.
- Todd, A table of partitions, *Proc. London M.S.*, 48 (1944) 229–42.
- Tomić, Sur une nouvelle classe de polynômes de la théorie des fonctions spéciales, *Publ. Fac. Elect. U. Belgrade*, no. 38 (1960).
- Toscano, Sulla derivata di ordine  $n$  della funzione  $\operatorname{tg} x$ , *Tohoku M.J.*, 42 (1936) 144–9. — Numeri di Stirling generalizzati, operatori differenziali et polinomi ipergeometrici, *Mem. Pontif. Accad. Scienze*, 3 (1939) 721–57. — Formula sui coefficienti binomiali dedotta da altra ipergeometrica, *Archimede*, 15 (1963) 41–6. — Su due sviluppi della potenza di un binomio,  $q$ -coefficienti di Eulero, *Boll. S.M. Calabrese*, 16 (1965) 1–8. — Polinomi e numeri di Bernoulli e di Eulero parametrizzati, *Le Mathematiche*, 22 (1967) 68–91.
- Touchard, Remarques sur les probabilités totales et sur le problème des rencontres, *Ann. S. Sci. Bruxelles*, 53 (1933) 126–34. — Sur les cycles des substitutions, *Acta M.*, 70 (1939) 243–79. — Sur un problème de permutations, *C. R.*, 198 (1943) 631–3. — Contribution à l'étude du problème des timbres-postes, *C.J.M.*, 2 (1950) 385–98. — Sur un problème de configurations et sur les fractions continues, *C.J.M.*, 4 (1952) 2–25. — Permutations discordant with two given permutations, *Scripta M.*, 19 (1953) 108–19. — Nombres exponentiels et nombres de Bernoulli, *C.J.M.*, 8 (1956) 305–20. —

- Sur quelques séries de Lambert et de Dirichlet, *C.J.M.*, 12 (1960) 1–19. (N.B.: complete biography and bibliography in *J.C.T.*, 7 (1969) 286–7.)
- Tricomi, A class of non-orthogonal polynomials related to those of Laguerre, *J. Analyse M.*, 1 (1951) 209–31.
- Turán, Egy gráfelméleti..., *M. Lapok*, 48 (1951) 436–52.
- Turán, Kövari, Sós, 1954.
- Tutte, A census of Hamiltonian graphs, *C.J.M.*, 14 (1962) 402–17. — A census of planar triangulations, *C.J.M.*, 14 (1962) 21–38. — A census of slicings, *C.J.M.*, 14 (1962) 708–22. — A census of planar maps, *C.J.M.*, 14 (1962) 708–22. — A census of planar maps, *C.J.M.*, 15 (1963) 249–71. — The number of planted plane trees with a given partition, *A.M.M.*, 71 (1964) 272–7. — On the enumeration of planar maps, *Bull. A.M.S.*, 74 (1968) 64–74. — On the enumeration of almost bicubic rooted maps, The Rand Corporation, Feb. 1969.
- Tyrrell, Reversion of a formal power series, *Mathematika*, 9 (1962) 88–94.
- Vaughan, Gabai, Hyperspheres associated with an  $n$ -simplex, *A.M.M.*, 74 (1967) 384–92.
- Walker, Dichromatic graphs and Ramsey numbers, *J.C.T.*, 5 (1968) 238–43.
- Wall, On the  $n$ -th derivative of  $f(x)$ , *Bull. A.M.S.*, 44 (1938) 395–8.
- Ward, Note on the order of the free distributive lattice, *Bull. A.M.S.*, 52 (1946) 423.
- Weaver, On the commutativity of a correspondence and a permutation, *Pacific J.M.*, 10 (1960) 705–11. — On conjugate and similar correspondences, *J.M. Anal. Appl.*, 15 (1966) 165–9.
- Wedderburn, The functional equation  $g(x^2) = 2\alpha x + g^2(x)$ , *Ann. M.*, 24 (1922) 121–40.
- Wegner, Einige Probleme bei Stirlingschen Zahlen zweiter Art unter besonderer Berücksichtigung asymptotischer Eigenschaften, *Inaugural Dissertation*, Köln, 1970.
- Weisner, Abstract theory of inversion of finite series, *Trans. A.M.S.*, 38 (1935) 474–84.
- Wells, The number of Latin squares of order eight, *J.C.T.*, 3 (1967) 98–9.
- Whitney, A logical expansion in mathematics, *Bull. A.M.S.*, 38 (1932) 572–9.
- Wilansky, A genesis for binomial identities, *M. Gazette*, 43 (1959) 176–7.
- Wilf, Divisibility properties of the permanent function, *J.C.T.*, 4 (1968a) 194–7. — A mechanical counting method and combinatorial applications, *J.C.T.*, 4 (1968b) 246–58.
- Williams, Numbers generated by the function  $\exp(e^x - 1)$ , *A.M.M.*, 52 (1945) 323–7.
- Worontzoff, Sur le développement en séries des fonctions implicites, *Nouvelles Annales*, 13 (1894) 167–84.
- Worpitzky, Studien über die Bernoullischen und Eulerschen Zahlen, *Crelle*, 94 (1883) 203–32.
- Wrench, Concerning two series for the gamma function, *M. Computation*, 22 (1968) 617–26.
- Wright, Partitions into  $k$  parts, *M. Annalen*, 142 (1961) 311–6. — The generating function of solid partitions, *Proc. Roy. S. Edinburgh*, 67 (1965a) 185–95. — An enumerative proof of an identity of Jacobi, *J. London M.S.*, 40 (1965b) 55–7. — A relationship between two sequences, *Proc. London M.S.*, 17 (1967) 296–304 and 547–52; *J. London M.S.*, 43 (1968) 720–4. — Rotatable partitions, *J. London M.S.*, 43 (1968) 501–5. — Stacks, *Quart. J.M. Oxford*, 19 (1968) 313–20. — The number of graphs on many unlabeled nodes, *M. Annalen*, 183 (1960) 250–3.
- Wright (J.) *Doctoral thesis*, Rochester, 1972.

Wyman, Moser, 1955a, b; 1958a, b, c.

Yackel, Inequalities and asymptotic bounds for Ramsey numbers, *J.C.T.*, (B) 13 (1972) 56–68.

Yackel, Graver, 1966, 1968.

Yamamoto, On the asymptotic number of Latin rectangles, *Japanese J.M.*, 21 (1951) 113–9. — Symbolic methods in the problem of three-line Latin rectangles, *J.M.S. Japan*, 5 (1953) 13–23. — Logarithmic order of free distributive lattice, *J.M.S. Japan*, 6 (1954) 343–53. — Structure polynomials of Latin rectangles..., *Mem. Fac. Sci. Kyushu U.*, 10 (1956) 1–13.

Zarankiewicz, Sur les relations symétriques dans un ensemble fini, *Colloq. M.*, 1 (1947) 10–4. — Problème P 101. *Colloq. M.*, 2 (1951) 301.

Zayachkowski, Moser, 1963.

Zeipel, Om determinanter, hvars elementer äro binomialkoefficienter, *Lunds Univ. Årsskrift*, (1865) 1–68.

Zidek, Narayana, 1968.

Znám, On a combinatorial problem of K. Zarankiewicz, *Colloq. M.*, 11 (1963) 81–4. — Two improvements of a result concerning a problem of K. Zarankiewicz, *Colloq. M.*, 13 (1965) 255–8. — On  $k$ -thin sets and  $n$ -extensive graphs, *M. Čas.*, 17 (1967) 297–307.

Znám, Guy (1968).

Zyczkowski, Operations on generalized power series, *Z. Angew. M. Mechanik*, 45 (1965) 235–44.

## INDEX

(The letter  $t$  indicates a numerical table)

- Abel identity 128
- abelian class 18
  - word 18
- abbreviations XI
- acyclic graph 62
  - map 70
- additive functions 189
- adjacent edges 61
  - nodes 61
- agglutinating system 301
- aleph, Wronski 208
- algebra, Boolean 185
- alike binomial coefficients 293
- alphabet 18, 297
- alternating group 233
  - inequalities 195
  - permutations 259 $t$
- André 21, 258
- animal 226
- antireflexive relation 58
- arc 67
- arcsin 167
- arctangent numbers 260 $t$
- arithmetic of binomial coefficients 78
- arithmetical triangle 11, 76, 291
- arrangement 6, 75
- associated Stirling numbers 222 $t$ , 256 $t$ , 295
- atom, supporting 190
- axiomatic set theory 122, 123 $t$
- ballot 21, 80
- Banach matchbox problem 297
- banner 219
- Bell numbers 210, 291, 307 $t$ 
  - polynomials 133, 156, 159, 162, 223, 307 $t$
- Bernoulli numbers 48, 49 $t$ , 88, 154, 220, 258
  - , generalized 227
  - polynomials 48, 164
- random variable 160
- bicolour Ramsey numbers 283, 287, 282 $t$
- bijection, bijective map 5
- binary Ramsey numbers 287, 288 $t$ 
  - relation 58
  - tree 54
- binomial coefficient 9, 75, 93, 293, 306 $t$
- $q$ -binomial coefficients 118
- binomial coefficients,
  - sums of inverses of 294
  - sums of logarithms of 295
  - sums of powers 90
  - expansions 75
  - identities 12, 76, 127, 155
  - series  $(1+t)^x$  37
- binomium formula 12
- birthday problem 297
- block 2, 7
- Bonferroni inequalities 193, 203
- Boole, inequalities of 194
- Boolean algebra 2, 185
  - function 185
- bound or dummy variable 30
- bracketing 52, 55 $t$ , 57 $t$ , 85
  - , commutative 54
  - , generalized (Schröder) 56, 57 $t$
- Bruno (formula of Faà di) 137
- Burnside formula 149
- canonical disjunctive form 187
- cardinal 2
- Carlitz 246
- Cartesian product 3
- Catalan numbers 53, 53 $t$ , 74, 82
  - problem 52
- Cauchy 39, 167, 254
  - numbers 293, 294 $t$
- Cayley formula 63
  - representation 262
- central limit theorem 281

- moments 169
- certain event 190
- characteristic function (in set theory) 5
  - numbers of a random variable 160
- Chebyshev polynomials 49, 87
- chromatic polynomial 179
- Chung-Feller theorem 80
- circles in the plane 73
- circuit in graph 62
- circular permutation 231
  - word 24
- circulator 109
  - , prime 109
- clique 62
- closest integer 110
- cloud 274, 276 $t$
- coding, Foata 70
- coefficient of formal series 36
- coincidence of a permutation 180
- collector of pictures 297
- combination 2, 7
  - with repetition 15
- commutative bracketing 54
- complement 2
- complementary graph 62
- complementation 2
- complete product 186
- complete subgraph 62
- component of permutation 261, 262 $t$
- $m$ -composition (partitions) 123
- composition of functions 40, 139, 145
- concatenation 18
- concave sequence 268
- conditional partitions of an integer 98, 99 $t$ , 205
  - - of a set 225
  - permutations 256
- congruences 218, 225, 229
- configuration 250
- conjugate partitions 100
- conjunction 186
- connected component 69
  - graph 62, 166, 167 $t$
  - relation 226
- constant term 38
- convex polygon 74
  - polyhedron 73, 297
  - sequence 14, 114, 268
- convolution 44, 154, 227
- covering 165
- cr=circulator 109
- cube 250, 262
- cumulant 160
- cycle in a graph 62
  - indicator polynomial 247, 264
  - , permutation 231
- Darboux method 277, 295
- D'Arcais numbers 159 $t$
- decomposition into cycles (permutations) 231
- Dedekind 273
- degree of a free monomial 18
  - of a group of permutations 246
  - of a node in a graph 61
- Delannoy numbers 80
- Demorgan formulas 3
- denumerant 108, 159
  - with multi-indexes 124
- derangement 180, 182 $t$ , 199, 201, 256 $t$ 
  - , random 295
- derivation, formal 41
- derivative,  $n$ -th - of a composition of functions 138
- derivative,  $n$ -th - of a product of functions 132
- derivatives of gamma function 173
- derivatives of implicit functions 175 $t$
- determinants 200, 203, 260
- diagonal of a product 3, 58
  - series 42, 81
  - steps in a path 80
- diagram, Ferrers 100
  - of a recurrence relation 12
- dice, loaded 298
- difference, set-theoretic 2
  - operator 13, 83
- digraph = directed graph 67
- disjunctive canonical form 187
- distance on a tree 62
- distribution 8, 15, 222
  - function of a random variable 160
- division 25
- Dixon formula 174
- Dobinski 210
- dot convention 32
- dummy or bound variable 30
- Durfee square identity 119

- empty products and sums 31, 35  
 edge of a graph 61  
 endpoint (in a graph) 61  
 enumerator of a set of functions 71  
 equal binomial coefficients 93  
 equivalence relation 59  
   – class 59  
 Eratosthenes, sieve of 178  
 Euler function 162, 193 $t$ , 199, 203  
   – numbers, polynomials 48, 49 $t$ , 89,  
   258  
   – circuit 62  
 Eulerian numbers 51, 243 $t$   
 Eulerian polynomials 199, 244, 259, 292  
 even permutation 232  
 event 190  
 excycle 69  
 expt 37  
 expectation of a random variable 160  
 exponential numbers 210, 291, 310 $t$
- Faà di Bruno, formula of 137  
 factorial moments of a random variable  
   160  
 factorial 6, 305 $t$   
   –, falling and rising 83  
 factorization, ordered 126  
 fall 241  
 family, multiplicable – of formal series  
   39  
   –, summable – of formal series 38  
 Feller 80  
 Fermat matrices 171  
 Ferrers diagram 99  
 Fibonacci numbers 45 $t$ , 86  
 figured number 17  
 filter basis 91  
 finest partition 220  
 finite geometry 303 $t$   
 fixed point of a permutation 180, 231  
 Foata coding 70  
 folding stamps 267 $t$   
 forbidden positions, permutations with  
   201  
 forbidden summands (partitions) 108  
 forest 70, 90, 91 $t$   
 formal derivation 41  
   – primitivation 42  
   – series 36
- fraction, rational 87, 109, 223  
   – integrals of 167  
 fractionary iterates 144  
   – of  $e^t - 1$  148 $t$   
 Fréchet inequality 200  
 Frenet-Serret trihedron 158  
 Frobenius 249  
 Fubini formula 228  
   –, theorem of 32  
 function, Boolean 185  
   –, generating 43  
   –, exponential and ordinary gener-  
     ating 44  
   –, symmetric 158, 214  
 functional digraph 191, 69  
 functions, composition of 40, 138, 145  
   – of a finite set 69, 79
- gamma function, derivatives of 173  
   – –, stirling expansion 267  
 Gegenbauer polynomials 50, 87  
 generating function 43  
 generalized bracketing 56, 57 $t$   
 Genocchi numbers 49 $t$   
 geometry, finite 91, 303 $t$   
 Gould formula 173  
 graph 60  
   –, complementary 62  
   –, directed or oriented 67  
 graph ( $m$  –) 264  
 graphs, labeled and unlabeled 263, 264 $t$   
   –, regular 273, 279 $t$   
 group, alternating 233  
   – of given order 302 $t$   
   – of permutations 246  
   –, symmetric 231  
 Gumbel inequalities 201
- Hadamard product 85  
 Halphen 161  
 Hamiltonian circuit 62  
 Hankel determinant 87  
 harmonic numbers 217  
 Hasse diagram 67  
 height of a tree 52  
 Herschelian type 109  
 Hermite formula 150, 164  
   – polynomials 164, 50, 277  
 homogeneous parts 38

- horizontal recurrence relations 209,
  - 215
- Hurwitz identity 163
  - series 85
- idempotent map 91*t*
  - number 135
- identity, binomial 12, 127, 76, 155
  - , Jacobi 106, 119
  - , multinomial 28, 127
  - permutations 230
  - , Rogers-Ramanujan 107
- image 4
  - , inverse 5
- implicit, derivative of an – function 175*t*
- incidence matrix 58, 201
- incident edge 61
- inclusion and exclusion principle 176
- in-degree, out-degree 68
- independent set 62
- indeterminates in a formal series 36
- indicator polynomial 247, 264
- inequalities, linear – in probabilities 190
- inequality of Bonferroni 193, 203
  - of Boole 194
  - of Fréchet 200
  - of Gumbel 201
  - Newton 278
- injection 5
- injective map 5
- integral part of  $x$  178
- interchangeable system 179
- inventory 251
- inverse image 5
  - map 5
  - of a formal series 148, 151*t*
  - of some polynomials 164
- inversion formula of Lagrange 148, 163
- inversions in a permutation 236, 240*t*
- inversion of a matrix 143, 164
- involution 257
- isomorphic graphs 263
- iterate, fractionary 144
- iteration polynomials 147*t*
- Jacobi identity 106, 119
- Jordan formula 195, 200, 203
  - function 199, 203
- juxtaposition, product by 18
- Kaplansky 24
- knock-out tournament 200
- Kolmogoroff system 302
- labeled graphs 263, 264*t*
- Lagrange congruence 218
  - , inversion formula of 148, 163
- Laguerre polynomials 50
- Lah numbers 135, 156*t*
- Lambert series 48, 161
- latin square and rectangle 183*t*
- lattice 59
  - , free distributive 273
  - of partitions of a set 202, 220
  - of permutations 255
  - representation 58
- Laurent series 43
- Legendre polynomials 50, 87, 164
- Leibniz formula 130
- Leibniz numbers 83*t*
- letter of a word 18
- Lie derivation 220
- Li Jen-Shu formula 173
- Lindeberg 281, 297
- linear system 304
- lines in the plane 72
- loaded dice 299
- $\log(1+t)$  37
- logarithmic polynomials 140, 156, 308*t*
- logarithmically concave or convex 269
- lower bounds, set of 59
- MacMahon X
- MacMahon Master Theorem 173
- magic squares 124, 125*t*
- map 5, 70
  - , reciprocal or inverse 5
  - , surjective 5
- maps of a finite set into itself 69
- marriage problem 300
- matchbox problem of Banach 297
- matrix, incidence 58, 201
  - of a permutation 230
  - of a relation 58
  - , random 201
- measure 189
- ‘ménages’ problem 183, 185*t*, 199
- minimal path 20, 80, 81
- minimax 302

- Möbius formula 161, 202  
   – function 161  
 model 250, 252  
 moment of random variable 160  
 money-change problem 108  
 monkey typist 297  
 monoid, free 18  
 monomial, symmetric – function 158  
 monotone subsequence 299  
 multicovering 303 $t$   
 multi-index 36, 124  
 multinomial coefficient 28, 77  
   sums of – 126  
   sums of inverses of – 294  
     – identity 28, 127  
 multiplicable family 39  
 multiplicative function 161  
 multisection of series 84
- Netto X  
 necklaces 263  
 Newcomb 246, 266  
 Newton 48, 270  
   binomium formula of – 12  
   –, formula of Taylor 221  
 nodes of a graph or digraph 61, 67  
 nonassociative product 52
- octahedron 262  
 odd permutations 232  
 omino,  $n$ - 226  
 operator  
   –  $D$ , derivation 41  
   –,  $\Delta$  difference 13, 83  
   –,  $P$  primitivation 52  
   –  $E$ , translation 13  
   –,  $\Theta = tD$  220  
 orbit 248, 231  
 order of a formal series 38  
   – of a group of permutations 246  
   – of a permutation 233  
   – relation 59, 60 $t$   
 ordered factorizations 126  
 ordered orbits, permutations with 258 $t$   
   – set 59  
 ordinals 122, 123 $t$   
 out-degree 67  
 outstanding elements 258  
 overlapping system 303
- pair 7  
 parity, even or odd 232  
 part of a partition 94  
 partial relation 58  
 partition of an integer 96 $t$ , 159, 292,  
   307 $t$   
     –, random 296  
 partitions, lattice of 202, 220  
   – of a set 30, 204  
   –, random, of a set 296  
 Pascal matrix 143  
   – triangle 11, 76, 291  
 path in a graph 62  
   –, minimal 20, 80, 81  
 pcr = prime circulator 109  
 pentagonal theorem of Euler 104  
 perfect partition of integers 126  
 permanent 196  
 permutation 7, 230  
   –, alternating 258, 259 $t$   
   –, circular 231  
   –, components of 261, 262 $t$   
   –, conditional 233, 256  
   –, cycles of 231  
   –, generalized 265  
   –, identity 231  
   –, parity of 232  
   –, peak of 261 $t$   
   –, random 279, 295  
   – with forbidden positions 201  
   – with given order 257 $t$   
   – with  $k$  inversions 236, 240 $t$   
   – with repetitions 27  
 permutations, group of 231  
 pigeon-hole principle 91  
 planes in space 72  
 Poincaré formula 192  
 point, fixed – of a permutation 180,  
   231  
 points in the plane 72  
 Poisson distribution 160  
 Pólya, theorem of 252  
 polygon, convex 54, 74, 299  
   – of a permutation 237  
 polygonal contour 302  
 polyhedron, convex 73  
   –, rational points in a 121  
 polynomial, indicator – of cycles 247,  
   264

- positions, permutation with forbidden  
201
- potential polynomials 141, 156
- powers, sums of 154, 168, 169
- pre-image 5, 30
- prime numbers 119, 178
  - circulator 109
- primitivation, formal 42
- probability 160, 190
  - measure 190
- 'problème des ménages' 183, 185*t*, 199
- 'problème des rencontres' 180, 182*t*, 199
- product, empty 35
  - set, cartesian 3
- profile 125
- projection 3, 59
- proper relation 58
- quadratic form 300
- quadrinomial coefficients 78*t*
- q*-identities 103
- Ramanujan 107
- Ramsey 283, 287, 288*t*, 298
- random derangements 295
  - formal series 160
  - partition of integers or sets 296
  - permutations 279, 295
  - tournament 296
  - variable 160
  - walk 20
  - words 297
- rank of a formula 216
- rational fraction 87, 109, 223
- rearrangement 265
- reciprocal map 5
  - of formal series 150, 151*t*
  - relation 58
- rectangle, latin 182, 183*t*
- reflection principle 22
- reflexive relation 58
- regions, division into 72, 73
- regular chains 165
  - graphs 273, 279*t*
  - graphs of order 2 276*t*
- relation 57
  - , *m*-ary 57
  - , equivalence 59
- , incidence 59
- , inverse 59
- , order 59, 60*t*
- 'rencontre' 180
- Rényi 189
- representative, distinct 201, 300
- Riordan X
- rise in a permutation 240, 243*t*
- Rogers-Ramanujan identities 107
- root of a tree 63
- rooted tree 63
- roots of  $ax = \text{tg } x$ , expansions for - 170*t*
- roulette 262
- row-independent random variable 280
- run 79
- Ryser formula 197
- Salié's numbers 86, 87*t*
- sample 190
- Schröder 56, 57*t*, 165, 223*t*
- score, score vector 68, 123*t*
- section 59
- m*-selection 4
- separating system 302
- sequences 79, 260, 265
- sequences, divisions of  $[n]$  79
- series, diagonal 42, 81
- series, formal 36
  - random formal 160
- sets of *n* elements (axiomatic) 123*t*
- shepherds principle 9
- sieve formulas 176
- sieve of Eratosthenes 178
- sign of a permutation 233
- size (of a set) 5
- specification 18, 265
- Sperner 272, 273*t*, 292
- spheres in space 73
- squares in relations 288, 291*t*
- stabilizer 248
- stackings 226
- stamps 124
  - folding strip of - 267*t*
- standard tableau 125
  - deviation 160
- Steiner, triple-system 303, 304*t*
- step in a minimal path 210
- Stirling expansion of gamma function 267

- Stirling formula 292
  - matrices 146
  - numbers 50, 135, 144, 229, 271, 291, 293, 310 $t$
  - of the first kind 212
  - associated of the first kind 256 $t$ , 295
  - of the second kind 204
  - associated of the second kind 222 $t$ , 295
- subgraph 62
- subset 2
  - , series 40, 137
- summable family 38
- summand in a partition of integer 94
- summation, double 31
  - formula 153, 168, 169
  - , multiple 31
  - set 31
  - , simple 31, 172
  - , triple 31
- sums of powers of binomial coefficients 90
- surjection 5
- surjective maps 5
- symmetric eulerian numbers 158, 214
  - function 158, 214
  - group 231
  - monoid 90
  - relation 58
- system 3
  - of distinct representatives 201, 300
  - , Sperner 272, 273 $t$ , 292
- To*-system 302
- tangent numbers 258
- Taylor coefficient 130
  - series 130
- Taylor-Newton formula 221
- terminal node 61
  - edge 62
- terms in derivatives of implicit functions 175 $t$
- Terquem problem 79
- topologies on  $[n]$  229 $t$
- total relation 58
- tournament, 68
  - , knock-out 200
  - , random 296
- transitive digraph 66
  - relation 58, 90
- transpositions 231
- transversals in Pascal triangle 76
- tree 62, 219
  - , binary 54
  - , rooted 63
- triangle, Pascal 11, 76
- triangles with integer sides 73
- triangulation 54, 74
- trinomial coefficients 78 $t$ , 163 $t$
- triple Steiner system 303, 304 $t$
- m*-tuple 4
- type of a partition of a set 205
- type of a permutation 233
- typewriting monkey 297
- unimodal sequence 269
- unequal summands, partition with 101, 115 $t$
- unitary series 146
- upperbounds, set of 59
- Vandermonde convolution 44, 154, 227
- variable, bound or dummy 30
  - in formal series 36
  - , random 160
- variance 160
- variegated words 198
- vector space 201
- vertex of a graph 61
- vertical recurrence relations 209, 215
- wall 125
- Wedderburn-Etherington problem 54, 55 $t$
- weighing problem 301
- weight 251
- Wilson congruence 218
- word 18
  - random 18, 297
- Wronski aleph 208
- Young 125
- Zarankiewicz 288, 291 $t$ , 300
- zeta function 119, 202